



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

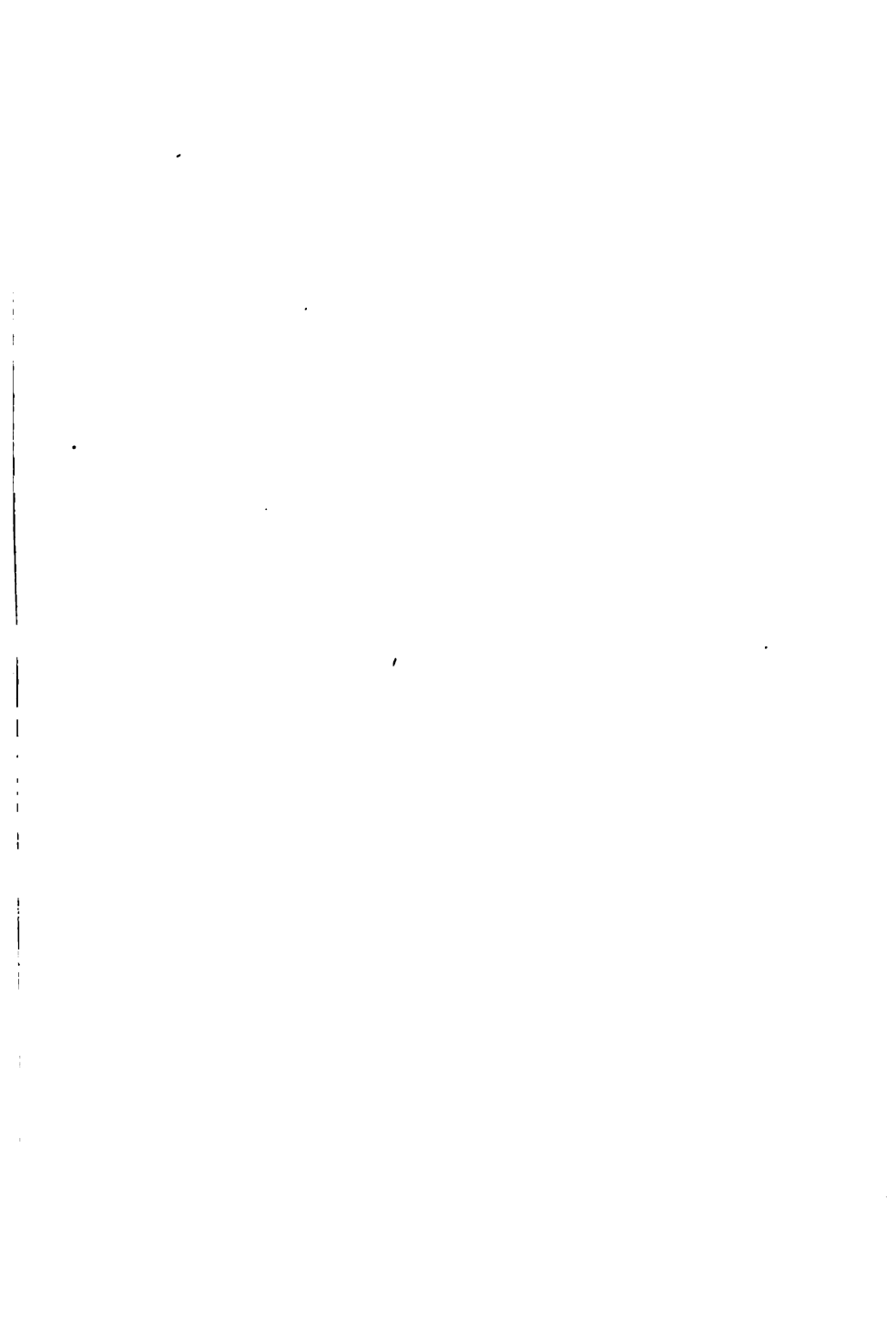
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

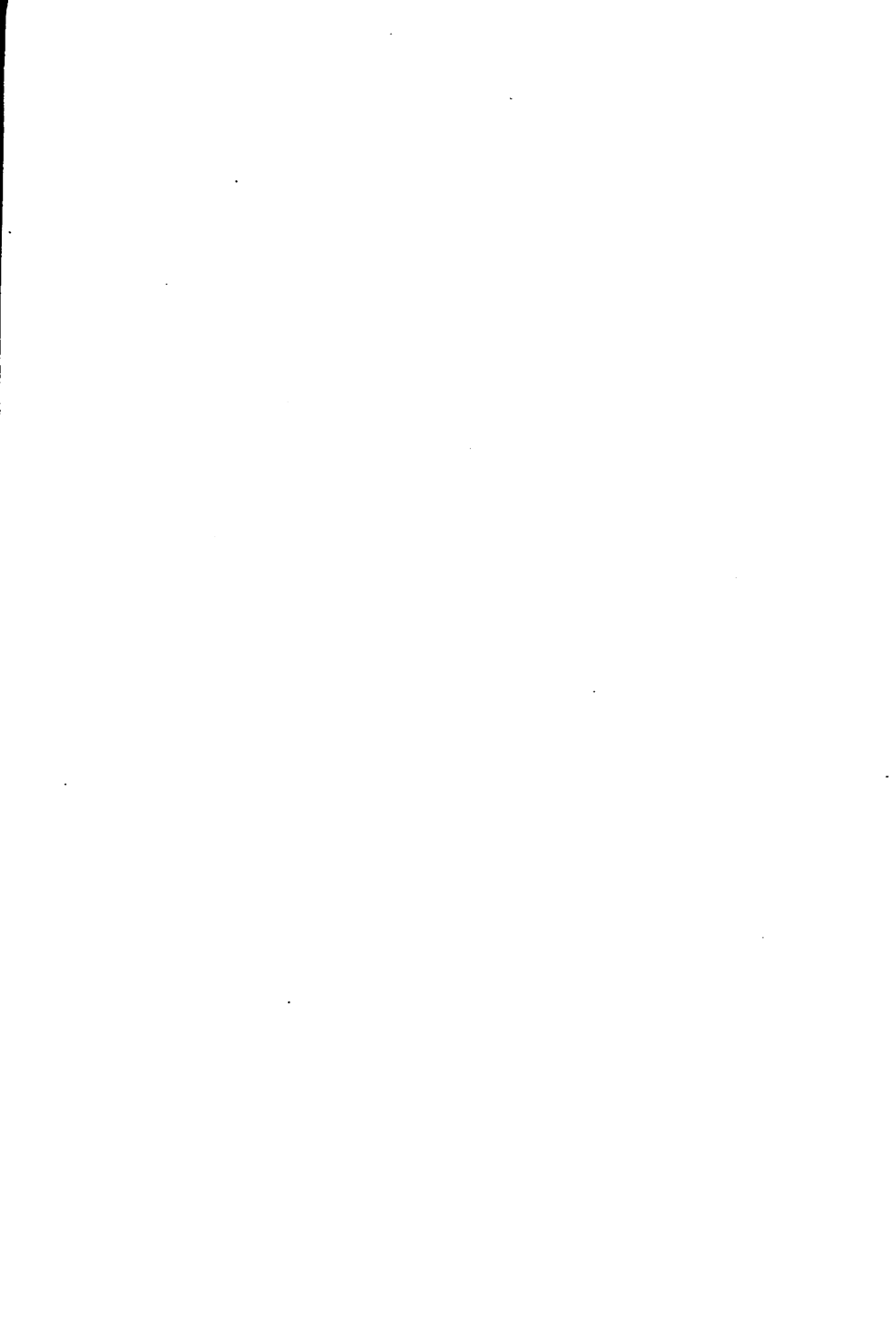
UNIVERSITY
OF VIRGINIA
CHARLOTTESVILLE
LIBRARY

ELLAR BOOK SHOP
8090 Wyoming
Mich. 48221. U. S. A.

#125-

16973





MANUAL OF CHIKARANGA



A MANUAL
OF THE
CHIKARANGA LANGUAGE

WITH GRAMMAR, EXERCISES,
USEFUL CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES
AND
VOCABULARY
(*ENGLISH—CHIKARANGA and CHIKARANGA—ENGLISH*)

BY
C. S. LOUW

BULAWAYO
PHILPOTT & COLLINS

1915

PL

8681

·2689

1915

INTRODUCTION

CHIKARANGA is the language spoken by the natives of Mashonaland, Southern Rhodesia.

It is known by different names in different parts of the country. In the Salisbury district it is called *Chiswina*; in the Umtali district it is known as *Chimanyika*, while it bears the name of *Chindau* in Gazaland. In the district of Victoria the natives call it *Chikaranga*, and it is subdivided into dialects, known as: *Chigovera*, *Chimali*, &c. These differ from each other chiefly in certain phonetic peculiarities. The grammatical construction in all these dialects is the same.

In the following pages an attempt has been made to provide for the European student a gradual introduction to the grammar of this important branch of the group of African Native languages, known as the Bantu family.

As the sentence in the Bantu language is built upon the *noun* as foundation, the different *noun-classes* are treated first, and the student is advised to become thoroughly acquainted with the classes before proceeding further. From the Noun we pass on to the *Grammatical Concord*, which is an underlying principle of all Bantu languages. According to this principle all the words in the sentence that stand in connection with the noun are thrown into concord with it by the same, or a similar prefix or particle.

From this point the student is gradually led on from simpler construction to the more difficult and complex forms.

As will be seen, especially in the case of the verb, the Chikaranga form does not always exactly correspond to the English, but native thought is different from ours, and we are obliged to use the English

names for the Moods and Tenses which most nearly fit the Chikaranga forms.

To each lesson are attached a good many examples and exercises, illustrative of the rules explained in the lesson.

It is recommended that the examples be carefully studied, and the exercises worked out before the following lesson be attempted. The object of these examples and exercises is to familiarise the student with the native idiom, as he goes along, and this will account for the unidiomatic English expressions which will be met with occasionally.

The student of Chikaranga must be prepared to take pains and spend time in acquiring what will prove to be a highly grammatical and flexible language. After the first fundamental rules have been thoroughly mastered, it will be found that the rest comes quite easily. Above all, the knowledge gradually gained must be *used* in daily conversation with natives. It is only by *speaking* that the language will be learnt. The accent and pronunciation, as well as the idiom, are best caught from the natives themselves, especially from those who have not yet learned to adapt their speech to European idioms and ways of thought.

Part II. contains a key to the exercises, and is chiefly meant for such as may be living in lonely places, where no assistance can be obtained from Europeans who have already acquired the language.

In *Part III.* will be found a number of useful sentences for the help of residents who have not yet acquired the grammar, or passing travellers who are merely making a temporary stay in the country. We strongly urge, however, that the *grammar* be studied thoroughly, and it would be most regrettable if any one were to rest content with learning the sentences instead of conscientiously mastering the grammar.

The Vocabulary of *Part IV.* does not claim to be either an exhaustive or correct *dictionary*. Such words have been included as could be collected from the natives, and meanings assigned them, which, it is hoped, will be found to be generally correct.

All Missionaries and others interested in the study of this language are cordially invited to point out any mistakes they may detect, to forward any words not contained in the Vocabulary,

and to co-operate by suggestion and advice towards the issue in the future of a corrected and complete Dictionary of the Chikaranga language.

From the excellent 'Manual of the Nyanja Language' by the Rev. Alexander Hetherwick, D.D., of the Church of Scotland Mission in Nyasaland, I have derived much assistance and suggestion for the arrangement of the subject-matter of this Grammar. I must also express my deep indebtedness to my faithful native helper Timotheus, who assisted me with untiring perseverance. Sincere thanks are also due to my fellow Missionaries for their generous encouragement, and for practical aid in adding words to the Vocabulary, and in testing the meanings of words included, as well as in the arduous and monotonous work of rewriting and typing the manuscript.

C. S. L.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION	V
------------------------	---

PART I.

GRAMMAR

LESSON

I. ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION	3
II. GRAMMATICAL CONCORD; NOUNS	5
III. NOUNS (CLASSES I. AND II.)	7
IV. NOUNS (CLASSES III., IV., V.)	9
V. NOUNS (CLASSES VI., VII., VIII. AND LOCATIVES)	11
VI. NOUNS (IRREGULAR, FOREIGN, &c.); DERIVATIVE NOUNS	13
VII. THE GENITIVE PARTICLE	16
VIII. THE GENITIVE PARTICLE WITH THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	18
IX. FURTHER USES OF THE GENITIVE PARTICLE (-ose and -oga)	20
X. THE REPRESENTATIVE PARTICLE OR CLASS PRONOUN	23
XI. THE VERB (1)—INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE	24
XII. THE VERB (2)—PRESENT INDICATIVE	26
XIII. THE VERB (3)—PAST INDICATIVE	28
XIV. THE VERB (4)—FUTURE INDICATIVE	30
XV. THE VERB (5)—PERFECT INDICATIVE	32
XVI. ADVERBS	33
XVII. PREPOSITIONS	36
XVIII. ADJECTIVES	38
XIX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	41
XX. THE PERSONAL PRONOUN	43
XXI. NUMERALS—CARDINAL NUMBERS	46
XXII. NUMERALS—ORDINAL NUMBERS	48
XIII. POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	50

LESSON	PAGE
XXIV. INTERROGATIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	55
XXV. THE VERB (6)—SUBJUNCTIVE AND POTENTIAL . . .	58
XXVI. THE VERB 'TO BE'	62
XXVII. THE VERB 'TO BE' (CONTINUED)	65
XXVIII. THE VERB 'TO HAVE'	67
XXIX. DEPENDENT FORMS OF THE VERB—CONJUNCTIONS . . .	70
XXX. NARRATIVE FORMS AND PARTICIPLES	73
XXXI. COMPOUND TENSES	76
XXXII. VERBAL PARTICLES AND AUXILIARY VERBS	79
XXXIII. AUXILIARY VERBS (CONTINUED)	82
XXXIV. RELATIVE SENTENCES	85
XXXV. THE PASSIVE VOICE	89
XXXVI. DERIVATIVE VERBS (RELATIVE AND CAUSATIVE) . . .	92
XXXVII. DERIVATIVE VERBS (INTENSITIVE, RECIPROCAL, &c.) .	95
XXXVIII. INTERJECTIONS, IDIOMATIC FORMS, ENCLITICS. . .	98
XXXIX. CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES	101

PART II.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES	105
--------------------------------	-----

PART III.

USEFUL SENTENCES IN COMMUNICATING WITH NATIVES	129
--	-----

PART IV.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-CHIKARANGA	145
CHIKARANGA-ENGLISH	291

PART I

GRAMMAR

MANUAL OF CHIKARANGA

LESSON I.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

The following ALPHABET was adopted by the Rhodesian Conference of Missionaries held at the Victoria Falls in July 1909.

The VOWELS are : a, e, i, o, u.

a is pronounced like *a* in *father* ; e.g. *yana*, children.

e „ „ „ *e* in *where* ; e.g. *nerera*, orphan.

i „ „ „ *i* in *ravine* ; e.g. *xita*, name.

o „ „ „ *o* in *store* ; e.g. *dota*, ashes.

u „ „ „ *u* in *rude* ; e.g. *munu*, man.

Final *e* and *o* are slightly closed short sounds, *e* being pronounced like *e* in *apple*, and *o* something like the short *o* in *dog* ; e.g. *shé*, chief ; *gudo*, a baboon.

There are no diphthongs in the language, but when two vowels come together, each is pronounced separately ; e.g. *ai*, *au*, *ei*, *ou*, etc. *Ua* is written *wa*, *ia—ya*, and *oo—wo*.

The CONSONANTS are : b, d, f, g, ġ, h, ħ, j, k, l, m, n, ŋ, p, r, s, ʒ, t, v, y, w, y, z, ʒ.

These are all pronounced as in English, except the six letters with diacritical marks, which represent sounds peculiar to the language.

ġ has a very soft guttural sound, pronounced partly in the palate ; e.g. *bġe*, stone.

ħ is the very hard guttural like the Greek χ or Dutch *g* ; e.g. *ku thia*, to fear.

ŋ is the nasal 'n,' pronounced like *ng* in *sing* ; e.g. *nombe*, ox.

ʃ and *ʒ* are whistling labial-dental sounds, and represent the ordinary 's' and 'z,' pronounced with a slight protrusion of the underlip; e.g. *ku ʃika*, to arrive; *ku ʒara*, to bring forth.

y is used to represent the bilabial 'v,' found very frequently in Chikaranga; e.g. *yana*, children.

ch represents the sound of 'ch' in *chase*; e.g. *chigaro*, a chair.

sh is the Eng. *sh*; e.g. *shanu*, five.

zh is the French *j*; e.g. *zhara*, hunger.

l and *r* interchange, *r* being preferred in some dialects, *l* in others; e.g. *lima* or *rima*, to hoe; *lini* or *rini*, when.

ASPIRATED CONSONANTS.—Some consonants are aspirated, and should then be written with an *h* following; e.g. *dhunhu*, a small hill. As, however, the aspirate is not always distinguished by Europeans, we have decided to disregard it, except where its omission might cause confusion.

COMBINATION OF CONSONANTS.—The combination of two or three consonants is very frequent. Thus the nasal *m* and *n* combine with many of the other consonants; e.g. *mb*, *mbġ*, *mġ*, *mv*, *nd*, *ng*, *nj*, *ns*, *ny*, *nz*, *nw*, *nzh*, *nzġw*, etc.

Double *n* is also met with occasionally; e.g. *dzimba nna*, four houses; *ku nnya*, to be soft.

Soft labials combine with soft dentals, and hard labials with hard dentals and *vice versa*; e.g. *pf*, *bv*, *ts*, *tġ*, *dz*, *dġ*, which are the hardened sounds of *f*, *v*, *s*, *ʃ*, *z*, *ʒ*.

In the same way the labials and gutturals combine; e.g. *bġ* and *pġ*.

The hardened sounds of *pf* and *dz* should be carefully distinguished from the simple *f* and *z*, as their confusion may be the cause of ridiculous mistakes. Thus *ku pfura* means 'to kick,' while *ku fura* means 'to graze.' So also *ku dzana* means 'to dance,' while *zana* is 'a hundred.'

In the same way the European is apt to confuse the ordinary *s* and *z* with the labial *ʃ* and *ʒ*, or the *w* with the labial *y*, or even *i* with *e*, or *o* with *u*. *Ku tsa*, for instance, means 'to dig,' while *ku tġsa* means 'to burn'; *zino*, a tooth, while *ġino* means 'now'; *ku wana*, to marry or find, while *yana* means 'children'; *ku mira*, to stand, *ku mera*, to grow; *ku kodza*, to fatten; *ku kudza*, to honour.

The peculiar sounds (especially *g*, *s*, *z*, *v*), as well as some of the combinations, may at first present a little difficulty in pronunciation, but by diligent observation and practice soon become easy.

SYLLABLES.—Every syllable ends in a vowel, never in a consonantal sound. This fact the European should remember, both in pronouncing and writing; e.g. *mu-ka-dzi*, a woman; *ku ko-dzo-nga*, to stir; etc.

ACCENT.—As a rule the accent falls on the last syllable but one; e.g. *ga'ra*, to sit; *gari'sa*, to cause to sit; *nyanyisi'wa*, to be made worse.

There are, however, many exceptions, which must be learnt by practice; e.g. *te'rera*, to obey, has the accent on the first syllable. So also *zo'kwadi*, truth, *bgi'rira*, to return to, and many others.

Monosyllabic roots are generally enclitic, i.e. throw their accent back on the preceding syllable; e.g. in the phrase *kuna' She*, to the chief, the accent is placed on the syllable *na*, before the monosyllabic root *She*. So also *U sa' ba*, do not steal; *ndi no' da*, I love or wish; *u no ndi' da*, you love me, &c.

The adverb *yo*, also, is sometimes accented, sometimes enclitic; e.g. *ndi no yuya yo'*, I come also; but *ini' yo*, I also.

ELISION AND CONTRACTION.—When two vowels come together at the end of one syllable and the beginning of the next, the tendency is either to omit the second vowel, or for the two to coalesce; e.g. *mu imba*, in the house, becomes *mu'mba*; *ne ini*, and I, becomes *ne'ni*; *ne isu*, and we, becomes *ne'su*. Such omitted sounds are represented by an apostrophe.

LESSON II.

I. GRAMMATICAL CONCORD.

The grammatical construction of Chikaranga is really very simple, though it may in the beginning appear to the European learner to be very complicated, on account of its being so different from the structure of any European language.

As in all other Bantu languages, the ruling grammatical principle is that called *Concord*.

It is based upon the structure of the nouns, and according to it all the words in a sentence agreeing with one another have a common or similar prefix. Every noun consists of two parts, the root and the prefix; according to the latter the nouns are divided into eight classes. In two of these classes, as will be seen later, the noun has lost its prefix in Chikaranga, while it still exists in some other Bantu languages.

It will be readily seen that it is this *prefix* which assumes different forms in different parts of speech, and which in the noun changes to express the plural number. All grammatical inflections, in fact, are effected by prefixes, and not by suffixes as in European languages. When once the principle of concord is mastered, the student has the key to the language.

To illustrate the above we shall take the example of the noun *chigaro*, a chair. Its plural is made by changing its prefix *chi* into *zi*. Now, if we wish to form a sentence with *chigaro* as subject, all the words, whether they be pronouns, adjectives, or verbs, agreeing with the subject, must either have the prefix *chi* or one similar to it. In the plural the prefix would be *zi* or a modification of it. Thus in the sentence: My small chair falls, *chigaro changu chidoko chi no wa*, the prefix *chi* appears before the possessive pronoun *ngu*, before the adj. *doko*, and before the verb *wa*. In the plural this sentence would read: *Zigaro zangu zidoko zi no wa*, where the prefix *zi* appears in the same way.

If the prefix of the subject-noun has been lost, it will be found in the words agreeing with it in the sentence, especially the representative pronoun. Take, for instance, the sentence: My knife is sharp, *banga rangu ri no pinza*. Here the prefix (*ri*) is understood in *banga*, but appears in the possessive pronoun *rangu* and in the representative pronoun, *ri*, in the verb.

2. NOUNS.

(a) The ARTICLE is absent in Chikaranga, so that *munu* may either mean a man or the man.

(b) GENDERS are not represented. This feature of having no distinction of sex is very characteristic of Bantu languages, and will be further noticed under the pronoun.

(c) NUMBER. It is only with regard to *number* that any inflection takes place, the change being in the *prefix* of the noun.

(d) CLASSES. Nouns are divided into eight classes according to their prefixes. The following is a table of the different noun classes with their distinguishing Singular and Plural prefixes. The student is advised not to proceed until he has thoroughly mastered this table, as any subsequent knowledge will only confuse him, and make it more difficult in the end.

Class.	Singular prefix.	Plural prefix.	Example.
I.	mu	ya	<i>munu</i> , man ; pl. <i>yanu</i> .
II.	mu	mi	<i>muti</i> , tree ; pl. <i>miti</i> .
III.	chi	zi	<i>chigaro</i> , chair ; pl. <i>zigaro</i> .
IV.	(i)	(dzi)	(i) <i>nombe</i> , ox ; pl. (dzi) <i>nombe</i> .
V.	(ri)	ma	(ri) <i>banga</i> , knife ; pl. <i>mapanga</i> .
VI.	ru	ma or dzi	<i>ruyoko</i> , arm ; pl. <i>mayoko</i> .
			<i>runyanga</i> , horn ; pl. (dzi) <i>nyanga</i> .
VII.	yu	yu	<i>yusiku</i> , night ; pl. <i>yusiku</i> .
VIII.	ku	(no plural)	<i>ku jamba</i> , walking (lit. to walk).
Locative	{ pa	(no plural)	{ <i>pasi</i> , on the ground.
	{ mu	"	{ <i>mu'mba</i> , in the house.
	{ ku	"	{ <i>kushe</i> , outside.

LESSON III.

NOUNS—CLASSES I. AND II.

CLASS I. (MU-VA).

I. To this class belong only nouns signifying persons. They form the plural by changing *mu* into *ya*. Examples :

munu, person, pl. *yanu*.

mukuru, elder brother, pl. *yakuru*.

munununa, younger brother, pl. *yanununa*.

murumbi, white man, pl. *varumbi*.

muranda, servant, pl. *varanda*.

murume, man, pl. *varume*.

mukadzi, woman, pl. *yakadzi*.

mukomana, boy, pl. *yakomana*.

musikana, girl, pl. *vasikana*.

mutana, old man, pl. *yatana*.

muchembere, old woman, pl. *yachembere*.

2. Nouns without a prefix denoting relationships belong to this class, but take the plural prefix *ma* or *madzi*. Examples :

mai, mother, pl. *mamai* or *madzimai*.

bambo, father, pl. *mabambo* or *madzibambo*.

mbuya, grandmother or maternal aunt, pl. *mambuya* or *madzimbuya*.

sekuru, maternal grandfather or maternal uncle, pl. *masekuru* or *madzisekuru*.

teteguru, paternal grandfather, pl. *mateteguru*.

yamgene, mother-in-law of the wife, or sister of husband, pl. *madzimgene*.

Note.—The above have the genitive particles *wa* (sing.) and *a* (plur.). (See Lesson VII.)

3. Under the first class also fall the following words, which either have no prefix expressed, or have it in a contracted form :

māna, child, pl. *vana*.

mgene, owner, pl. *vene*.

mgeni, stranger, pl. *vaeni* or *veni*.

tenzi, master, pl. *vatenzi*.

she, chief, pl. *vashe* or *madzishe*.

nevanyi, chief councillor, pl. *manevanyi*.

muzari

māna-zari } heir of chief, pl. *vanazari* or *madzizari*.

yamoyo, daughter of chief, pl. *madzimoyo*.

mgega, bride, pl. *madzimgega*.

Note 1.—The *mā* probably is a form of the *mu* prefix coalescing with the initial vowel of the root, *māna* having been originally *muana*.

Note 2.—These have the genitive particles *wa* (sing.), and *va* (plur.), except where the prefix is *ma* (plur.), in which case the genitive particle (plur.) is *a*. (See Lesson VII.)

Note 3.—Proper names of persons are sometimes used with the plural prefix *va*, when it is desired to honour the individual addressed, or spoken of, e.g. *Va-Mugabe*, *Va-Maria*. These and all names of superiors, though singular, are treated in every way as plurals, taking the plural genitive particle, as well as the plural personal pronoun and pronominal prefix of the verb.

Note 4.—Substantives, belonging to Class I., denoting the agent of an action, are made from verbs, by prefixing *mu* to the root of the verb, and changing the final *a* into *i*; e.g. *muḡambi*, a traveller, made from the verb *ku ḡamba*, to walk; *mubiki*, a cook, from *ku bika*, to cook; *murowi*, a witch, from *ku rowa*, to bewitch; *mulisi*, a herd, from *ku lisa*, to herd.

Note 5.—*Mudzimu*, a spirit (pl. *midzimu*), belongs to Class II., but as we

have adopted this word in the singular for the Deity, we use it as belonging to class I, without a plural.

CLASS II. (MU-MI).

1. To this class belong all names of impersonal objects with the prefix *mu* (sing.) and *mi* (plur.); e.g. *munda*, garden, pl. *minda*; *musha*, native village; *mukoya*, door; *muliyo*, vegetable; *musoro*, head; *munwe*, finger; *myiri*, body.

2. All names of trees come under this class, e.g. *mushuku*, wild loquat tree; *mutamba*, wild orange tree; *myonde*, wild fig tree.

3. A few names beginning with *m̃* (a modified *mu*) fall under this class, and have their singular and plural alike; e.g. *m̃gedzi*, moon or month; *m̃genje*, candle or lamp; *m̃geya*, spirit; *m̃gena*, hole of an animal; *m̃gise*, tail; *moto* (*m̃goto*), fire; *m̃ganda*, bundle (of grass); *m̃gando*, moisture. *Moyo* (*m̃goyo*) either has the same form in the plural, or takes *mimoyo*.

Note.—The above nouns have the grammatical concord of the 2nd class (sing. and plur.) for words agreeing with them; e.g. two large fires, *moto miyiri mikhuru*.

LESSON IV.

NOUNS—CLASSES III., IV., AND V.

CLASS III. (CHI-ZI).

1. To this class belong all the nouns in *chi*, *cha*, *cho*, and *chu*. Examples: *chigaro*, chair, pl. *zigaro*; *chinu*, thing, pl. *zinu*; *chifuya*, chest, pl. *zifuya*; *chifananidzo*, likeness or picture; *chikara*, beast of prey; *chinyayada*, scorpion; *chirimo*, spring; *chipe-mbenene*, insect; *chihwede*, giant; *chiredzo*, fishhook. *Chanza*, palm of the hand, makes the plural *zanza*; *choto*, fireplace, *zoto*; *churu*, ant-heap, *zuru*.

Note.—*Cha*, *cho*, and *chu* are probably the prefix *chi* modified by the *i* coalescing with the initial vowel of the root.

2. Most names of diminutives belong to the *chi* class, and are formed either by changing the original class-prefix into *chi*, or by prefixing *chi* to the whole word; e.g. *musero*, flat basket, makes the diminutive *chisero*; *musoro*, head, makes *chisoro*; *munu*, person, *chimunu*; *nombe*, ox, becomes *chinombe*, &c.

CLASS IV. ((I)-(Dzi)).

1. Most nouns of this class have the singular and plural alike. The prefix is seldom expressed, and it only becomes clear from the context whether the singular or the plural is implied. So, *huku i no teta* would be: the fowl scratches; while *huku dzi no teta* would mean: the fowls scratch.

Nearly all nouns beginning with *n*, *sh*, and *zh* fall under this class. Examples: *nyika*, country; *mvura*, water; *zheve*, ear; *nyundo*, hammer; *mepo*, wind; *nguvo*, goat's skin; *zhira*, path; *hali*, pot; *zhara*, hunger; *nyama*, meat.

Note.—*Imba*, house, has the plural *dzimba*.

2. Most names of animals belong to this class; e.g. *nombe*, ox; *huku*, fowl; *mbudzi*, goat; *shuro*, hare; *shiri*, bird; *mbeva*, mouse; *mou*, cow or ostrich; *zhou*, elephant.

Note 1.—A few nouns denoting persons belong to this class; e.g. *shamgali*, friend; *hama*, relative; *hangadzi* (or *hanganzi*), sister of a brother, or brother of a sister, &c.

These all have the singular and plural alike, except *hama*, which also has the plural *yehama*, with the genitive particle *ya*.

Note 2.—Some nouns beginning with *mu* and *ma* fall under this class, the *mu* and *ma* not being prefixes, but belonging to the root of the word; e.g. *muka*, game; *munga*, native grain, *manda*, fork of a branch; *mandara*, grown-up girl; *mashu*, locust.

Note 3.—Some nouns of this class are used only in the plural; e.g. *hasha*, anger; *njere*, wisdom; *hope*, sleep or dream; *nando*, whim; *shungu*, grief; *nema*, lie. These have the genitive particle and representative pronoun *dza* and *dzi* respectively (see next lesson); e.g. *hasha dzakwe*, his anger; *hope dzi no zipa*, sleep is sweet.

Note 4.—Some nouns of this class, besides having their regular plural, also have a plural form in *ma*, used to indicate a large number or quantity; e.g. *manombe*, large number of cattle; *mamvura*, large quantities of water or rain.

CLASS V. ((Ri)-MA).

1. The prefix *ri* is always understood, whereas the plural *ma* is always expressed.

Nearly all nouns beginning with *b*, *d*, *g*, *r*, *z*, *s*, and *ts* belong to this class.

Examples: *vudzi*, hair; *zita*, name; *vuli*, hole; *ronda*, sore; *zuva*, sun; *sadza*, porridge; *vu*, soil; *rima*, darkness; *nanga*, pumpkin.

2. Nouns beginning with *b*, *d*, and *g* generally change these into *p*, *t*, and *k* when *ma* is prefixed. Examples : *banga*, knife, pl. *mapanga* ; *bere*, wolf, pl. *mapere* ; *debge*, skin, pl. *matebge* ; *danga*, cattle kraal, pl. *matanga* ; *denga*, roof, pl. *matenga* ; *gumbo*, leg, pl. *makumbo* ; *gomo*, mountain, pl. *makomo* ; *gole*, cloud or year, pl. *makole*.

Exceptions to this rule are : *bge*, stone ; *doro*, beer ; *go*, wasp ; *bura*, sweet potato ; *godo*, bone, and a few others. These retain the *b*, *d*, and *g* in the plural.

Note 1.—*Zino*, tooth, and *ziso*, eye, are irregular, having generally the plurals *meno* and *meso* (occasionally *marino* and *mariso*) with the plural genitive particle *a*.

Dipi, side, has both *matipi* and *nipi*.

Note 2.—Names of fruits belong to this class ; e.g. *damba*, the wild orange ; *shuku*, the wild loquat ; *yonde*, fig, &c.

Note 3.—Certain nouns of this class are used only in the plural ; e.g. *majuta*, fat or butter ; *mate*, spittle ; *masikati*, noon ; *madekwe*, evening ; *mangwana*, morning ; *mawere*, precipice.

Note 4.—Where a noun has no prefix an easy way to find out whether it belongs to the *i* or *ri* class is to inquire what the plural of such a noun is. If the plural is the same, it belongs to the *i* class ; if it forms the plural in *ma* it belongs to the *ri* class.

LESSON V.

NOUNS—CLASSES VI., VII., VIII.

I. CLASS VI. (RU-MA or (DZI)).

Few of the nouns of this class form their plural in *ma*, most of them taking *dzi*, which, however, is never expressed.

Examples in *ma* : *ruyoko*, arm or hand, pl. *mayoko* ; *rulimi*, tongue or language, pl. *malimi* ; *ruwale*, a rock, pl. *mawale* ; *rudzi*, tribe, pl. *marudzi*.

Note.—*Rulimi* also takes *ndimi* ; and *rudzi*, *ndudzi*, with the gen. part. *dza*.

Examples in (*dzi*) : *runyanga*, horn, pl. *nyanga* ; *rumanda*, fence, pl. *manda* ; *ruhwanda*, basket, pl. *hwanda* ; *rushanga*, reed, pl. *shanga*.

2. Some words in *ru* form their plural irregularly. Examples : *rupasa*, mat, makes *masa* ; *rukoya*, ditch, *hoya* ; (*ru*)*rgwiriko*,

handle of assegai, *nziriko*; (*ru*)*rgwiyo*, hymn, *nziyo*; (*ru*)*rgwizi*, river, *nzizi*; (*ru*)*rgwendo*, journey, *nzendo*; *rukuni*, firewood, *huni*.

Note.—These all have the prefix *dzi* understood in the plural, and the gen. part. *dza*.

CLASS VII. (VU—YU).

1. Nouns belonging to this class have either no plural from the nature of the objects they signify, or have the singular and plural alike. Examples: *yushwa*, grass; *yupfu*, meal; *yuta*, bow; *yura*, entrails; *yusiku*, night.

2. Most abstract and collective nouns fall under this class; e.g. *yunyoro*, kindness; *yukuru*, greatness; *yuchenjeri*, wisdom; *yupofu*, blindness; *yuzhinji*, multitude; *yurowi*, witchcraft; *yusimbe*, laziness.

Note 1.—A few nouns belong to the *ru* class in the singular, and to the *yu* class in the plural; e.g. *rutunga*, a mosquito, pl. *yutunga* (also *nunga*); *ruyushwa*, pl. *yushwa*, grass; *rushiye*, infant, pl. *yushiye*.

Note 2.—Some nouns belonging to the *yu* class, begin with *bġ*, which probably is a corruption of *yu* (before a vowel); e.g. *bġiro*, grave; *bġato*, boat, &c.

These usually have the singular and plural alike, but may also form their plural by prefixing *ma*; e.g. *mabġiro*.

CLASS VIII. (KU—).

Nouns belonging to this class are the Infinitives of verbs used as nouns. Examples: *ku yuya*, coming (lit. to come); *ku da*, (to) will; *ku chenjera*, wisdom; *ku fema*, breath.

From the nature of these nouns, they have no plural.

LOCATIVE CLASSES (PA, MU, and KU).

To these classes belong all locatives, i.e. either nouns or pronouns preceded by the prepositions *pa*, *mu*, and *ku* (at, in, and to), or compound prepositions with these prefixes.

Examples: *pasi*, on the ground; *mu'mba*, in the house; *kuzhe*, outside.

Note.—Such phrases are considered as nouns, and have their genitive particles, *ma*, *pa*, and *kwa*, and their corresponding grammatical concord; e.g. *pa nyasi pangu pa nyoro*, under me is wet (lit. under of mine it is wet); *mu(i)mba mako mukuru mu no yugaro*, in your big house there is room (lit. in the house of yours big it is (with) room); *kuzhe ku ne nombe*, outside there are cattle (lit. outside it is with cattle).

LESSON VI.

NOUNS—IRREGULAR, FOREIGN, &c.

1. Besides the classes already mentioned there are :

(1) A Diminutive Class with the prefixes, *ka-tu* ; e.g. *kambudzi*, a small goat, pl. *tumbudzi*.

This class is used in the Salisbury and Northern dialects.

(2) The *si-yu* class, which is likewise diminutive ; e.g. *singuruye*, a very small pig, pl. *yunguruye*.

(3) The *zi-ma* (*mazi*) class, used in magnifying ; e.g. *zinombe*, a very big ox, pl. *manombe* or *mazinombe*.

2. DIMINUTIVES.

Besides the diminutives in the *chi-gi*, *ka-tu* (northern dialects), and *si-yu* classes, names of young animals are made by suffixing *ana* or *nana* ; e.g. *huku*, *hukwana* (*hukuana*), chicken ; *mbga*, dog, *mbganana*, pup ; *mbudzi*, goat, *mbudzana*, kid. *Gwai*, sheep, has the irregular diminutive *bgizana*, lamb.

Note.—The prefix *ru* sometimes has a diminutive meaning and makes the plural in *yu* ; e.g. *rusero*, small basket, pl. *yusero* ; *rushiye*, infant, pl. *yushiye* ; *rgwana*, small child, pl. *bgana* (*yuana*).

3. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Besides those mentioned under the different classes, there are irregular nouns, some belonging to one class in the singular, and to another in the plural ; e.g. *mupanje*, a ridge (in hoeing) belongs to the II *mu* class in the singular, but, besides the regular plur., has the plur. *manje*, belonging to the *ru* class, the genitive particle being *dza*. The singular *rupanje* is also used. *Diya*, a side, belongs to the *ri* class, and has the regular plural *matiyi*, or the irregular one *nizi*, belonging to the *i* class.

Some have two plurals ; e.g. *nyoka*, a snake, regular plural *nyoka* ; but *manyoka* when the different kinds collectively are meant. So also *yupfu*, meal, has sometimes *mayupfu*, meaning different kinds of meal.

4. FOREIGN NOUNS.

Foreign nouns introduced into Chikaranga generally belong either to the *i* or *ri* class, the former being the more numerous ;

e.g. *buku*, a book, is either *i* or *ri* class; *beketi*, a bucket, *ri* class &c. Others, especially those originally beginning with *s*, have the prefix *chi* and belong to that class; e.g. *chikotoro*, a dish, derived from the Dutch *schotel*; *chitofu*, a stove, &c.

Some names of persons are used with the singular prefix *mu*, and the plural *ma*; e.g. *mupulisa* (1st *mu* cl.), a policeman, *mapulisa* (pl. of the *ri* cl.) policemen.

EXERCISE 1. Give the meaning, class, and plural of the following:

Mgana; murume; bambo; mgenje; nyundo; chikara; zino; yusiku; vu; mbeya; munwe; rukuni; rupasa; sadza; mai; museye; moto; zhira; rumanda; musoro; rgwiyo; damba; mutamba; mupulisa; pombe; rgwizi; diyi; choto; hukwana; gwai.

EXERCISE 2. Give the meaning, class, and singular of:

yutunga; yarumbi; midzimu; nyanga; mbudzana; zuru; yalisi; meso; hoyā; hoye; mago; makole; dzimba; shuro; ndudzi; matenga; shamgali; hope; mgeya; yaeni; madzi-mgenga; mabge; makomo; mayoko; yushwa; nyoka; manje; mashu; hali; yene.

EXERCISE 3. Give the Chikaranga equivalents of the following, stating to which class each belongs:

ditch; grandmothers; cow; country; elephant; ostrich; darkness; laziness; days; chest; body; game; journey; spirits; ducks; fat; morning; moon; mouse; noon; multitude; small child; witch; witchcraft.

DERIVATIVE NOUNS.

Derivative Nouns are those which are derived from other nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

I. COMMON NOUNS of the 1st *mu* class are made:

(a) from *adjectives* by prefixing *mu* to the root of the adjective; e.g. *mukuru*, a great man, elder brother, or superior; *mufupi*, a short man.

(b) from *verbs in the active voice*, by prefixing *mu* and changing the final *a* into *i*; e.g. *musengi*, a carrier, from *ku senga*, to carry; *mutariri*, an overseer, from *ku tarira*, to look, &c.

(c) from *verbs in the passive voice*, by simply prefixing *mu*; e.g. *musungwa*, a prisoner, from *ku sungwa*, to be bound.

II. COMMON NOUNS of the second *mu* class are made :

(a) from *verbs*, in the *active voice*, primitive and derivative, by prefixing *mu* and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *mudongo*, a walking stick, from *ku donga*, to walk with a stick ; *mufambiso*, something to help to walk, from *ku fambisa*, to cause to walk, &c.

(b) from the *relative form of the verbs*, by prefixing *mu* and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *mukanyiro*, dough, from *ku kanyira*, to knead for.

III. COMMON NOUNS of the *chi* class are made from *verbs* (primitive and derivative) by prefixing *chi*, and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *chiidso*, a measure, from *ku idsa*, to measure ; *chibayiro*, a sacrifice, from *ku bayira*, to slay for.

IV. ABSTRACT NOUNS are made in a variety of ways, of which the following are examples :

(1) from *nouns* : (a) by simply prefixing *yu* to the common noun ; e.g. *yu-mandara*, maidenhood, from *mandara*, maiden ; *yu-mgana*, childhood, from *mgana*, a child ; *yu-ndere*, neatness, from *ndere*, a neat person ; *yu-fende*, filthiness, from *fende*, a filthy person, &c. *Nerera*, an orphan, makes *yu-lerera*, changing the *n* into *i* ;

(b) by changing the class prefix into *yu* ; e.g. *yu-cheche*, infancy, from *mucheche*, an infant ; *u-kadziy*, womanhood, from *mukadzi*, a woman.

(2) from *adjectives*, by prefixing *yu* to the root of the adjective ; e.g. *yukuru*, greatness, from *guru*, great (the *g* changes into *k* because of the prefix) ; *yurefu*, length, from *refu*, long ; *yupenyu*, life, from *benyu*, alive.

(3) from *verbs* : (a) by prefixing *yu* to the root of the verb, and changing the final *a* into *i* ; e.g. *yunaki*, goodness, from *ku naka*, to be good ; *guipi*, badness, from *ku ipa*, to be bad ; *yuchenjeri*, wisdom, from *ku chenjera*, to be clever.

In this case the final *a* sometimes changes into *o*, as *guipo*, badness.

(b) by prefixing *ru* and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *rudo*, love, from *ku da*, to love ; *rudano*, calling, from *ku dana*, to call ; *runyoro*, writing, from *ku nyora*, to write.

(c) by prefixing *mu* and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *mugaro*, quietness, from *ku gara*, to sit ; *murangariro*, thought, from *ku rangarira*, to think ; *mubato*, work, from *ku bata*, to work ;

(d) by changing the final *a* of the root into *o*, without a prefix ; e.g. *zigo*, knowledge, from *ku ziya*, to know ; *dzidso*, doctrine, from *ku dzidza*, to learn ; *muko*, rising (or resurrection), from *ku muka*, to rise ;

(e) by prefixing *chi* and changing the final *a* into *o* ; e.g. *chivunso*, a question, from *ku vunsa* ; *chiyumbiko*, a form, from *ku yumbika* (subjective form), formed or moulded.

(f) by prefixing *mu* to the relative form of the verb, active or passive, and changing the final *a* into *e*. These nouns indicate the way in which the action is performed, e.g. *mufambire*, behaviour (lit. way of walking), from *ku famba*, to walk ; *mugarive*, habit (lit. way of sitting), from *ku gara*, to sit ; *muimbirgwe*, tune (lit. the way to be sung), from *ku imbirgwa*, to be sung to, &c.

(g) But most frequently the simple form of the Infinitive Mood is used as a noun ; e.g. *ku repa*, speaking ; *ku naka*, goodness ; *ku sa tenda*, unbelief, &c.

Of the above those with the prefix *mu* belong to the 2nd *Mu* Cl., those with the prefix *chi* to the *Chi* Cl., while those without a prefix belong to the 1 Cl.

LESSON VII.

THE GENITIVE PARTICLE.

1. In Chikaranga there is no declension, hence the noun has the same form in all the cases.

The *Nominative* case stands before the verb, the *Dative* and *Accusative* after it, the former always preceding the latter.

Example: The woman gives porridge to the child, *mukadzi u no pa* (she gives) *mġana sadza*.

The *Possessive* case is always expressed by the preposition 'of,' followed by the name of the possessor (person or thing); e.g. 'the children's garden' would be *munda wa yana* (i.e. the garden of the children).

2. Each class of noun has its own *possessive* or *genitive* particle (called by some relative particle) singular and plural, by which it should be followed, and it is of the utmost importance that these should be thoroughly imprinted on the memory together with the class prefixes.

The following is a table of the different classes of nouns with their respective genitive particles (sing. and plur.):

	Class.	Gen. Part. (Singular).	Gen. Part. (Plural).
I.	Mu	wa	ya
II.	Mu	wa	ya
III.	Chi	cha	za
IV.	(I)	ya	dza
V.	(Ri)	ra	a
VI.	Ru	gwa (rgwa)	a or dza
VII.	Yu	bġa	bġa
VIII.	Ku	kwa	—
Locatives {	pa	pa	
	mu	ma	
	ku	kwa	

The classes *ka-tu*, *ġi-yu*, *zi-ma*, mentioned before, take the genitive particles *ka-ikwa*, *ġa-bġa* and *ra-a* respectively.

Note 1.—The names of elder or superior persons are treated as plurals, and have the genitive particle *ġa*; e.g. *bambo ġa yana*, the father of the children; *mai ġa Mare*, the mother of Mare.

3. *Euphonic changes.* (a) The *a* of the genitive particle changes into *o* whenever there is an *u* in the prefix of the noun that follows,

that is, before the prefixes *mu*, *yu*, and *ru*, even when they have been corrupted into *m̄g*, *b̄g*, and *r̄g*.

Examples: *m̄gana wo mukadzi*, the child of the woman; *shazhu ro muti*, the leaf of the tree; *ku ruma kwo yutunga*, the bite of the mosquitoes; *magodo o ruvoko*, the bones of the hand; *sadza ro m̄gana*, the porridge of the child; *muromo wo b̄giro*, the mouth of the grave; *shanga dzo rgwizi*, the reeds of the river.

Exception: Before names of persons and nouns of the first class without the prefix *mu*, the genitive particle does not change.

Example: *vudzi ra Ngoni* (a girl's name), the hair of Ngoni; *yana ya she*, the children of the chief; *imba ya mbuya*, the house of the grandmother.

(b) The *a* of the genitive particle changes into *e* whenever there is an *i* in the prefix of the noun that follows, whether that prefix be expressed or understood, i.e. before the prefixes *mi*, *chi* (or the contracted forms *cha*, *cho*, *chu*), *zi*, (*i*), (*dzi*) and (*ri*).

Examples: *matayi e miti*, the branches of the trees, *gumbo re chigaro*, the leg of the chair; *moto we choto*, the fire of the hearth; *runyanga rgwe nombe*, the horn of the ox; *minenga ye huku*, the feathers of the fowls; *musoro we danda*, the head of the pole.

Note.—Before proper names of places the *a* changes into *e*; e.g. *musha we Ganda*, the village of Ganda.

The above rules hold good for the prepositions *pa*, at; *na*, with; and the conjunctions *na*, and; *sa*, as.

Exceptions: The *a* does not change before *zokwadi*, truth (*i* cl.) and *zose*, everything (*chi* cl. pl.), and perhaps a few others.

VOCABULARY.

dende (5), calabash.
mupunga (2), rice.
dziro (5), wall.
tsime (5), spring.

ku denga (loc.), Heaven.
muhwanda (2), basket.
mabargwe (5), maize.

EXERCISE 4.

Translate: 1. the child's head. 2. the legs of the horse.
 3. the tribes of people. 4. the door of the house. 5. the water

of the spring. 6. the leaves of the trees. 7. the calabash of the mother. 8. the younger brothers of the chief. 9. the children of the women. 10. the hands of the white man. 11. the soil of the garden. 12. porridge of maize.

EXERCISE 5.

Translate: 1. mvura yo kudenga. 2. masa dza yarume. 3. rukuni rgwa mai. 4. nombe dzo murumbi. 5. rgwendo rgwa madzishe. 6. madziro e dzimba. 7. chisoro cho mġana. 8. meso e huku. 9. misha ye nyika. 10. mupunga wo mukadzi. 11. mihwanda ya yaeni. 12. mawale e gomo.

LESSON VIII.

THE GENITIVE PARTICLE WITH THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

The genitive particle of the noun is used with the roots of the possessive pronouns to form the construction corresponding to the phrases 'of me,' 'of thee,' &c.; e.g. 'my garden' would be *munda wangu* (lit. garden of me).

The following is a table of the pronominal roots used in this way:

Sing. - <i>ngu</i> , my or mine.	Plur. - <i>du</i> , our or ours.
- <i>ko</i> , thy or thine.	- <i>nyu</i> , your or yours.
- <i>ke</i> or <i>kwe</i> , his, hers, its.	- <i>yo</i> , their or theirs.

Before the roots -*du* and -*nyu*, the *a* of the genitive particle changes into *e*.

Examples: my child, *mġana wangu*; my children, *vana vangu*; thy garden, *munda wako*; thy gardens, *mindu yako*; his chair, *chigaro chake* or *chakwe*; his chairs, *zigaro zake* or *zakwe*; our houses, *dzimba dzedu*; your sweet potatoes, *mabura enyu*; their meal, *vupfu bġayo*; &c.

The following table shows the possessive roots affixed to the genitive particles of the various classes:

Class.	(Mu-Va)	Sing.	My	Thy	His, &c.	Our	Your	Their
I.		Sing.	wa-ngu	wa-ko	wa-kwe	we-du	we-nyu	wa-yo
		Plur.	ya-ngu	ya-ko	ya-kwe	ye-du	ye-nyu	ya-yo
II.	(Mu-Mi)	Sing.	wa-ngu	wa-ko	wa-kwe	we-du	we-nyu	wa-yo
		Plur.	ya-ngu	ya-ko	ya-kwe	ye-du	ye-nyu	ya-yo
III.	(Chi-Zi)	Sing.	cha-ngu	cha-ko	cha-kwe	che-du	che-nyu	cha-yo
		Plur.	za-ngu	za-ko	za-kwe	ze-du	ze-nyu	za-yo
IV.	(I-Dzi)	Sing.	ya-ngu	ya-ko	ya-kwe	ye-du	ye-nyu	ya-yo
		Plur.	dza-ngu	dza-ko	dza-kwe	dze-du	dze-nyu	dza-yo
V.	(Ri-Ma)	Sing.	ra-ngu	ra-ko	ra-kwe	re-du	re-nyu	ra-yo
		Plur.	a-ngu	a-ko	a-kwe	e-du	e-nyu	a-yo
VI.	(Ru-Ma) } Dzi }	Sing.	rgwa-ngu	rgwa-ko	rgwa-kwe	igwe-du	igwe-nyu	igwa-yo
		Plur.	a-ngu	a-ko	a-kwe	e-du	e-nyu	a-yo
VII.	(Vu-Yu)	Sing.	dza-ngu	dza-ko	dza-kwe	dze-du	dze-nyu	dza-yo
		Plur.	bga-ngu	bga-ko	bga-kwe	bge-du	bge-nyu	bga-yo
VIII.	(Ku-)	Sing.	bga-ngu	bga-ko	bga-kwe	bge-du	bge-nyu	bga-yo
		Sing.	kwa-ngu	kwa-ko	kwa-kwe	kwe-du	kwe-nyu	kwa-yo
			{ pa-ngu	pa-ko	pa-kwe	pe-du	pe-nyu	pa-yo
			{ ma-ngu	ma-ko	ma-kwe	me-du	me-nyu	ma-yo
Loc.		Sing.	{ kwa-ngu	kwa-ko	kwa-kwe	kwe-du	kwe-nyu	kwa-yo

Note.—The above possessive roots are, as will be noticed, for the first class only. The roots for the other classes will be found under the 'Pronoun.'

VOCABULARY.

ngowani (4), hat.
ziyo (3), grain.
mbewu (4), seed.
dengu (5), large basket.
dura (5), granary.

dayi (5), branch.
yuchi (7), honey.
nyuchi (4), bee.
haru (4), clothes.

EXERCISE 6.

Translate: 1. his garden. 2. my house. 3. thy hat. 4. his hoe. 5. our country. 6. their maize. 7. my ox. 8. your oxen. 9. my rice. 10. our villages. 11. thy mother. 12. thy child. 13. his mat. 14. their mats. 15. our food. 16. his sheep. 17. our goats. 18. my eyes. 19. his legs. 20. your fire.

EXERCISE 7.

Translate: 1. the door of our house. 2. the ears of my dog. 3. the mosquitoes of your country. 4. the grain of their gardens. 5. the hand of his child. 6. the baskets of thy wife. 7. the seeds of the trees of his garden. 8. the clothes of thy husband. 9. the boats of our people. 10. the porridge of the maize of their gardens. 11. the roofs of the huts of our village. 12. the food of the mother of my boy.

EXERCISE 8.

Translate: 1. dzimba dzo musha wangu. 2. matengu a yakadzi. 3. ziyo za matura ayo. 4. yalisi ye mbudzi dzangu. 5. mgise we mbudzi yakwe. 6. rukuni rgwo mushuku. 7. she we nyika yayo. 8. nyama ya makwai akwe. 9. mapadza a yene ye minda. 10. matayi e miti ye gomo redu. 11. musha wa bambo yangu. 12. yuchi bge nyuchi dzayo.

LESSON IX.

FURTHER USES OF THE GENITIVE PARTICLE.

1. 'All,' 'only,' 'everything,' 'everywhere.'

Two adjectives, *-ose*, whole or all, and *-oga*, only or alone, are used affixed to the genitive particle; e.g. *yose* (lit. *yoose*); *yose* (*yoose*); *chose* (*choose*); *bgoose* (*bgoose*); the *a* of the genitive particle changing into *o* before the *o* in *ose*, and the two then coalescing into one. This is distinctly heard in the pronunciation, the *o* being very long and full.

The forms for the various classes would be as follows :

Class	-ose	-oga
I. Mu	wose	woga
	yose	yoga
II. Mu	wose	woga
	yose	yoga
III. Chi	chose	choga
	zose	zoga
IV. (I)	yose	yoga
	dzose	dzoga
V. (Ri)	rose	roga
	ose	oga
VI. Ru	rgwose	rgwoga
	ose or dzose	oga or dzoga
VII. Vu	bgose	bgoga
	bgose	bgoga
VIII. Ku	kwose	kwoga
Locatives	pose	poga
	mose	moga
	kwose	kwoga

For the personal pronouns the forms are :

	-ose	Sing.	-oga	Plur.
1st person	<i>tose</i> , we all.	<i>ndoga</i> , I only.	<i>toga</i> , we only.	
2nd	„ <i>mose</i> , you all.	<i>woga</i> , you only.	<i>moga</i> , you only.	
3rd	„ <i>yose</i> , they all.	<i>oga</i> , he only.	<i>yoga</i> , they only.	

‘All’ or ‘everything’ is expressed by *zose* (plur. *chi* cl.)
 ‘everywhere’ by *kwose* or *pose*.

VOCABULARY.

chiso (3), face.
nzgwi (or *wi*) (5), voice.
ropa (5), blood.
zipfuwo (3), cattle.
rugonzi (6), rope.
pasi, on the ground.
mu, in.

dendere (5), nest.
ruyazhe (6), yard.
ngwena (4), crocodile.
rumbabvu (6), rib.
ngwindi (4), hippo.
simbo (4), stick.
jira (5), blanket.

EXERCISE 9.

Translate: 1. all the meat. 2. all their grass. 3. thy whole face. 4. all my sheep. 5. the blood only. 6. his whole body. 7. all your teeth. 8. their things only. 9. on the ground only. 10. all the boys of our villages. 11. thy rib only. 12. all their cattle.

2. The genitive particle is further used :

(a) with the interrogative pronoun *ani* ? who ? the final *a* coalescing with the *a* of the pronoun; e.g. whose child, *mḡana wani* (i.e. *wa*

ani, of whom); whose knife, *banga rani* (*ra ani*); whose ox, *nombe yani*; whose hand, *ruyoko rgwani*; whose meal, *vupfu bğani*, &c.

(b) with the interrogative pronoun *inyi*? what? The *inyi* is always contracted into *i*, and the *a* of the genitive particle changing into *e* before the *i*; e.g. what sort of porridge? *sadza rei* (lit. *re inyi*, of what)? what (sort of) man? *munu wei* (lit. *we inyi*)? what (sort of) thing? *chinu chei* (lit. *che inyi*)? &c.

(c) with the locative pronouns *kwangu*, *kwako*, *kwakwe*, *kwedu*, *kwenyu*, *kwavo*, meaning 'at' (or 'from') my, thy, his, her, our, your, their place or country; e.g. *mabargwe o kwedu*, the maize from our country; *mupunga wo kwavo*, the rice from their country; *banga ro kwangu*, a knife from my place or home.

(d) after some nouns indicating locality, preceded by the simple prepositions, *mu*, at or in, *pa*, at or in, *ku*, at or from. These nouns would fall under the locative classes (see Lesson V.), and be followed each by its own genitive particle; e.g. at the house of the mother, *ku'mba kwa mai*; in his village, *ku musha kwake*, or *pa musha pakwe*; at my garden, *ku munda kwangu*.

N.B.—*Ku imba ya mai*, and *ku munda wangu* are also used.

(e) after compound prepositions, as *pa msoro*, above, *mu nyasi*, under; *pa rutiwi*, at the side; *pa mberi*, in front; *pa sule*, behind; *pa sere*, on the other side; *pa vazhe*, *pazhe*, or *kuzhe*, outside; *pa miri*, on the bank of (river).

These all should be classed with the locatives, having their own genitive particles; e.g. above the house, *pa msoro pe imba*; behind the wall, *pa sule pa madziro*.

EXERCISE 10.

Translate: 1. whose dog. 2. the kraal of whose oxen. 3. whose voice. 4. the blood of whose heart. 5. the water of whose calabash. 6. what sort of garden. 7. what sort of birds. 8. what sort of mosquitoes. 9. a fence of what. 10. all whose wood. 11. whose sheep only. 12. whose grain in your granary.

EXERCISE 11.

Translate: 1. in my village. 2. to your garden. 3. from the village of the chief. 4. under the trees at the side of his house. 5. above the clouds. 6. outside the fence behind you. 7. at

the side of the river beyond you. 8. on the top of the rocks of the mountain. 9. in front of the chief of the country. 10. above thee under the roof. 11. behind the basket of grain. 12. outside the yard on the other side of my house.

EXERCISE 12.

Translate: 1. ngwena dze nzizi dzo kwedu. 2. yanupuna yangu yo musha wa bambo yangu. 3. pa mberi po moto wayo. 4. ngwindi yo rgwizi rgwo kwake. 5. shiri dzani mu matendere o yushwa. 6. matura e ziyo zei. 7. imba yedu yose ya mabge. 8. simbo yangu yo mupasa. 9. pa mberi payo pose. 10. yose ye misha ya Yakaranga. 11. pa nyasi pa machira ayo. 12. zipfuwo zedu pa msoro pe gomo.

LESSON X.

THE REPRESENTATIVE PARTICLE OR CLASS PRONOUN.

The Subject (noun) is connected with its predicate by the representative personal pronoun which stands for the class to which the noun belongs.

Thus it will be seen that instead of having, as in English, only three words (he, she, and it) for the third person singular, and 'they' for the third person plural of all nouns, we have eight singular personal pronouns for the eight classes, and as many for their plural forms.

From the table which follows, the student will notice that this class pronoun, which must always be used with the verb, is the same as the class prefix, except where the prefix begins with *m*, which letter is dropped to form the pronoun.

Class	Prefix	Sing.	Class Pron.	Prefix	Plur.	Class Pron.
I.	mu		u	ya		ya
II.	mu		u	mi		i
III.	chi		chi	zi		zi
IV.	(i)		i	(dzi)		dzi
V.	(ri)		ri	ma		a
VI.	ru		ru (rgu)	ma or (dzi)		a or dzi
VII.	yu		yu (bgu)	yu		yu, bgu
VIII.	ku		ku			

The Locatives have the class pronouns *pa*, *mu*, and *ku*.

EXERCISE 13.

Give the meaning, class, genitive particles, and class pronouns, singular and plural, of the following :

machira, *mushuku*, *yuta*, *zipfuwo*, *mu'mba*, *masikati*, *yusiku*, *rutunga*, *nivi*, *pa nyasi*, *masa*, *gwai*, *yatenzi*, *rgwizi*, *chimbudzi*, *dendere*, *mafuta*, *rukuni*, *ndimi*, *yuli*, *yushiye*, *gonzi*, *moyo*.

LESSON XI.

THE VERB (1).

INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

1. The *Infinitive* is formed by prefixing *ku* to the stem of the verb ; e.g. *ku gara*, to sit.

It always ends in *a*, except in a few irregular verbs, as *ku ti*, to say ; *ku li*, to be ; *ku dai*, to do so ; *ku daro* or *ku dero*, to say or do so ; *ku nenge*, to seem ; and a few compound verbs as *ku ridzemere*, to call out ; *ku fambiromo*, to feel one's way, &c.

Examples of Infinitive :

To read, *ku raya* ; to stamp, *ku shwa* ; to take, *ku tora* ; to grind, *ku kuya* ; to learn, *ku dzidza* ; to cut off, *ku tema* ; to carry, *ku senga* ; to make fire, *ku yesa moto*.

2. The *Negative* of the Infinitive is made by inserting *sa*, not, between *ku* and the verb root ; e.g. *ku sa raya*, not to read ; *ku sa tora*, not to take ; *ku sa senga*, not to carry.

Note.—The Infinitive is used as a noun of the 8th cl. ; e.g. my seeing, *ku yona kwangu* ; your sickness, *ku rgwara kwako*.

3. (a) The *Imperative Singular* is the simplest form of the verb consisting of the root ; e.g. *gara*, sit (thou) ! *bata huku*, catch the fowl ! *zadza hali dzose ne mvura*, fill all the pots with water !

(b) The *Plural of the Imperative* is made by affixing *i* to the sing. ; e.g. *garai*, sit ye ! *batai huku*, catch ye the fowl ! *bikai sadza renyu*, cook your food ! *fudzai zipfuwo zangu*, herd ye my cattle !

(c) An immediate Imperative is made by prefixing *chi* ; e.g. *chi dzoka*, return at once ! pl. *chi dzokai* ! *chi reva*, speak at once ! pl. *chi revai* !

(d) Monosyllabic verbs take an euphonic *i* before the root ; e.g. the verb 'to love,' instead of simply having *da* in the Imperative, has *ida*, pl. *idai* !

Other examples : sing. *iba*, steal, pl. *ibai* ! sing. *ipa*, give, pl. *ipai* ! *ildya*, eat, pl. *ildyai* !

(e) The Present Subjunctive is frequently used as an Imperative ; e.g. *u tore ndiro*, take the plate, pl. *mu tore ndiro*, take ye the plate.

For other forms of the Imperative see Lesson XXV on Subjunctive.

4. The *Negative* of the Imperative is made by prefixing to the positive form *u sa*, pl. *mu sa*, or by using *rega* (sing.), *regai* (plur.), with the Infinitive ; e.g. 'do not come,' may be rendered *u sa yuya*, pl. *mu sa yuya* (lit. you not come) ; *rega ku yuya*, pl. *regai ku yuya* (lit. leave off to come) ; *u sa vanga*, (you) do not run ; *mu sa bura mazai*, do (ye) not take out the eggs ; *rega ku bvisa hali*, do (you) not take away the pot ; *regai ku suka numbi*, do (ye) not wash the utensils.

Note.—For the sake of euphony the final *a* of the verb often changes into *e* or *o* according to the vowel of the syllable following ; e.g. *u sa de nyika*, do not love the world ; *yeso moto*, make fire ! This holds good for the verb in all its moods and tenses.

VOCABULARY.

ku teyura, to spill.
ku tina, to drive cattle.
ku kanganwa, to forget.
ku isa, to put.
ku yaka, to build.
ndiro (4), plate.
mushonga (2), medicine.
dope (5), clay.
na, with, and.

ku chimbidzika, to make haste.
ku tema, to cut, chop.
ku nonoka, to delay.
ku nyora, to write.
ku dira, to pour.
ku pfiga, to close.
ku yuya na, to bring.
ku diridza, to water.
ku kama, to milk.

EXERCISE 14.

Translate : 1. Cook the porridge of the children of my aunt ! 2. Do not make a fire on my fireplace ! 3. Build (ye) our house of (*na*) poles and clay, build all of you ! 4. Cut ye off the branches of the tree, make fire under their pots ! 5. Take the plates in my house, wash all with water ! 6. Carry the water of the fowls, pour into the plate ! 7. Don't write your letters, wash the clothes ! 8. Stamp maize, do not grind grain ! 9. Drink the medicine, do not forget ! 10. Learn to read the word of God ! 11. Go to chop the wood for (of) the fire ! 12. Grind (ye) the grain, cook your porridge ; eat (ye), give to your children !

EXERCISE 15.

Translate : 1. Yangai, tinai nombe ! 2. U sa nonoka ! 3. Isai nombe mu danga ! 4. Pfigai suyo ! 5. Kama mou dzose ! 6. Yuya no mukaka ku'mba ! 7. U sa teyura mvura ! 8. Suka ndiro, dira mukaka wose ! 9. Chimbizika ku bika sadza ! 10. Dzidzai ku sa nonoka pa mubato wenyu ! 11. Yuyai mose, sengai mvura ku diridza miti ! 12. Chimbizikai, mu sa gara, bikai, ildyai sadza renyu.

LESSON XII.

THE VERB (2).

THE PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The *Present Tense* is formed by placing the auxiliary particle *no* between the representative pronoun and the verb root. Thus the sentence : 'The man stands' would be rendered *munu u no mira* (lit. the man (he) stands) ; *u* being the representative personal pronoun of the noun *munu*, *no* the auxiliary particle, and *mira* the verb root. Likewise 'the chair stands' would be : *chigaro chi no mira* (lit. the chair (it) stands) ; *zigaro zi no mira*, the chairs stand (lit. the chairs (they) stand) ; &c.

The following is a table showing the forms of the Present Tense, used for the nouns of the different classes :

- I. *Munu u no guya*, the man comes.
Vanu ya no guya, the men come.
 - II. *Museye u no guya*, the arrow comes.
Miseye i no guya, the arrows come.
 - III. *Chirongo chi no guya*, the waterpot comes.
Zirongo zi no guya, the waterpots come.
 - IV. *Shumba i no guya*, the lion comes.
Shumba dzi no guya, the lions come.
 - V. *Bere ri no guya*, the wolf comes.
Mapere a no guya, the wolves come.
 - VI. *Ruyoko ru (rgu) no guya*, the hand comes.
Mayoko a no guya, the hands come.
or *Rushanga ru (rgu) no guya*, the reed comes.
Shanga dzi no guya, the reeds come.
 - VII. *Yusiku yu (bgu) no guya*, the night comes.
Yusiku yu (bgu) no guya, the nights come.
 - VIII. *Ku idya ku no guya*, the food (eating) comes.
- Locative Classes { *Pa musha pa no fara*, (at) the village is glad.
 Mu musha mu no fara, (in) the village is glad.
 Ku musha ku no fara, (at) the village is glad.

Note.—A contracted form of the present tense, which would correspond to our progressive form, is made by the coalition of the representative pronoun and *no*; e.g. the man is coming, *munu wo yuya*. For convenience sake the student may remember that this form is the same as the genitive particle with the *a* changed into *o*; e.g. I. Cl. Sing. *wo*, plur. *yo*; II. *wo*, *yo*; III. *cho*, *o*; IV. *yo*, *dso*; V. *ro*, *o*; VI. *rgwo*, *o* or *dso*; VII. *bgo*; VIII. *kwo*.

2. The *Negative Present* is formed by prefixing the negative particle, *ha* or *a*, to the representative pronoun, leaving out *no* and changing the final *a* of the verb root into *i*; e.g. The lion does not come, will be *shumba ha i yuyi*.

In negative sentences the pronoun of the first class is *a* instead of *u*.

The following is a table of the nouns of the different classes with verbs in the negative present :

- I. *Munu ha a yuyi*, the man does not come.
Vanu ha ya yuyi, the men do not come.
 - II. *Museye ha u yuyi*, the arrow does not come.
Miseye ha i yuyi, the arrows do not come.
 - III. *Chirongo ha chi yuyi*, the waterpot does not come.
Zirongo ha zi yuyi, the waterpots do not come.
 - IV. *Shumba ha i yuyi*, the lion does not come.
Shumba ha dzi yuyi, the lions do not come.
 - V. *Bere ha ri yuyi*, the wolf does not come.
Mapere ha a yuyi, the wolves do not come.
 - VI. *Ruyoko ha ru (rgu) yuyi*, the arm does not come.
Mayoko ha a yuyi, the arms do not come.
or *Rushanga ha ru (rgu) yuyi*, the reed does not come.
Shanga ha dzi yuyi, the reeds do not come.
 - VII. *Yusiku ha yu (bgu) yuyi*, the night does not come.
Yusiku ha yu (bgu) yuyi, the nights do not come.
 - VIII. *Ku lāya ha ku yuyi*, the food does not come.
- Locative Classes { *Pa musha ha pa fari*, (at) the village is not glad.
 Mu musha ha mu fari, (in) the village is not glad.
 Ku musha ha ku fari, (at) the village is not glad.

Note.—Another form of the negative Present for Cl. I. is *ha a na ku yuya*; pl. *ha ya na ku yuya*.

Cl. II. *ha u na ku yuya*, pl. *ha i na ku yuya*.

Cl. III. *ha chi na ku yuya*, pl. *ha zi na ku yuya*, &c., &c.

3. Transitive verbs take an object, direct or indirect, which is placed after the verb; e.g. the man beats the boy, *murume u no roya mukomana*. The Dative precedes the Accusative Case and any further extension of the predicate follows the object; e.g. *Ipa mḡana mukaka*, give milk to the child; *yudza vanu mashoko nasi*, tell the news to the people to-day.

VOCABULARY.

ku vira, to boil.
ku buda, to rise (of sun).
ku rira, to roar.
ku kura, to grow big.
ku ruma, to bite.
ku yevera, to flow.
ku pinza, to be sharp.
ku ldyisa, to feed.
ku chema, to cry.
ku mgisa, to suckle.
ku zarura, to open.

ku wa, to fall.
ku chera, to dig out.
ku kweya, to draw.
mbava (4), thief.
ikozino, just now.
nasi, to-day.
murru (4), calf.
zokwadi (5), truth.
ngoro (4), wagon.
ku mera, to grow.
ku rima, to hoe.

EXERCISE 16.

Translate: 1. the water boils. 2. the sun is rising. 3. the lion roars. 4. the trees are growing big. 5. the children learn. 6. the mosquitoes bite. 7. the cattle are not coming. 8. the mother feeds her child. 9. her child does not cry. 10. the cow suckles the calf. 11. open the doors of the house. 12. the women of the village do not hoe their gardens. 13. don't cut the trees on our mountain! 14. a thief digs out our sweet potatoes. 15. the white men do not read the letters of your friends.

EXERCISE 17.

Translate: 1. hali ha i yiri. 2. Yakaranga ya no dzidza Shoko ro Mudzimu. 3. mvura i no yuya ikozino. 4. rumanda rgwako ru no wa. 5. yanu ha ya rimi munda wangu. 6. mabargwe angu a no mera za ka naka. 7. banga rako ha ri pinzi. 8. yana vedu ha ya fambi nasi. 9. rgwizi ru no yerera. 10. yushwa bgu no kura. 11. nombe dzenyu dzi no kweya ngoro yedu. 12. yakadzi ha ya rey i zokwadi.

LESSON XIII.

THE VERB (3).

THE PAST TENSE.

1. The *Past Tense* of the verb is made by prefixing to the stem the auxiliary particle *ka*, and suffixing *a* to the representative pronoun; e.g. the man came, *munu wa (u-a) ka yuya*; the house fell, *imba ya (i-a) ka wa*.

The following is a table of the various forms of the Past Tense for the different classes of nouns :—

- I. *Munu wa ka yuya*, the man came.
Vanu ya ka yuya, the men came.
 - II. *Museye wa ka yuya*, the arrow came.
Miseye ya ka yuya, the arrows came.
 - III. *Chirongo cha ka yuya*, the waterpot came.
Zirongo za ka yuya, the waterpots came.
 - IV. *Shumba ya ka yuya*, the lion came.
Shumba dza ka yuya, the lions came.
 - V. *Bere ra ka yuya*, the wolf came.
Mapere a ka yuya, the wolves came.
 - VI. *Ruyoko rgwa ka yuya*, the hand came.
Mayoko a ka yuya, the hands came.
or *Rushanga rgwa ka yuya*, the reed came.
Shanga dza ka yuya, the reeds came.
 - VII. *Yusiku bga ka yuya*, the night came.
Yusiku bga ka yuya, the nights came.
 - VIII. *Ku idya kwa ka yuya*, the food came.
- Locative Classes { *Pa musha pa ka fara*, (at) the village was glad.
 Mu musha ma ka fara, (in) the village was glad.
 Ku musha kwa ka fara, (at) the village was glad.

The forms of the pronoun in the above table will be easily recognised and remembered as being the same as those of the genitive particle.

Note 1.—Besides the above there is an *Imperfect Past Tense*, which would represent our Past Progressive; e.g. the man was coming, *munu wa nga a chi yuya*. As this is a compound tense, in which the auxiliary particles *nga* and *chi* have been introduced, and in which the pronoun is repeated, it will be treated of at a later stage. (See Lesson XXXI.)

Note 2.—The *Consecutive Past Tense* used in narrative is *ndi ka yuya*. This will likewise be treated of later. (See Lesson XXX.)

2. The simplest *Negative form of the Past Tense* is: I. Cl. *ha a za ka yuya*, *ha ya za ka yuya*; II. Cl. *ha u za ka yuya*; *ha i za ka yuya*; III. Cl. *ha chi za ka yuya*, *ha zi za ka yuya*, &c., &c.

Note 1.—The above, though simpler, is not as frequently used as the compound form: *ha a zati a ka yuya*. But of the latter we shall treat under compound tenses. (See Lesson XXXI.)

Note 2.—The forms: *ha a zani a ka yuya* and *ha ti a ka yuya* are also used.

3. Verbs, which in English would correspond to the verb 'to be' followed by an adjective, are used in the past tense with a present meaning, and in their present tense have the significance of *becoming* or *commencing an action*; e.g. in the case of the verb 'ku naka,' to be good, *mgana wa ka naka* means 'the child is good,' while

m̄gana u no naka would be 'the child becomes good'; *muti wa ka kura*, the tree is big, *muti u no kura*, the tree becomes big.

VOCABULARY.

ku tiza, to run away.
ku tenga, to buy.
ku gamuchira, to receive.
ku rira, to cry or howl.
ku handira, to lay (eggs).
bundo (5), veld.
nema (4), lie.

zuro, yesterday.
ku tamba, to play.
zai (5), egg.
ku pinda, to enter.
ku pedza, to destroy.
ku bata, to catch.
ku fura, to graze.

EXERCISE 18.

Translate: 1. the boy ran away. 2. the lion killed a man. 3. the cattle entered the kraal. 4. the women did not dig my garden. 5. the children of the village brought (came with) their baskets of meal. 6. the baboons did not destroy our gardens of maize. 7. the hawk caught my chickens. 8. the mosquitoes did not bite her children. 9. my fowls did not lay eggs. 10. the wives of the old man ran away. 11. his children cooked his porridge to-day. 12. the white man bought all the sweet-potatoes of the women. 13. the white men did not buy their grain. 14. the women received the salt in their baskets. 15. the men have not brought (come with) their wood.

EXERCISE 19.

Translate: 1. *yana ya ka tamba*. 2. *yakadzi ha ya za ka dzidza*. 3. *mapere a ka rira*. 4. *shumba ha dzi za ka ruma makwai*. 5. *makwai a ka pinda mu danga re nombe*. 6. *nombe dzayo dza ka fura ku bundo*. 7. *m̄gana wangu ha a za ka reya nema*. 8. *yasikana ha ya za ka yuya zuro*. 9. *yutunga b̄ga ka ruma yaeni*. 10. *masa dzayo dzose ha dzi za ka yuya*. 11. *ku musha kwedu kwa ka fara*. 12. *yuya ne huni, hali ha i za ka yira*.

LESSON XIV.

THE VERB (4).

THE FUTURE TENSE.

1. (a) The *Future Tense* is formed by means of the auxiliary particle *cha*, which is inserted between the representative pronoun

and the verb root ; e.g. the man will come, *munu u cha yuya* ; the house will fall, *imba i cha wa*.

At this stage the student will be able to make the forms for the different classes. We therefore do not give any further tables.

(b) The Present Tense is often used instead of the future, and may be called the *Present Future Tense* ; e.g. ' the man will come (at once) ' may be rendered *munu u no yuya*.

(c) A more remote future is expressed in the following way : the man will come (later), *munu u no zo yuya*, or *munu u cha zo yuya*, using the particles *no zo* or *cha zo* instead of *cha*.

(d) A still more remote future is expressed by the form : *munu u cha ti wo yuya*, the man will come (after a long time) ; one even more remote yet, is : *munu u cha go ti wo yuya*.

2. (a) The *Negative Future* is made by using the negative particle *ha nga* and changing the final *a* of the verb root into *i* ; e.g. the arrow will not come, *museye ha u nga yuyi* ; the lion will not come, *shumba ha i nga yuyi*.

N.B.—As has been said before, the representative pronoun for the first class is *a*, not *u*, in negative sentences ; e.g. the man will not come, *munu ha a nga yuyi*.

(b) Besides the above form the following may be used : the man will not come, *munu ha a zo yuyi*, which is a more remote form.

(c) The negative with *cha* has the meaning of ' no more,' e.g. *munu ha a cha yuyi*, the man will come no more.

VOCABULARY.

chikoro (3), school.
naka, this year.
makei, next year.
zino, now.
mangwana, to-morrow.
ze, again.
biza (5), horse.
ku dzidzisa, to teach.
ku tengisa, to sell.
ku bereka, to bear.

ku pfuma, to sew.
ku na, to rain.
ku yora, to get bad.
ku zara, to be full.
ku kusha, to sow.
ku wanda, to increase.
ku naka, to be good.
ku ipa, to be bad.
ku pisa, to be hot.

EXERCISE 20.

Translate : 1. the children will not come to school. 2. the teacher will teach the children. 3. the children will learn. 4. the

Yakaranga will not sell their grain this year. 5. the women will buy salt with wood. 6. my garden will bear maize next year. 7. his garden will not bear. 8. my girls will learn to sew their clothes. 9. his boys will not work to-day. 10. their trees will bear (at some later time). 11. his sweet-potatoes will not grow big (later). 12. our cattle will increase (at a later time). 13. your child will be good now. 14. their meal will not be bad. 15. the water will be hot.

EXERCISE 21.

Translate: 1. hali yangu i cha yira. 2. hali yakwe i cha zo yira. 3. nombe dzayo dzi cha ti dzo yuya. 4. yupfu bǵangu ha yu zo yori. 5. biza rakwe ri cha kura. 6. yuyai nasi, murumbi ha a zo tengi mangwana. 7. kushai ziyo zenyu, ha zi zo meri. 8. yakadzi ha yazo kushi. 9. yanu ya ka rima, ha ya zo rimi ze. 10. nzizi ha dzi zo zari. 11. mvura ya ka na zikuru, ha i zo ni. 12. yuyai mose, varumbi ya cha tenga ziyo zenyu no munyu.

LESSON XV.

THE VERB (5).

THE PERFECT TENSE.

1. The *Perfect Tense* corresponds to the English Perfect with the auxiliary 'has,' and has the same form as the Past Tense with *ka* left out; e.g. the man has come, *munu wa yuya*; the arrow has come, *museye wa yuya*; the waterpot has come, *chirongo cha yuya*.

Note.—Five verbs are irregular in the perfect, viz. *ku gara*, to sit, which makes *gere*; *ku zara*, to be full, which makes *zere*; *ku yata*, to sleep, which has *yete*; *ku mira*, to stand, which has *mire*; and *ku nyarara*, to be silent, which makes *nyerere*. These are used in the perfect with a present (or continuative) meaning, and in the present tense denote the *commencing of an action*; e.g. *munu u mire*, the man is standing; *munu u no mira*, the man stands (i.e. begins to stand after having been in a sitting or other posture).

2. The *Negative of the Perfect Tense* is the same as that of the Past Tense, e.g. the man has not come, *munu ha a za ka yuya*, or *ha a zati a ka yuya* (compound form).

VOCABULARY.

za ha naka, well.
ku podza, to heal.
ku rgwara, to be ill.
ku idva, to be done or ripe.
nzungu (4), monkey nuts.
ku zipa, to be nice.

ku betsera, to help.
ku pedza, to finish.
ku tsevera, to follow.
ku bva, to come from.
ku pora, to get well.
ku yuwa, to plaster.

EXERCISE 22.

Translate: 1. the wife of the chief has come. 2. the dog has caught a hare. 3. the girl has bought her clothes. 4. the lion has not caught our oxen. 5. my servants have finished their work. 6. your boys have not carried wood. 7. the women have plastered their houses. 8. the mat of my child has not come. 9. the pot has not boiled. 10. your meat is done. 11. your dog has followed the sheep. 12. the doctor has healed the mother of the girl. 13. your medicine has not helped the woman. 14. the children have helped their mothers. 15. the grain of their gardens has not grown well.

EXERCISE 23.

Translate: 1. *yanu yo musha wedu ya yuya*. 2. *nombe dzenyu ha dzi za ka fura ku bundo*. 3. *masa dzayo dza bva kuna mai yayo*. 4. *yakadzi ye misha ha ya za ka yuwa imba ya she*. 5. *musikana ha a za ka pora*. 6. *mishonga ye nanga ha i za ka betsera*. 7. *nyama ye nombe i no zipa; yanu ya ldya*. 8. *torai yupfu bgenyu, hali ya yira, bikai zino*. 9. *yasikana yose ya senga huni, ya yesa moto mu ruyazhe*. 10. *mgana wangu u no rgwara, wa ldya nzungu*.

LESSON XVI.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs qualify verbs and adjectives, and are usually placed at the end of the sentence. Adverbs of Time, however, may be placed at the beginning. There are Adverbs of Time, Place, Manner, and Interrogation, of which the following are the most important:

I. ADVERBS OF TIME.

gino, now.
ikozino, or } just now, at once.
gino-gino
pa sule, afterwards.
kutša, anew.
nasi, to-day.
zuro, yesterday.
kamše or *pakarepo*, immediately.
zurohiya, day before yesterday.
gole rino } this year.
naka
makei, last year, or next year.
makei uldya, the year before last,
 or, the year after next.
madekwe, last night.
mungwani uldya, the day after to-
 morrow.
mangwanano, this morning.
madekwana, late in the afternoon.
ze, again.

rushmanene, rarely.
mamše mazuya, sometimes.
lini (rini) ? when ?
kare, long ago.
kare-kare, very long ago.
mazuya ano, lately.
mangwana } to-morrow.
mungwani
ruzhinji, often.
madeko, at evening (twilight).
madekwano, this evening.
rungwanana } in the morning early.
mangwanana
yusiku, at night.
masikati, in the day time.
misi mizhinji } often.
mazuya mazhinji
mazuya ose, daily.
rungana (kangana) ? how often ?

II. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

pano, here.
uko or *ukoko* } there.
 or *yeyo*
ikweyo, yonder.
apa, there (near by).
apo, there (further).
ipapo, there (further still).
muno, in here.
umo, in there.
mukati } inside, in the middle.
pakati
pa mberi, in front, ahead.
pedo, near.

pedo-pedo, very near.
kure, far.
kure-kure, very far.
pasi, on the ground, down, below,
 beneath.
pa msoro, above.
kuzhe } outside.
pazhe
sule or *pa sule*, at the back.
seri or *pa seri*, beyond.
kupi ? where, or, to which place ?
mupi ? where, or, in which place ?
papi ? where, or, at which place ?

III. ADVERBS OF MANNER.

gikuru, much.
gikuru-kuru, very much.
chinyai, slowly.
kwete, no.
kuda, perhaps.

gishomanene or } little.
gishoma-shoma
gidoko or *padoko*, little.
hoŋo, yes.
yo, also.

Adverbs of Manner are often expressed by: (1) *Nouns*, e.g. *no ku chimbidzika*, quickly (i.e. with quickness); *ne simba*, strongly.

(2) *Verbs*: e.g. *za ka naka*, well; *za ka ipa*, badly; *ku dero* or *ku dai*, in this way.

(3) the *Subjunctive*; e.g. *sunga matanda a bate*, tie the poles tightly (lit. let them be tight).

Note.—For the comparison of Adverbs the student is referred to Lesson XIX.

IV. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION.

The particles *here*, *ko*, *wani*, *kani* are used in asking questions and should fall under adverbs.

Here is always used at the end of the sentence; e.g. *munu u no vuya here?* does the man come?

Ko is placed either at the beginning or the end of the sentence (with or without *here*), and is used for emphasis; e.g. *ko munu u cha vuya here?* will the man come (indeed)? *Ko munu wa ka inde'pi?* where(ever) has the man gone to? or *wa ka inde'pi ko?*

Wani means 'why then' or 'wherefore then'; e.g. *munu wa ka bva wani?* Why then has the man gone away?

Kani is used in surprise, jest, or sarcasm; e.g. *u no penga kani?* Why! are you mad?

Besides the above adverbs proper, there are adverbial particles. These will be explained later under 'Verbal Particles' (Lesson XXXII.).

VOCABULARY.

chando (3), winter, cold, frost.

mutero (2), tax.

ku da, to want or love.

ku pfupura, to pass.

ku rira, to blow.

ku dzoka, to return.

EXERCISE 24.

Translate: 1. The boys will work again next year. 2. The men of the village hoe their gardens here. 3. When did the women bring the grain? 4. Put (ye) the blankets inside, the rain will come to-day. 5. The wind blows night and day lately. 6. Say the word again, do not speak quickly. 7. Where do your cattle graze just now? 8. How badly the girl sews! 9. How many times has the boy gone to the white man? 10. My elder brother will pay (with) a goat afterwards. 11. The white men come here often to buy the cattle of the people. 12. The *Yakaranga* want money very much, the tax has arrived now.

EXERCISE 25.

Translate: 1. *Mai yako ya ka famba rgwendo zuro.* 2. *Yakadzi ya cha dzoka mungwani uldya.* 3. *Yanu yo musha ha*

ya za ka rima naka. 4. Yana yayo ya cha ldyo ziyo za makei. 5. Tsaira mumba menyu ikozino, yaeni ya cha yuya nasi. 6. Mabargwe enyu a cha zo ibva lini? 7. Naka yanu ya ka nonoka ku rima; ziyo ha zi zo ibvi. 8. Nombe dzedu dzi no fura kure, uko. 9. Mukomana wangu wa ka yanga zikuru ne nwadi. 10. Nwadi dzedu dza yuya yo here?

LESSON XVII.

THE PREPOSITIONS.

i. The simple prepositions *ku*, *pa*, *mu*, *kuna*, *pana*, *muna* are used before nouns to express the Locative Case, and may be translated either 'from,' 'at,' 'to,' or 'in.'

(a) *Ku* expresses 'to,' 'from,' or 'at' a place; e.g. *mukomana u no inda ku gomo*, the boy goes to the mountain; *munu o no bva ku munda*, the man comes from the garden; *vanu ya no gara ku misha*, the people live at the villages.

(b) *Pa* generally means 'at' a place, but when used with verbs of motion may also mean 'to' or 'from'; e.g. *mai ya no gara pa musha*, the mother lives at the village; but also *mai ya no inda pa musha*, the mother goes to the village; *mai ya no bva pa musha*, the mother comes from the village.

(c) *Mu* means 'inside' or 'among' (rest in a place), but with verbs of motion, takes the meaning of 'out of'; e.g. *mu munda*, in(side) the garden; *mu vushwa*, among the grass; *mai ya no bva mu musha*, the mother comes out of the village.

(d) *Kuna*, *pana* and *muna* are used instead of *ku*, *pa* and *mu* respectively before proper names of persons, and before prefixless nouns of the first class (as *mai*, *bambo*, *she*, &c.); e.g. *musikana u no reya kuna Muzenda*, the girl speaks to Muzenda; *kumbira pana bambo*, ask of the father; *inda kuna mai yako*, go to your mother.

For further use of *kuna* and *pana* see Lesson XVIII. under 'Adjectives.'

Note.—Before common personal nouns *ku*, *pa*, and *mu* are used; e.g. *inda ku mukomana*, go to the boy.

(e) *Kwa*, *pa*, and *ma*, which probably are the genitive particles of Locatives understood, are used before names of persons, and then convey the meaning of 'to,' 'from,' or 'at' the place of;

e.g. *murungu u no inda (ku nyika) kwa Gutu*, the white man goes to Gutu's (country) *munu u no bva (ku musha) kwa Zinyoro*, the man comes from Zinyoro's (place); *nombe dza pa* or *ma (pa or mu nyika) Mugabi*, the oxen at or in Mugabi's (country).

Note.—*Kwa*, *pa*, and *ma* are also used with the roots of possessive pronouns. (See Lesson IX.)

(f) The proper names of places usually take no preposition before them; e.g. the cattle go to Harawe, *nombe dzi no inda Harawe*; the sheep come from Mushawasha, *makwai a no bva Mushawasha*.

(g) *Ku*, *pa*, and *mu* are prefixed to the interrogative particle *pi*; e.g. *kupi*, where or whereto? *papi*, where or whereat? *mupi*, where or wherein?

(h) Most nouns indicating seasons and times are used without prepositions; e.g. in the spring, *chirimo* (seldom *mu chirimo*); in Winter, *chando*; so also *masikati*, at noon; *yusiku*, at or in the night; *mangwanana*, in the early morning.

2. The simple preposition *na*, used before nouns, means 'by,' 'with,' 'on.' Examples: *Mgana wa ka robga na mai vakwe*, the child was beaten by his mother; *varungu va ka vuya na mabiza*, the white people came on horses.

3. Compound prepositions are practically the locative case of nouns followed by its own genitive particle. Most of these have been explained under the Genitive Particle.

VOCABULARY.

ku sara, remain, stay behind.
ngwe (4), tiger, leopard.
ku gara, to live.

denere (5), thicket.
ku buda, to come out.
yutsi (or *yusi*) (7), smoke.

EXERCISE 26.

Translate: 1. The boys came from Dumbu's. 2. The girls have gone to Yuyuli. 3. The sister of my father sells grain at her village. 4. The women will hoe their gardens in the Spring. 5. Where do the cattle graze at noon? 6. The cows go to graze on the top of the mountain. 7. The goats stay behind on the bank of the river. 8. The sheep go to drink water, on the other side of the village. 9. The lion will come to the kraal of the cattle in the night. 10. The tiger lives in the thickets on the mountains.

11. The men have gone to the chief of the country. 12. The smoke is coming out of the house of my grandmother.

EXERCISE 27.

Translate : 1. Yana ya ka inda kupi? 2. Yakadzi ya ka bva pa musha pa msoro pe gomo. 3. Yana ye misha ya no yuya ku chikoro pana Muneri. 4. Fudzai makwai za ka naka pa miri po rgwizi. 5. Yarumbi ya cha yaka musha pa mberi pe gomo. 6. Bvisa numbi pa nyasi pe chigaro. 7. Zuya ri cha zo pisa masikati. 8. Chando chi no yuya yusiku. 9. Kumbirai ziyo pana mai yenyu. 10. Mukomana wa ka bva Mushawasha kwa Mapudzi.

LESSON XVIII.

ADJECTIVES.

There are very few Adjectives proper in Chikaranga, their want being supplied by various other parts of speech.

I. As a rule the adjective takes the prefix of the noun it qualifies, always following it. The prefixless nouns of the first *mu* class take the prefixes *mu* and *ya*; e.g. *she mukuru*, the great chief. In all other cases in which the prefix of the noun is not expressed, the adjective is also used *without* a prefix; e.g. *imba refu*, the high house; *mvura zhinji*, much rain; *banga refu*, the long knife; *shanga fupi*, the short reeds.

The following table will show the use of the adjective with nouns of the different classes :

- I. *Munu mufupi*, the short man.
Yanu yafupi, the short men.
- II. *Muti mufupi*, the short tree.
Miti mifupi, the short trees.
- III. *Chigaro chifupi*, the low chair.
Zigaro zifupi, the low chairs.
- IV. *Hali fupi*, the low pot.
Hali fupi, the low pots.
- V. *Banga fupi*, the short knife.
Mapanga mafupi, the short knives.
- VI. *Ruyoko rufupi*, the short arm.
Mayoko mafupi, the short arms.
or *Rumanda rufupi*, the short fence.
Manda fupi, the short fences.
- VII. *Vuta yufupi*, the short bow.
Vuta yufupi, the short bows.
- VIII. *Ku jamba kutupi*, the short walk.

2. The most common of the adjectives are :

-*guru*, big, great.
 -*refu* or *lefu*, tall, long, deep.
 -*shoma*, little, few.
 -*gobvu*, thick, stout.
 -*gukutu*, hard, cruel.
 -*sharu*, old.
 -*benyu*, alive, whole.
 -*pfumbu*, blue or grey.

-*shora*, dark red or brown.
mbishi, unripe.

-*doko* (*diki*, *duku*), small.
 -*fupe*, short, low.
 -*shinji*, much, many.
 -*dete*, thin.
 -*nyoro*, soft, gentle, kind.
 -*tša*, new.
 -*bami*, wide, stout.
 -*jena*, white (also yellow or light-coloured).
 -*shaya*, red.
 -*yuya*, fine, handsome.

Besides the above there are the numerals, which will be treated of later.

With prefixes the initial *b*, *d*, *g*, *j*, are sharpened into *p*, *t*, *k*, *ch* ; e.g. *vapenyu*, *matema*, *mukuru*, *michena*.

With the *ri* class (sing.) the root of the adj. is used, as given in the above list ; *banga guru*, big knife ; *bango gobvu*, thick pole ; *biza jena*, white horse.

Shaya may be *jaya* in the *ri* class, and *tša* may be *dza*.

For the *i* class *guru* becomes *huru* ; *dete*, *nete* ; *gobvu*, *hobvu* ; *bami*, *mami* ; *benyu*, *ményu* ; *jena*, *chena* ; *dema*, *nema*.

3. The want of adjectives is supplied by the following :

(1) *Common Nouns*, with or without the genitive particle ; e.g. *murungu mufumi*, a rich white man (lit. a white man, a rich man) ; *imba yo yushwa*, a grass house (lit. a house of grass) ; *munu we bofu*, a blind man (lit. a man who (is) a blind man).

(2) *Abstract Nouns* with the genitive particle ; e.g. a lazy man, *munu wo yusimbe* (lit. a man of laziness).

(3) *Nouns* with the prepositions *na*, with ; e.g. *ne simba*, strong (lit. with strength) ; *ne zhara*, hungry (lit. with hunger).

(4) *Verbs* (either in the present or past tense, or past tense with a present meaning) ; e.g. hot water, *mvura i no pisa* (lit. water it burns) ; a good man, *munu wa ka naka*.

(5) The *Infinitive* of the verb with the genitive particle ; e.g. pretty flowers, *maruya o ku naka* ; wise people, *vanu yo ku chenjera*.

4. The prefix *chi* is used to form the adjective from the proper names of tribes or peoples. In the first place it is used to signify the language of the people ; e.g. *Chikaranga*, the language of the *Yakaranga* ; *Chirumbi*, the language of the *Varumbi* (white people) ;

Chimanyika, the language of the *Yamanyika*, &c. If used with the genitive particle, it denotes 'belonging to the tribe'; e.g. *mitoyo ye Chikaranga*, the Karanga customs; *huku dze Chirumbi*, European fowls.

5. (a) Adjectives used as epithets following the verb 'to be' (present tense) are used without translating the verb; e.g. the man is tall, *munu murefu*; the tree is thick, *muti mukobvu*.

(b) The *i* class (sing. and plur.) and *ri* class (sing.) take *i* before the adjective; e.g. the ox is red, *nombe i shaya*; the fowls are black, *huku i nema*; the knife is thin, *banga i dete*.

Note.—Observe that *munu murefu* may mean either 'a tall man' or 'the man is tall,' whereas *nombe shaya* means 'the red ox' and *nombe i shaya*, the ox is red.

VOCABULARY.

ku chenjera, to be clever.
mambo (4), hen.
ku dziya, to be warm.
ku tonora, to be cold.
ku kweya, to draw.
gukurume (5), cock.

nanga (5), pumpkin.
mbongora (4), ass.
ku fura, to shoot.
ku rira, to crow.
ku tana, to pick.
ku rema, to be heavy.

EXERCISE 28.

Translate: 1. The black man walks in the garden. 2. The long hair of the short white man. 3. The clever *Yakaranga* shoot with long bows. 4. The thick blankets of the white men are warm. 5. Many cold nights. 6. Take your new mat outside. 7. The lazy boy killed your black hen. 8. My white cock crows often. 9. Many horses are white. 10. The women have brought many large pumpkins. 11. The milk in the small calabash is nice. 12. The blind boy sits by the side of the road.

EXERCISE 29.

Translate: 1. *Huku dze Chikaranga dzi no kandira mazai madoko*. 2. *Mazai e huku dze Chirumbi makuru*. 3. *Inda ku Murumbi, tenga munyu mushoma na mabargwe ako*. 4. *Biza rako jena ri no pfura*. 5. *Mbongora dzenyu dzo yusimbe ha dzi di ku kweya ngoro*. 6. *Ngoro yangu shaya ha i remi*. 7. *Inwa mushonga wa ka naka, u cha pora*. 8. *Yasikana ya no pfuma hazu chena dza ka naka*. 9. *Tana ruya ro ku naka mu munda*

mangu seri kwe imba. 10. Rumanda rgwenyu rgwo yushwa rufupi.

LESSON XIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In Chikaranga there is no inflection of the Adjective to express the degrees of comparison. It must be gathered either from the construction of the sentence or from the context what degree is meant. For instance, where in English we would say : ' His sheep is larger,' the Mukaranga would say : ' His sheep is large.' ' The sheep is larger than the goat ' would be construed : ' the sheep is large by the goat ' ; or ' the sheep surpasses the goat in size.' In the case of the Superlative degree, ' his sheep is the largest ' would be rendered : ' his sheep surpasses all,' or ' his sheep is large by all.'

1. The most common ways of rendering the COMPARATIVE are the following :

(1) By using the Positive, followed by *pa* or *pana*, *ku* or *kuna*, where in English we would use the Comparative followed by ' than ' ; e.g. The boy is bigger than the girl, *mukomana mukuru pa musikana* ; the black dog is stronger than the red one, *mbga nema i ne simba pane shaya*.

(2) By using a verb denoting ' to excel or surpass,' viz. *ku pfuyura* (which is most common in this district), *ku pinda*, *ku kurira*, or *ku kunda*, and circumscribing the idea of comparison ; e.g. The pole is higher than the fence, *danda ri no pfuyura rumanda no yurefu* (lit. the pole surpasses the fence with (in) height). This sentence may also be rendered : *Danda i refu ku pfuyura rumanda* (i.e. the pole is long to surpass the fence). ' My fowls lay more eggs than yours ' could be either : *Huku dzangu dzi no pfuyura dzako no ku kanda mazai* (lit. my fowls surpass yours with (in) laying eggs), or *huku dzangu dzi no kanda mazai ku pfuyura dzako* (lit. my fowls lay eggs to excel yours).

(3) By simply using the positive ; e.g. My garden is the larger (of the two), *munda wangu mukuru*.

For the use of *pana* and *kuna* see Lesson XVII.

2. The SUPERLATIVE is expressed by :

(1) *Pana* followed by *ose*; e.g. Your child is the cleverest, *m̄gana wako wa ka chenjera pana yose*. (Thy child it is clever by the side of (compared with) all.)

(2) The verbs *ku pfuyura*, &c., followed by the adj. *ose*; e.g. The elephant is the biggest, *zhou i huru ku pfuyura dzose*.

(3) By adding the adverb *zikuru*, or *kwazo*, very much; e.g. The reed is very short, *rushanga rufupi zikuru* (or *kwazo*), i.e. The reed is short, very much.

(4) By reduplicating the adjective; e.g. A very tall man, *munu murefu-refu*.

3. The adjective with 'too' is expressed:

(1) by using the positive simply; e.g. The hat is too small, *ngowani i doko*; or

(2) by intensifying the adjective by suffixing *sa*, or the verb by adding *esa* or *isa*; e.g. *ngowani i dokosa*, the hat is too small; *danda ra ka rebisa*, the pole is too long.

Note.—*Adverbs* are compared in much the same way as adjectives; e.g. He writes well, *u no nyora za ka naka*; he writes better than I, *u no nyora za ka naka ku pfuyura ini*; he writes best, *u no nyora za ka naka ku pfuyura yose*.

VOCABULARY.

pfumo (5), assegai.
musengwa (2), load.
yusavi (7), relish.
zo ku lāya (3), food.
ku koma, to be blunt.
ku wanda, to be much.

ku raira, to rebuke.
ku pakura, to dish up.
ku seya, to dip in.
bva, but.
-a matanda, wooden.

EXERCISE 30.

Translate: 1. Your house is finer than ours. 2. His trees are not highest. 3. The children saw a very large bird in the tree to-day. 4. The eggs of their fowls are very large. 5. My white ducks are smaller than yours. 6. Your short assegai is very blunt. 7. Your mother is not taller than mine. 8. Our servants' work is much more than (that) of your boys. 9. Your fire in the fireplace is too large. 10. The mountains of our country are very much higher than the mountains here (of here). 11. Give me a longer candle, mine is too short. 12. His hand is small; mine is smaller than his; yours is smallest.

EXERCISE 31.

Translate : 1. Musengwa wakwe u no rema ku pfuyura wako. 2. Mai ya no reya mashoko manyoro ku pfuyura bambo. 3. Yana yedu ya ka reba pana yose. 4. Chisikana chakwe cha ka siya chako ne mgedzi mitatu. 5. Zuro nda bva kwa Gutu ne zhira fupi i no pfuyura dzose. 6. Hali ya yasikana ya ka zara ku pfuyura ya yakomana. 7. Zo ku ldy a zayo za ka wanda, bva yasikana ya ka wanda pa yakomana. 8. U sa raira yasikana ; ha ya zo biki sadza ra ka wandisa. 9. Ya no pakura mu ndiro dzayo dza matanda, ya no seya ne miliyo i no zipisa. 10. Chando mukaka ha u zipi zikuru, u no tonoresa ; miliyo i no zipa ku pfuyura (mukaka) ; bva nyama i no zipa ku pfuyura zose.

LESSON XX.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The Personal Pronoun may be divided into two classes : (1) the *Emphatic or Substantive Personal Pronoun*, and (2) the *Connective or Prefixal Pronoun*.

I. The EMPHATIC or SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS correspond to the three persons 'I,' 'thou,' 'he' or 'she,' with their plural forms, 'we,' 'you,' and 'they.' For the forms 'it' and 'they' the demonstrative pronouns are used (see Lesson XXIII.).

The following is a table of the forms for the three persons :

1st pers. Sing.	<i>ini</i> , I.	Plur.	<i>isu</i> , we.
2nd " "	<i>iwe</i> , thou.	" "	<i>im̄gi</i> (<i>imi</i>), you.
3rd " "	<i>iye</i> , he or she.	" "	<i>iyo</i> , they.

For the forms 'it' and 'they' the emphatic pronouns for the various classes are : Cl. II. *iwo*, *iyo* ; Cl. III. *icho*, *izo* ; Cl. IV. *iyo*, *idzo* ; Cl. V. *iro*, *iwo* ; Cl. VI. *urgwo*, *iwo* ; *idzo* or *iwo* ; Cl. VII. *ub̄go* ; Cl. VIII. *uko*.

These pronouns are used :

- (1) when the pronoun stands alone ; e.g. I, *ini* ; you, *iwe* ;
- (2) in the predicate after the verb 'to be' (copula), which in the Present Indicative is expressed by the indefinite pronoun *ndi* ; e.g. It is she, *ndi iye* (abbreviated *ndi'ye*) ;
- (3) exactly like the noun (hence the name Substantive Pronoun),

either as subject or object of the verb, when it has at the same time an emphatic value ; e.g. ' The boy calls *me*,' *mukomana u no dana ini*. When it is the subject it must always be connected with the verb by the Connective Pronoun (see below) ; e.g. *I* will come, *ini ndi cha yuya* ;

(4) after the prep. *na* (and or with), viz. *ne'ni (ne ini)*, with (by) me ; *na'ye*, with (by) him, &c. ;

(5) when a verb has two pronouns as objects, the direct object is expressed by this form and follows the verb, the indirect object by the objective pronoun, preceding the verb root ; e.g. The woman will show them (her children) to us, *mukadzi u cha ti (us) ratidza iyo* (them).

II. CONNECTIVE OR PREFIXAL PRONOUN.

(a) The personal pronouns of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons, when used as *subject* of the verb in the *present* and *future* tenses, have the following forms, preceding the verb in the same way as the representative particle :

1st pers. Sing. <i>ndi</i> , I.	Plur. <i>ti</i> , we.
2nd " " <i>u</i> , thou.	" <i>mu</i> , you.
3rd " " <i>u</i> , he or she.	" <i>ya</i> , they.

Examples : I come, *ndi no yuya* ; they come, *ya no yuya* ; we shall come, *ti cha yuya*.

(b) For the *Perfect Tense* the forms are :

Sing. <i>nda yuya</i> , I have come.	Plur. <i>ta yuya</i> , we have come.
" <i>wa yuya</i> , thou hast come.	" <i>ma yuya</i> , you have come.
" <i>wa yuya</i> , he has come.	" <i>ya yuya</i> , they have come.

For the *Past Tense* ; *nda ka yuya* ; *wa ka yuya*, &c.

(c) The third personal forms are, as will readily be seen, only for the first *mu* class.

For the pronouns 'it,' plur. 'they,' *nominative* and *objective*, the ordinary representative particles for the different classes are used, the objective pronoun being placed directly before the verb root ; e.g. they (the trees) grow, (*miti*) *i no mera* ; it (the hand) holds, (*ruyoko*) *ru no bata* ; it (the knife) cuts, (*banga*) *ri no cheka* ; the girl digs them (the sweet potatoes), *musikana u no a (mabura) chera* ; you herd them (the cattle), *u no dzi (nombe) lisa*.

(d) When the personal pronoun occurs in the *objective* case the following forms are used, preceding the verb root :

1st pers. Sing. <i>ndi</i> , me.	Plur. <i>ti</i> , us.
2nd " " <i>ku</i> , thee.	" <i>mu</i> , you.
3rd " " <i>mu</i> , him or her.	" <i>ya</i> , them.

Examples : I see him, *ndi no mu yona* ; you see us, *mu no ti yona* ; he sees me, *u no ndi yona* ; they see thee, *ya no ku yona* ; &c.

Note 1.—Instead of *mu* (2nd person, plural, objective) *ku*, the singular may be used, and the verb is made plural by suffixing *i* ; e.g. *ndi cha ku yudai*, I will tell you. This form is often used in addressing a superior.

Note 2.—The form *mu* is used by some instead of *u* for the objective pronoun of the second *mu* class, and *ma* for *a* in the *ri* class plural ; e.g. *muti*, *ndi no mu yona*, the tree, I see it ; *mabura*, *ti no ma da*, the sweet potatoes, we like them.

VOCABULARY.

<i>mulengisi</i> (1), trader.	<i>ku fuka</i> , to put on.
<i>pondo</i> (4), pound.	<i>ku cheka</i> , to cut.
<i>natu</i> , three.	<i>ku ronda</i> , to track.
<i>ku ziya</i> , to know.	<i>ku pisa</i> , to burn.
<i>ku shaiwa</i> , to lack ; be without.	<i>ku woma</i> , to get dry.
<i>ku nzwawa</i> , to feel, hear.	<i>ku yesa</i> , to make of wood.
<i>ku pfuira</i> , to thatch.	<i>ku chera</i> , to dig out.
<i>ku baya</i> , to stab.	<i>ku fukidza</i> , to clothe.
<i>ku viya</i> , to skin.	

EXERCISE 32.

Translate : 1. We bought our clothes from the traders. 2. We go to our home to-morrow to fetch food. 3. I have seen the house of the white man, he has built it on the hill. 4. The women carried much grass (and) the men thatched it (the house). 5. They made the doors of (with) native wood. 6. The lion killed an ox and a goat in the night, and ate them. 7. The men of the whole village went out in the morning to track it. 8. They found it, (and) shot it with their guns, (and) stabbed it with their assegais. 9. They skinned it (and) gave its skin to the chief. 10. He will sell it (the skin) for money, perhaps £3. 11. Do (ye) not burn the grass, it will get dry (and) we will cut it afterwards. 12. You and we will go to the garden to-morrow, shall dig out monkey nuts and sweet-potatoes.

EXERCISE 33.

Translate : 1. Huku dzangu ha dzi kandiri mazai, ha dzi ldyi zo ku ldyi mazuya ano. 2. Naka ha ya yuyi ku tengisa ziyo za ka wanda ; ya cha zi tengisa pa sule. 3. Ini ndi no bvidza ku

raya, ndi cha ku dzidzisa. 4. Iyo ha ya bvidzi ku ku dzidzisa za ka naka. 5. Yasikana yose ya cha inda ne'ni ku musha kwangu mangwana. 6. Ti cha kwasha muliyo, madeko ti cha u bika. 7. Sadza ha ri zipi, ri no shaiwa yusayi. 8. Ndi no da mḡana wangu zikuru, ndi cha yuya na'ye mangwana ku tenga hazu dzakwe. 9. U no nzḡwa chando, ndi no da ku mu fukidza ne micheka michena. 10. Ndi cha tenga jira, u cha ri fuka yusiku, u cha yata zi no zipa.

LESSON XXI.

THE NUMERALS—CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The Yakaranga count by tens, having separate words for the figures from one to ten, and then beginning again, and saying 'ten and one,' 'ten and two,' &c., until they reach twenty, which is expressed as 'two tens'; twenty-one is 'two tens and one'; twenty-two is 'two tens and two' and so on, up to thirty, which is expressed as 'three tens,' and so on.

1. The following is a table used in counting the consecutive numbers :

1, <i>motsi.</i>	11, <i>gumi ne imḡe.</i>	21, <i>makumi maviri ne imḡe.</i>
2, <i>piri.</i>	12, <i>gumi ne mbiri.</i>	22, <i>makumi maviri ne mbiri.</i>
3, <i>tatu.</i>	13, <i>gumi ne natu.</i>	23, <i>makumi maviri ne natu.</i>
4, <i>china.</i>	14, <i>gumi ne nna.</i>	30, <i>makumi matatu.</i>
5, <i>shanu.</i>	15, <i>gumi ne shanu.</i>	40, <i>makumi manna.</i>
6, <i>tanatu.</i>	16, <i>gumi ne nanatu.</i>	50, <i>makumi mashanu.</i>
7, <i>chinomḡe.</i>	17, <i>gumi ne nomḡe.</i>	60, <i>makumi matanatu.</i>
8, <i>rusere.</i>	18, <i>gumi ne sere.</i>	70, <i>makumi manomḡe.</i>
9, <i>pfumbamḡe.</i>	19, <i>gumi ne pfumbamḡe.</i>	80, <i>makumi masere.</i>
10, <i>gumi.</i>	20, <i>makumi maviri.</i>	90, <i>makumi mapfumbamḡe.</i>

100, *zana*; 120, *zana ri na makumi maviri*; 121, *zana ri na makumi maviri ne imḡe*; 200, *mazana maviri*; 233, *mazana maviri a na makumi matatu ne natu*; 1,000, *mazana a ne gumi*, or *gumi ra mazana*; 2,000, *guru za mazana ziviri*, or *makumi maviri a mazana*; 10,000, *guru za mazana zi ne gumi*, or *zana ra mazana*.

2. CARDINAL ADJECTIVES.

The numbers from 'one' to 'nine' are adjectives, and take the prefixes of the nouns they qualify.

Their adjectival forms are: -*mḡe*, -*viri*, -*tatu*, -*nna*, -*shanu*, -*tanatu*, -*nomḡe*, -*sere*, -*pfumbamḡe*.

Examples: one man, *munu mumge*; two men, *vanu yayiri*; three chairs, *zigaro zitatu*; four horses, *mabiza manna*; five mosquitoes, *yutunga yushanu*; six trees, *miti mitanatu*; seven languages, *malimi manomge*; eight children, *vana yasere*; nine dogs, *mbga pfumbamge*.

Note 1.—For the *i* class, *-yiri*, two, becomes *mbiri*, *-tatu* becomes *natu*, and *-ianatu*, *nanatu*. Examples: two lions, *shumba mbiri*; three oxen, *nombe natu*; six fowls, *huku nanatu*.

Note 2.—*-Mge* is the only adjective which takes the prefix of the noun in the *ri* class (sing.) and *i* class (sing. and plur.); e.g. one knife, *banga rimge*; one ox, *nombe imge*; some oxen, *nombe dsimge*.

Note 3.—*-Mge*, when standing after its noun signifies 'one,' but coming before it, means 'another' (in the plur. 'others'); e.g. *muti mumge*, one tree, *mumge muti*, another tree; *mbga imge*, one dog; *imge mbga*, another dog; *huku dsimge*, some fowls; *dsimge huku*, other fowls.

Note 4.—When *-mge* is repeated, the two parts being joined by the preposition *na*, it means 'each' or 'every'; e.g. *mukomana mumge no mumge*, every man; *rupasa rumge no rumge*, each mat, &c.

3. CARDINAL NOUNS.

(a) *Gumi*, *makumi* (ten and its multiples), are nouns of the *ri* class, taking the genitive particles *ra* and *a*; e.g. *gumi ra makwai*, ten sheep (lit. ten of sheep); *gumi rimge* or *gumi roga*, one ten or ten only; *makumi mayiri a makwai*, twenty (lit. two tens) &c. sheep.

(b) *Zana* (hundred) is a noun of the *ri* class with its plural *mazana*; e.g. 100 horses, *zana ra mabiza* (also *mabiza a ne zana*); 500 oxen, *mazana mashanu e nombe*, or *nombe dzi na mazana mashanu*.

(c) 'Thousand' is expressed by *gumi ra mazana* (ten of hundreds) or *mazana a ne gumi* (hundreds, they are with (they have) ten).

(d) *Churu cha mazana* is used for a very large unknown number, i.e. 'thousands.'

(e) The units are joined to the tens by the preposition '*na*,' or by the noun *mirayudzo* (pl. *mirayudzo*) with *na*; e.g. 'eighteen' would be *gumi ne sere* (*i* class), or *gumi ne mirayudzo misere*; twenty-five = *makumi mayiri ne shanu* or *makumi mayiri ne mirayudzo mishanu*. *Mirayudzo* means 'selected ones,' i.e. units.

(f) The expressions 'one by one,' 'two by two' &c. are rendered by reduplicating the numeral; e.g. the boys came one by one, *yakomana va ka yuya mumge, mumge*; count the cattle by fifties, *rava nombe makumi mashanu, makumi mashanu*.

(g) 'Only' and 'all' (-oga and -ose) have been explained in Lesson IX.

Note.—The adverbs *bedzi* and *chete* are also used in some parts instead of -oga; e.g. *biza rim̄ge bedzi (chete)*, one horse only.

(h) 'Both' is expressed by -*yiri* followed by the adjective -*ose*; e.g. both the dogs, *mb̄ga mbiri dzose*; both the chairs, *zigaro ziyiri zose*.

(i) 'How many?' 'How much?' are rendered by -*ngana?* or *ngani?*; e.g. How many pumpkins? *nanga ngana (ngani)?* How many poles? *mapango mangana?* How much meal, *vupfu vungana?*

VOCABULARY.

ku da, to want.
ku sima, to plant.
muhova, (2), banana tree.

majuro (5), meadow.
p̄umo (5), war.

EXERCISE 34.

Translate: 1. He wants 10 long poles to build his fence. 2. I saw 8 white horses in the village yesterday. 3. The white man has built 7 large houses. 4. Our 5 black knives are not very sharp. 5. The woman planted 4 trees of bananas in her garden last year. 6. I found 2 nests of my fowls with 20 eggs. 7. 35 goats and 1 sheep in the meadow. 8. The chief has gone to war with 307 men. 9. One woman and her 8 small children ask for food. 10. The owner of 378 oxen, and 11 horses, and 954 sheep, and 66 pigs, and 74 fowls.

LESSON XXII.

THE NUMERALS—ORDINAL NUMBERS.

I. (1) The *Ordinal Numbers* are the numbers in the table in Lesson XXI., preceded by the genitive particle of the governing noun; e.g. the first day, *zuva re chimotsi*; the fifth man, *munu we shanu*; the seventh stone, *b̄ge re chinom̄ge*, &c.

Note (a) Instead of *motsi*, one, *ku tanga* (the beginning) is generally used in this district (Victoria); e.g. the first boy, *mukomana wo ku tanga*; the first journey, *rgwendo rgwo ku tanga*, &c.

(b) *Chi* may also be prefixed to the numerals which have no prefix; e.g. the second month, *m̄gedzi we chipiri*; the sixth lion, *shumba ye chitanatu*.

(2) 'The last' is expressed by the genitive particle followed by *ku pedzisira*, or *ku pereredza* (lit. to finish); also by *ku dziya*, *ku gumisira* or *ku teveredza*. All of these have the meaning of to 'finish' or 'to end'; e.g. the last woman, *mukadzi wo ku pedzisira* or *wo ku pereredza*, &c.; the last meal, *vupfu bgo ku pedzisira* or *bgo ku gumisira*.

(3) The names of the days of the week are expressed by the help of the ordinal numbers, beginning with Tuesday, which is the second day, i.e. (*zuya*) *Repiri*, or *Chipiri*; Wednesday, *Retatu* or *Chitatu*; Thursday, *Rechina* or *China*; Friday, *Reshanu* or *Chishanu*; Monday is generally called *Musumburuko* (*Musumbunuko*), also *Chimotsi*; whilst Saturday is known as *Mugivira*, *Retanatu* or *Chitanatu*. Both *Musumburuko* and *Mugivira* are borrowed words. *Sondo* (from the Dutch) is used for 'Sunday.'

II. (a) *Adverbial numerals* are made by prefixing *ka* or *ru* to the cardinal numbers; e.g. once, *kamge*; twice, *kaviri* or *ruviri*; thrice, *katatu* or *rutatu*; four times, *runna* or *kanna*; five times, *kashanu* or *rushanu*, &c.

(b) 'In the first place' is *pa kutanga* or *pa chimotsi*

„ „ second „ „ *pe piri*

„ „ third „ „ *pe tatu*

(c) 'For the first time,' 'for the second time,' 'for the third time,' &c., are rendered by *rgwo ku tanga*, *rgwe piri*, *rgwe tatu*, &c., the noun *rgwendo* (journey) being understood.

(d) 'Often' is expressed by *ka-* or *ruzhinji*; 'rarely' by *kashoma* or *rushoma*; and 'how often' by *kangana* or *rungana*.

Examples: How often has he come? Three times. *Wa ka yuya rungana? Rutatu*. He comes here often; this morning he came for the tenth time, *U no yuya pano ruzhinji, mangwanano wa ka yuya rgwe gumi*.

VOCABULARY.

musara (2), row.
muwimi (1), hunter.
muti (2) } medicine, poison.
mushonga (2) }
ku siya, to leave.
ku yumba, to mould.

ku fa, to die.
na, by, with, in.
ku tevera, to follow.
ku tambudza, to trouble.
ku pedza, to destroy, finish.

EXERCISE 35.

Translate : 1. The basket I gave to the first child in the second row. 2. She has picked her eighth flower and put it in the water. 3. Your grandmother lives in the fourth hut in the village of Ganda. 4. The hunter has shot his eighth elephant. 5. The mother of the tall girl moulds many pots ; she gives one to each child. 6. Give the old man your mat, I will give you another to-morrow. 7. Some grain we put in the granary, some we left in the baskets. 8. The children come to school every day, and they go out by twos. 9. They will go to their father's village on Friday and come back (that they may come back) on Monday. 10. The boys have gone three times to buy calico with their grain ; to-morrow they will go for the fourth time.

EXERCISE 36.

Translate : 1. Nda ka ku pa huku natu nasi ; mangwana ndi cha ku pa dzimge nna. 2. Shumba mbiri dza ka pinda mu danga re nombe yusiku. 3. Dza ka yuraya nombe ngana ? Mou natu ne muru shanu. 4. Mangwanana yanu ya ne zana na yasere ye misha ya ka dzi teyera, bva ya ka dzi shaiwa. 5. Dzi cha yuya rgwe piri yusiku bga nasi, dzi cha ldy muti wo ku yuraya. 6. Shumba ha dzi yuyi pano ruzhinji, dzi no ti tambudza rushoma. 7. Na makole mashanu dza ka yuya ruyiri rgwoga. 8. Pa ku tanga dza ka yuraya nombe natu dzoga, zino dza ka ruma sere. 9. Ngwe dzi no pedza zipfuwo zose ; makei imge ya ka pinda mu danga re mbudzi. 10. Ya ka yuraya yusiku yumge mbudzi makumi matatu ne natu ; bva ya ka ldy muti, ya ka fa.

LESSON XXIII.

THE POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The POSSESSIVE PRONOUN is always placed after the noun, and joined to it by the genitive particle of that noun.

The special forms for the Possessive Pronoun for persons (the

1st class) have already been given and explained in connection with the genitive particle in Lesson VIII. The forms given there correspond to the English 'of me,' 'of thee,' 'of him,' 'of her,' 'of us,' 'of you,' and 'of them.' 'Of it' (its) has as many forms as there are noun-classes for inanimate objects, and is expressed by joining the emphatic pronouns (with the first vowel omitted) to the genitive particle of the preceding noun. This will be illustrated in the following table :

II. Mu	Cl.	Sing.	-wo, e.g. (tree) its leaves, (<i>muti</i>) <i>mashazhu awo</i> .
		Plur.	-yo, e.g. (trees) their leaves, (<i>miti</i>) <i>mashazhu ayo</i> .
III. Chi	„	Sing.	-cho, e.g. (chair) its legs, (<i>chigaro</i>) <i>gumbo racho</i> .
		Plur.	-zo, e.g. (chairs) their legs, (<i>zigaro</i>) <i>makumbo azo</i> .
IV. I	„	Sing.	-yo, e.g. (house) its roof, (<i>imba</i>) <i>denga rayo</i> .
		Plur.	-dzo, e.g. (houses) their roofs, (<i>dzimba</i>) <i>matenga adzo</i> .
V. Ri	„	Sing.	-ro, e.g. (knife) its length, (<i>banga</i>) <i>yurefu b̄gawo</i> .
		Plur.	-wo, e.g. (knives) their length, (<i>mapanga</i>) <i>yurefu b̄gawo</i> .
VI. Ru	„	Sing.	-rgwo, e.g. (hand) its fingers, (<i>ruyoko</i>) <i>minwe yargwo</i> .
		Plur.	-wo or <i>dzo</i> e.g. (hands) their fingers, (<i>mayoko</i>) <i>minwe yawo</i> . (fences) their grass, (<i>manda</i>) <i>yushwa b̄gadzo</i> .
VII. Vu	„	Sing.	-b̄go, e.g. (meal) its whiteness, (<i>yupfu</i>) <i>yuchena b̄gab̄go</i> .
		Plur.	-b̄go, e.g. (mosquitoes) their bite, (<i>yutunga</i>) <i>ku ruma kwab̄go</i> .
VIII. Ku	„	Sing.	-kwa, e.g. (walking) its fatigue, (<i>kufamba</i>) <i>kunyadza kwakwo</i> .

The idiomatic forms consisting of *ha* (he before *du* and *nyu*) prefixed to the poss. pron. roots, and meaning 'for my part,' 'as for me,' &c., are frequently used ; e.g. *ndi no famba hangu*, I, for my part, walk ; *chigaro hacho*, as for the chair ; *isu hedu*, as for us.

For further use of the possessive pronoun see Lesson VIII.

VOCABULARY.

ku pfigira, to shut up.
ku shakara, to be old.
ku kwesha, to polish.
ku tanayura, to strip off.

chifuniro (3), lid.
ku vunika, to be broken.
ku gocha, to roast.
bapiro (5), wing.

EXERCISE 37.

Translate : 1. The cattle have come ; put them in their kraal.
 2. Milk the cows, pour the milk into the pot, and bring it to the house.
 3. Shut up their (the cows') calves in that new hut.
 4. The

big calves do not sleep with their mothers. 5. One small calf grazes with its mother all day, it does not stay at home. 6. Its (the kraal's) fence is old, we will build a new one these days. 7. I have bought the basket with its maize for salt. 8. Wash all my pots to-day, polish their lids well. 9. Put her chair in the house, its leg is broken, it will fall. 10. The Vakaranga eat locusts, they strip off their legs and their wings, (and) they roast them (the locusts) with a little salt.

2. The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN is also a demonstrative adjective, and as such it always follows the noun ; e.g. This man, *munu uyu* ; that chair, *chigaro ichecho*.

There are special forms for the different classes of nouns, singular and plural, which are usually divided into four classes according to the degree of distance implied. These we shall call (1) the *Near*, (2) the *Farther*, (3) the *Distant*, and (4) the *Relative Demonstrative*.

(1) The *Near Demonstrative* is made by prefixing to the representative particle the vowel *i* or *u*, which coincides most naturally with the vowel in the repres. part. ; e.g. *chirongo ichi*, this waterpot ; *banga iri*, this knife ; *vupfu ubũu*, this meal ; *rupasa urgu*, this mat.

N.B.—The first class is an exception, as it takes *uyu* for the singular, and *aya* for the plural.

(2) The *Farther Demonstrative* is made from the above by changing the final vowel into *o* ; e.g. *chirongo icho*, that waterpot ; *banga iro*, that knife, &c.

(3) The *Distant Demonstrative* is made either by prolonging the sound, or by reduplicating the last syllable of the Farther Demonstrative ; e.g. *chirongo ichocho*, that waterpot yonder ; *vupfu ubũu*, that meal yonder.

(4) The *Relative Demonstrative* is made by prefixing the relative particle to *-ya*, and refers more to *time* than to distance, and to a special object not seen at the time of conversation, but known or mentioned before ; e.g. *musi uya*, that time (referring to some past time) ; *nombe iya*, that ox (about which you know).

The following is a table showing the four classes as used with the different classes of nouns :

		I.	(a)	(b)	II.	III.	IV.
I. Mu	sing.	uyu	iyeyu	uyo	uyo	or iyeyo	uya
	plur.	aya	iyaya	ayo	ayo	or iyayo	yaya
II. Mu	sing.	{ uyu	{ iwowu	{ uwo	{ uwo	{ or iyoyo	uya
		{ uyu	{ iyoyu	{ uyo	{ uyo	{ or iwowo	
	plur.	iyi	iyoyi	iyoyi	iyoyi	or iyeyo	iya
III. Chi	sing.	ichi	ichocho	icho	icho	or ichecho	chiya
						(ichocho)	
	plur.	izi	izogi	izo	izo	or izezo	ziya
						(izogo)	
IV. I	sing.	iyi	iyoyi	iyoyi	iyoyi	or iyeyi	iya
						(iyoyo)	
	plur.	idzi	idzodzi	idzo	idzo	or idzedzo	dziya
						(idzodzo)	
V. Ri	sing.	iri	irori	iro	iro	or irero (iroro)	riya
	plur.	awa	iwawa	awo	awo	or iwawo	aya
						(iwowo)	
VI. Ru	sing.	urgu	irgorgu	urgo	urgo	or irgorgo	rguya
	plur.	awa	iwawa	awo	awo	or iwawo	aya
						(iwowo)	
VII. Yu	sing.	idzi	idzodzi	idzo	idzo	or idzedzo	dziya
	plur.	ubgu	ibgobgu	ubgo	ubgo	or ibgobgo	bguya
VIII. Ku	sing.	uku	ikoku	uko	uko	or ikoko	kuya
		apa	ipapa	apo	apo	or ipapo	paya
Loc. { Pa		umu	imomu	umo	umo	or imomo	muya
{ Mu		uku	ikoku	uko	uko	or ikoko	kuya
{ Ku							

Note a:—Besides the above there is a combination of the representative particle with *-no* used with some of the classes for objects 'very near' or immediately present; e.g. this very house, *imba ino*; these days, *mazuva ano*; this Spring, *Chirimo chino*.

Note b:—The forms under column *b* of 'Near Demonstratives' are also used in this way; e.g. this very house, *imba iyoyi*; this very knife, *banga irori*.

Note c:—For the 3rd column the Demonstrative Pronouns have slightly different forms with different people and tribes; e.g. *ichecho* and *ichocho*, *idzedzo* and *idzodzo*, &c.

3. The *Locatives* are used with the demonstratives as in the following examples: 'in the house there,' 'at the kraal there,' 'at the mountain yonder,' &c., being rendered by *munu mu'mba*, *pa musha apa*, *pa gomo ipapo*, &c.

4. The expression 'here (there or yonder) he (she or it) is,' is usually rendered by prefixing *h* to the Demonstrative Pronoun of the class to which the object referred to belongs; e.g. (the man) here he is (*munu*) *hoyu*; (the chair) there it is, (*chigaro*) *hecho*; (rat) there it is, (*gozho*) *hero*.

5. The idea of 'the same' is expressed :

(1) by the Demonstrative Pronoun alone ;

(2) by the adj. *-mge* (see Lesson XXI.) joined to the class prefix ;

or

(3) by *-mene*, joined to the Representative Pronoun with or without the Demonstrative pronoun ;

e.g. the same thing $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{chinu ichochi} \\ \text{chinu chimge,} \\ \text{chinu (ichi) chimene.} \end{array} \right.$

Note.—*Mene* also means 'self,' and has the following forms for the personal pronouns :

Sing. 1 *ndi* (or *ndo*) *mene*, myself.

2 *u mene*, thyself.

3 *a mene*, himself.

Plur. *ti* (or *to*) *mene*, ourselves.

mu mene, yourselves.

ya mene, themselves.

VOCABULARY.

nyemba (4), bean.

muimbirgwe (2), tune.

mšana (1), fruit.

hosha (4), disease.

ku isa, to introduce, to place.

ku pfumba, to be distinct, to be clear.

ku yaya, to be sour.

ku bereka, to bear.

nokuti, because.

ku rgwara, to be ill.

ku fara, to be glad, be pleased.

ku pira, to worship.

chose, at all, altogether.

EXERCISE 38.

Translate : 1. Sing all of you, you know this hymn, its tune and its words. 2. This veld is good, the cattle like it. 3. That grass is sour, the cattle do not like it. 4. This old road is not distinct, that one is good ; there it is ! 5. Those white fowls lay ; these black ones do not. 6. This small tree bears much fruit ; those (trees) do not bear ; there they are ! 7. To-morrow I go to that village on that mountain yonder ; my boys go with me. 8. This rukweza meal in the small basket is good ; that is sour. 9. I want those long white mats on that fence yonder, I will place them in this very house of mine. 10. In this country the white people are sick often ; the mosquitoes bite them and introduce disease into their blood.

EXERCISE 39.

Translate : 1. Nyika ino ya ka naka zikuru, makomo ayo, ne nzizi dzayo, ne miti yayo. 2. Bva yanu yayo ha ya fari zikuru,

ruzhinji ya no rgwara ne hoshha ye nyika. 3. Ya no pira midzimu yayo, mgeya ya madzibambo ayo. 4. Zino ya no dzidza ku pira Mudzimu mukuru wo kudenga, Mudzimu wa zokwadi. 5. Minda iyi yedu ya ka bereka zikuru naka, iyo ha i za ka bereka chose. 6. Tora munyu uyo; nda tenga yupfu yuya bge zuroliya. 7. Mukadzi wako uyu wa ka yu siya pano, nokuti nda ka shaiwa munyu. 8. Ndi no da rukweza irgorgu, irgorgo ha ru zipi. 9. Mazuya ano yanu ya ka yuya yazhinji ku tenga mucheka uyu muchena ne nyemba. 10. Ya no da micheka chando chino, ya no u fuka, ya no fara na'wo.

LESSON XXIV.

INTERROGATIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

I. The SUBSTANTIVE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS are *ani*, 'who' (pl. *yanani*) for persons, and *inyi*, 'what,' for things. The Nominative and Objective of these are alike.

Examples: Whom do you see? *U no yon'ani?* (you see whom?); what is it? *Chinyi?* or *chiyi?*

(a) When used in the Nominative case or as the predicate after the copulative verb 'to be,' the interrogative *ani* follows the copulative particle *ndi*; e.g. who comes? *ndi ani u no yuya?* (lit. it is who, that comes); with whom does he come? *u no yuya na'ni?* (*na ani*); who is he? *uyo ndi ani?* (lit. he, it is who). 'What is your name?' 'what is my name?' &c. are rendered by *zita rako ndi ani?* *zita rangu ndi ani?* &c.

(b) 'Whose' is expressed by the genitive particle of the governing noun followed by *ani*; e.g. whose chair, *chigaro chani* (*cha ani*); whose husband, *murume wani* (*wa ani*); whose house, *imba yani* (*ya ani*), &c.

The genitive of *inyi*, 'what,' is made in the same way, but the *a* of the genitive particle changes into *e* on account of the *i* in *inyi*, and *inyi* is contracted into *i*; e.g. meal of what? *yupfu bgei?* (*bge inyi*); a house of what? *imba yei?* (*ye inyi*); a mat of what? *rupasa rgwei* (*rgwe inyi*)? &c.

(c) When used as object *inyi* is attached to the verb, whose

final vowel is changed into *e*, and *inyi* contracted into *i*; e.g. what do you say? *u no revei (reya inyi) ?*; why (i.e. for what) did you come? *wa ka yuyirei (yuyira inyi) ?*

Ne inyi, 'with what,' is contracted into *nei*; e.g. with what did you work, *wa ka bata nei ?*

(d) 'What is this?' 'what is that?' are rendered by *chinyi ?* or *chinyi ichi (icho, ichecho, &c.)*. *Munyi* (or *muyi*); *ironyi (iroyi)*; *mayi*; *b̄guyi*; *rguyi*, &c., are used with their respective classes, if the inquirer has, in the conversation, heard the *class* of the noun used, but not the *name* itself. For instance, if something with a name belonging to the *ri* class had been mentioned, the inquirer, not having understood, would ask: *Ironyi ?* what is it?

2. (a) The ADJECTIVE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is *-pi*, not to be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb *pi*, where? It follows the noun it distinguishes, and is used with its representative particle; e.g. which cattle? *zip̄fuwo zipi ?* which boys? *yakomana vapi ?* which house? *imba ipi ?* &c.

When used in the predicate it must follow the copula *ndi*, which changes its final vowel into *o*, *e*, or *a* according to the vowel of the pronoun following; e.g. which boy is it? *mukomana ndo upi ?* which oxen are they? *nombe nde dzīpi ?* which sweet potatoes are they? *mabura nda api ?*

Note.—There is also an *interrogative adjective kunyi* (or *kuyi*) (what sort of?) which is used without inflection with all the classes of nouns alike; e.g. what sort of man? of chair? of house? *munu kunyi ? chigaro kunyi ? imba kunyi ?*

(b) When the interrogative pronouns *ani* and *inyi* are repeated and joined by *na (ne)*, they mean 'whosoever?' and 'whatsoever?' e.g. *ani na(a)ni u no yuya ?* whoever comes? *inyi ne inyi i no yuya ?* whatever comes?

Upi no upi, ipi ne ipi, chipi ne chipi, are used as adjectives with nouns of the different classes, and have the same meaning; e.g. *munu upi no upi*, whichever man; *imba ipi ne ipi*, whatever house. Sometimes the enclitic interrogative particles *ko* or *ze* are used after the interrogative pronouns to emphasise the question; e.g. *ndo upi ko ?* which one (I pray)? *chinyi ko ?* what? *ani ze ?* who?

3. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

The Reflexive Pronoun is *zi* for all persons, classes, and numbers,

and precedes the root of the verb ; e.g. he killed himself, *wa ka zi yuraya* ; it (the dog) bites itself, *i no zi ruma*, &c.

4. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

Besides the Indefinite Pronouns mentioned in connection with the Interrogative Pronouns (viz. *ani nani*, whoever ; *chinyi ne chinyi*, *inyi ne inyi*, whatever), *nyakuti* or *ngana* (also *chengana*) are used to express the English 'such a person' or 'somebody' ; *chakuti* or *chokuti*, such a thing.

Note.—*-kuti* is used with the genitive particle of all classes ; e.g. *muti wokuti*, such a tree ; *chigaro chokuti*, such a chair ; *rupasa rgwokuti*, such a mat.

5. IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Ku is the Impersonal Pronoun 'it' ; e.g. it will thunder to-day, *ku cha tinira nasi* ; it is cold, *ku no tonora*.

Obs. *Ku* is also used as the expletive adverb 'there' ; e.g. *ku no vuya vanu vazhinji*, there come many people.

VOCABULARY.

cherene (5), shilling.
maka (4), matter, debt.
mupini (2), handle.
homo (4), bag.
ku rgwadza, to make sore, hurt.
ku ruha, to plait.

ku tinira, to thunder.
ku roya, to strike.
ku fuka, to wear.
ku rinda, to look after.
rgonzi (6), line, rope.

EXERCISE 40.

Translate : 1. With whom did you come yesterday ? 2. Who all came to help you to carry your grain ? 3. Which matter troubles you ? What makes your heart sore ? 4. What did you do at the house of that white man to-day ? 5. What sort of meal have these women ground ? 6. How many houses has this man built ? How does he build ? 7. They have not brought firewood, with what shall we make our fire to-night ? 8. Whose hat are you wearing ? Of what grass did its owner plait it ? 9. You will hurt yourself with that bad hoe of yours ; put in a new handle. 10. What has that child in its hand ? it (the child) will cut itself with the sharp knife. 11. I will go to work in your garden ; which hoe shall I take, what seeds, which plants, which line ? 12. Which boy will help me ? What is his name ?

EXERCISE 41.

Translate: 1. Muḥwanda iwowo ndo wani? Wangu, nda ka u tenga na mali. 2. Wa ka u tenga pa na'ni? Munu uya wo ku lisa pombe. 3. Ko u no ruka miḥwanda yo here? 4. Hoṅo, u no ruka ya marudzi ose, mimḡe midoko, mimḡe mikuru. 5. Wa ka sengei mangwanano mu homo yakwe? 6. Wa ka senga mabargwe; wa ka kwasha cherene rimḡe na'yo (homo), no munyu na mabargwe. 7. Ku no pisa nasi, chirimo cha šika pedo, ku cha tinira mangwana. 8. Mḡana wangu wa ka tamba ne damba, wa ka zi roya na'ro zikuru pa chiso chakwe. 9. Ndi ani wa ka mu pa damba irero? Ha u rindi mḡana za ka naka. 10. Pa huku idzedzo mbiri, yako nde ipi? Iyo nema, ndi no da ku i yuraya mangwana, ndi no shaiwa yusayi.

LESSON XXV.

THE VERB (6)—SUBJUNCTIVE AND POTENTIAL.

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The *Subjunctive* is formed by changing the final *a* of the verb root into *e*, and prefixing to it the personal pronoun or representative particle of the noun subject. In the third person singular the pronoun is *a* not *u*. The different forms would be:

Class	Sing.	Plur.
I.	<i>ndi vuye</i> , (that) I may come.	<i>ti vuye</i> , (that) we may come.
	<i>u vuye</i> , (that) thou mayst come.	<i>mu vuye</i> , (that) you may come.
	<i>a vuye</i> , (that) he may come.	<i>ya vuye</i> , (that) they may come.
II.	<i>u vuye</i> , (that) it may come.	<i>i vuye</i> (that) they may come.
III.	<i>chi vuye</i> , " " " "	<i>zi vuye</i> , " " " "
IV.	<i>i vuye</i> , " " " "	<i>dzi vuye</i> , " " " "
V.	<i>ti vuye</i> , " " " "	<i>a vuye</i> " " " "
VI.	<i>ru vuye</i> , " " " "	<i>a</i> (or <i>dzi</i>) <i>vuye</i> , " " " "
VII.	<i>vu vuye</i> , " " " "	<i>vu vuye</i> , " " " "
VIII.	<i>ku vuye</i> , " " " "	
Loc.	<i>pa, mu, ku vuye</i> , " " " "	

In Chikaranga this mood does not exactly correspond to the Subjunctive in English, but always implies a *wish* or *order*, and is very often used after the preposition *kuti*, that, in order that; e.g. *ndi no da kuti u vuye*, I wish that you come (I wish you to come); *ndi no ku dana kuti u inde ku huni*, I call you in order that you may go to the wood (to fetch wood).

2. The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative* or *Optative*, with or without the particle *nga* ; e.g. let me speak, *ndi reye* or *nga ndi reye*. If the plural implies more than two people an *i* is suffixed to the verb ; e.g. *nga ti reyei*, let us speak ; *ti nyengetere*, let us pray. With the second person this form is a *milder Imperative* than the ordinary forms in *a* and *ai* ; e.g. *mu yuye*, come (please).

Note.—A more polite and respectful imperative is expressed by using the 3rd person of the Subjunctive. For instance, in speaking to a chief, an inferior would say : *She a yuye pano*, let the chief come here, instead of *yuya* or *u yuye*.

3. When two imperatives follow one another, the second of them is put in the Subj. ; e.g. ' come and take ' would be translated : *yuya, u tore* (subj.), not *yuya, tora*.

4. When the Imperative (Subjunctive form) takes a pronoun as object, the subject pronoun is frequently omitted ; e.g. hear me, *ndi nzgwe* (for *u ndi nzgwe*) ; give (ye) us, *ti pe* (for *mu ti pe*). In the plural, or when it is desired to honour the person addressed, the form in *ei* is used ; e.g. give us, *ti pei* ; lead me, *ndi perekedzei*.

5. The Subjunctive is also used to express the English ' may,' ' shall,' or ' must ' ; e.g. May I go in there ? *ndi pinde imumo* ? Where shall I enter ? *ndi pinde na papi* ?

Used in dependent sentences it is preceded by *kuti*, that ; e.g. he told me that I must go to-morrow, *wa ka ndi yudza kuti ndi inde mangwana*.

6. The Subjunctive is often used where we would use the *Infinitive* in English, and it frequently is a matter of difficulty to the European to know just when to use the Infinitive and when the Subjunctive. The following rules will indicate their proper use :

(a) Where the action is to be, or has been, performed by the subject of the principal verb, the *Infinitive* is used ; e.g. I want to see, *ndi no da ku yona*.

(b) When the action is to be, or has been, performed by another, the *Subjunctive* is used ; e.g. I want you to see, *ndi no da kuti u yone*.

(c) If, however, the agent of the second verb is the object of the transitive principal verb, the infinitive may be used ; e.g. we teach the children to sing, *ti no dzidzisa yana ku imba*.

7. A *Future Subjunctive* is made by the aid of the auxiliary *go*, and a still more remote future by inserting *go zo* before the verb-root ; e.g. (that) I may come (at some near future time), *ndi go vuya* ; (that) I may come (at some distant future time) *ndi go zo vuya* ; *ndi go ti ndo vuya* (still further).

8. A *Potential Subjunctive* is made by inserting the potential particle *nga* ; e.g. *ndi nga go inda*, that I may be able to go.

9. (a) The *Negative form for the Present Subjunctive* is made :

(1) by inserting the negative particle *si* between the representative particle and the verb ; e.g. *ndi si vuyi*, (that) I may not come.

(2) by using the Subjunctive of the verb *rega*, followed by the Infinitive of the verb in question ; e.g. *ndi rege ku vuya here* ? must I not come ?

(b) For the Subjunctive Future, the negative form would be : *ndi go sa vuya* or *ndi go rega ku vuya*.

(c) For the Optative Subjunctive the negative would be : *nga ndi si vuyi* or *nga ndi rege ku vuya*, let me not come.

II. THE POTENTIAL.

1. (a) The *Present Potential* (which is often used instead of the Future simple) is formed by inserting the auxiliary *nga* between the representative particle and the verb root ; e.g. *ndi nga vuya*, I may or can come.

(b) A *Future Potential* is made by the help of the Future particle *zo* ; e.g. *ndi nga zo famba*, I may or can go at some future time.

2. *Compound tenses* of this mood may be formed with the help of the verbs *ku bvidza* or *ku gona*, to be able, followed by the infinitive ; e.g. *nda nga nda bvidza ku famba*, I could have walked ; *ndi cha bvidza ku famba*, I shall be able to walk.

3. The *Negative Potential* is made by :

(a) prefixing the negative particle *ha* or *a*, and changing the final *a* into *i* ; e.g. I cannot come, *ha ndi nga vuyi* ; or

(b) by using the negative of the verb *ku bvidza* or *ku gona*, followed by the Infinitive ; e.g. I cannot go, *ha ndi bvidzi ku inda*, &c. ; I could not go, *ha ndi zati nda ka bvidza ku inda* (i.e. I have not been able to go).

VOCABULARY.

ku nyepera } to tell.
ku yudza }
ku chimbidzika, to be quick.
ku pazura, to cleave, split.
ku fumira, to do or start early.
ku batira, to work for.
ku runga, to season.

ku gadzira, to get ready.
ku raira, to direct.
ku pararira, to scatter.
simutsa makumbo, to go for a walk.
nyere (4), a tin.
ku dzora, turn back.

EXERCISE 42.

Translate: 1. This boy wishes to go; let him go at once.
 2. Tell him to be quick, and let him take our letters. 3. Let those boys turn back the cattle that they may not destroy the gardens. 4. Tell all the women of the village to come early to-morrow that they may work for salt. 5. Do not linger on the way to-day, lest you sleep in the veld. 6. You may go to your home to-night and sleep (that you may sleep) there; but come back to-morrow early to do (that you may do) your work. 7. Where did you put the rukweza meal of yesterday? You may take it, and cook it this morning. 8. Tell the children of the school to draw (Subj.) water, and water (Subj.) the plants before my door. 9. They may go ten times, we will give each of them one tin of salt to season (Subj.) their locusts. 10. I can go with you (pl.) to-morrow, tell all the men they must (Subj.) get themselves ready, in order that we may start very early.

EXERCISE 43.

Translate: 1. Inda, u teme muti uyo, wa ka fa. 2. Ndi no da kuti yakomana yangu ya u pazure, ya ite huni dzo ku yesa moto. 3. Iwe u chimbidzike ku tema nasi, iyo ya go pazura mangwana; huni dzangu dza pera. 4. U ya nyepere, kuti ya yuye madekwano, ndi go ya raira. 5. Ha ndi bvidzi ku mu betsera naka, ziyo zangu za ka pera yo; ti no fa ne zhara tose. 6. Makei ndi cha tenga ziyo za ka wanda, ndi go zo betsera yachena, kuti ya rege ku fa ne zhara. 7. Vanu ye misha nga ya yuye yose ku tenga munyu ne micheka pano; ti no tenga zose. 8. Ti yuye lini? Mu cha tenga mazuva ose here? Ti nga yuya nasi? 9. Hono, mu nga yuya nasi na mazuva ose, bva mu rege ku yuya madekwana,

kuti mu rege ku ti shaiwa pa musha. 10. Madekwana ti no pararira, mumŋe ku munda, mumŋe ku danga re nombe, yamŋe ya no simutsa makumbo.

LESSON XXVI.

THE VERB 'TO BE.'

1. The verb 'to be' *ku li*, or *ku ya*, can never stand alone, but, as in English, is used as the copula, i.e. must be followed by an adjective, noun, or other part of speech, which refers to the subject. As will be seen from the following conjugation, *li* is used in some tenses, *ya* in others, while sometimes the two are used indiscriminately.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. <i>Ndi li (ri)</i> , I am.	<i>Ti li (ri)</i> , we are.
2. <i>u li (ri)</i> , thou art.	<i>mu li (ri)</i> , you are.
3. <i>u li (ri)</i> , he is.	<i>ya li (ri)</i> , they are.

The 3rd personal forms for the other classes would be :

2nd cl., *u li (ri)*, *i ri*; 3rd cl., *chi ri*, *zi ri*; 4th cl., *i ri*, *dzi ri*; 5th cl., *ri ri*, *a li (ri)*; 6th cl., *ru (rgu) li (ri)*, *a* or *dzi ri*; 7th cl., *yu* or *bgu li (ri)*; 8th cl., *ku li (ri)*; Loc. classes, *pa li*, *mu li*, *ku li (ri)*.

Perfect or Past Tense, I have been or I was, &c.

Sing.	Plur.
1. <i>nda ka ya</i> or <i>nda nga ndi li (ri)</i>	<i>ta ka ya</i> or <i>ta nga ti li (ri)</i> .
2. <i>wa ka ya</i> „ <i>wa nga u li (ri)</i>	<i>ma ka ya</i> „ <i>ma nga mu li (ri)</i> .
3. <i>wa ka ya</i> „ <i>wa nga a li (ri)</i> .	<i>ya ka ya</i> „ <i>ya nga ya li (ri)</i> .

Forms for the other classes are :

Class	Sing.	Plur.
2nd	<i>wa ka ya</i> or <i>wa nga u li</i> .	<i>ya ka ya</i> or <i>ya nga i ri</i> .
3rd	<i>cha ka ya</i> or <i>cha nga chi ri</i> .	<i>za ka ya</i> or <i>za nga zi ri</i> .
4th	<i>ya ka ya</i> or <i>ya nga i ri</i> .	<i>dza ka ya</i> or <i>dza nga dzi ri</i> .
5th	<i>ra ka ya</i> or <i>ra nga ri ri</i> .	<i>a ka ya</i> or <i>a nga a li (ri)</i> .
6th	<i>rgwa ka ya</i> or <i>rgwa nga rgu (ru) li (ri)</i> .	<i>a (dza) ka ya</i> or <i>a (dza) nga a (dzi) ri</i> .
7th	<i>bga ka ya</i> or <i>bga nga yu (bgu) li (ri)</i> .	<i>bga ka ya</i> or <i>bga nga bgu (yu) li (ri)</i> .
8th	<i>kwa ka ya</i> or <i>kwa nga ku li (ri)</i> .	
Loc.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} pa \\ ma \\ kwa \end{array} \right\} ka ya$ or $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} pa \\ ma \\ kwa \end{array} \right\} nga$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} pa \\ mu \\ ku \end{array} \right\} li (ri)$.

Note.—*Nda i ya* &c. is another form of the Perfect.

Imperfect : I was being, &c. (less frequently used), *nda nga ndi chi ri*, &c.

Pluperfect : I had been, &c., I was (long ago), *nda ha nga ndi ri*, &c.

Future : I shall be, &c., *ndi cha ya*, or *ndi no zo ya* (remote), &c.

Future Perfect : I shall have been, &c., or I would have been, *nda nga ndi chi ya*, *nda nga nda ya*.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense, I may be, &c. *ndi ye*, or, *ndi go ya*, &c.

Potential Mood.

Present Tense : I can or may be, *ndi nga ya*.

Future Tense : I may or can be (later), *ndi nga zo ya*.

Exhortative Mood.

Sing. let me be, *nga ndi ye* or *ndi ye*.

Plur. let us be, *nga ti ye*, *nga ti yei*, or *ti yei*.

Imperative Mood.

Sing, be thou, &c. *iye* or *u ye* (Subjunctive) ; plur. *iyai* or *mu ye* (Subj.).

Infinitive Mood.

to be, *ku ya*, or, *ku li*.

From the above it will be seen that *ri* is preferred when the representative pronoun has the vowel *i*, though both *li* and *ri* may be used.

The *Negative forms* for the verb ' to be ' are :

Present Tense : *ha ndi zati ndi ri* ; *ha ti ndi ri* ; or *ha ndi zi*.

Perfect Tense { *ha ndi zati nda i ya* ; or

Past Tense { *nda nga ndi sati ndi ri*.

Imperfect : *ha ndi zati ndi chi ri*, or *ha ti ndi chi ri*.

Pluperfect : *ha ndi zati nda ha ya*.

Future : *ha ndi nga yi* ; or *ha ndi zo yi* (more remote).

Subjunctive Mood.

Present : *ndi si ye* ; *ndi rege ku ya* ; or *ndi go sa ya* (more remote).

Potential Mood.

Present : *ha ndi nga yi* ; or *ha ndi bvidzi ku ya*.

Future : *ha ndi nga zo yi*.

Exhortative Mood.

nga ndi sa ya ; or *nga ndi rege ku ya*.

Imperative.

u sa ya ; or *rega ku ya*.

Infinitive.

ku sa ya.

2. When the subject is a noun, and the predicate is the verb 'to be' in the Present Indicative followed by an adjective, the verb 'to be' is not expressed, except in the *i* and *ri* classes, where the copula *i* is used ; e.g. this man is tall, *munu uyū murefu* ; my knife is black, *banga rangū i jena*.

In all other tenses the verb 'to be' is expressed ; e.g. his garden was large, *munda wakwe wa ka nga u li mukuru*.

3. When, however, the subject is a pronoun the verb 'to be' is expressed, as, I am tall, *ini ndi ri murefu* ; he was short, *eye wa nga a ri mufupi*.

4. When the predicate contains an adverb or a locative, the verb 'to be' is expressed ; e.g. I am here, *ndi li pano* ; the man is there, *munu u li po* ; he is at his home, *u li ku musha kwake*. Even when the verb 'to be' stands alone in the sense of existing, it must in Chikaranga be followed by an adverb ; e.g. 'God is' would be translated : *Mudzimu u li'po* (God is there).

Note 1.—When the simple Locative prepositions are followed by a personal pronoun, the verb 'to be' is used ; e.g. to you, *kwo u li* (lit. to you are) ; *pa ya li*, to them ; *pa ndi ri*, to me ; *ma (mu) ya li*, wherein they are.

Note 2.—The verb *ku ya* is often used in the sense of 'to become,' in which case the perfect has a present meaning ; e.g. *nda ya mukuru*, I am (lit. I have become) big ; *cha ye chirimo*, it is (it has become) spring.

VOCABULARY.

ku janira, ought, must.
ku terera, obey.

ku tama, to move away.
mubetseri (1), helper.

EXERCISE 44.

Translate : 1. This man has come to work, his wife is here also.
2. Our chief is kind, he loves his people. 3. My horse is white, yours is black. 4. We are the servants of the white man, he is yonder. 5. You must hoe your gardens this year, lest you be poor next year. 6. Where is my red dog ? It is in that hut. 7. Their gardens were large last year, this year they are small ; there will be hunger. 8. I cannot work much, I am a small child. 9. No, you are not small, you have become big. 10. We told the boy to fetch the horses (Subj.), but they (the horses) were not there.

EXERCISE 45.

Translate : 1. U li pano yo here ? Wa ka sika lini ? 2. Ndi li pano, nda ka sika zuro, ndi cha ya pa musha uno mgedzi miyiri.

3. Yana yako ma ka yuya na'yo here? Hono ya li pano, ya li yayiri. 4. Ndi ya yone; zino ya ya yakuru. 5. Ya no kura, hono; ya cha ya yabetseri yangu pa mibato yose. 6. Mu no fanira ku ya dzidzisa za ka naka, ya go terera, ya go ya yana ya ka naka. 7. Musikana wa ka naka, bva mukomana ha a tereri ini, mai yakwe; ha a zati a li munyoro. 8. Vanu yo musha uno ya ka wanda, ku musha kwedu yashoma. 9. Yamge ya ka tama, yamge ya ka fa, zino ta ya yashoma. 10. Nga ti batei tose; ti rege ku bata no yusimbe, ti go rega ku ya yachena pa musha wedu.

LESSON XXVII.

THE VERB 'TO BE' (CONTINUED).

1. When the subject is a noun or pronoun and the predicate the verb 'to be' in the present tense, followed by a common noun, the copula is *not* expressed, except before the *i* class (sing. and plur.) and the *ri* class (sing.), when the copula is *i*; e.g. This man is a carpenter, *munu uyu muvezi*; this thing is a chair, that a pot, that yonder a knife, *chinu ichi chigaro, icho i hali, ichecho i banga*.

2. When a proper name of a person follows the verb 'to be,' the copula *ndi* is used; e.g. That girl is Malyise, *musikana uyo ndi Malyise*. Before the proper name of a place, however, the copula is *not* expressed, e.g. That village is Ganda, *musha uyo Ganda*.

3. In all other tenses the verb 'to be' is expressed; e.g. this man was a carpenter, *munu uyu wa nga a li muvezi*; that woman was she, *mukadzi uyo wa nga a li iye*.

N.B.—The verb 'to be' joining two nouns agrees with the latter; e.g. that thing was a knife, *chinu chiya ra nga ri ri banga*; this woman was my friend, *mukadzi uyu ya nga i ri shamgali yangu*.

4. In negative and dependent sentences the verb 'to be' is always expressed; e.g. this man is not tall, *munu uyu ha a zati a li murefu* or *ha a zi murefu*; his garden was not large, *munda wakwe wa nga u sati (u li) mukuru*; this man is not a servant, *munu uyu ha a zati a li muranda (ha a zi muranda)*; that woman was not she, *mukadzi uyo wa nga a sati a li iye*.

5. (a) 'It is I,' 'it is thou,' 'it is he,' &c., are rendered: *ndi'ni, ndi'we, ndi'ye*; plur. *ti'su, ndi'mgi, ndi'yo*.

(b) 'It is not I,' 'it is not you,' 'it is not he,' &c., are rendered : *ha ndi zati ndi ri'ni*, *ha u zati u li'we*, *ha a zati a li'ye*, plur. *ha ti zati ti ri'su*, *ha mu zati mu li'mgi*, *ha ya zati ya li'yo*. The forms *ha ti ndi ri'ni*, &c., are also used.

The forms for the other classes are :

II. *ndi'wo* (*muti*) it is it (tree) ; *ndi'yo* (*miti*), it is they (trees) ; III. *ndi'cho*, *ndi'zo* ; IV. *ndi'yo*, *ndi'dzo* ; V. *ndi'ro*, *ndi'wo* ; VI. *ndi'rgwo*, *ndi'wo* ; VII. *ndi'bgo*, *ndi'bgo* ; VIII. *ndi'ko* ; Loc. *ndi'po* ; *ndi'mo*, *ndi'ko*.

E.g. 'This is the man' would be rendered, *munu uyu ndi'ye* (lit. this man, it is he) ; that is the chair, *chigaro icho ndi'cho* (lit. that chair it is it (the chair)), &c.

(c) The negative of these would be : *munu uyu ha a zati a li iye* ; *chigaro icho ha chi zati chi ri icho*, &c.

6. (a) The copula *ndi* or *ngi* (used in some dialects) may be followed by the possessive case, and then changes the final vowel according to rules in Lesson VII. for the genitive particle ; e.g. this is the white man's, *nde cho murungu* ; these pumpkins are the woman's, *mananga ndo wo mukadzi* ; these houses are his, *dzimba idzi nde dzakwe*.

(b) It is also used with the interrogative particle *-pi*, which or what, *ani*, who, &c. ; which mountain is that? *gomo irero nde ripi* ? whose is this chair ? *chigaro ichi nde chani* ? &c.

(c) In the same way it changes its final vowel before adjectives ; e.g. *ndo mumge musikana*, it is another girl ; *nda makuru* (*mabura*), these are big ones (sweet potatoes) ; *nde chikuru* (*chinu*) *pana zose*, this is the biggest one of all.

VOCABULARY.

ku perekedza, to lead, accompany.
ku tengesa, to trade.
ku nunga, to pick up.
ku putsa, to break.
ku bata, to hold.

ku bvira, to be possible.
ku mazha, to grind coarsely.
ku tumira, to send to.
chitanda (3), small stick.

EXERCISE 46.

Translate : 1. Those people under the tree are my servants.
 2. This boy is blind (a blind person) ; his friends lead him. 3. What

is in that basket ? It is meal of rukweza ; it is not white. 4. This firewood is not mine, I have not bought it. 5. It (the wood) shall be mine if I have bought it for salt. 6. Let us tell the people to come and trade to-morrow ; some may come to me, others may go to you, still others we can send (them) to them yonder. 7. Who broke these plates ? It is not I, perhaps it is the other girl. 8. Are those my cattle on the mountain yonder ? No, it is not they. 9. Which of these baskets is yours, which is mine, and whose is this grain ? 10. This is yours, that small one is mine, and the grain is my mother's.

EXERCISE 47.

Translate: 1. Wa ka batei mu ruyoko rgwako ? Chitanda hacho. 2. Nda ka chi nunga pa ruzhowa irgorgo, nde changu. 3. Nombe idzedzo pa ngoro yo murungu nde dze Chirumbi ; nde dzakwe dzose. 4. Ko idzedzo dzi ri mu danga, nde dzani ? Nde dzakwe yo ; wa ya mufumi. 5. Nombe dze Chikaranga ha dzi zati dzi ri huru, bva dzi no kweya za ka naka. 6. Wa ka kuya yupfu ubgo ndi ani ? Ha ndi zati ndi ri'ni, ndi Malyise. 7. Wa ka mazha zikuru, ha ku bviri ku bika sadza na'bgo ; yona ! ndi 'bgobgu. 8. Ndi'yo yana yako ya ka yuya madekwe here ? Ha ya zati ya li iyo. 9. Yaeni hayo ; ya cha inda ze nasi. 10. Imba yako ndi'yo here ? Kwete, ha i zati i ri iyo ; yangu, ndi'yeyo.

LESSON XXVIII.

THE VERB 'TO HAVE.'

1. This verb is expressed by the verb 'to be' followed by the prep. *na* (with), *ku ya na* (lit. to be with). It is conjugated exactly like the verb 'to be,' excepting that where *li* is used in 'to be' it is left out in 'to have' ; e.g. in the Present Indicative it is *ndi na* (not *ndi li na*). Perfect : *nda nga ndi na* ; Imperf. : *nda nga ndi chi na*, &c.

N.B.—*Na* changes into *no* and *ne* according to the noun that follows (see Lesson VII.).

Examples : That woman has a child, *mukadzi uyo u no mġana* ; I had a sheep, *nda nga ndi ne gwai* ; we shall have gardens, *ti cha ya ne minda* ; let me have money, *ndi ye na mali* ; I told him to have food-for-the-journey, *nda mu yudza kuti a ye ne mbuya*.

2. The negative forms are : Pres. Indic. : *ha ndi na*, *ha u na*, *ha a na*, &c. The other forms are exactly like those for the verb 'to be' with the addition of *na*.

Examples : I have no money, *ha ndi na mali* ; this woman had no children, *mukadzi uyu wa nga a si na vana* ; we shall have no gardens, *ha ti nga vi ne minda*.

3. The verb 'to be' followed by an adjective is frequently rendered in Chikaranga by the verb 'to have' followed by an abstract noun ; e.g. he is angry, *u ne hasha* (he is with anger) ; you are lazy, *u no yusimbe* (you are with laziness), &c.

4. The verb, *ku ya na*, to have, is often used where in English we would use the verb to be with the expletive adverb 'there' ; e.g. 'there is a man,' *ku (ya) no munu* (lit. it is with a man) ; there are many people, *ku na vanu vazhinji* ; here were fowls, *pano pa nga pa ne huku* ; within was darkness, *mukati ma nga mu ne rima*, &c.

Note.—The NEGATIVE for these sentences would be : *ha ku no munu*, there is no man ; *ha ku na vanu vazhinji*, there are not many people ; *pano pa nga pa si ne huku*, here were no fowls ; *mukati ma nga mu si ne rima*, within was not darkness.

5. 'I am there,' 'you are there,' 'he is there,' are expressed with the help of the adverb '*po*' (or '*yo*') ; e.g. *ndi ri'po*, *u ri'po*, &c., plur. *ti ri'po*, *mu ri'po*, &c. NEGATIVE : *ha ndi zati ndi ri'po* (or *ha ti ndi ri'po*) ; *ha u zati u li'po*, &c.

The other moods and tenses would take the same forms as the verb 'to be' with '*po*' ; e.g. *ha ndi zati nda ka ya'po*, I was not there ; *ha ndi nga vi'po*, I will not be there ; *u sa ya'po*, don't be there.

Note 1.—The verb 'to have' followed by the infinitive is often used to express the perfect tense ; e.g. *ha ndi na ku yona*, I have not seen.

Note 2.—The 3rd person present indicative, negative conjugation, is also expressed in the following way :

Class

I. *ha a'po*, he is not there.

II. *ha u'po*, it " " " "

III. *ha chi'po*, it " " " "

ha ya'po, they are not there.

ha i'po, " " " "

ha zi'po, " " " " &c.

If *chi* is inserted before the adverb, e.g.: *ha a chi 'po*, the meaning is: he is not there *any longer*. (See Lesson on Verbal Particles.)

VOCABULARY.

ganda (5), hide.
ku kora, to be thick, fat.
ku tiza, to flee from.
bani (5), plain.
ku kunda, to overcome.
muka (4), animal.
runyanga (6), horn, tusk.
shangwa (4), famine.

ɲanga (4), witch-doctor.
hakata (4), dice.
yumare (7), fierceness.
bako (5), cave.
ziya (5), heat.
ku thia, to be afraid of.
bvoyora, to pierce.
yinga, to want, desire.

EXERCISE 48.

Translate: 1. This year there was a great famine, many people had no food; some died of (with) hunger. 2. There is a witch-doctor in that village; he has his dice. 3. It does not matter (lit. there is no matter), you can come to-morrow to stamp the maize. 4. My red cow with the long horns had a black calf. 5. It is not cold here, and it is hot in Spring. 6. In this country there are many lions and other beasts of prey. 7. That white man had many cattle, has now bought more (cattle), (and) will be a rich man. 8. The great chief has many wives, but he has not many children. 9. This master is kind; he has many servants (and) they all love him. 10. Nothing (there is no thing) will grow in that garden of his, the soil is not good.

EXERCISE 49.

Translate: 1. Kare kwa nga ku ne zhou pa nyika ino, Yakaranga ya ka dzi vima. 2. Dzi ri'pi zino? Dza ka zo tiza vanu, dzi ri ku mapani kure, ku ne miti mizhinji. 3. Dzi ne nyanga chena pa miromo yadzo; varumbi ya no yinga idzo. 4. Dzi ne ganda gobvu zikuru, ha ku ne pfuti i nga ri bvoyora. 5. Zhou i huru pa muka dzose, bva i no thia shumba. 6. Zhou i nyoro, shumba i no yumare yukuru, ha ku ne muka i nga i kunda. 7. Shumba na zino dzi ri 'po pa nyika, bva ha ku chi ne zhou. 8. Yamge Yakaranga ya ne nyanga dze zhou dze kare-kare; dzi ri mu mapako ayo. 9. Varumbi yaya ya nga ya ne zhou ne shumba, wa ka dzi yona musi uya here? 10. Kwete, ha ndi zati nda ka ya 'po, ha ndi na ku dzi yona.

LESSON XXIX.

DEPENDENT FORMS OF THE VERB—CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Besides the ordinary positive and negative forms of the verb, with which we have had to do so far, there is a *dependent form*, used only in subordinate sentences and after certain conjunctions. In the *positive* conjugation it is the same as the regular form, except that in the Present Indicative Mood *chi* takes the place of *no*, and that in the 3rd person sing. (all tenses) the pronoun is *a* (not *u* or *wa*).

In the *negative* conjugation the particles *sa*, *si*, *si nga*, *sati* are used for the dependent form, and *follow* the pronoun instead of being used before it.

For the sake of convenience an abbreviated table of the most necessary of the dependent forms follows :

Indicative Mood.

	Positive Conjugation.	Negative Conjunction.
Present	<i>ndi chi yuya</i> , (if) I come.	<i>ndi si nga yuyi</i> , (if) I do not come.
Past	<i>nda ka yuya</i> , (if) I came.	<i>ndi sa ka yuya</i> , (if) I did not come.
Perfect	<i>nda yuya</i> , (if) I have come.	<i>ndi sati nda yuya</i> , (if) I have not.
Future	<i>ndi cha yuya</i> , (if) I shall come.	<i>ndi si nga zo yuyi</i> , (if) I shall not come.
Present Participle	<i>ndi chi yuya</i> , I coming ;	<i>ndi si nga yuyi</i> , I not coming.
Perfect Participle	<i>nda yuya</i> , I having come ;	<i>ndi sa ka yuya</i> , I not having come.

The form *nda i yuya* is frequently preferred in the Past Tense to *nda ka yuya*.

As remarked before, the pronoun in the third person in all the above forms is *a*. This, of course, applies only to the first class of nouns. In the other classes their respective representative pronouns are used.

Relative sentences are always *dependent*, but since they are of a rather more difficult construction, they will be fully treated in a later lesson.

2. (a) *Adverbial sentences of Place* take the dependent form ; e.g. Do you know where he went ? *U no ziya pa a ka inda here ?*

N.B.—In the *present tense*, however, the forms *ndi no*, *u no*, *a no*, &c., are used ; e.g. I do not know where he is going, *ha ndi zivi pa a no inda*.

(b) *Adverbial sentences of Time* are either expressed simply by the dependent form without a conjunction, or, if introduced

by 'when,' by a noun signifying 'the time' (e.g. *musi*, time; *zuya*, day, or *nguya*, time) followed by the relative sentence; e.g. he came to see me when I arrived, *wa ka yuya ku ndi yona ndi chi sika*; I came after he had gone, *nda ka sika, a bva*. The former can also be rendered: *wa ka yuya ku ndi yona musi wa* (the time which) *nda ka sika*.

3. Many Conjunctions govern the dependent form. We give examples of the most important of these:

deno, if (with a wish); e.g. if (only) he had come yesterday, *deno a i yuya zuro!*
deno . . . deno, if . . . then; e.g. if he had come yesterday, he would have seen the chief, *deno a ka yuya zuro, deno a i yona she*.

nyangwe { although; e.g. he will pay him, although he has not finished
nyanguya { his work, *u cha mu ripira, nyangwe a sati a pedza mubato wakwe*.
kana, if, whether; e.g. tell me whether he will come to-morrow, *u ndi yudze kana a cha yuya mangwana*.

sa { as, just as; e.g. I will do as he has done, *ndi cha ita sa iye a*
mgene sa { *ka ita*.

ku bva { since; e.g. he has been here since his mother left, *wa nga a ri*
ku bvira { *pano ku bva mai yakwe ya chi inda** (lit. his mother is leaving).

ku sika { until; e.g. I will stay until he comes, *ndi cha gara ku sika*
ku sikira { (or *ku sikira*) *a chi yuya*.

kuti, that, in order that, is used with the Subjunctive Mood which is always dependent (see Lesson on Subjunctive); e.g. come that you may learn, *yuya kuti u dzidze*.

Note 1.—The conjunction *kuti* is often left out, though the sense remains the same; e.g. *yuya, u dzidze*.

Note 2.—When *kuti* expresses a fact (not an order), it is followed by the independent Indicative; e.g. he told me that the boy is here, *wa ka ndi yudza kuti mukomana u ri pano*.

Note 3.—'Lest' is expressed by *kuti* with the negative Subjunctive; e.g. I tell you again, lest you forget, *ndi no ku yudza ze, kuti u rege ku kanganywa*.

4. Some conjunctions may be used either with the independent or dependent Indicative. Such are:

kana, if, when; e.g. I will give to you if you ask nicely, *ndi cha ku pa kana u no* (or *u chi*) *kumbira za ka naka*.

asi kana, except if, unless; e.g. I will not give to him unless he asks nicely, *ha ndi zo mu pi asi kana u no* (or *a chi*) *kumbira za ka naka*.

* Notice that the past or perfect tense in English is often rendered by the present in Chikaranga. In the former the time of action is judged from the speaker's standpoint, while in the latter the verb in the subordinate sentence is put in the present or past according to the tense of the verb in the preceding sentence.

5. The conjunctions *bva*, but ; *saka*, therefore ; *nokuti*, because ; *nyangwe za ka dero*, nevertheless ; *ipopo*, then ; *zino*, now ; and perhaps a few others, are followed by the independent form of the verb, as they join or introduce principal sentences.

6. *Na*, and ; *na . . . na*, both . . . and ; *kana*, or ; *nyangwe*, even, as well as ; *asi*, except ; *kana . . . kana*, or *nyangwe . . . nyangwe*, either . . . or ; *kana . . . kana*, or *nyangwe . . . nyangwe*, neither . . . nor, join words, and therefore need no special form of the verb.

VOCABULARY.

ku tenda, to be grateful.
ku wonda, to be thin.
ku paremaka, to be guilty.
ku tsamga, to be angry.
ku dzinga, to drive away.
ku vira, to set (of sun).
ku rega, to stop.

mubairo (2), reward.
ku nyora, to write.
fuma (4), possessions.
ku wira, to fall into.
nambo (4), time.
ku soda, to be ashamed.

EXERCISE 50.

Translate : 1. If you give me a little salt I shall be very thankful. 2. If he does not obey he will be guilty, and I shall be angry. 3. We have heard that the chief arrived yesterday ; he will remain at this village a long time. 4. I shall be glad if he will bring some new eggs ; my children like them very much. 5. He is angry because you do not work well ; you ought to be ashamed. 6. To-day my boys will work until the sun sets. 7. When the sun has gone, you may all stop working. 8. Since you do not wish to obey me, I will not give you your reward. 9. Do you know whether the milk has come ? I want to cook the porridge of the child. 10. I will give you your money when you go home, but to-day I will not.

EXERCISE 51.

Translate : 1. Mbga i no teyera tenzi wayo pose pa a no inda. 2. I no gara pa musha pake, i chi rinda imba ne fuma yakwe. 3. I nga mu betsera ku vima, nokuti i nga yanga, no ku bata muka. 4. I nga dzinga zikara, kuti zi rege ku pinda mu musha. 5. Kana tenzi wayo u no i dzidzisa za ka naka, i no chenjera zikuru. 6. Yarumbi ya no dzidzisa mbga dzayo kuti dzi rinde makwai. 7. Kana gwai rimge ra ka rashika, mbga i no kwasha ku sika i chi ri wana.

8. Kana ya ri wana i no fara zikuru, i no ri isa ku danga raro.
 9. Kare munu a li pa rgwendo rgwakwe, wa ka wira ku mawere ;
 wa ka fa, bva yanu ha ya za ka mu yona. 10. Pa sule, nokuti ya
 ka mu shaiwa, yanu ya ka inda ku mu kwasha ; ya ka wana magodo
 akwe oga ne mbğa yakwe ; ya ka a rinda ku şikira ya ka wonda
 zikuru ne zhara.

LESSON XXX.

CONSECUTIVE (NARRATIVE) FORMS AND PARTICIPLES.

I. When two or more verbs follow each other, connected in English by the conjunction 'and,' the first of them is put in the independent form, while the rest are used in what we shall call the CONSECUTIVE FORM, the conjunction being left untranslated. As this is used chiefly in narration, it may also be called the NARRATIVE FORM. It is conjugated in the present, perfect, and future and some compound sentences, and may be used after verbs in all tenses and moods.

(a) The *Present Tense* is the same as the present participle, or present dependent form ; e.g. this man comes and goes back, *munu uyu u no yuya, a chi dzoka*.

(b) The *Perfect*, which is used very largely in narration, has the forms : Sing. *ndi ka-, u ka-, a ka-* ; Plur. *ti ka-, mu ka-, ya ka-* ; e.g. I arrived and found my wife ill, and went to the doctor, and came back with medicine, *nda ka şika, ndi ka wana mukadzi wangu a chi rgwara, ndi ka inda ku nanga, ndi ka dzoka no mushonga*.

(c) The *Future* is the same as the Subjunctive with *go* ; e.g. they will go to-morrow and come back in the evening, *ya cha inda mangwana, ya go dzoka madekwana*.

(d) The *Negative* of these would be : Present : *ndi si nga*, &c. Perfect : *ndi ka sa*, &c. Future, *ndi go sa*, or *ndi go rega*, &c. ; e.g. they go and don't come back, *ya no inda, ya si nga dzoki* ; you went to your garden yesterday, and did not get rain, *ma ka inda ku munda kwenyu zuro, mu ka sa niwa* ; I will not hoe this year and will not reap, *ha ndi nga rimi naka, ndi go sa cheka vo*.

(e) The *Compound Tenses* : *ndi ka nga nda ka* . . . I had . . . and *ndi ka nga ndo* . . . I was on the point of . . . , &c., are also used in narration.

(f) The form consisting of 'ndo' with the Infinitive is very frequently used, with or without that given above, in all moods and tenses; e.g. he came and returned, *wa ka yuya, ndo ku dzoka*; he called me and gave me a blanket, and did not scold me, *wa ka ndi dana, ndo ku ndi pa jira, a ka sa ndi tuka*.

(g) If two verbs, agreeing with the same subject, are connected by 'and,' 'no' with the Infinitive is very frequently used, e.g. he was glad and grateful, *wa ka fara no ku tenda*.

(h) The *Present Participle* is also used in the same way, e.g. *wa ka fara, a chi tenda*. And in the same sentence all the different narrative forms may occur; e.g. he came, and saw, and took, and rejoiced, and was grateful, *wa ka yuya, a ka yona, ndo ku tora, a chi fara no ku tenda*.

II. The verb has no special form for the PARTICIPLES, but they are expressed by the construction of the sentence in a variety of ways. We give some of these:

(a) The *Present Participle* in '-ing' is usually rendered by the dependent form of the Present Indicative; e.g. seeing the lion he ran away, *a chi yona shumba, wa tiza*; I saw him stealing the grain, *nda ka mu yona a chi ba ziyo*; arriving here I found him cooking, *ndi chi sika pano, nda ka mu wana a chi bika*; I got lost, not knowing the way, *nda ka rashika, ndi si nga ziye zhira*. Not infrequently the Present Participle is also expressed by a locative preposition followed by the Infinitive; e.g. coming back, I saw him, *pa ku dzoka kwangu, nda mu yona*; being ill he said, *mu ku rgwara kwake, wa ka reva*. This would be the same as the English rendering: 'on my coming back' and 'in his illness.'

(b) The *Perfect* or *Past Participle* likewise is expressed by the dependent form of the verb (Past or Perf. Indicative); e.g. we found them gone, *ta ya wana ya inda*; I left him, (he) having eaten, *nda mu siya a ldyo*; he went home, not having finished his work, *wa ka inda ku musha, a sati a pedza mubato wakwe*.

(c) Besides the above the participle is often rendered in Chikaranga by the verb, or verbal conjunction *ku ti*, followed by either the Present or Past dependent Indicative, or by the Infinitive. In that case the verb *ku ti* really expresses the time of the action,

while the verb following indicates the action itself ; e.g. (1) Sitting down he read,

<i>u no ti ku gara</i>	}	<i>wo raya</i> , or <i>ndo ku raya</i> (lit. he reads).
<i>a chi ti ku gara</i>		
<i>wa ti a chi gara</i>		
<i>wa ti ku gara</i>		

(2) Having sat down he read the letter,

<i>wa ka ti ku gara</i>	}	<i>wa ka raya nwadi</i> , or <i>ndo ku raya</i> .
<i>wa ka ti a chi gara</i>		
<i>wa ka ti a gara</i>		

VOCABULARY.

ku tera, to pay tax.
ku wana, to get, earn.
ku chema, to be sad.
ku nyangaliha, to disappear.
ku raira, to instruct.
ku pukunyuka, escape.
ku sungira, to tie up.
ku rarama, to survive, live.
ku jema, to breathe.
ku nyura, to dive, sink.

ku gadzira, to put straight.
ku koniwa, to fail.
menderekedzo (4), bank or shore.
ku chemera, to mourn for.
ku budisa, to put out.
ku yata, to lie down.
mugodi (2), mine.
rugare (6), peace.
ku fara (8), breadth.
ku bata, to catch.

EXERCISE 52.

Translate: 1. That man has left this village and has gone to live at the village on the mountain yonder. 2. He left not having paid his tax ; now the police are looking for him. 3. Why do you sit here all day, not working, (and) not having the money for your tax ? 4. That man went to Selukwe, went to work in the mines, and got money ; now he is at home not fearing the tax. 5. Go to the white man, ask for work, and earn money as others have done. 6. Then you will come back, being glad ; you will be able to live in peace and hoe your garden. 7. Let my boy come, having put straight everything in the house ; I will leave, having instructed him. 8. In another country, far, the horses live in the house with the people, playing with the children, and eating out of their hands. 9. At yonder village a crocodile caught a small boy (when he was) fetching water at the river. 10. His mother is very sad ; she sits mourning her child, not hoeing her garden or even cooking.

EXERCISE 53.

Translate : 1. Mu rgwizi rukuru, Zambezi, ku ne ngwena dza ka wanda ; ta ka dzi yona, dzi chi yata pa musheche. 2. Mumge murumbi wa ka nga a ne pfuti, a ka dzi fura na'yo, a ka yuraya dzimge. 3. Bva zhinji dza ka pukunyuka, dzi chi tizira mu mvura ; dzi ka rarama. 4. Ne ngwindi dzi ri mu rgwizi ; ta ka dzi yona, dzi chi tamba mu mvura. 5. Ha ti na ku yona miyiri yadzo yose ; dzi ka budisa misoro yoga pa msoro pe mvura. 6. Dzi no shambira, dzi chi budisa mino, dzi go fema, ndo ku nyangalika ze, dzi chi nyura. 7. Ku no gozha zikuru ku dzi yuraya ; murumbi uya wa ka idza, a ka dzi koniwa. 8. Pamge ta ka yona natu, ti chi pfuyura ne chikepe ; ti ka fara sei na vamge yarumbi ! 9. Rgwizi irgorgo rgwa ka kura sei ! kana mu chi ru yona, mu cha karthiamara, mu chi yona ku fara kwargwo. 10. Ta ka famba pa msoro pargo ne chikepe, ti ka pedza mazuya matanatu, ti chi famba masikati ose, ti chi sungira pa menderedzo yusiku.

LESSON XXXI.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Besides the simple tenses of which we have treated, and for each of which we have given a simple negative form, there are many *Compound Tenses* formed by the help of *auxiliaries* (mostly forms of the verb 'to be' and the dependent forms of the verb).

1. The most important *Compound Tenses* are the Imperfect Tenses with their negatives, and the negative of the Perfect Indicative.

In these tenses the pronoun appears two or three times, i.e. before each auxiliary, as well as before the principal verb root.

(1) The *Imperfect* implies that an action was taking place at a certain time, and is formed by the auxiliary *nda nga* (I was) followed by the dependent present ; e.g.

Sing. 1st pers. *nda nga ndi chi yuya*, I was coming.
 2nd „ *wa nga u chi yuya*, you were coming.
 3rd „ *wa nga a chi yuya*, he was coming.

Plur. 1st pers. *ta nga ti chi yuya*, we were coming.

2nd „ *ma nga mu chi yuya*, you were coming.

3rd „ *ya nga ya chi yuya*, they were coming.

Note 1.—*Nda ka nga ndi chi yuya* has a more remote imperfect meaning and could be translated : I used to come.

Note 2.—The 3rd personal forms above are only those for the first *mu* class. The forms for the other classes will be readily found, as under Lesson XXVI.

(2) The *Imperfect of the Perfect* implies that the action had been taking place at a certain time, and is formed by the auxiliary *nda nga* followed by the dependent Perfect or Past Tense ; e.g.

Sing. 1. *Nda nga nda yuya*, I had been coming, &c.

The form *nda ka nga nda ka yuya* has a more remote past meaning.

(3) The *Imperfect Future* implies that the action will have been taking place (or was going to take place) at a certain time, and is formed by the auxiliary *nda nga* followed by the Future dependent ; e.g. Sing. 1. *Nda nga ndi cha yuya*, I was going (intending) to come &c.

(4) The *Imperfect Present Potential* implies that the action was possible at a certain time and has the following forms :

Sing. 1. *Nda nga ndo yuya* } I would come, or I was on the point of coming.
(or *nda' ndo yuya*) }

2. *wa nga wo yuya*, thou wouldst, &c.

3. *wa nga o yuya*, he would, &c.

(5) The *Imperfect Past Potential*.

Nda nga nda yuya, I would have come, or I had been on the point of coming (also, I have already just come).

Nda ka nga nda yuya is a more remote form.

(6) The *Negative Perfect*, which before has been given as *ha ndi za ka yuya* &c. (Lesson XV.), is more frequently used in the form of a compound tense ; e.g.

Sing. 1. *ha ndi zati nda yuya*, I have not come.

2. *ha u zati wa yuya*, thou hast, &c.

3. *ha a zati a yuya*, he has, &c.

Plur. 1. *ha ti zati ta yuya*, we have not come.

2. *ha mu zati ma yuya*, you, &c.

3. *ha ya zati ya yuya*, they, &c.

The forms *ha ndi zani nda yuya* and *ha ti nda yuya* and *ha ndi nati nda yuya* are also used.

2. The **NEGATIVE FORMS** of the above Imperfect Tenses are

formed by the auxiliary *nda nga* followed by the negative dependent forms ; e.g.

- (1) *Imperfect Negative* : *nda nga ndi si nga yuyi*, I was not coming.
- (2) *Imperfect of the Perfect Negative* : *nda nga ndi sati nda yuya*, I had not been coming.
- (3) *Imperfect Future Negative* : *nda nga ndi si nga zo yuyi*, I was not going to come.
- (4) *Imperfect Present Potential Negative* : *nda nga ndi si nga yuyi*, I would not come.
- (5) *Imperfect Past Potential Negative* : *ha ndi zati nda i yuya*, or *nda nga ndi sati nda i yuya*, I would not have come.

The verb 'to have' in its negative form *ha ndi na* is often used as an auxiliary with the Infinitive to form certain compound tenses ; e.g. *ha ndi na ku yuya*, I have not been coming (lit. I am not with coming) ; *nda nga ndi si na ku yuya*, I was not coming.

3. The COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERB 'TO BE' are formed in the same way as the above and are as follows :

- POSITIVE
- (1) *Present Imperfect* : *nda nga ndi ri*, I was being.
 - (2) *Imperfect Perf.* : *nda nga nda ha* (or *i*) *ya*, I had been.
 - (3) *Imperfect Fut.* : *nda nga ndi cha ya*, I will have been.
 - (4) *Imperfect Pres. Potential* : *nda nga ndo ya*, I would be.
 - (5) *Imperfect Past Potential* : *nda nga nda ya*, I would have been or I am on the point of being.
- NEGATIVE
- (1) *Pres. Imperfect* : *nda nga ndi si nga yi*, I was not being.
 - (2) *Imperf. Perf.* : *nda nga ndi sati nda i ya*, I had not been.
 - (3) *Imperf. Fut.* : *nda nga ndi si nga zo yi*, I will not have been.
 - (4) *Imperf. Pres. Potential* : *nda nga ndi si nga zo yi*, I would not be.
 - (5) *Imperf. Past Potential* : *ha ndi zati nda i ya*, I would not have been.
 - (6) *Perfect or Past Ind.* : *ha ndi zati nda ya*, I have not been, I was not.

VOCABULARY.

ku baya, to slaughter.
ku susura, to eat the morning meal.
ku dziyisa, to prevent.
ku ambuka, to cross.
ku tsunga, to take courage.

ku ita, to do.
ku tambura, to be troubled, suffer.
chinambo (3), chance.
sa izozo, so.
ku rayira, to eat the evening meal.

EXERCISE 54.

Translate : 1. We were going to walk far yesterday, but the rain came, (and) it prevented us. 2. They slaughtered a fat goat : the boys had brought it (come with it) the day before yesterday. 3. The women were not going to plaster the huts to-day, but I commanded them that they should do so. 4. Have the girls stamped the maize ? No, they had not been stamping them when

I was there. 5. When will they stamp? They will begin after they have eaten. 6. They have not eaten, because the pot was not boiling; they have not been able to cook their porridge. 7. I would have fallen, but I caught hold of that tree. 8. I was buying all this grain this morning, therefore I did not come to sit with you. 9. Do not go there unless your master commands you to go. 10. Our chief was a rich man, but now he has become poor; many cattle of his have died of (with) the disease; they have not been slaughtered.

EXERCISE 55.

Translate : 1. Ta nga ti si nga ziya kuti ma ka şika nasi. 2. Ma ka bva ku musha lini? Ta ka bva zuoliya, ti sati ta şuşura. 3. Ta nga ti chi da ku rayira no ku yata pa musha we Chininga, bva ta ka koniwa ku şika madekwe. 4. Rgwizi rgwa nga rgwa ti dziyisa, rgwa nga rgu zere, ti si nga bvidzi ku ambuka. 5. Pa sule yanu ya ka zo yuya, ya ka ti betsera ku ambuka, ta tambura zikuru. 6. Ha ti zati ta ka ziya kuti rgwizi ru zere, ta ka ru yona ta şika. 7. Ta nga to dzoka, yanu ya chi zo şika. 8. Ha mu zati ma ka thia here? Ta ka nga to thia, bva ta ka zo tsunga ti chi yona yarume ya ne simba. 9. Deno ti sati ta i yuya nasi, ta i rega ku yuya chose. 10. Chirimo cho şika, ta nga to fanira ku rima minda yedu, ta nga ti si ne chimşe chinambo cho ku yuya.

LESSON XXXII.

VERBAL PARTICLES AND AUXILIARY VERBS.

Besides the regular tenses and moods, which have been mentioned, there are many other forms, made by special auxiliary particles and verbs. These define the *time* or *manner* of the action, and give point and conciseness to the principal verb.

The following which are prefixed to the verb root are some of the most generally used particles :

(1) *Cha* and *chi* signify that the action is still going on, or was still present at the time spoken of; e.g. *ndi cha ldya*, I am still

eating; *ya chi (ri) 'po*, they are still there; *danda ri cha ka bata*, the pole is still strong.

N.B.—*Chi* is used with the verb 'to be.'

(2) *Chi* is also used to give to the verb a present meaning; e.g. *nga ya chi inda*, let them be going (now); *ndo chi tora hali*? Must I take the pot at once?

(3) *Mbo* may mean 'first,' 'already,' 'before,' and 'yet'; e.g. *nda mbo inda ku munda*, I first went to the garden; *wa mbo yuya*, he has already come; *mbga ya mbo ruma here*? has the dog bitten before? &c.

(4) *Zo* and *go* are used to express future time and mean 'afterwards' or 'later'; e.g. *wa ka zo ndi pa*, he gave to me afterwards; *u cha go yuya pa sule*, he will come later.

(5) *To* means 'already' or 'after all'; e.g. *mahova a to ibva*, the bananas are already ripe; *ya cha to inda here*? will they go after all?

(6) *To ngo* or *do ngo* has the meaning of 'ever,' 'never' (when used with the negative), 'at all' or 'yet'; e.g. *wa do ngo yona shumba here*? have you ever seen a lion? *ha ndi zati nda to ngo i yona*, I have never yet seen it.

(7) *Si* is used in the sense of 'being in the habit of'; e.g. *Vasikana iyayo ya no si yuya pano*, these girls are in the habit of coming here.

(8) *Ngo* means 'just,' 'only,' 'merely'; e.g. *ti no ngo famba*, we merely walk (without a purpose); *ndi no ngo ku pa*, I just give to you.

(9) *Cha ngo* means 'only just'; e.g. *nombe idzedzo dzi cha ngo yuya zino*, those cattle have only just come.

(10) *Zo* or *wo* is used to express the purpose for which the agent comes; e.g. *nda yuya ku zo bata mubato wangu*, I have come to do my work; *nda zo mutsa mai yangu*, I have come to visit my mother.

(11) *Ndo* expresses a purpose, at the same time implying motion to a place; e.g. *u ndo diridza miti*, go and water the plants; *nda ka ndo chera mwura*, I went to fetch water.

(12) *Ndo* also means 'and then' when used in narration with the Infinitive; e.g. *mukadzi uyo wa ka mbo yuya mangwanano, ndo ku dzoka, ndo ku zo inda ku munda kwake*, that woman first came

here this morning, and then returned, and then later went to her garden.

(13) *Išo* intensifies the meaning of the verb before which it stands ; e.g. *nyika ino ya ka išo naka*, this country is very (extremely) fine.

(14) *Do*, generally used with the Imperative, gives it a beseeching significance ; e.g. *do vona*, look (I pray) ; *do ti pai*, do give us (please).

Note a.—When these verbal particles are inserted before the verb root in the Subjunctive Mood, the final vowel of the verb changes into *a* ; e.g. *u inde*, but *u mbo inda* ; *kuti a bate*, but *kuti a ndo bata*, &c.

Note b.—When the object is a personal pronoun, it is placed between the verbal particle and the verb root ; whereas if the object is a noun it follows the verb root ; e.g. *ndi cha ndo mu dana*, I will go and call him ; *ndi cha ndo dana mukomana*, I will go and call the boy.

VOCABULARY.

ku kamina, to limp.
ku kwazisa, to greet.
ku pombera, to bandage.
ku nyara, to be tired.

ku rangarira, to remember, care.
ku nyarara, to be quiet.
ku phanya, to pound, bruise.
ku tuma, to send.

EXERCISE 56.

Translate : 1. Have you come to look for work ? No, I am only walking. 2. Fetch some water first ; if you return I will give you some salt. 3. I will go to fetch water in that calabash, my child can go to chop wood. 4. My child does not go to the school, he is still small. 5. He will go later, when he is big. 6. I did not go to my garden this morning, I was still grinding grain. 7. That white man is in the habit of coming here to this country (in order) to buy cattle. 8. He is already rich, but is still wanting more cattle. 9. You say to me your leg is sore, but you don't ever limp. 10. My leg is only just healed now ; I was limping very badly. 11. The doctor took the medicine, then pounded it, then put it on my leg, then bandaged it with a cloth. 12. Please give me food ! Don't trouble me, you must go away immediately.

EXERCISE 57.

Translate : 1. Kana mukomana uyu a chi da, nga a chi inda nasi, ta nyara na'ye. 2. U no si kumbira ku famba, a chi ti

tambudza. 3. Ha a cha gari pano no mufaro, ha ti cha mu di. 4. Nda ka mbo mu raira ruzhinji, nda to rega. 5. Ha a tereri, u no ngo ita zakwe, ha a to ngo rangariri na padoko. 6. Ti cha ndo tsaka mumge mukomana mangwana ku zo bata mibato yakwe. 7. Raira murume uyo, a ndo dana mukomana uya pa musha pake. 8. Ndi'ye, u cha ngo bva pa mukadzi wo murumbi, u no iso ziya ku bata mubato wo ku bika. 9. Hoŋo, a do yuya hakwe, ti cha fara na'ye zikuru. 10. Zuroliya wa ka yuya pano; wa ka mbo kwazisa yose, ndo ku zo ndi betsera ku tsaira, ndo ku ndo chera mvura, ndo ku diridza miti yangu, a chi ngo bata zose, ndi si nga to ngo mu rairi.

LESSON XXXIII.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. Besides the verbal particles mentioned in the last lesson, there are certain verbs which are used as auxiliaries, where in English we would use an adverb to modify the verb. Such are:

(1) *Ku chimbidzika*, to hasten; e.g. *chimbidzika ku yuya*, come soon (lit. hasten to come).

(2) *Ku dzokera*, *ku pama*, or *ku bğurudzura*, all meaning 'to repeat'; e.g. *wa ka pama ku kumbira*, he asked again (lit. he repeated to ask); *bğurudzura ku suka ndiro*, wash the plates again.

(3) *Ku wedzera*, to add; e.g. *ya ka wedzera ku reya*, they spoke more (lit. they added to speak).

(4) *Ku wanza*, to do frequently; e.g. *u no wanza ku yuya*, he comes frequently.

(5) *Ku yavarira*, *ku rgwisa* or *ku kara*, to be on the point of; e.g. *mğana wa nga a chi rgwisa ku fa*, the child was on the point of dying; *ndi no yavarira ku inda*, I am on the point of going.

(6) *Ku natsa*, to do well; e.g. *natsa ku pfuma hazu*, sew the clothes well (lit. do well to sew).

(7) *Ku nyanya*, to be intense, grow worse; e.g. *murumbi uyo u no nyanya ku reba*, that white man is very tall (lit. is intense to be tall).

(8) *Ku sana*, *ku fana*, or *ku wana*, to do meanwhile; e.g.

yakadzi va sana ku gadzira imba, the women meanwhile prepared the house.

Note.—*Sana ku* is often contracted into *sano*; e.g. *va sano gadzira*. So also *jana ku*, *wana ku* and *naisa ku* into *jano*, *wano*, and *naiso*.

(9) *Ku gere* (perfect of *ku gara*) meaning 'not yet'; e.g. *ti gere ku bika*, we have not yet cooked.

All the above auxiliaries are followed by the Infinitive of the principal verb.

2. Several auxiliary verbs govern the principal verb in its dependent form. Such are:

(1) *Ku ramba*, followed by the present Dependent Indicative (or present participle) signifying continuity of action; e.g. *nda ka ramba ndi chi famba*, I continued walking; *wa ka ramba a si nga bati*, he continued not to work.

(2) *Ku bva*, followed by the Dependent Indicative, meaning 'to be on the point of' or 'nearly'; e.g. *wo bva o tsamga*, he is on the point of getting (becoming) angry; *hali ya bva yo vira*, the pot was on the point of boiling.

(3) *Ku dzimana*, followed by the Narrative Perfect, signifying that the action will take place after some time of waiting for some other action to take place first; e.g. *ti cha dzimana, ti ka dzoka*, we shall (delay and) return after some time; *nda mbo gara, bva nda ka dzimana ndi ka vuya*, I first sat (waited), but after some time I came. *Ku dzikana* is used in the same way.

(4) *Ku nguva*, followed by the Past or Perfect Dependent Indicative, signifying that the action took place a long time ago; e.g. *murume uya wa ka vuya here? Hono, wa nguva a gara pa mukova*, has that man come? Yes, he has been sitting at the door a long time.

(5) *Ku ti*, to say, followed by the Dependent Indicative or the Infinitive, is used as an auxiliary to express the exact time when the action took place, and signifies 'as soon as,' 'while,' 'just before' and 'after' according to the tense in which it occurs; e.g. *wa ti a chi sika* (or *ku sika*), as soon as he arrived (lit. he said he arrives); *wa ti a cha bata*, while he was still working; *a chi ti ku vuya*, just before he came (lit. he will say to come); *wa ka ti ku sika*, after he had arrived (lit. he said to arrive). (See also Lesson XXX.)

(6) *Ku mba* signifies that the action took place, or will take place immediately. It is always followed by the principal verb in the perfect tense (dependent); e.g. *wa mba a wira pasi*, he fell to the ground immediately; *u mba wa inda*, go at once. This latter is a very strong and emphatic imperative, and could also be rendered: You must go at once.

(7) *Ku mbenge*, followed by the Dependent Perfect, signifying that an action took place first, and was succeeded by another; e.g. *wa mbenge a li pano mangwanano, zino ha ti ziwi pa a li*, he was here this morning, now we do not know where he is.

(8) *Ku deya*, to do so, followed by the Infinitive, generally refers to some manner or time in which the action was, or is, performed, *ndi'ni nda ka deya ku yuya ku zo kumbira mushonga makei*; it is I, I came (in a certain way, or at a certain time) to ask for medicine last year.

(9) *Ku nenge*, 'to seem' or 'to be like,' is used as an auxiliary followed by the Independent Indicative and gives to the verb the signification of probability; e.g. *u nenge u cha yuya*, probably he will come (he seems, he will come).

VOCABULARY.

ku nara, to growl.
ku bvarura, to tear.
ku rumisa, to bite badly.
ku tora makumbo, to track.
ipopo, thereupon.
ruzha (6), noise.
ku rgwira, to save, deliver.
ku tuka, to scold.

ku kwakukira, to jump upon.
ku pukumyuka, to escape, survive.
sanu (5), hatchet.
gosho (5), mouse.
ku yola, to be clean.
ku teya, to trap.
ruvazhe (6), yard.
yunyoro (7), gentleness.

EXERCISE 58.

Translate: 1. You may go to your village to-morrow, but come back soon that I may send you to fetch our letters. 2. You must wash those clothes again, you have not washed them well, they're not clean yet. 3. I did not get angry, and spoke gently (with gentleness) but he only scolded more. 4. We were on the point of going on a journey, but the rain came suddenly, it prevented us. 5. It rained in the night, and it will be worse to-day. 6. Some women will go early, and will begin to hoe, while the men are still here; they will follow later. 7. This boy of mine continues to be

disobedient ; after some time I will drive him away. 8. How you have delayed to make the tea ! Isn't the water boiling yet ? It is nearly boiling now. 9. Be quick, we came a long while ago, and have just been waiting for it (the tea). 10. Just before the teacher came the children were making a great noise (in the meantime), but as soon as he arrived they were as quiet as mice. 11. This man will probably build well ; it is he who built that beautiful house on the hill yonder (in that way). 12. I am tired of you, I will not hear you any more, go at once.

EXERCISE 59.

Translate : 1. Ko wa mbo yona munu uyo here ? Ngwe ya ka mu ruma makei. 2. Kwete, ha ndi na ku mu yona, wa mbenge a li pa ruyazhe rgweddu nasi, bva ndi nenge nda nga ndi si'po. 3. Ndi'ye wa ka deya ku yuya ku tengesa huni dzakwe mazuya aya. 4. Ngwe ya ka mu ruma zikuru, i ka bvarura chiso chakwe chose, i ka rgwisa ku mu yuraya. 5. Murumbi wa ka nga a ka i teya ne pfuti yusiku, i ka pukunyuka, i ka sano tiza. 6. Mangwana iye na vamge yazhinji ya ka i teyera, ya chi ti : ti cha chimbizika ku i yuraya, i go rega ku ti tambudza ze. 7. Ya ka ramba ya chi famba, ya chi tora makumbo ayo, ku sika ya ka zo i wana mu denere. 8. Ya ti i chi ya yona, ya ka nara, ya ka nyanya ku tsamga, i chi pama ku nara ze. 9. Ipopo ya bva yo tsaka ku ruma pa matiye ose. 10. Munu uya wa sano gadzira pfuti yakwe, bva a chi yayarira ku fura, ngwe ya mba ya mu kwakukira. 11. Vamge ya ka tiza, bva yayiri ya ka dzimana, ya ka dzoka ku mu rgwira, ya ka i tema ne sanu, no ku i baya ne pfumo. 12. Wa ka zo nyanya ku rgwara, a ka rgwisa ku fa, bva wa nguya a pora.

LESSON XXXIV.

THE RELATIVE SENTENCE.

Because relative sentences are of a rather difficult construction, we have left them until now, when the student should be far enough advanced in the language to easily master them.

I. POSITIVE FORMS.

In Chikaranga there is no relative pronoun, which undergoes

inflexions for the different cases, but it is rendered, or supplied in a variety of ways.

(1) When *used as the subject* the relative pronoun 'who,' 'which,' or 'that,' has the same form as the representative pronoun; e.g. the boy who works here will leave, *mukomana u no bata pano u cha bva*; the ox which bellowed is in the kraal, *nombe ya ka kuma i ri mu danga*; the meal which is in the basket smells bad, *yupfu yu li mu dengwana, yu no nuwa*.

(2) When *used as the Object* (Accusative and Dative cases) the relative takes the same form as the genitive particles of the different classes; e.g. the knife which you lost was mine, *banga ra wa ka rasha ra nga ri ri rangu*; the house which he built has fallen, *imba ya a ka vaka, ya wa*; the woman to whom you gave the salt is glad, *mukadzi wa wa ka pa munyu, u no fara*.

(3) (a) The relative in these cases, especially when the subject of the verb in the relative sentence is a *noun*, is often rendered by the *demonstrative pronoun* in the following way: The tree which the men cut down, was very tall, *muti uyo varume va ka u tema, wa nga wa ka reba zikuru* (lit. the tree, that one, the men have cut it down); that chair which the carpenter made, is broken, *chigaro chiya, muvezi wa ka chi yeza, cha ka vunika*; the woman to whom her husband gave the garden, is here, *mukadzi uyo murume wakwe wa ka mu pa munda, u li pano*.

(b) Such sentences are, however, more frequently put in the *Passive Voice*; e.g. *muti wa ka temiwa na varume*, the tree which was cut down by the men.

(c) A *curious construction* frequently used is the following: *banga ra rasha mukomana*, or, *banga mukomana ra a ka rasha*, the knife which the boy lost.

(4) When occurring in the *Locative Case*, the relative pronoun is expressed by the Locative pronouns *ma*, in which, *pa*, at which, *kwa*, to or from which; e.g. bring the basket in which she put the meal, *yuya no muhwanda, ma a ka isa yupfu*; the land from which he came is good, *ku nyika kwa a bva, kwa ka naka* or *nyika ya a no bva'po* (or *po i ri*) *ya ka naka*; the house at which he worked is burnt down, *pa imba pa a ka bata, pa ka tsa*, or *imba ya a ka bata pa i ri ya ka tsa*.

(5) When preceded by the preposition 'by' or 'with,' the same forms as in (2) are used, but the preposition is placed after the verb, followed by the emphatic pronoun; e.g. the woman to whom I spoke, *mukadzi wa nda ka bġereketa na'ye* (lit. the woman who I spoke with her); the tree which they brought (came with), *muti wa va ka vuya na'wo*; the hoe with which I work, *badza ra ndi no bata na'ro*; the wagon with which he travels, *ngoro ya a no famba na'yo*; the meal with which she cooks her porridge, *vupfu bġa a no bika sadza rakwe na'bġo*; &c.

(6) When used in the Possessive Case, the relative is rendered as in the following sentences: The girl whose mother died, is here, *musikana uyo, mai yakwe va ka fa, u li pano*; the man whose wife he doctored, has left, *murume uyo, mukadzi wakwe wa a ka rapa, wa ka inda*; the white man with whose wagon he came, has arrived, *murungu uyo, ngoro yakwe ya a ka vuya na'yo, wa ka šika*.

N.B.—The verb in relative sentences is always put in the dependent form, except in the case of (1) above.

II. The NEGATIVE FORMS for the above are easily made, by simply putting the dependent verb into its negative form. In the first class 3rd person singular *u* not *a* is used.

Examples: (1) The child that does not cry, *mġana u si nga chemi*; the house that does not leak, *imba i si nga doni*; the man who did not come, *murume u sati a vuya*; the porridge which will not thicken, *sadza ri si nga zo kori*.

(2) The boy which you do not like, *mukomana wo u si nga di*; the fence which he did not build, *ruzhowa rgwa a sati a vaka*; the trees which we had not planted, *miti ya ta nga ti sati ta sima*; the horse which they will not ride, *biza ra va si nga zo tasi*.

(3) The village at which you do not sleep, *pa musha pa u si nga vati*; the house in which they did not eat, *mu imba ma va sati va llya*; the garden to which he has not gone, *ku munda kwa a sati a inda*; the land from which he does not come, *ku nyika kwa a si nga bvi*.

(4) The children to whom I do not speak, *vana va ndi si nga bġereketi na'vo*; the baskets with which he did not carry grain, *mihwanda ya a sati a senga ziyo na'yo*; the hand with which he had not struck, *ruyoko rgwa a ka nga a sati a roya na'rgwo*; the hoes with which they will not work, *mapadza a va si nga zo bati na'wo*.

(5) (a) The mothers whose children do not come to school will come to-day, *mamai ayo, yana yayo ya si nga yuyi ku chikoro, a cha yuya nasi*.

(b) A woman, whose husband did not fight, was taken prisoner, *mukadzi uyo, murume wakwe a sati a ka rgwa, wa ka sungwa*; the trees whose branches are not broken, *mili iyo, matavi ayo a sati a ka vunika*; the meal whose owner will not sell it, *yupfu ubgo, mgene wa'bgo ha a nga yu tengisi*.

Note a.—In any relative sentence (positive or negative), the demonstrative pronoun may be introduced for the sake of emphasis or conciseness, with or without the copula *ndi* (*ndo, nda, nde*). If occurring in the Accusative case, the accusative personal pronoun may also be used along with the relative form; e.g. the sentence: The meal which he brought (came with) yesterday, is that which I speak of, may be rendered: *yupfu bga a ka yuya na'bgo zuro, ndo bga ndi no reya*, or *yupfu ubgo* (demons. pron.) *bga a ka yuya na'bgo zuro, ndi'bgo* (copula and demons. pron.) *bga ndi no yu* (acc. pron.) *reya*.

Note b.—The relative is frequently rendered by the genitive particle with the infinitive of the verb; e.g. people who came yesterday, *yanu yo ku yuya* (lit. of to come) *zuro*; a man who works in wood, *munu wo ku veza huni*; the meal that is bad, *yupfu bgo ku ipa*; the hand that does not work, *ruyoko rgwo ku sa bata*.

VOCABULARY.

ku isa, to burn, be burnt down.
ku yanda, to hide oneself.
ku fuka, to put on, wear.
ku simira, to clothe oneself.
ku yanza, to hide.
ku roya, to punish.

ku rega, to stop.
buku (4), book.
ku tonora, to be cold.
ku ramba, to refuse.
chipo (3), present, gift.

EXERCISE 60.

Translate: 1. Those houses which we saw that time have all been burnt down. 2. The people who lived in them have moved, and gone to another hill. 3. The boy who runs fastest, let him come here; I will give him calico, which he can put on. 4. My knife whose point the cook broke cannot cut now. 5. Is this man the same who came (Infinitive) yesterday? No, it is not he. 6. I am digging my garden with the hoe, with which I worked last year; it is still sharp. 7. Our boys searched for that basket which the tall girl stole. 8. She stole it, then ran and hid it in that tall grass yonder at the side of her garden. 9. That large horse of the white man used to kick; now he has bought another which does not kick. 10. The boy who comes to school

(and) who has not brought his book, will surely be punished. 11. The girl who sews best, to her I will give a nice present. 12. I want a boy who does not steal, one who will not stop working when I am not there.

EXERCISE 61.

Translate : 1. Yakadzi iyayo ya ndi no yona pa dzimba idzedzo, ya no bve'pi? 2. Ya no bva pa misha i ri pa seri pe gomo, pa si na yatengisi. 3. Ya ka yuya ku zo tengisa ziyo zayo, izo za ya ka senga mu matengwana ayo. 4. Ya no da munyu kana micheka yo ku fuka here? 5. Ya nenge ya no da zose, munyu wa ya nga runga miliyo yayo na'wo, ne micheka ya ya nga fuka. 6. Chando chino chi no nyanya ku tonora, saka ya no tsaka (chinu) cho ku fuka. 7. Bva ha ya nga rambi munyu yo, nokuti miliyo i si no munyu ha i zipi. 8. Nga ya chi yuya zino, ndi tenge; ndi no da ku inda ku mumge mubato wangu, wa ndi gere ku pedza. 9. Ya to yuya, haya! Ziyo za ya ka yuya na'zo, hezo! Zi nenge za iso naka. 10. Pa misha pa ya no bva, ndo pa yakuru ya ka deya ku kumbira mudzidzisi mazuya aya, a ta ka nga ti chi famba rgwendo ku nyika yayo.

LESSON XXXV.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

In listening to the native speech, one cannot but notice how much more frequently the Passive Voice is employed than is the case in English. Not only is the Passive preferred, but even intransitive verbs (which have no Passive) are often changed into a derivative form, and then used in the Passive Voice. For instance, instead of saying: My father gave me a fowl, the Yakaranga prefer to say: *I was given a fowl* by my father; and instead of saying: The mother lost her child (by death), they would say: The mother was died to by her child (*mai ya ka firgwa no mgana wayo*), i.e. changing the intransitive verb *ku fa* into the relative form *ku fira*, and then using it in the Passive.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is made by changing the final *a* of the verb into *wa*, *iwa* (*ewa*), *hwa* (*thwa*) or *gwa* according to the consonant

preceding the *a* ; e.g. *sunga*, to bind, *sungwa* or *sungiwa*, to be bound ; *bata*, to take hold of, *batiwa* or *bahwa* (*bathwa*), to be taken hold of ; *dana*, to call, *daniwa* (*danwa*) to be called ; *nyaradza*, to silence, *nyaradziwa* (or *nyaradzgwa*) to be silenced.

(1) Where the Passive is made in *iwa* or *ewa*, *iwa* is used when the vowel in the penultimate syllable is *a*, *i*, or *u* ; and *ewa* is preferred when it is *e* or *o* ; e.g. *ku dzana*, to dance, Pass. *ku dzaniwa* ; *ku rinda*, to watch, *ku rindiwa* ; *ku sunda*, to push, *ku sundiwa* ; but *ku tenda*, to believe, *ku tendewa* ; *ku goya*, to distribute, *ku goyewa*, though *tendiwa* and *goyiwa* would not be wrong.

N.B.—The same rule holds good with all suffixes to the verbal root in forming derivative verbs: (See next Lesson.)

(2) Verbs in *ga* and *ka* usually take only *wa*, though *iwa* and *ewa* are also frequently used ; e.g. *ku tenga*, to buy, *ku tengwa* (as well as *ku tengewa* or *ku tengiwa*) ; *ku suka*, to wash, *ku sukwa* (as well as *ku sukiwa*).

(3) Monosyllabic verbs take *iwa* ; e.g. *ku ba*, to steal, *ku biwa* ; *ku na*, to rain, *ku niwa* ; *ku rgwa*, to fight, *ku rgiwa* ; &c.

Exception *ku wa* (*ku nzgwa* in some dialects) takes *ku wikwa* (*ku nzgwikwa* or *ku nzikwa*).

(4) Verbs in *ra* make the Passive in *rgwa* ; e.g. *tora*, to take, *ku torgwa* ; *dira*, to pour, *ku dirgwa*.

The form in *iwa* is, however, often used here too ; e.g. *ku fara*, to rejoice, taking both *ku fargwa* and *ku fariwa* ; *ku dzara*, to sow, both *ku dzargwa* and *ku dzariwa*.

(5) Verbs in *sa* and *ta* usually take *hwa* (*shwa*, *thwa*) ; as *ku bvisa*, to take away, *ku bvishwa* (as well as *ku bvisiwa*) ; *ku bata*, to take hold of, *ku bathwa* (*bathwa* or *batkwa* in some dialects), as well as *ku batiwa*.

(6) Verbs in *ma* sometimes take *mga* as well as *iwa* ; e.g. *ku tema*, to chop, *ku temga*, as well as *ku temiwa* ; *ku ruma*, to bite, *ku rumga*, as well as *ku rumiwa*.

2. A few verbs form their passive irregularly, viz. *ku pa*, to give, makes *ku puwa* (or *piwa*) ; *ku yuraya*, to kill, makes *yurawa* ; *ku kanganwa*, to forget, has *kanganikwa* ; *ku shaiwa*, to miss (not to find) takes *shaikwa* ; *ku koniwa*, not to be able, *konekanwa*.

More irregular even are : *ku ti*, to say, Pass. *ku nzi*, *ku nz̄wi*, *ku i*, *ku wi* ; *ku dero* (or *daro*) to say so or do so, Pass. *ku wargwo*, *ku wergwo* or *ku nzargwo* ; *ku dini*, Pass. *ku hun̄wi* or *ku nzīwi*.

Note.—When a transitive verb is put into the Passive Voice, the object as in English becomes the subject of the passive verb, and the original subject is placed after the verb, and connected to it by the prep. *na* (no or ne), 'by' ; e.g. *mb̄ga i no ndi ruma*, the dog bites me, becomes *ndi no rum̄ga ne mb̄ga*, I am bitten by the dog.

VOCABULARY.

ku nonoka, to be slow.
ku yiga, to put away.
ku rima, to plough, hoe.
ku pera, to end, be finished.
ku sa tana, to take a short time.
gashu (5), rope, riem.
ku taka, to stone.
badza re Chirumbi, plough.
ku tenda, to trust.

kwazo, properly, well.
ku dikana, to love.
ku perekedza, to accompany.
dzoro (5), turn.
yanu (1 pl.), natives.
maka (4), matter, affair, debt.
ku ripa, to pay.
ku tuta, to heap up.

EXERCISE 62.

Translate : 1. Your horse was being tied by my boy, when I was called to come here to-night. 2. By whom were our horses untied this morning ? By that same boy of mine who usually does that work ; I found them untied. 3. Where were the riems put ? Were they taken care of properly ? 4. They were not taken by me, they were put away by the boy who works in the garden. 5. He can be trusted, and will not lose anything which is placed into his hands. 6. This white man is much beloved by all the natives of the country. 7. He is told all their affairs, and they are helped by him. 8. By whom were the cattle seen to-day ? It was not my turn to herd cattle ; they were being herded by another. 9. By whom was your garden hoed this year ? By a man called Gudo, who was paid with salt ; he was also given food by me. 10. The trees which were planted, and the grain which was sowed, all have grown well ; if the rain comes, and it (the grain) is not scorched (burnt) by the sun, we shall not want food.

EXERCISE 63.

Translate : 1. Minda ya Yakaranga i no rimiwa na mapadza madoko, saka ya no nonoka zikuru. 2. Deno ya i ya ne badza re

Chirumbi, riya, ri no kweyiwa ne pombe, ya i chimbidzika ku pedza yo. 3. Badza riya ha ri tani; kana ku chi rimiwa na'ro, munda wose u no ngo pera ne zuya rimge. 4. Zuroliya ta ka inda ku minda; ta ka ndo niwa zikuru ti chi bathwa ne mvura, ti ri pa zhira. 5. Nasi, ndi chi bva ku musha, nda nga nda rumga ne nyoka, bva ya ka zo takwa na yakomana, ya nda nga ndi chi perekedzwa na'vo. 6. Ha ti zati ta ka famba ne zhira iyi, nokuti kwa nga kwa nzgwikwa kuti i no si fambiwa ne shumba. 7. Za nzi na yakadzi ya pfuyura nasi, ya ka yonekwa zuro, bva ya ka konekanwa ku yurawa. 8. Munu, u no nzi Muzenda, wa ka wanikwa a chi ba mabargwe edu, aya, a ka tutiwa na yakadzi. 9. Gwai ra nga ra rashiwa no mulisi zuro, ra ndo shaikwa na yakomana nasi. 10. Mgana uya, wa nga a chi gara pa mu li kare, wa ka zo hunwi pa sule? Wa ka zo torgwa ne hama dzakwe.

LESSON XXXVI.

DERIVATIVE VERBS—RELATIVE AND CAUSATIVE SPECIES.

The Verb may, by the aid of special suffixes, form a number of derivative species. These modified forms of the verb are in very common use, and should be well mastered so as to be easily employed.

I. (1) The RELATIVE or DIRECTIVE SPECIES (also called the OBJECTIVE SPECIES) is used to signify that the action is performed with relation to, or in the direction of, some object, and is formed by changing the final *a* of the verbal root into *ira* or *era*; e.g. *ku bata*, to work, *ku batira*, to work for; *ku dzoka*, to return, *ku dzokera*, to return to.

Note (a)—An intransitive verb becomes transitive, when taking the relative suffix; and (b) a transitive verb when changed into the relative species, may take a direct and an indirect object; e.g. (a) *ku mira* (intransitive) becomes *ku mirira* (transitive); e.g. *ndi no ku mirira*, I wait for you. (b) *U no ndi kwashira huni*, he seeks wood for me, *ndi* being the indirect, and *huni* the direct object.

(2) This species would in English be rendered by the verb followed:

(a) by the preposition 'for,' and signifies that the action is performed with relation to an object; e.g. *u no ndi bikira*, he cooks

for me. 'Why' or 'for what' is also expressed by this form; e.g. *wa ka temirei muti?* (i.e. *temira inyi*), why did you cut (lit. you cut for what) the tree? the Passive of this sentence would be: *muti wa ka temirgwei* (i.e. *temirgwa inyi*) *ne'we?* Why was the tree cut by you?

(b) *by the preposition upon or against*; e.g. *inda ku pfigira huku*, go and shut (the door) against (upon) the fowls; *ti cha sosera shumba*, we shall make a fence against the lion.

Note.—The above can also be used in the Passive Voice; e.g. *ndi no biki(r)gwa na'ye*, I am cooked for by him; *huku dxi no pfigi(r)gwa*, the fowls are shut up.

(c) *by the preposition in, at, to, or towards*; e.g. *mğana u no rgwarira mu'mba*, the child is ill in the house; *ya ka dzokera ku musha*, they returned to the kraal; *gwai ra ka fira ku bundo*, the sheep died in the veld; *vanu ya no yangira fuma*, people run towards riches.

Note.—If a relative clause stands in the Locative Case, this form of the verb must be used; e.g. this is the house in which the white man was ill, *imba ndi'yo ma ka rgwarira murungu*.

(3) The participial phrase used as an adjective and signifying 'for doing' or 'for doing with' is expressed by the genitive particle followed by the infinitive of this species; e.g. *ndiro yo ku ldzira* a plate for (the purpose of) eating; *hali yo ku bikira*, a pot for cooking.

(4) With some verbs, the simple form is used to express direction *from*, while the direction *towards* is signified by the relative form; e.g. he descended from the hill, *wa ka buruka gomo*; he descended towards the river, *wa ka burukira ku rgwizi*; the plate fell from the table, *ndiro ya ka wa pa tafura*; but, the plate fell to the ground *ndiro ya ka wira pasi*.

(5) 'Until' or 'as far as' is expressed by *ku şikira* (to arrive at), and 'from' . . . 'as far as' by: *ku bva . . . ku şikira*; e.g. I will go with you as far as Yuyuli, *ndi cha inda ne'we ku şikira Yuyuli*; he will walk from Selukwe to Gwelo, *u cha famba ku bva Chirugwi ku şikira Gweru*.

II. (a) The CAUSATIVE SPECIES of the verb is formed by changing the final *a* into *isa* or *esa*, and indicates that the action expressed by the verb is caused by its subject; e.g. *u no ndi fambisa*,

you cause me to walk ; *ya no tengesa huni dzayo*, they cause to buy (i.e. sell) their wood.

(b) When the verb root ends in *ra* and *ka*, the causative is generally made in *dza* and *isa*, while the forms in *isa* and *esa* are also used ; e.g. *ku pera*, to come to an end, makes *ku pedza* ; *ku shwedera*, to approach, *ku shwededza* ; *ku zara*, to be full, *ku zadza* ; *ku yira*, to boil, *ku vidza* (or *yirisa*) ; *ku seka*, to laugh, makes *ku setsa* ; *ku naka*, to be good, makes *ku natsa*.

Exceptions : *Ku mira*, to stand, makes *ku misa* ; *ku pinda*, to go in, makes *ku pinza*.

Note 1.—Some verbs in *ka* generally make their causative in *sa* ; e.g. *ku dzoka*, to return, makes *ku dzosa* ; *ku dzaka*, to descend, *ku dzasa*.

Note 2.—The Passive Voice of this species ends in *iwa*, *hwa* (after *s*), and *gwa* (after *z*) ; e.g. *ku bvisa*, take away, passive *ku bvisiwa* or *ku bvishwa* ; *ku nyaradza*, to silence, make *ku nyaradziwa* or *ku nyaradzwa*.

Note 3.—Intransitive Verbs become (a) Transitive, when changed into the Causative Species, and (b) when already transitive, take a double object ; e.g. *ndi no misa danda*, I make the pole to stand ; (b) *ndi no ya zivisa mashoko*, I acquaint them with the news (*ya* and *mashoko* being the double direct object).

VOCABULARY.

ku nyara, to be tired.
ku rovera, to drive in.
ku shwera, to spend the day.
ku zadza, to fill.
ku shanda, to do house work.

ku ngudza, to cause to wash.
ku nomosa, to cause to delay.
mutorgwa (1), a stranger.
mubairo (2), payment.

EXERCISE 64.

Translate : 1. I shall wait for you, so that we may go to our work together. 2. I will first finish my work in the house, and will then go to dig in the garden. 3. This woman's heart is very sore ; she is weeping for her child ; she lost (was died to by) a pretty little girl yesterday. 4. Do not give your child rukweza, feed it with porridge of maize ; it will make the child grow big. 5. I went down to your garden yesterday ; it has been eaten by the baboons ; they have finished all your maize. 6. By whom were the baboons seen ? Was no one sent to the garden to shoot them ? 7. There was nobody who saw them ; they descended from the mountain very early this morning, (then) destroyed the garden, then returned to the rocks. 8. The women are very tired this evening, they must not be waited for at school. 9. Many of

them are still cooking ; perhaps they will be delayed by their housework ; they will first have to put the children to sleep also. 10. The mother is ill in that house ; her child cries for her, it is hungry ; bring a cooking pot, and let me cook porridge for him ; give me also a plate in which to dish it up for him.

EXERCISE 65.

Translate : 1. Ma nga mu li'pi nasi ? Isu ta ka ndo sukira murumbi. 2. Ma ka yotesa nguwo here ? Ma ka dzi chenesa zikuru here ? Kana ma ka dero u cha mu ripira za ka naka. 3. Hono, ta ka ndo shwera zuya rose ti chi suka ; ti ka dzokera ku musha ikozino. 4. Pinda mu'mba na yana, u ya ngudze no ku ya fukidza hazu dza ka naka, ya go fadza yanu. 5. Zadza hali ne mvura, chimbidzika ku i yidza ; ti no da ku bikira yaeni, ya ta shikirgwa na'yo ikozino. 6. Ndi ani wa ka mua mbusa rgwizi ru zere ; ta ka betsergwa na yanu yo musha u li pedo na'rgwo. 7. Ya ka ti sengeru numbi dzedu, ya ka ti ambusa no bgato, no ku ti bikira sadza, ya si nga rey i mubairo. 8. Zokwadi, ya ka mu itira za ka naka ; nokuti Yakaranga, kana ya li yatorgwa, ha ya ziye ku ya betsera. 9. U ndo rovera mbambo pa danda, ri go bata, u go dziyirira pombe na'ro. 10. Mgana wa ldyira mu ndiro iyi sadza, ra a bikirgwa na yatete yakwe mu hali ya yasikana yo ku bikisa.

LESSON XXXVII.

DERIVATIVE VERBS (CONTINUED).

I. The INTENSITIVE SPECIES is formed in the same way as the Causative (ending in *isa* or *esa*), and intensifies the meaning of the simple verb ; e.g. *ku gara*, to sit, *ku garisa*, to sit long ; *ku yona*, to see, *ku yonesa*, to see well ; *ku rima*, to hoe, *ku rimisa*, to hoe deep. Sometimes, to emphasise the meaning still more, the suffix *isa* is repeated ; e.g. *ku yonisisa*, to see very well ; *ku garisisa*, to sit very long.

The verb in this form may also mean that the action is done ' too much ' ; e.g. *ma ka rovesa mgana*, you beat the child too much.

Note.—The Passive is made in the same way as that of the Causative Species.

II. The RECIPROCAL SPECIES is formed by changing the final *a* of the verb root into *ana*, and signifies that the action is done reciprocally ; e.g. *ku roya*, to beat, *ku royana*, to beat one another ; *ku tarira*, to look, *ku tarirana*, to look at one another ; *ku bata*, to hold, *ku batana*, to hold one another.

Note 1.—The prep. *na* is often used along with this species ; e.g. *mai yangu ya no dana na bambo yangu*, my mother and my father love one another ; *ha ndi siyani na'ye*, he and I do not leave one another.

Note 2.—The Causative of this form is sometimes made in *idza* instead of *isa* ; e.g. *ku fananidza*, to make like one another ; and in *nya* when a number of objects are concerned ; e.g. *ku paradzanya*, to separate two from one another, and *ku paradzanya*, to separate several or many objects from one another.

III. The STATIVE or SUBJECTIVE SPECIES is formed by the suffix *ika* or *eka*, and denotes a state or condition of the subject ; e.g. *ku rasha*, to lose, *ku rashika*, to be lost ; *ku putsa*, to break, *ku putsiika*, to be broken ; *ku yona*, to see, *ku yoneka*, to be visible. All verbs belonging to this species are intransitive, and yet may be followed by an object, as in the sentence : *nombe ya ka vunika gumbo*, the ox has broken its leg (lit. the ox is broken the leg).

A few verbs have the stative suffix *ara* ; e.g. *ku remara*, to be deformed ; *ku pofumara*, to be blind ; *ku yonekara*, be visible, evident.

IV. (a) The REVERSIVE SPECIES is formed by the suffix *ura*, *urura* or *unura*, and indicates the reverse of what the verb denotes in its simple form ; e.g. *ku fuka*, to cover, *ku fukura*, to uncover ; *ku tuta*, to load, *ku tutunura*, to unload ; *ku sunga*, to bind, makes *ku sunungura*, unbind ; *ku peta*, to fold, makes *ku petenura*, unfold.

(b) More often the relative ending *ira* or *era* is changed into the reversive suffix ; e.g. *ku funira*, to cover, *ku funura*, to uncover ; *ku monyera*, to wind, *ku monyurura*, to unwind ; *ku pombera*, to coil, *ku pombunura*, to uncoil.

Note.—This species makes the Passive in *rgwa*, and the Stative in *uka* ; e.g. *ku zarugwa*, to be opened ; *ku zaruka*, to be open.

V. The DIMINUTIVE SPECIES is formed by reduplicating the verb root, and expresses the idea of feebleness or aimlessness of action, or of continuous repetition ; e.g. *ku famba-famba*, walk aimlessly ; *ku bata-bata*, work feebly ; *ku cheka-cheka*, cut small or repeatedly.

VI. Any two or more of the above species may be combined, and so form a COMPOUND SPECIES ; so the Relative and Reciprocal species are combined in the verb *ku rimirana*, to hoe for one another ; the Relative and Causative species in *ku bikisira*, to cause to cook for ; the Causative and Reciprocal in *ku fambisana*, cause each other to walk ; the Reciprocal, Causative, and Relative in *ku enzanisira*, to cause to be equal to one another for an object.

Note.—The Passive of such compound verbs takes the Passive ending of the last species of the compound ; e.g. *ku bikisira*, Pass. *ku bikisirwa*.

VII. Besides the derivative species of verbs mentioned, some Causative verbs are formed from nouns and adjectives by the help of suffixes ; e.g. *ku fupisa*, to shorten, from the adj. *fupi*, short ; *ku chenesa*, to make white or clean, from the adj. *chena*, white.

VIII. Some verbs with a simple meaning have a derived form, the root having become obsolete. Such are : *ku woneka*, to say good-bye ; *ku funira*, to cover, &c.

VOCABULARY.

ku ibwa, to be ripe, be done.
ku seyenvera, to work for.
ku pesana, to miss one another.
jundo (5), knot.
murairo (2), law.
mutero (2), tax.
ku ita nyasha, to have sympathy.
ku chinya, to spoil, waste.
ku zikana, to be known.
ku shongana, to meet.

musengwa (2), load.
Kristu (1), Christ.
mashoko (5 pl.), news.
ku rungama, to be right.
ku junda, to tie.
ku isawusa, to lead astray.
ku junga, to think.
ku nyengedzera, to deceive.
Dziti (5), a Mutabele.

EXERCISE 66.

Translate : 1. You have beaten the boy too hard ; he is small, and has lost his mother. 2. Teach ye your children to love one another and to help one another in all their work. 3. This man and his younger brother love one another ; they have hoed for one another, and will reap for one another, when the grain is ripe. 4. I have just untied that knot ; who has tied it again ? 5. Help me to fold this cloth ; it was unfolded for the women who came to sell their grain this afternoon. 6. Bear ye one another's burdens (burdens for one another), and so fulfil the law of Christ. 7. This

boy comes from the town of the white men ; he has walked very fast, and has brought our letters with good news. 8. He and the boy who went from here missed each other on the road ; we thought they would meet one another. 9. Open the pot, take out the meat for yourself, put it in the plate, and cover it (the pot) again. 10. That good man has had his arm broken ; now he cannot hoe (but) just works feebly here at home.

EXERCISE 67.

Translate : 1. Ta ka wonékana na babamunini yedu, ya ndo seyenzerá mutero wayo Chirugwi. 2. U nenge u cha ndo u wana here ? Vamge ya ka kwashisa, ya ka ndo shaiwa, ya ka dzokera ku musha ya si na. 3. Ndi cha fara zikuru, kana a chi sunungurgwa, nokuti u no tambura, a chi ngo kwasha-kwasha kwose. 4. Kuda kana a chi natsa ku bata, yarumbi ya cha mu pa mubato, u nga yuya a sununguka. 5. Hoño; mubato wo ku bika ndi'wo wo u no ziyisa ; kana a chi piwa iwowo, u nga farisisa, u nga ya batira no moyo wakwe wose. 6. Yakaranga ha ya nzgwaní za ka naka na Madziti ; kare ya ka nga ya chi yengana zikuru no ku yurayana. 7. U ndi funurire hali, ndi no da ku runga nyama, ti go zipirgwa na'yo. 8. Kana mu chi betserana, mu chi itirana nyasha, mu cha ya yanu ya ka naka, mu chi farirana. 9. Fambisanai pa zhira ya ka naka, mu dzidzisane zose za ka rungama, mu rege ku tsawusana no ku nyengedzerana. 10. Dende ra mai yangu ra ka wanika ku tsime, ra chinyika chose ; wa ka ri putsa ha a nga zikanwi zino.

LESSON XXXVIII.

INTERJECTIONS, IDIOMATIC FORMS, AND ENCLITICS.

1. Like most other Bantu languages, Chikaranga abounds in exclamations. The *Interjections*, most generally used, express :—

Affirmation ; e.g. *E ! Eya ! Hoño ! Hekani ! Ndizo !*

Negation ; e.g. *Kwete ! Sa ! Bodo ! Doño ! Eyo ! Hai sa !*

Astonishment ; e.g. *Mai we ! Nandi ! Baba yangu we ! Ai wa ! Hezo !*

Congratulation ; e.g. *Makorokoto ! Hekani waro ! Hekani zedu !*

Pain ; e.g. *Yo we ! Nandi we ! Mai we ! Shu !*

'Truly' is rendered by *Zokwadi ! Hekani ! Hono yo ! Ziro kwazo ! Hinga !*

'Why!' as in the sentence : 'Why! are you here too!' is expressed by *Gara ! Nambeshwa ! Nambergwa ! (Nambera !)*

Toko ! or *Toko waro !* corresponds to 'It serves you right !'

When calling somebody, *we* is suffixed to the name ; e.g. *Muzenda we !*

2. Besides the above interjections, the *Yakaranga*, like many other Bantu tribes, use a very idiomatic construction with the verb *ku ti*, to say, followed by certain exclamatory particles. This is a very expressive way of speaking and imparts great zest and liveliness to the conversation. Some of the older people especially use this construction to such an extent that it is most difficult for a European to follow their conversation.

Some of these particles are : *zi*, black or green ; *mbembe*, white ; *pa*, full ; *pfa*, overflowing ; *nyakata*, soft ; *kwesere*, level or smooth ; *nwiro*, quiet ; *reru*, light ; *wawa*, empty ; *koyo*, red ; *tasa*, straight, &c.

Such phrases are used as *adjectives* ; e.g. *biza ra ka ti zi*, a black horse (lit. the horse, it said black) ; *mucheka wa ka ti mbembe*, the calico is white (lit. the calico, it said white).

Very frequently the particle *ngo*, just or merely, is inserted before *ti* ; e.g. *nombe dza ngo ti zi mu bani*, the cattle in the plain were absolutely black (lit. the cattle just said black in the plain).

3. Besides those given above for forming adjectives, particles like the following express certain *ways of action* : *nde, nde, nde !* of following each other, single file ; *kubu !* of falling into water ; *zambu !* of falling on the ground ; *pfocho !* of disappearing ; *pewu !* of sleeping ; *hayu hayu !* of walking fast. Examples : *Bge ra ka ti kubu*, the stone fell into the water ; *mukomana uya wa ka ti pfocho*, that boy has disappeared entirely.

4. There are several *monosyllabic particles* which are suffixed to verbal stems and other parts of speech, and emphasise or modify the meaning of such words. These often are not accented, but

throw the accent back on the syllable preceding. The most important of these are :

(1) *ze* meaning again ; e.g. *vuya ze*, come again. When added to pronouns or nouns the *ze* merely emphasises ; e.g. *wa ka dero ndi ani ? Ini ze*. Who did so ? I, of course.

(2) *vo*, meaning also, suffixed to all parts of speech ; e.g. *va no vuya vo*, they come also ; *ava vo*, they also.

(3) *bva*, suffixed for emphasis ; e.g. *u cha vuya bva*, will he ever come ? (doubting) ; *ndi'ni bva !* is it I, indeed ! (do you suspect me ?)

(4) *i . . . (inyi)* when suffixed to the simple verb denotes 'what' as the direct object ; when suffixed to the relative form of the verb, it denotes 'why' (for what) as has already been explained ; e.g. *wa ka revei*, what do you say ? *wa ka revirei*, why did you speak ? To emphasise the question the latter is lengthened as follows : *u no vuyirirei ?* Why do you come ?

5. The locative adverbs (*a*)*po*, (*u*)*mo*, (*u*)*ko* are also joined to verbs as enclitics : *ndi no bva'po*, I come from there ; *ti no inda'ko*, we go thither ; *u no gara'mo*, he sits there.

VOCABULARY.

ku pinza, to introduce.

ku fuma, to be rich.

ku li nani, it is better.

ku fanana, to resemble.

ku va mudoko, to be young.

ku fukidza, to cover.

ku sikira, to reach.

ku shanira mushana, to sit in the sun.

ku karthiamadza, to surprise.

yurgwere (7), sickness.

mumbule (2), net.

mudungwe (2), line, single file.

EXERCISE 68.

Translate : 1. This year it rained very much ; the rivers were all just (brim) full. 2. The white man who lives at the foot of that mountain is very rich ; his cattle are just black in the plain. 3. Yes, truly, he is very rich ; what will he do with all his money and his cattle ? 4. He will eventually sell everything and go away altogether, and return again to his country where his wife and children are. 5. Why did he not bring them here ? Why does he live here alone ? 6. He is afraid of the sickness of your country, therefore he says it is better to leave them where they are, where there is no sickness. 7. Why ! is there no sickness in

their country? Do not people die there? 8. There is sickness there, and people die there, too, but they are not ill as often as they are in this country. 9. Yes, really, this country does eat up its owners, we all look like old men and women when we are only young still. 10. The white men tell us that the mosquitoes introduce this sickness into the blood when they bite us; therefore they sleep covered with those white nets, through which the mosquitoes cannot enter and reach them.

EXERCISE 69.

Translate: 1. Yasikana yaya yadoko ya ka kuya yupfu bga ka wanda; ya ka yuya no musero wa ka ti pfa. 2. Wa ka yuyirirei pano nasi? U no tsakei? U no shwerirei, u chi ngo shanira mushana? 3. Nandi! U no ndi karthiamadza, iwe! Ziro kwazo! ha ndi chi na mashoko! 4. Shu! nda ka rumga ne nyuchi, bva ku rgwadza, eyo! 5. Baba yangu we! ma ka ita sei nasi? Ma ka ndo yaka danga pa si ne nombe here? 6. Hongo, zokwadi! mu nga seka yupengo bgedu; mu nga ti: Toko waro! 7. Hekani! ta tenda, nasi ma yuya ne shoko ro ku farisa moyo wangu, zino ndi cha yata wiri, wiri! ndi si nga rangariri chinu. 8. Nombe dza ka yuya ku danga, dzi chi ita mudungwe, dzi chi ngo, ti nde, nde, nde! 9. Nguya ya nda nga ndi chi tsaka murume uya, wa ka ndi nyengedzera, wa nguya a tiza pfocho! 10. Ndi cha zo mu yona bva? Bodo! Ha ndi cha zo mu yoni ze; iye, nyangwe mukadzi wakwe wa ka nga a na'ye, eyo!

LESSON XXXIX.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

Having now treated of all the different parts of speech, it will be helpful to the student to be supplied with a few rules as to the putting together of these parts in the construction of sentences in Chikaranga.

1. In a very simple sentence without enlargements, the usual

way is to put the subject first, then the predicate, and lastly the object (if any) ; e.g. the man beats the dog, *munu u no roya mbga*.

2. If there are any enlargements to the subject or object, they must follow these as closely as possible ; e.g. that big man, who is outside, beats the black dog which stole his porridge ; *munu uyo mukuru, u li kuzhe, u no roya mbga nema ya ka ba sadza rakwe*.

3. (a) If there are two objects (one indirect, the other direct) to the predicate, the indirect precedes the direct object ; e.g. I gave meat to the dog, *nda ka pa mbga nyama*.

(b) If both are direct objects the personal object precedes the other (see below) ; e.g. If the indirect object is a pronoun, it precedes the verb root ; e.g. I gave you meat, *nda ka ku pe nyama* ; I have caused them to wash their clothes, *nda ka ya sukisa hazu dzayo*.

(c) If the indirect object is a noun or pronoun, and the direct object is a pronoun, the latter is rendered by the Substantive (Emphatic) Pronoun following the verb ; e.g. I gave it (the thing) to the woman, *nda ka pa mukadzi icho* ; I gave it to you, *nda ka ku pa icho*.

(d) In the case of two direct objects (both nouns) after transitive verbs in the Causative and Relative Species, the personal object comes first ; e.g. I have caused the women to wash their clothes, *nda ka sukisa yakadzi hazu dzayo* ; they have washed clothes for the strangers, *ya ka sukira yaeni hazu* ; I have caused them to wash their clothes, *nda ka ya sukisa hazu dzayo* ; they have washed clothes for them, *ya ka ya sukira hazu*.

4. (a) If there are extensions of Time and Place to the predicate, the extension of Place comes first ; e.g. I will go to Harawe to-morrow, *ndi cha inda Harawe mangwana* ; or the extension of Time may be placed right at the beginning of the sentence ; e.g. *mangwana ndi cha inda Harawe*.

(b) If there are extensions to the predicate, as well as a relative sentence as enlargement to the object, the latter (relative sentence) comes after the extension. In such a case it is convenient to place the extension of time at the beginning of the sentence ; e.g. I will see at Harawe to-morrow my friends who are there, *mangwana ndi cha yona Harawe hama dzangu dzi ri'ko*.

5. The subject follows the verb when the Impersonal Construction is used ; e.g. *ku no yuya mai yangu*, there comes my mother.

6. The subject may also follow the verb when used as a Nominative Absolute, as, *dzi no yusimbe, idzi nombe*, they are lazy, these oxen.

7. The object may also be placed at the beginning of a sentence but then its representative particle must be repeated ; e.g. *yana yangu nda ka ya yona zuro*, my children I saw (them) yesterday.

8. The Constructions, *nda ka vunike gumbo*, I am broken as to my leg, *nda ka fa mayoko*, I am dead as to my hands, and the like, are very idiomatic, and should be preferred to any other.

VOCABULARY.

ku ja ne zhara, to suffer hunger.
ku sava, to remain.

ku royora, to pay for.
ku rawura, to separate.

EXERCISE 70.

Translate : 1. The boy whom we sent to Shumba's the day before yesterday has come only this evening ; he was detained, he being not there. 2. My father gave me two cows and their calves to pay for a wife. 3. Yesterday morning early a boy arrived with a letter to call the doctor, as the wife of the white man was very ill. 4. The doctor sent her medicine at once and has gone there himself to-day to see her. 5. Is that fine dog yours ? Will you not give it to me ? I shall be very glad. 6. No, I cannot give it to you ; I bought it for myself for an ox, and don't know where I shall buy another, if I give you this one. 7. What did you buy from the white man yesterday ? I bought a hat for myself and blankets for my children. 8. Get up early to-morrow, go to the cattle-kraal, separate for me the cows from the calves, and tell the herd to cause them to graze in two different places. 9. The calf which had its leg broken the day before yesterday, remains in the kraal, and is afterwards let out and grazes near by, so that it may not hurt its leg again. 10. All right ! I will get up early, and do all that you have commanded me ; I will tell the herd these (things), and will come again at noon to let you know what has been done.



PART II

KEY TO THE EXERCISES

KEY TO THE EXERCISES

EXER. 1.—Child (1), *yana* ; husband (1), *varume* ; father (1), *mabambo* or *madzibambo* ; candle (2), *mgenje* ; hammer (4), *nyundo* ; beast of prey (3), *zikara* ; tooth (5), *meno* or *mazino* ; night (7), *yusiku* ; soil (5), *mavu* ; mouse (4), *mbeya* ; finger (2), *minwe* ; piece of wood (6), *huni* ; mat (6), *masa* ; porridge (5), *masadza* ; mother (1), *mamai* or *madzimai* ; arrow (2), *miseye* ; fire (2), *moto* ; path (4), *zhira* ; fence (6), *manda* ; head (2), *misoro* ; hymn (6), *nziyo* ; wild orange (5), *matamba* ; wild orange tree (2), *mitamba* ; policeman (1), *mapulisa* ; ox (4), *gombe* ; river (6), *nzizi* ; side (5), *mativi* or *niyi* ; fireplace (3), *zoto* ; chicken (4), *hukwana* ; sheep (5), *makwai*.

EXER. 2.—Mosquitoes (6), *yutunga* ; white men (1), *murumbi* ; gods (2), *mudzimu* ; horns (6), *runyanga* ; kids (4), *mbudzana* ; antheps (3), *churu* ; herdsmen (1), *mulisi* ; eyes (5), *ziso* ; ditches (6), *rukoya* ; fish (4), *hoye* ; wasps (5), *go* ; clouds (5), *gole* ; houses (4), *imba* ; hares (4), *shuro* ; tribes (6), *rudzi* ; roofs (5), *denga* ; friends (4), *shamgali* ; sleep (4), no singular ; spirits (2), *mgeya* ; strangers (1), *mgeni* ; brides (1), *mgenza* ; stones (5), *bge* ; mountains (5), *gomo* ; hands or arms (6), *ruyoko* ; grass (7), *ruyushwa* (6) ; snake (4), *nyoka* ; ridges (6), *rupanje* ; locusts (4), *mashu* ; pot (4), *hali* ; owners (1), *mgene*.

EXER. 3.—*Rukoya* (6) ; *madzimbuya* (1) ; *mou* (4) ; *nyika* (4) ; *zhou* (4) ; *mou* (4) ; *rima* (5) ; *yusimbe* (7) ; *mazuya* (5) ; *chifuya* (3) ; *muyiri* (2) ; *muka* (4) ; *rgwendo* (6) ; *mgeya* (2) ; *masekwe* (5) ; *mafuta* (5) ; *mangwana* (5) ; *mgedzi* (2) ; *mbeya* (4) ; *masikati* (5) ; *yuzhinji* (6) ; *rgwana* (6) ; *murowi* (1) ; *yurowi* (7).

EXER. 4.—1. *Musoro wo mgana* ; 2. *makumbo e biza* ; 3. *marudzi a vanu* ; 4. *mukoya we imba* ; 5. *myura ye tsime* ; 6.

mashazhu e miti ; 7. dende ra mai ; 8. yanununa ya she ; 9. yana ya yakadzi ; 10. mayoko o murumbi ; 11. vu ro munda ; 12. sadza ra mabargwe.

EXER. 5.—1. The rain of heaven ; 2. the mats of the men ; 3. the piece of wood of the mother ; 4. the oxen of the white man ; 5. the journey of the chiefs ; 6. the walls of the houses ; 7. the small head of the child ; 8. the eyes of the fowl ; 9. the villages of the country ; 10. the rice of the woman ; 11. the baskets of the strangers ; 12. the rocks of the mountain.

EXER. 6.—1. Munda wakwe ; 2. imba yangu ; 3. ngowani yako ; 4. badza rakwe ; 5. nyika yedu ; 6. mabargwe ayo ; 7. nombe yangu ; 8. nombe dzenyu ; 9. mupunga wangu ; 10. misha yedu ; 11. mai yako ; 12. mġana wako ; 13. rupasa rgwakwe ; 14. masa dzayo ; 15. ku ldya kwedu, or, zo ku ldya zedu ; 16. gwai rakwe ; 17. mbudzi dzedu ; 18. meso angu ; 19. makumbo akwe ; 20. moto ; wenyu.

EXER. 7.—1. Mukoŷa we imba yedu ; 2. zheye dze mbġa yangu ; 3. yutunga bġe nyika yenyu ; 4. ziyo ze minda yayo ; 5. ruyoko rgwo mġana wakwe ; 6. miġwanda yo mukadzi wako ; 7. mbewu dze miti yo munda wakwe ; 8. hazu dzo murume wako ; 9. bġato bġa yanu yedu ; 10. sadza ra mabargwe e minda yayo ; 11. matenga e dzimba dzo musha wedu ; 12. ku ldya kwa mai yo mukomana wangu.

EXER. 8.—1. The houses of my village ; 2. the large baskets of the women ; 3. the grain of their granaries ; 4. the herdsmen of my goats ; 5. the tail of his goat ; 6. the piece of wood of the mushuku tree ; 7. the chief of their country ; 8. the flesh of his sheep ; 9. the hoes of the owners of the gardens ; 10. the branches of the trees of our mountain ; 11. the village of my father ; 12. the honey of their bees.

EXER. 9.—1. Nyama yose ; 2. yushwa bġayo bġose ; 3. chiso chako chose ; 4. makwai angu ose ; 5. ropa roga ; 6. muyiri wakwe wose ; 7. meno ako ose ; 8. zinu zayo zoga ; 9. pasi poga ; 10. yakomana yose ye misha yedu ; 11. Rumbabvu rgwako rgwoga ; 12. Zipfuwo zayo zose.

EXER. 10.—1. Mbġa yani ; 2. danga re nombe dzani ; 3. nzġwi rani ; 4. ropa ro moyo wani ; 5. mvura ye dende rani ; munda wei ; 7. shiri dzei ; 8. yutunga bġei ; 9. rumanda rgwei ;

10. huni dzose dzani ; 11. makwai ani oga ; 12. ziyo zani mu dura mako.

EXER. 11.—1. Mu musha mangu ; 2. ku munda kwako ; 3. ku musha kwa she ; 4. pa nyasi pe miti pa diyi pe imba yakwe ; 5. pa msoro pa makole ; 6. kuzhe kwo rumanda pa sule pako ; 7. pa rutiyi po rgwizi pa seri pako ; 8. pa msoro pa mawale e gomo ; 9. pa mberi pa she we nyika ; 10. pa msoro pako pa nyasi pe denga ; 11. pa sule po muhwanda we ziyo ; 12. kuzhe kwo ruvazhe pa seri pe imba yangu.

EXER. 12. 1. Crocodiles from the rivers of our country ; 2. my younger brothers of the village of my father ; 3. before their fire ; 4. the hippopotamus of the river of his place ; 5. whose birds in the nests of grass ; 6. granaries of what kind of grain ; 7. our whole house of stone ; 8. my stick of the mupasa (tree) ; 9. everywhere before them ; 10. all from the villages of the Yakaranga ; 11. under their blankets ; 12. our cattle on the mountain.

EXER. 13.—

Meaning.	Cl.	Sing. Gen. Part.	Plur. Gen. Part.	Sing. Cl. Pron.	Plur. Cl. Pron.
blankets	(5)	ra	a	ri	a
wild loquat tree	(2)	wa	ya	u	i
bow	(7)	bga	bga	yu or bgu	yu or bgu
cattle	(3)	—	za	—	zi
in the house	(Loc.)	ma	—	mu	—
noon	(5)	—	a	—	a
night	(7)	bga	bga	yu or bgu	yu or bgu
mosquito	(6 & 7)	rgwa	bga	ru or rgu	yu or bgu
sides	(5 & 6)	ra or rgwa	dza	ri or ru	dzi
under	(Loc.)	pa	—	pa	—
mats	(6)	rgwa	dza	ru or rgu	dzi
sheep	(5)	ra	a	ri	a
masters	(1)	wa	ya	u	ya
river	(6)	rgwa	dza	ru or rgu	dzi
little goat	(3)	cha	za	chi	zi
nest	(5)	ra	a	ri	a
fat	(5)	—	a	—	a
piece of wood	(6)	rgwa	dza	ru or rgu	dzi
languages	(6)	rgwa	dza	ru or rgu	dzi
hole	(5)	ra	a	ri	a
infants	(6 & 7)	rgwa	bga	ru or rgu	bgu or yu
ropes	(6)	rgwa	dza	ru or rgu	dzi
heart	(2)	wa	ya	u	i

EXER. 14.—1. Bika sadza ra yana ya yatete yangu. 2. U sa yesa moto pa choto changu. 3. Yakai imba yedu na matanda ne vu, yakai mose 4. Temai matayi e miti, yesai moto pasi pe hali

dzavo. 5. Tora ndiro mu'mba mangu, suka dzose ne mvura. 6. Senga mvura ye huku, dira mu ndiro. 7. U sa nyora pwadi dzako, suka hazu. 8. Chi shwa mabargwe, u sa kuya ziyo. 9. Inwa mushonga, u sa kanganwa. 10. Dzidza ku raya Shoko ro Mudzimu. 11. Inda ku tema huni dzo moto. 12. Kuyai ziyo, bikai sadza renyu, ildyai, ipai yana yenyu.

EXER. 15.—1. Run (ye), drive the oxen. 2. Do not delay. 3. Put (ye) the oxen into the kraal. 4. Close (ye) the gate. 5. Milk all the cows. 6. Bring the milk into the house. 7. Do not spill the water. 8. Wash the dishes, pour in all the milk. 9. Make haste to cook the porridge. 10. Learn (ye) not to delay at your work. 11. Come all (ye), carry water to water the trees. 12. Be (ye) quick, do not sit, cook, eat your porridge.

EXER. 16.—1. Mvura i no yira. 2. Zuya ri no buda. 3. Shumba i no rira. 4. Miti i no kura. 5. Yana ya no dzidza. 6. Yutunga yu no ruma. 7. Zipfuwo ha zi yuyi. 8. Mai ya no ldyisa mgana wayo. 9. Mgana wayo ha a chemi. 10. Mou i no mgisa muru. 11. Zarura mikoya ye imba. 12. Yakadzi yo musha ha ya rimi minda yayo. 13. Mu sa tema miti pa gomo redu. 14. Mbava i no chera mabura edu. 15. Varumbi ha ya rayi pwadi dze hama dzenyu.

EXER. 17.—1. The pot does not boil. 2. The Yakaranga learn the Word of God. 3. The water comes now. 4. Your fence falls. 5. The people do not hoe my garden. 6. My maize grows well. 7. Your knife is not sharp. 8. Our children do not go to-day. 9. The river flows. 10. The grass grows tall. 11. Your oxen draw our wagon. 12. The women do not speak the truth.

EXER. 18.—1. Mukomana wa ka tiza. 2. Shumba ya ka yuraya munu. 3. Zipfuwo za ka pinda danga. 4. Yakadzi ha ya za ka rima munda wangu. 5. Yana yo musha ya ka yuya ne mihwanda yayo yo yupfu. 6. Makudo ha a za ka pedza minda yedu ya mabargwe. 7. Njerere ya ka bata hukwana dzangu. 8. Yutunga ha yu za ka ruma yana yakwe. 9. Huku dzangu ha dzi za ka kandira mazai. 10. Yakadzi yo mutana ya ka tiza. 11. Yana yakwe ya ka bika sadza rakwe nasi. 12. Murumbi wa ka tenga mabura ose a yakadzi. 13. Varumbi ha ya za ka tenga ziyo zayo. 14. Yakadzi ya ka gamuchira munyu mu mihwanda yayo. 15. Varume ha ya za ka yuya ne huni dzayo.

EXER. 19.—1. The children played. 2. The women did not learn. 3. The wolves howled. 4. The lions did not kill the sheep. 5. The sheep entered the kraal of the cattle. 6. Their cattle grazed in the veld. 7. My child did not tell a lie. 8. The girls did not come yesterday. 9. The mosquitoes bit the strangers. 10. All their mats did not come. 11. (At) our village was glad. 12. Bring wood, the pot did not boil.

EXER. 20.—1. Yana ha ya nga yuyi ku chikoro. 2. Mudzidzisi u cha dzidzisa yana. 3. Yana ya cha dzidza. 4. Yakaranga ha ya nga tengisi ziyo zayo naka. 5. Yakadzi ya cha tenga munyu ne huni. 6. Munda wangu u cha bereka mabargwe makei. 7. Munda wakwe ha u nga bereki. 8. Vasikana yangu ya cha dzidza ku pfuma hazu dzayo. 9. Yakomana yakwe ha ya nga bati nasi. 10. Miti yayo i cha zo bereka. 11. Mabura akwe ha a zo kuri. 12. Nombe dzedu dzi no zo wanda. 13. Mgana wako u cha naka zino. 14. Yupfu bgavo ha yu nga ipi. 15. Mvura i cha pisa.

EXER. 21.—1. My pot will boil. 2. His pot will boil later. 3. Their oxen will come after some time. 4. My meal will not get bad. 5. His horse will grow big. 6. Come (ye) to-day, the white man will not buy to-morrow. 7. Sow (ye) your grain, it will not grow later. 8. The women will not sow. 9. The people hoed, they will not hoe again. 10. The rivers will not be full (later). 11. The water rained (i.e. it rained) much, it will not rain (later). 12. Come all of you, the white men will buy your grain with salt.

EXER. 22.—1. Mukadzi wa she wa yuya. 2. Mbga ya bata shuro. 3. Musikana wa tenga hazu dzakwe. 4. Shumba ha i za ka bata nombe dzedu. 5. Varanda yangu ya pedza mubato wayo. 6. Yakomana yako ha ya za ka senga huni. 7. Yakadzi ya yuwa dzimba dzayo. 8. Rupasa rgwo mgana wangu ha ru za ka yuya. 9. Hali ha i za ka yira. 10. Nyama yako ya ibva. 11. Mbga yako ya teyera makwai. 12. Nanga ya podza mai yo musikana. 13. Mushonga wako ha u za ka betsera mukadzi. 14. Yana ya ka betsera mamai ayo. 15. Ziyo ze minda yayo ha zi za ka mera za ka naka.

EXER. 23.—1. The people of our village have come. 2. Your cattle have not grazed in the veld. 3. Their mats have come from their mother. 4. The women of the village have not plastered

the house of the chief. 5. The girl has not got well. 6. The medicines of the doctor have not helped. 7. The flesh of the ox is nice, the people have eaten. 8. Take (ye) your meal, the pot has boiled; cook now. 9. All the girls have carried wood, they have made a fire inside the yard. 10. My child is ill, he has eaten monkey nuts.

EXER. 24.—1. Yakomana ya cha bata ze makei. 2. Yarume yo musha ya no rima minda yayo pano. 3. Yakadzi ya ka yuya ne ziyo lini? 4. Isai machira mukati, mvura i cha yuya nasi. 5. Mepo i no rira yusiku na masikati mazuya ano. 6. Reya shoko ze, u sa reya no ku chimbizika. 7. Nombe dzenyu dzi no fura papi ikozino? 8. Musikana u no pfuma za ka ipa sei! 9. Mukomana wa ka inda rungana ku murumbi? 10. Mukuru wangu u cha zo ripa ne mbudzi pa sule. 11. Varumbi ya no yuya pano ruzhinji ku tenga nombe dza vanu. 12. Yakaranga ya no da mali zikuru, mutero wa sika zino.

EXER. 25.—1. Your mother went on a journey yesterday. 2. The women will return the day after to-morrow. 3. The people of the village have not hoed this year. 4. Their children will eat the grain of last year. 5. Sweep (in) your house at once, strangers will come to-day. 6. When will your maize be ripe? 7. This year the people delayed to hoe, the grain will not get ripe. 8. Our cattle are grazing far, yonder. 9. My boy ran fast with the letters. 10. Have our letters come too?

EXER. 26.—1. Yakomana ya ka bva kwa Dumbu. 2. Yasikana ya ka inda Yuyuli. 3. Yatete yangu ya no tengisa ziyo pa musha payo. 4. Yakadzi ya cha rima minda yayo chirimo. 5. Zipfuwo zi no fura papi masikati? 6. Mou dzi no inda ku fura pa msoro pegomo. 7. Mbudzi dzi no sara pa miri po rgwizi. 8. Makwai a no inda ku nwa mvura pa seri po musha. 9. Shumba i cha yuya ku danga re nombe yusiku. 10. Ngwe i no gara mu matenere mu makomo. 11. Yarume ya ka inda kuna she we nyika. 12. Yutsi yu no buda mu'mba ma mbuya yangu.

EXER. 27.—1. Where did the people go? 2. The women came from the village upon the mountain. 3. The children of the villages come to school at Muneri's. 4. Herd the sheep well on the bank of the river. 5. The white people will build a village beyond the mountain. 6. Take away the utensils (things) under

the chair. 7. The sun will be hot at noon. 8. The cold comes in the night. 9. Ask (ye) grain of your mother. 10. The boy came from Mushawasha from Mapudzi's (village).

EXER. 28.—1. Munu mutema u no famba mu munda. 2. Vudzi refu ro murumbi mufupi. 3. Yakaranga ya ka chenjera ya no fura no yuta yurefu. 4. Machira makobvu e Chirumbi a no dziya. 5. Yusiku yuzhinji yu no tonora. 6. Tora rupasa rgwako rutša kuzhe. 7. Mukomana u no yusimbe wa ka yuraya mambo yako nema. 8. Gukurume rangi jena ri no rira ruzhinji. 9. Mabiza mazhinji machena. 10. Yakadzi ya ka yuya na mananga makuru mazhinji. 11. Mukaka mu dende doko u no zipa. 12. Mukomana we bofu o no gara pa rutivi rgwe zhira.

EXER. 29.—1. The fowls of the Yakaranga lay small eggs. 2. The eggs of the fowls of the white men are large. 3. Go to the white man, buy a little salt with your maize. 4. Your white horse kicks. 5. Your lazy donkeys do not want to draw the waggon. 6. My red waggon is not heavy. 7. Drink the good medicine, you will get well. 8. The girls sew fine white clothes. 9. Pick the beautiful flower in my garden on the other side of the house. 10. Your fence of grass (is) low.

EXER. 30.—1. Imba yenyu i no pfuyura yedu no ku naka. 2. Miti yakwe ha i pfuyuri yose no yurefu. 3. Vana ya ka yona shiri huru-huru pa muti nasi. 4. Mazai e huku dzayo a ka kura kwazo. 5. Masekwe angu machena madoko pana ako. 6. Pfumo rako fupi ri no koma zikuru. 7. Mai yako ha ya pfuyuri vangu no yurefu. 8. Mibato ya yaranda yedu i no pfuyura zikuru no ku wanda ya yakomana yenyu. 9. Moto wako pa choto mukurusa. 10. Makomo e nyika yedu marefu-refu pa makomo a pano. 11. Ndi pe mgenje murefu, wangu mufupi. 12. Ruyoko rgwakwe rudoko, rgwangu rudoko pana rgwakwe, rgwako rudoko pana ose.

EXER. 31.—1. His load is heavier than yours. 2. The mother speaks gentler words than the father. 3. Our children are the tallest. 4. His little girl is three months older than yours. 5. Yesterday I came from Gutu's by the shortest road. 6. The pot of the girls is fuller than the pot of the boys. 7. Their food is more, but the girls are more than the boys. 8. Do not rebuke the girls; they will not cook too much porridge. 9. They dish up in their wooden plates, and eat the porridge with very nice

vegetables. 10. In Winter milk is not very nice, it is too cold; vegetables are nicer, but meat is the nicest.

EXER. 32.—1. Ta ka tenga hazu dzedu pa yatengisi. 2. Ti no inda ku musha kwedu mangwana ku tora zo ku ldya. 3. Nda ka yona imba yo murumbi, wa ka i yaka pa msoro pe chikomo. 4. Yakadzi ya ka senga yushwa bga ka wanda, yarume ya ka i pfulira. 5. Ya ka yeza mikoya ne miti ye Chikaranga. 6. Shumba ya ka yuraya nombe ne mbudzi yusiku, ya ka dzi ldya. 7. Yarume yo musha wose ya ka inda ku i ronda mangwana. 8. Ya ka i wana, ya ka i fura ne pfuti dzayo, ya ka i baya na mapfumo ayo. 9. Ya ka i viya, ya ka pa she debge rayo. 10. U cha ri tengisa na mali, kuda pondo natu. 11. Muf sa pisa yushwa, yu cha woma, ti cha yu cheka pa sule. 12. Imgi ne'su ti cha inda ku minda mangwana ku chera nzungu na mabura.

EXER. 33.—1. My fowls do not lay eggs, they do not eat food lately. 2. This year they do not come to sell much grain, they will sell it (lit. them) later. 3. I can read, I will teach you. 4. They cannot teach you well. 5. All the girls will go with me to my home to-morrow. 6. We will look for vegetables, to-night we shall cook them. 7. The porridge is not nice, it lacks 'yusayi.' 8. I love my child very much, I will come with him to-morrow to buy his clothes. 9. He feels the cold, I want to clothe him with white calico. 10. I will buy a blanket, he will put it on in the night; he will sleep nicely.

EXER. 34.—1. U no da matanda marefu a ne gumi ku yaka ruzhowa rgwake. 2. Nda ka yona mabiza machena masere mu musha zuro. 3. Murumbi wa ka yaka dzimba huru nomge. 4. Mapanga edu mashanu ha a pinzi zikuru. 5. Mukadzi wa ka sima miti minna ye mihova mu munda make makei. 6. Nda ka wana matendere mayiri e huku dzangu na mazai a na makumi mayiri. 7. Mbudzi (dzi na) makumi matatu ne shanu, ne gwai rimge ku mafuro. 8. She wa ka inda ku pfumo na yarume ya na mazana matatu na yanomge. 9. Mukadzi mumge na yana yakwe yadoko yasere ya no kumbira zo ku ldya. 10. Mgene we nombe dzi na mazana matatu na makumi manomge ne sere, na mabiza a ne gumi ne rimge, na makwai a na mazana mapfumbamge na makumi mashanu na manna, ne nguruye dzi na makumi matanatu ne nanatu, ne huku dzi na makumi manomge ne nna.

EXER. 35.—1. Muḥwanda nda ka pa mḡana wo ku tanga pa musara we piri. 2. Wa ka tana ruḃa rakwe ro rusere, wa ka ri isa mu mvura. 3. Mbuya ḃako ḃa no gara mu imba ye china mu musha we Ganda. 4. Muvimi wa ka ḃuraya zhou yakwe yo rusere. 5. Mai ḃo musikana murefu ḃa no ḃumba hali zhinji, ḃa no pa mḡana mumḡe no mumḡe imḡe. 6. U pe mutana rupasa rgwako, ndi cha ku pa rumḡe mangwana. 7. Ziyo zimḡe ta ka isa mu dura, zimḡe ta ka siya mu matengu. 8. Ḃana ḃa no ḃuya ku chikoro mazuya ose, ḃa no buda ḃayiri ḃayiri. 9. Ḃa cha inda ku musha kwa bambo ḃayo chishanu, ḃa go dzoka Musumburuku (chimotsi che Sondo). 10. Ḃakomana ḃa ka inda rutatu ku tenga mucheka ne ziyo ḃayo ; mangwana ḃa cha inda rgwe china.

EXER. 36.—1. I have given you three fowls to-day ; to-morrow I will give you four others. 2. Two lions entered the cattle-kraal in the night? 3. How many cattle did they kill? Three cows and five calves. 4. In the early morning 108 men of the villages followed them, but they did not find them. 5. They will come for the second time to-night, they will eat the poison (lit. the medicine of killing). 6. Lions do not come here often, they trouble us seldom. 7. In five years they came twice only. 8. In the first instance they killed three cattle only, now they have bitten eight. 9. The leopards destroy all the cattle ; last year one entered into the kraal of the goats. 10. It killed in one night 33 goats, but it ate poison (and) died.

EXER. 37.—1. Nḡmbe dza ḃuya, u dzi ise mu danga radzo. 2. Kama mou, dira mukaka mu hali, ḃuya na'wo ku'mba. 3. Pfigira muru dzadzo mu imba tṣa iyo. 4. Muru huru ha dzi yati na mamai adzo. 5. Muru imḡe doko i no fura na mai ḃayo zuḃa rose, ha i sari ku musha. 6. Ruzhowa rgwaro rgwa ka shakara ; ti cha ḃaka rumḡe rutṣa mazuya ano. 7. Nda ka tenga muḥwanda na mabargwe awo no munyu. 8. Suka hali dzangu dzose nasi, kwesha zifuniro zadzo ḃa ka naka. 9. Isa chigaro chakwe mu'mba, gumbo racho ra ka vunika, chi cha wa. 10. Ḃakaranga va no lḃya mashu, ḃa no tanayura makumbo na mapapiro adzo, ḃa no dzi gocha no munyu mushomanene.

EXER. 38.—1. Imbai mose, mu no ziḃa rgwiyo urgu, mu-imbirgwe wargwo, na mashoko argwo. 2. Bundo irori ra ka naka, zipfuwo zi no ri da. 3. Ḃuṣḃwa ubḡo ḃu no ḃaya, zipfuwo ha zi

yu di. 4. Zhira iyi sharu ha i pfumbi, iyo ya ka naka, heyo ! 5. Huku idzo chena dzi no kandira ; idzodzi nema ha dzi kandiri. 6. Muti uyu mudoko u no bereka yana ya ka wanda ; iyo ha i bereki, heyo ! 7. Mangwana ndi no inda ku musha uyo pa gomo irero ; yakomana yangu ya no inda ne'ni. 8. Yupfu ubgu bgo rukweza mu muhwanda bga ka naka, ubgo bgu no yaya. 9. Ndi no da masa idzo chena pa ruzhowa irgorgo, ndi cha dzi isa mu imba yangu ino. 10. Pa nyika ino yarumbi ya no rgwara ruzhinji ; yutunga bgu no ya ruma, bgu no isa hosha mu ropa rayo.

EXER. 39.—1. This country is very fine, its mountains, its rivers, and its trees. 2. But its people are not very happy, often they are ill of the disease of the land. 3. They worship their gods, the spirits of their ancestors. 4. Now they learn to worship the great God of Heaven, the God of Truth. 5. These gardens of ours have borne much this year, those have not borne at all. 6. Take that salt ; I have bought that meal of the day before yesterday. 7. This wife of yours left it here, because I had no salt. 8. I want this rukweza, that is not nice. 9. Lately many people have come to buy this white calico with beans. 10. They want calico (pl.) this Winter, they put it on, (and) they are pleased with it.

EXER. 40.—1. Wa ka yuya nani zuro ? 2. Yose ya ka yuya ku ku betsera ku senga ziyo zako, ndi yanani ? 3. Maka nde ipi i no ku tambudza ? Chinyi chi no rgwadza moyo wako ? 4. Wa ka batei pa imba yo murumbi uyo nasi ? 5. Yakadzi aya ya kuya yupfu bgei ? 6. Munu uyu wa ka yaka dzimba ngana ? U no yaka sei ? 7. Ha ya za ka yuya ne huni, ti cha yesa nei moto wedu yusiku yuno. 8. Wa ka fuka ngowani yani ? Mgene wayo wa ka i ruka no yushwa bgei ? 9. U cha zi rgwadza ne badza irero rako ra ka ipa ; chi isa mupini mutsa. 10. Mgena uyo u nei mu ruyoko rgwake ? U cha zi cheka ne banga ri no pinza. 11. Ndi cha inda ku bata mu munda wako ; ndi cha tora badza ripi ne mbewu dzipi, ne miti ipi, no rgonzi rgupi ? 12. Mukomana upi u cha ndi betsera ? Zita rakwe ndi ani ?

EXER. 41.—1. That basket, whose is it ? Mine, I bought it with money. 2. From whom did you buy it ? From that man who herded (lit. of herding) the cattle. 3. Does he plait baskets

also? 4. Yes, he plaits (of) all kinds, some small, others large. 5. What did he carry this morning in his bag? 6. He carried maize; he wanted one shilling for it, and salt for the maize. 7. It is hot to-day, Spring has arrived (i.e. come) near, it will thunder to-morrow. 8. My child played with a wild orange, (and) struck itself badly with it in its face. 9. Who gave him that wild orange? You do not look well after the child. 10. Of those two fowls which is yours? That black one; I want to kill it to-morrow, I have no 'yusayi.'

EXER. 42.—I. Mukomana uyu u no da ku inda; a inde ikozino. 2. U mu yudze kuti a chimbidzike, a tore nwadi dzedu. 3. Yakomana iyayo ya dzore nombe, kuti dzi rege ku pedza minda. 4. Yudza yakadzi yose yo musha, ya yuye mangwanana, kuti ya batire munyu. 5. U sa nonoka pa zhira nasi, kuti u rege ku yata mu bundo. 6. U nga inda ku musha kwako madekwano, u yate 'po; bva u dzoke mangwanana, u go ita mubato wako. 7. Yupfu bgo rukweza bge zuro wa ka ise'pi? U nga yu tora, u nga yu bika mangwanano. 8. Yudza yana ye chikoro kuti ya chere mvura, ya diridze miti pa mberi po mukoya wangu. 9. Ya nga inda rugumi; ti cha pa mumge no mumge wayo nyere imge yo munyu, ya go runga mashu dzayo. 10. Ndi nga inda ne'mgi mangwana, mu yudze varume yose, kuti ya zi gadzire, ti go fumira mangwanana.

EXER. 43.—I. Go and cut that tree, it is dead. 2. I want my boys to split it, and make wood to make fire. 3. Make haste to cut to-day, so that *they* may split to-morrow; my wood is done. 4. Tell them to come this evening, that I may direct them. 5. I cannot help you this year, my grain is done also; we all suffer hunger (i.e. die with hunger). 6. Next year I will buy much grain, so that I can help the poor (people) afterwards, that they may not die from hunger. 7. Let all the people from the villages come to buy salt and calico here; we buy everything. 8. When may we come? Will you buy every day? May we come to-day? 9. Yes, you may come to-day and every day, but don't come towards evening, lest you do not find us at home. 10. Towards evening we scatter, one to the garden, another to the cattle-kraal, others go for a walk.

EXER. 44.—I. Munu uyu wa ka yuya ku bata; mukadzi

wakwe u li pano yo. 2. She wedu munyoro, u no da yanu vakwe. 3. Biza rangi i jena, rako i dema. 4. Ti li yaranda yo murumbi, u li koko. 5. Mu no fanira ku rima minda yenyu naka, kuti mu rege ku ya yachena makei. 6. Mbga yangu shaya i ri pi? I ri mu imba iyeyo. 7. Minda yayo ya nga i ri mikuru makei, naka midoko; zhara i cha ya 'po. 8. Ha ndi bvidzi ku bata zikuru, ndi ri mḡana mudoko. 9. Kwete! ha u zi mudoko, wa ya mukuru. 10. Ta ka yudza mukomana kuti a tore mabiza, bva a nga a si 'po.

EXER. 45.—1. Are you here also? When did you arrive? 2. I am here, I arrived yesterday, I shall be at this village two months. 3. Your children, have you come with them? Yes, they are here, they are two. 4. Let me see them; now they have become big. 5. They are getting big, yes! they shall be my helpers in all work. 6. You must teach them nicely, that they may obey, (and) may be good children. 7. The girl is good, but the boy does not obey me, his mother; he is not gentle. 8. The people of this village are many, at our village they are few. 9. Some have moved away, others have died, now we have become few. 10. Let us all work; let us not work with laziness, so that we may not be poor at our village.

EXER. 46.—1. Yanu iyayo pasi po muti ndi 'vo yaranda yangu. 2. Mukomana uyu i bofu; hama dzakwe dzi no mu perekedza. 3. Chinyi chi ri mu muḡwanda uyo? Yupfu bḡo rukweza; ha yu zati yu li yuchena. 4. Huni idzi ha dzi zi dzangu, ha ndi za ka dzi tenga. 5. Dzi cha ye dzangu kana nda dzi tenga no munyu. 6. Ti yudze yanu, kuti ya yuye ku tengisa mangwana; yamḡe ya nga yuya kwe ndi ri, yamḡe ya nga inda kwo u li, yamḡe ze ti nga ya tumira kwa ya li ikoko. 7. Ndi ani wa ka putsa ndiro idzi? Ha ndi zati ndi ri'ni, kuda ndo momḡe musikana. 8. Nḡombe idzedzo pa gomo irero nde dzangu here? Kwete, ha dzi zati dzi ri idzo. 9. Pa miḡwanda iyi, wako ndo upi? Wangu ndo upi? Ziyo nde zani? 10. Uyu ndo wako; uyo mudoko ndo wangu; ziyo nde za mai yangu.

EXER. 47.—1. What are you holding in your hand? It is only a small stick. 2. I have picked it up at that fence, it is mine. 3. Those oxen at the waggon of the white man, they are European; they are all his. 4. But those in the kraal, whose are they? They

are also his ; he is (has become) a rich man. 5. Native cattle are not big, but they draw well. 6. Who has ground that meal ? It is not I, it is Malyise. 7. She has ground it very coarsely, it is impossible to cook porridge of it ; see ! it is this ! 8. Are those your children, who came last night ? These are not they. 9. They are only strangers ; they will go away again to-day. 10. Is that your house ? No, it is not that one ; mine is that yonder.

EXER. 48.—1. Naka kwa nga ku ne shangwa huru, yānu yazhinji ya nga ya si ne zo ku ldyā, yāmge ya ka fa ne zhara. 2. Ku ne nanga mu musha uyo, u ne hakata dzakwe. 3. Ha ku ne maka, u nga yuya mangwana ku shwa mabargwe. 4. Mou yangu shaya ne nyanga refu ya nga i ne muru nema. 5. Ha ku ne chando pano, ne chirimo chi ne ziya. 6. Pa nyika ino pa ne shumba zhinji ne zimge zikara. 7. Murumbi uyo wa nga a ne pombe zhinji, zino wa ka tenga dzimge, u cha ya mufumi. 8. She mukuru u na yakadzi yazhinji, bwa ha a na yana yazhinji. 9. Tenzi uyu munyoro ; u na yaranda ya ka wanda, yose ya no mu da. 10. Ha ku ne chinu chi nga mera mu munda wake uyo, vu ha ri zati ra ka naka.

EXER. 49.—1. Long ago there were elephants in this country, the Yakaranga hunted them. 2. Where are they now ? They have fled from the people, they are in the plains far away, where there are many trees. 3. They have white horns (tusks) in their mouths ; the white people want those. 4. They have a very thick hide, there is no gun which can pierce it. 5. The elephant is the biggest of all animals, but it is afraid of the lion. 6. The elephant is gentle, the lion is very fierce (lit. has great fierceness), there is no animal which can overcome it. 7. There are lions in the country even now, but there are no elephants any longer. 8. Some Yakaranga have tusks of elephants of long, long ago ; they (the tusks) are in their caves. 9. Those white men had lions and elephants, did you see them that time ? 10. No, I was not there, I did not see them.

EXER. 50.—1. Kana u chi ndi pa zimunyu, ndi cha tenda zikuru. 2. Kana a si nga tereri, u cha pare-maka ; ndi cha tsamga. 3. Ta ka nzgwa kuti she wa ka sika zero ; u cha gara pa musha uno nambo huru. 4. Ndi cha fara kana a chi yuya na mazai matsha ;

yana yangu ya no a da zikuru. 5. U no tsamga nokuti ha u bati za ka naka, u no fanira ku soda. 6. Nasi yakomana yangu ya cha bata ku sika zuva ri chi yira. 7. Kana zuva ra ka inda, mu nga rega mose ku bata. 8. Za u si nga di ku ndi terera, ha ndi nga ku pi mubairo wako. 9. U no ziya kana mukaka wa yuya here? ndi no da ku bika sadza ro mšana. 10. Ndi cha ku pa mali ako, kana u chi inda ku musha; bva nasi ha ndi di.

EXER. 51.—1. The dog follows its master everywhere where he goes. 2. It remains at his home, watching the house and his possessions. 3. It can help him to hunt, because it can run and catch the game. 4. It can drive away beasts of prey, so that they do not enter the village. 5. If its master teaches it well, it becomes very clever. 6. White men teach their dogs to watch sheep. 7. If one sheep is lost, the dog seeks until it finds it. 8. If it has found it, it is very glad, (and) places it in its kraal. 9. Long ago a man being on his journey, fell over a precipice; he died, but people did not see him. 10. Afterwards, because they missed him, people went to look for him; they found only his bones and his dog; he watched them, until he had grown very thin from hunger.

EXER. 52.—1. Munu uyo wa ka siya musha uno, a ka ndo gara pa musha pa msoro pe gomo irero. 2. Wa ka siya a sati a tera; zino mapulisa a no mu tsaka. 3. U no garirei pano zuva rose, u si nga bati, u si na mali o mutero wako? 4. Munu uyo wa ka inda Chirurgwe, a ka ndo bata mu migodi, a ka wana mali; zino u li pa musha, a si nga thii mutero. 5. Inda ku murumbi, kumbira mubato, u go wana mali, sa yamge ya ka ita. 6. Ipopo u cha dzoka, u chi fara; u cha bvidza ku gara no rugare, u chi rima munda wako. 7. Mukomana wangu a yuye, a gadzira zose mu'mba; ndi cha siya nda mu raira. 8. Pa imge nyika kure mabiza a no gara mu'mba na vanu, a chi tamba na yana, a chi ldya pa mayoko ayo. 9. Pa musha iwowo ngwena ya ka bata mukomana mudoko, a chi chera myura pa rgwizi. 10. Mai yakwe ya no chema zikuru; ya no gara ya chi chemera mšana wayo, ya si nga rimi munda wayo, nyangwe ku bika.

EXER. 53.—1. In the big river, Zambezi, there are many crocodiles; we saw them, lying on the sand. 2. One white man, who had a gun, shot at them with it, and killed some. 3. But

many escaped, fleeing into the water, and they survived. 4. There are also hippos in the river ; we saw them, playing in the water. 5. We did not see their whole bodies ; they put out their heads above water only. 6. They swim, putting out the nose, that they may breathe and then disappear again, diving. 7. It is very difficult to kill them ; that white man tried but failed. 8. In one place we saw three, as we were passing in the steamer ; how we rejoiced with the other white people ! 9. How large that river is ! If you saw it, you would be surprised, seeing its width. 10. We sailed on it in the steamer, we spent six days, sailing all the day time, and tying up to the bank at night.

EXER. 54.—1. Ta nga to famba kure zuro, bva mvura ya ka yuya, i ka ti dziyisa. 2. Ya ka yuraya mbudzi ya ka kora ; yako-mana ya ka nga ya ka yuya na'yo zuroliya. 3. Yakadzi ya nga ya sati ya cha yuwa dzimba nasi, bva nda ka ya raira kuti ya ite sa izozo. 4. Yasikana ya ka shwa mabargwe here ? Kwete, ya nga ya sati ya chi shwa, ndi ri'po. 5. Ya cha shwa lini ? Ya cha tanga ya ldyā. 6. Ha ya zati ya ldyā, nokuti hali ya nga i sati ya yira ; ya nga ya si nga bvidzi ku bika sadza rayo. 7. Nda nga nda wa, bva nda ka bata muti uyo. 8. Nda nga ndi chi tenga ziyo izozi zose mangwanano, saka ha ndi zati nda ka yuya ku gara ne'we. 9. U sa inda ko, tenzi wako a sati a ku raira ku inda. 10. She wedu wa nga a li mufumi, bva zino wa ya muchena ; nombe dzakwe zhinji dza ka fa ne hosha ; ha dzi zati dza ka bayiwa.

EXER. 55.—1. We did not know (were not knowing) that you arrived to-day. 2. When did you leave home ? We left the day before yesterday, before we had eaten breakfast. 3. We were going to eat the evening meal and sleep at the village of Chininga, but we could not (lit. we were baffled to) arrive at night. 4. The river prevented us, it was full, we not being able to cross. 5. Afterwards people came, they helped us to cross, after we had taken much trouble. 6. We did not know that the river was full, we saw it after we had arrived. 7. We were going to turn back when the people at length arrived. 8. Were you not afraid ? We were about to fear, but we took courage at seeing the strong men. 9. If we had not come to-day, we would have left coming altogether. 10. Spring is arriving, we should have had to hoe our gardens, and we would not have had another chance to come.

EXER. 56.—1. Wa ka yuya ku tsaka mubato here? Kwete, ndi no ngo famba hangu. 2. Chi mbo chera mvura, kana u chi dzoka, ndi cha ku pa zimunyū. 3. Ndi cha ndo chera mvura mu dende irero, mḡana wangu u nga ndo tema huni. 4. Mḡana wangu ha a indi ku chikoro, u chi mudoko. 5. U cha zo inda, a kura. 6. Ha ndi zati nda inda ku munda kwangu mangwanano, nda nga ndi cha kuya ziyo. 7. Murumbi uya u no si yuya pano pa nyika ino ku zo tenga ṇombe. 8. Wa ka to fuma, bva u cha da dzimḡe ṇombe. 9. U no ndi nyepera kuti u no nzḡwe gumbo, bva ha u to ngo kamini. 10. Gumbo rangū ri cha ngo pora zino, nda ka nga ndi chi kamina zikuru. 11. Nanga ya ka tora mushonga, ndo ku u pḡanya, ndo ku u isa pa gumbo rangū, ndo ku ri pombera no mucheka. 12. Do ndi pai zo ku ldyā! U sa ndi tambudza, u mba wa bva zino!

EXER. 57.—1. If this boy wishes, let him go (immediately) to-day, we are tired of him. 2. He is always asking to go, troubling us. 3. He does not live here with joy any more, we do not want him any longer. 4. I have reprimanded him often, I have left off already. 5. He does not obey, he only does his own (things), he does not care at all (not a little). 6. We will go to look for another boy to-morrow to do (lit. to work) his work. 7. Command that man, that he go to call that boy at his village. 8. It is he, he has just come from the wife of the white man, he knows very well to do the work of cooking. 9. Yes, please let him come, we shall be very pleased with him. 10. The day before yesterday he came here; he first greeted all, then helped me to sweep, then went to fetch water, then watered my plants, just doing everything, (I) not commanding him at all.

EXER. 58.—1. U nga inda ku musha kwako mangwana, bwa u chimbidzike ku dzoka, ndi go ku tuma ku ndo tora ṇwadi dzedu. 2. U no fanira ku bḡurudzura ku suka hazu dziya, ha u zati wa ka dzi suka za ka naka, dzi gere ku yota. 3. Ha ndi zati nda tsamḡa, nda ka reya no yunyorō, bva iye wa ka ngo wedzera ku tuka. 4. Ta nga ti chi rgwisa ku famba rgwendo, bva mvura ya ka chimbidzka ku yuya, ndo ku ti dziyisa. 5. Ya ka na yusiku, i cha nyanya nasi. 6. Yāmḡe yakadzi ya cha fumira ku ndo sano rima, yarume ya chi pano; iyo ya cha teyera pa sule. 7. Muko-mana wangu uyu u no ramba a si nga tereri; ndi cha dzimana ndi

ka mu dzinga. 8. Wa ka nonoka sei ku ita tihi! Mvura i chi gere ku yira here? Yo bva yo yira zino. 9. Chimbidzika, ta nguya ta yuya, ti chi ngo i mirira. 10. Mudzidzisi u cha ti ku yuya, yana ya fana ku ita ruzha rukuru, bva wa ka ti ku yuya, ya ka nyarara sa makozho. 11. Munu uyu u nenge u cha yaka za ka naka; ndi 'ye wa ka deya ku yaka imba iya yo ku naka pa gomo irero. 12. Nda nyara ne'we, ha ndi cha ku nzgwi, u mba wa inda.

EXER. 59.—1. Have you seen this man before? A tiger bit him last year. 2. No, I did not see him, he has been in our yard to-day; but I, evidently, was not there. 3. It is he who came thus to sell his wood in those days. 4. The tiger bit him very severely, tore his whole face, and nearly killed him. 5. A white man had trapped it with a gun in the night, it escaped, and meanwhile fled. 6. In the morning he and many others followed it, saying, we will kill it soon, so that it will not trouble us any more. 7. They continued to walk, tracking it, until they at length found it in a thicket. 8. As soon as it saw them, it growled, and grew more fierce (angry), growling again. 9. Thereupon it at once sought to bite on all sides. 10. This man was meanwhile getting his gun ready, but, as he was on the point of firing, the tiger suddenly sprang upon him. 11. The others ran away, but two came back after a time to save him, they cut it with a hatchet, and stabbed (it) with an assegai. 12. After that he became very ill, (and) was on the point of death, but has now been well a long time.

EXER. 60.—1. Dzimba dziya, dza ta ka yona musu uya dza ka tsa dzose. 2. Yana ya ka nga ya chi gara mukati madzo, ya ka tama, ya ka inda ku rimge gomo. 3. Mukomana, u no pfuyura yose no ku yanga, a yuye pano; ndi cha mu pa mucheka, wa a nga fuka. 4. Banga rangi, riya, mubiki wa ka vuna muromo waro, ha ri nga cheki zino. 5. Munu uyu ndi 'ye wo ku yuya zuro here? Kwete, ha a zati a li iye! 6. Ndi no rima munda wangu ne badza ra nda ka nga ndi chi bata na'ro makei; ri cha pinza. 7. Yakomana yedu ya ka tsaka dengwana, riya, musikana murefu wa ka ri ba. 8. Wa ka ri ba, ndo ku yanga, ndo ku ri yanza mu yushwa ibgobgo pa rutiwi rgwo munda wakwe. 9. Biza guru riya ro murumbi ra ka nga ri chi pfura; zino wa ka tenga

rimge ri si nga pfuri. 10. Mukomana u no yuya ku chikoro, a sati a yuya ne buku yakwe, u cha robga zokwadi. 11. Musikana u no pfuma za ka naka ku pfuyura yose, iye, ndi cha mu pa chipo cha ka naka. 12. Ndi no da mukomana, u si nga bi, uyu, u si nga zo regi ku bata kana ndi si 'po.

EXER. 61.—1. Those women, whom I see at those huts, where do they come from? 2. They come from the villages, which are on the other side of the mountain, where there are no traders. 3. They have come to sell their grain, that which they are carrying (lit. carried) in their baskets. 4. Do they want salt or calico to wear? 5. Probably they want both, salt, with which they can season their vegetables, and calico, which they can wear. 6. This Winter is intensely cold, therefore they want something to put on. 7. But they will not refuse salt either, because vegetables without (which have not) salt, are not nice. 8. Let them come now at once, let me buy; I want to go to my other work, which I have not finished yet. 9. They have already come, here they are! The grain which they have brought, there it is! It seems to be very good. 10. (At) the villages from which they come, it is there where the elders asked (thus) for a teacher, that time (lit. those days), when we made a journey to their country.

EXER. 62.—1. Biza rako ra nga ri chi sungwa no mukomana wangu nguya ya nda daniwa ku yuya pano madekwano. 2. Mabiza edu a ka sunungurgwa n'ani mangwanano? No uyu mukomana wangu a mene, u no si ita mubato iwowo; nda ka a wana a sunungurgwa. 3. Makashu a ka ishwa pai? A ka chengetewa kwazo here? 4. Ha a zati a ka torgwa ne'ni, a ka yigwa no mukomana u no bata mu munda. 5. U nga tendiwa, ha a zo rashi chinu cha ishwa pa mayoko akwe. 6. Murumbi uyu u no dikanwa zikuru na yanu yose ye nyika. 7. U no nyepergwa maka dzayo dzose, ya no betsergwa na'ye. 8. Nombe dza ka yonekwa n'ani nasi? Ra nga ri sati ri ri dzoro rangi ro ku lisa nombe; dza nga dzi chi lisiwa no mumge. 9. Munda wako wa ka rimiwa n'ani naka? No munu u no nzi Gudo, wa ka ripirgwa no munyu; wa ka piwa yo zo ku ldya ne'ni. 10. Miti ya ka simiwa, ne ziyo za ka dzargwa, zose za ka mera za ka naka; kana mvura i chi yuya, zi si nga pishwi ne zuya, ha ti nga zo shaiwi zo ku ldya.

EXER. 63.—1. The gardens of the Yakaranga are hoed with small hoes, therefore they take a very long time. 2. If they had a plough, that which is drawn by oxen, they would also have finished quickly. 3. That plough does not take long; if it is ploughed with, the whole garden is finished in one day. 4. The day before yesterday we went to the gardens; we had much rain (lit. we were rained much) being caught in (by) the rain, being on the road. 5. To-day when I was leaving home, I was nearly bitten by a snake; but it was (afterwards) stoned by the boys, by whom I was being accompanied. 6. We did not go by this road, because it had been reported (heard) that it was frequented (lit. was in the habit of being walked) by lions. 7. It was said by women who passed to-day, that it was seen yesterday, but they failed to kill it (lit. it was unsuccessful to be killed). 8. A man called Muzenda, was found stealing our maize, (those) which were heaped up by the women. 9. The sheep, which was lost by the shepherd yesterday, was not found (lit. was gone and missed) by the boys to-day. 10. That child who was living with you long ago, what happened (lit. was done what) to it later? It was afterwards taken by its relatives.

EXER. 64.—1. Ndi cha ku mirira ti go inda tose ku mubato wedu. 2. Ndi cha mbo pedza mubato wangu mu'mba, ndi go inda ku rima mu munda. 3. Moyo wo mukadzi uyu u no rgwadza zikuru, u no chemera mḡana wakwe; wa ka firgwa ne chisikana cha ka naka zuro. 4. U sa pa mḡana wako rukweza, u mu ldyise sadza ra mabargwe; ri cha kudza mḡana. 5. Nda ka burukira ku munda wako zuro; wa ka ldyiwa na makudo; a ka pedza mabargwe ako ose. 6. Makudo a ka yonekwa n'ani? Ha ku no munu wa ka tumirgwa ku munda ku a fura here? 7. Ha ku no wa ka a yona; a ka buruka gomo mangwanana ano, ndo ku pedza munda, ndo ku dzokera ku mawale. 8. Yakadzi ya nyara zikuru madekwano, ha ya faniri ku mirirgwa pa chikoro. 9. Yazhinji yayo ya cha bika; kuda ya cha nonoshwa no ku shanda; ya cha fanira ku mbo radzika yana yo. 10. Mai ya no rgwarira mu imba iyeyo; mḡana wayo u no ya chemera, u ne zhara; yuya ne hali yo ku bikisa, ndi mu bikire sadza; ndi pe yo ndiro yo ku mu pakurira.

EXER. 65.—1. Where were you to-day? We went to wash for

the white man. 2. Have you washed the clothes clean? Have you made them very white? If you have done so, he will pay you well. 3. Yes, we went and spent all day washing, and have returned home just now. 4. Go into the house with the children, cause them to be washed, and to put on nice clothes, so that they may make people glad. 5. Fill the pot with water, cause it to boil quickly; we want to cook for the strangers, who have arrived for us just now. 6. Who caused you to cross the full river? We were helped by the people of the village which is near to it. 7. They carried our things for us, they made us cross in the boat, and cooked porridge for us, not asking for payment. 8. Truly, they have done well to you, because the Yakaranga are not accustomed to help strangers (i.e. if they are strangers, they do not know to help them). 9. Go and drive the nail into the pole, let it be firm, and shut in the cattle with it. 10. The child ate out of this plate the porridge, which was cooked for him by his aunt in the cooking pot of the girls.

EXER. 66.—1. Wa ka royesa mukomana; u li mudoko, wa ka firgwa na mai yakwe. 2. Dzidzisai yana yenyu ku dana no ku betserana pa mibato yayo yose. 3. Munu uyu u no dana no munununa wakwe; ya ka rimirana, ya cha chekerana ziyo za ibva. 4. Ndi cha ngo fundunura fundo iro; ndi ani wa ka ri funda ze? 5. Ndi betsere ku peta mucheka uyu; wa ka petenurirgwa yakadzi ya ka yuya ku tengesa ziyo zayo masikati ano. 6. Sengeranai misengwa; no ku daro mu go ita murairo wa Kristu. 7. Mukomana uyu u no bva pa musha wa yarumbi; wa ka fambisa, a ka yuya ne pwadi dzedu dzi na mashoko a ka naka. 8. Wa ka ndo pesana pa zhira no mukomana wa ka bva pano; ta ka funga ya cha shongana. 9. Funura hali, u zi bvisire nyama, u i ise mu ndiro, u go i funira ze. 10. Munu uyu wa ka naka wa ka vunika ruyoko; zino ha a bvidzi ku rima, u no ngo bata-bata pano pa musha.

EXER. 67.—1. We and our uncle have said goodbye to one another; he went to work for his tax at Selukwe. 2. Is he likely to go and find it? Others have sought it very much, (and) were unsuccessful (lit. did not find it), they have come back home without (lit. they have not). 3. I shall be very glad, if he is released (i.e. untied), because he has a hard time, seeking (continually)

everywhere. 4. Perhaps if he works very nicely, the white man will give him work, (and) he may come back free (released). 5. Yes, the work of cooking that is the one which he knows very well; if he is given that, he will be very glad, he will work for them with his whole heart. 6. The *Vakaranga* and the *Matabeli* do not agree with one another (lit. do not hear one another) well; long ago they used to hate each other very much, and killed one another. 7. Open the pot for me, I want to season the meat, that it may be nice for us. 8. If you help one another, showing each other sympathy, you will be good people, and rejoice with one another. 9. Cause each other to walk in the good way, teach each other everything that is right, do not lead each other astray, and do not deceive one another. 10. The calabash of my mother was found at the fountain, spoiled altogether; (the one) who has broken it will not be known now.

EXER. 68.—1. Naka mvura ya ka na zikuru; nzizi dza ka ngo ti pa! 2. Murumbi u no gara pa jinga pe gomo irero wa ka fuma zikuru; nombe dzake mu bani dza ka ngo ti zi! 3. Hono, zokwadi! wa ka fuma zikuru; u cha itei na mali akwe ose ne nombe dzakwe? 4. U cha go ti wo tengisa zose, a go inda pfocho, a go dzokera ku nyika yakwe ku no mukadzi wakwe na yana. 5. Wa ka regerei ku yuya na 'yo pano? U no garirei pano oga? 6. U no thia hosha ye nyika yenyu, saka u no ti ku li nani ku ya siya pa ya li, pa si no yurgwere. 7. Gara! mu nyika yayo ha mu no yurgwere? Yanu ha ya firi 'po here? 8. Yurgwere yu li 'po, yanu ya chi fira 'po yo, bva ha ya wanzi ku rgwara sa ya no ita pa nyika ino. 9. Hono, zokwadi! nyika ino i no ldy a yene yayo, tose ta ka fanana yatana na vachembere, ti chi vadoko. 10. Yarumbi ya no ti nyepera kuti yutunga yu no pinza yurgwere ibgobgu mu ropa, kana yu chi ti ruma; saka iyo ya no yata ya ka fukidziwa ne mimbule michena iyeyo, yutunga yu si nga bvidzi ku i pinda no ku ya sikira.

EXER. 69.—1. Those small girls ground much meal, they brought a flat basket quite full. 2. Why did you come here to-day? What do you want? Why do you spend the day, just sitting in the sun? 3. Really! you surprise me, you! Honestly! I have no words any more. 4. Dear me! I have been stung by a bee, but the pain, unbearable (lit. no)! 5. My father! what matters you to-day?

You have gone to build a kraal where there are no cattle (i.e. you have gone on a fruitless errand). 6. Yes truly! you can laugh at our madness; you can say: 'It serves you right!' 7. Good! thank you! to-day you have brought news to gladden my heart, now I will sleep soundly, not caring anything. 8. The cattle came to the kraal in single file, following one another. 9. That time when I was looking for that man who deceived me, he had already fled altogether. 10. Will I see him again at all? No, never! I will not see him again; neither him, nor his wife, who was with him, no!

EXER. 70.—1. Mukomana, wa ta ka tumira kwa Shumba zuroliya, wa ngo yuya madekwano; wa ka ndo nonoshwa, iye a si 'po. 2. Bambo yangu ya ka ndi pa mou mbiri ne muru dzadzo, ndi go royora mukadzi. 3. Zuro mangwanana mukomana wa ka sika ne pwadi ku zo dana nanga, nokuti mukadzi wo murumbi wa nga a chi rgwara zikuru. 4. Nanga ya ka mu tumira mushonga pakarepo, i ka inda 'ko nasi ku ndo mu yona i mene. 5. Mbga ya ka naka iyeyo nde yako here? Ha u cha ndi pe iyo here? Ndi cha fara zikuru. 6. Kwete, ha ndi bvidzi ku ku pa iyo, nda ka zi tengera iyo ne nombe; ha ndi zivi pa ndi nga tenga imge, kana ndi chi ku pa iyeyi. 7. Wa ka tengei pa murumbi zuro? Nda ka zi tengera ngowani na machira a yana yangu. 8. U fumire ku danga re nombe, u ndi rayurire mou ne muru, u go yudza mulisi ku dzi fudza payiri. 9. Muru, ya ka vunike gumbo zuroliya, i no sara mu danga, i no budishwa pa sule, i go fura pedo, i go rega ku rgwadza gumbo rayo ze. 10. Ndizo! ndi cha fumira, ndi go ita zose za wa ka ndi raira; ndi cha yudza mulisi izozi, ndi chi yuya ze masikati ku mu zivisa za ka ithwa.

PART III

USEFUL CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES

USEFUL CONVERSATIONAL SENTENCES

I. GREETINGS.

Good day! *Kwaziwa!* (singular); *Kwaziwai!* (plural).

How are you? *Ma ka yata?* (lit. Have you slept?); *Ma ka fara?* (lit. Are you glad?); *Ma ka dini?* (lit. How do you do?)

I am well! How are you? *Ta ka yata hedu!* *To ti ma ka yata kwenyu yo?* (i.e. we have slept as regards ourselves! We say have you slept at your place also?)

Where do you come from? *U* (plur. *mu*) *no bve 'pi?*

Where do you go to? *U* (plur. *mu*) *no inde 'pi?* or *U no linge 'pi?* (Where do you look to?)

What do you want? *U no reyei?* *U no tsakei?* or *U no dei?*

Where do you live? *U no gare 'pi?*

Is your home far or near? *Musha wako kure kana pedo here?*

When did you start? *Wa ka bva lini?*

When did you arrive? *Wa ka sika lini?*

Are you tired? *Wa* (plur. *ma*) *nyara here?*

Sit down, rest! *Garai henyu, mu zorore!*

I am glad to see you! *Ndi no fara ku mu yona!*

I have been longing for you. *Nda nga ndi chi mu shuya.*

What do you do now-a-days? *Mu no batei mazuya ano?*

How are your gardens? *Minda yenyu ya ka dini?*

The sun is hot! *Zuya ri no pisa!*

It is hot to-day. *Ku ne ziya nasi.*

It will rain. *I cha na.*

It will not rain. *Ha i cha ni.*

I am going. *Ndo inda.*

I have been called away. *Nda danwa.*

I want to say good-bye. *Ndi no do ku woneka.*

Good-bye! (We have seen one another.) *Ta yonana.*

We shall see each other again to-morrow. *Ti cha yonana ze mangwana.*

Come again to-morrow. *Yuya ze mangwana.*

If only I could speak your language, we would have conversed with joy. *Deno nda i ziya rulimi rgwenyu, ta i tawulirana no mufaro.*

Greetings to those at home!

Ya li ku musha ya bude or nga ya muke (lit. let them go out, or let them rise).

Thanks! You have visited me!

Ta tenda, ma ndi mutsa!

Good-bye! *Sarai henyu!* or *Sarai za ka naka* (lit. Remain well).

Good-bye! (answer). *Fambai henyu!* or *Fambai za ka naka!* (lit. Go well).

II. ENGAGEMENTS.

What is your name? *Zita rako ndi ani?*

What is your surname? *Mutupo wako chinyi?* or, *U no yirei?*

Which is your village? *Musha wako ndo upi?*

Who is your chief? *She wako ndi ani?*

Who is your father? *Bambo vako ndi ani?*

Whose child are you? *U li mgana wani?*

Do you want work? *U no tsaka mubato* (or *mabasa*) *here?*

How many months do you want to work? *U no da ku bata* (or *seyenza*) *mgedzi mingana?*

How much money per month do you want? *U no da mali mangana pa mgedzi?*

If you are satisfied with five

shillings you may come. *Kana u no tenda na macherene mashanu, u nga yuya.*

I will give you ten shillings per month. *Ndi cha ku pa chumi pa mgedzi.*

I will give you food also. *Ndi cha ku pa ne zo ku ldya.*

You must find your own food. *U no fanira ku zi kwashira zo ku ldya.*

What work can you do? *U nga bata mubato upi?*

Have you worked with white people before? *Wa ka mbo seyenza pa varumbi here?*

For whom did you work? *Wa ka seyenzero ani?*

What did you get per month? *Wa ka piwei pa mgedzi?*

Who is your master? *Tenzi wako ndi ani?*

When will you come? *U cha yuya lini?*

Come to-day. *Yuya nasi.*

All right! *Ndi'zo!*

Begin to-morrow. *Tanga mangwana.*

Do you know how to cook?

U no ziya ku bika here?

Can you work in the garden?

U nga bata mu munda here?

Do you know how to drive a wagon?

U no ziya ku fambisa ngoro here?

Do you know how to groom horses?

U no ziya ku bracha mabiza here?

You must do all kinds of work.

U no fanira ku bata mibato yose (or mabasa ose).

To dig in the garden, to chop wood, to fetch water, to be sent (on errands), to sweep, and everything that I tell you. *Ku rima mu munda, ku tema huni, ku chera mvura, ku tumga, ku tsaira, ne zose za ndi no ku raira.*

I consent. *Ndi no tenda.*

I do not agree. *Ha ndi tendi.*

Work carefully. *Natsa ku bata.*

Work quickly. *Bata no ku chimbidzika.*

Be obedient, and do always as I tell you. *Chi terera, u ite sa ndi chi ku raira misi yose.*

You please me, you work nicely.

U no ndi fadza; u no bata za ka naka.

You do not please me, you do not work nicely. *Ha u ndi fadzi, ha u bati za ka naka.*

You are a good boy, you have worked well. *U li mukomana wa ka naka, wa ka bata za ka naka.*

You are a bad boy, you are disobedient. *U li mukomana wa ka ipa, ha u tereri.*

If you want to go away you must first find another boy for me. *Kana u chi da ku bva, u no fanira ku mbo ndi kwashira mumge mukomana.*

Don't ask for your money, I will give it to you, when the month is up. *U sa kumbira mali ako, ndi cha ku pa iwo mgedzi wa pera.*

Your month is up. *Mgedzi wako wa pera.*

Your month is not yet up. *Mgedzi wako u chi gere ku pera.*

There is your money, you may go home now. *Hawo mali ako, u nga inda ku musha zino.*

You may go and rest a few days, then come again. *U nga ndo zorora mazuya mashomanene, u go yuya ze.*

III. ORDINARY HOUSE-WORK.

Come here. *Vuya pano.*

Go there. *Inda koko.*

Go in. *Pinda.*

Go out. *Buda.*

Come with me. *Hendei tose.*

Stand up. *Muruka.*

Sit down. *Gara pasi.*

Make haste. *Chimbizika.*

Take away. *Bvisa.*

Don't take away. *U sa bvisa.*

Leave alone. *Chi rega.*

Pick up. *Nunga.*

Put down. *Isa pasi.*

Lift up. *Murudza.*

Take it there. *Inda nacho apo.*

Bring it here. *Vuya nacho pano.*

I understand. *Nda zi nzgwa.*

I don't understand. *Ha ndi zi nzgwi.*

Do you understand? *U no zi nzgwa here?*

I know. *Ndi no ziya.*

I don't know. *Ha ndi ziya.*

Do you know? *U no ziya here?*

It is good. *Za ka naka.*

It is not good. *Za ka ipa; or Ha ti za ka naka.*

Give it to me. *Ndi pe icho.*

Help me. *Ndi betsera.*

Help him. *Chi mu betsera.*

Where is he? *U li 'pi?*

Where are you? *U li 'pi?*

Where are they? *Va li 'pi?*

Where are you? (pl.) *Muli 'pi?*

Do so. *Ita ku dero.*

Don't do so. *U sa ita ku dero; or u sa dero.*

Make it right again. *Gadzira ze.*

Take care. *Chenjera.*

Don't break. *U sa putsa.*

Don't let fall. *U sa wisa.*

Make the fire. *Yeso moto.*

Put out the fire. *Dzima moto.*

Make more fire. *Wedzera moto.*

The fire is too big. *Moto mukurusa.*

The fire has gone out. *Moto wa dzima.*

Bring wood. *Vuya ne huni.*

Bring much wood. *Vuya ne huni zhinji.*

Is the wood dry? *Huni dza ka woma here?*

Chop wood small. *Tema huni, ita doko.*

Go on making fire. *Ramba u chi yeso moto.*

Kill a fowl. *Vuraya huku.*

Pluck off the feathers. *Tayura.*

Take out the inside. *Tumbura.*

Cook the food. *Bika go ku ldyo.*

First wash the pots. *Chi mbo suka hali.*

Dry well. *Pukusa za ka naka.*

Put on the meat, the rice, vegetables, potatoes, sweet potatoes, tomatoes, the beans, the porridge, &c. *Gadza*

nyama, mupunga, miliyo, malabura, mabura, makuzungu, nyemba, sadza, &c.
 Watch the pots, don't let the food burn. *Rinda hali, zo ku ldya zi rege ku tsa.*
 That pot burns. *Hali iyo yo tsa.*
 Pour in water. *Dira mvura.*
 Pour out the water. *Durura mvura.*
 Drain off the water. *Mimina mvura.*
 Strain the milk. *Surudza mukaka.*
 Don't spill. *U sa teyura.*
 Don't waste. *U sa chinya.*
 Have you seasoned (with salt) ?
Wa ka runga here ?
 Don't put in too much salt. *U sa rungisa.*
 Stir the porridge. *Kurunga sadza.*
 The salt is too little. *Munyu mushoma.*
 Is the food done ? *Zo ku ldya za ibva here ?*
 Dish up. *Pakura.*
 Fill the kettle. *Zadza kitire.*
 Boil the kettle. *Bika kitire.*
 Does the water boil ? *Mvura i no vira here ?*
 Has the water boiled ? *Mvura ya vira here ?*
 Make tea. *Ita tihi.*
 Make coffee. *Ita kofi.*
 Bring the cups, spoons, the milk, sugar, and everything. *Vuya na makopi, migwaku, mukaka, chogera ne zose.*

Put on a white clean cloth. *Isa mucheka muchena wa ka naka.*
 Pour in the tea, and bring it. *Dira tihi, u go vuya na 'yo.*
 Bring hot water. *Vuya ne mvura i no pisa.*
 Bring cold water. *Vuya ne mvura i no tonora.*
 Bring warm water. *Vuya ne mvura i no dziya.*
 Go and bring water to the visitor. *Inda, u ise mvura ku mgeni.*
 Knock at the door. *Guhudza pa mukoya.*
 Throw away the dirty water. *Rasha mvura i ne shina.*
 Fetch other water. *Chera imge mvura.*
 Fill the jug. *Zadza bigiri.*
 Make the bed. *Wadza noyo.*
 Sweep the room. *Tsaira imba.*
 First sprinkle water. *Chi mbo sase mvura.*
 Don't raise the dust. *U sa pfungidzira.*
 Dust the things. *Pukusa numbi.*
 Put everything straight. *Gadzira zose.*
 Open the windows and the door. *Zarura mawindi no mukoya.*
 Let the air come in. *Mepo i pinde.*
 Close the door. *Pfiga mukoya.*
 Don't let the dog come in. *Mbga i rege ku pinda.*
 Lay the table. *Gadzira tafura.*

Put on plates, knives, forks, spoons. *Isa ndiro, mapanga, maforogo (mibayo), migwaku, &c.*

Have you sharpened the knives ?

Wa ka rodza mapanga here ?

Have you polished the forks and spoons ? *Wa ka kwesha maforogo ne migwaku here ?*

You have forgotten some things.

Wa ka kanganywa zimŋe.

Stand here at the table. *Mira pano pa tafura.*

Take away the plates. *Bvisa ndiro.*

Bring others. *Vuya ne dzimŋe.*

Fold the cloth, and put it away.

Peta mucheka, u go u viga.

Save the food that is over.

Chengeta zo ku ldy a za sara.

Wipe the table. *Pukusa tafura.*

Wash the plates and everything.

Suka ndiro ne zose.

Don't knock the plates. *U sa bonderedza ndiro.*

Don't make a noise. *U sa ita ruzha.*

Wipe them well. *U dzi pukuse za ka naka.*

Let them be shining. *Dzi bŋinye.*

Polish the stove. *Bŋinyisa chitofo.*

Smear the floor. *Dzura pasi.*

Don't loiter. *U sa nonoka.*

If you have finished your work you may rest. *Kana wa pedza mubato wako, u nga zorora.*

Brush the boots. *Bracha shangu.*

Mind the baby. *Rinda mŋana.*

The baby cries. *Mŋana u no chema.*

Wash the clothes to-day. *Sukz hazu nasi.*

Don't waste the soap. *U sa chinya chisipo.*

Hang up the clothes to dry. *Nika hazu, dzi wome.*

Sprinkle the clothes. *Sase nguvo.*

Iron the clothes. *Pisa hazu (nguvo).*

Let the irons be hot. *Tsimbi dzi pise.*

Fold the clothes nicely. *Natso ku peta nguvo.*

Put them away in their places. *U dzi ise pa vugaro bŋadzo.*

Can you bake bread ? *U nga bika chingwa here ?*

Take the flour and mix with the yeast. *Tora vupfu, u go venganisa no mumera.*

Add warm water. *Wedzera mvura i no dziya.*

Knead much until it is done. *Kanya zikuru, ku sika cha ibva.*

Make four loaves. *Ita mapundu manna.*

Put into the pans. *Isa mu mapani.*

Let the bread rise well. *Chingwa chi vire kwazo.*

Bake it, and don't make a very big fire. *Bika, u rege ku kudza moto.*

Have you finished the work?

Wa ka pedza mubato here?

The work is finished, now you can play. *Mubato wa pera, zino u nga tamba.*

Light the candle. *Tungidza mgenje.*

Be careful not to break the lamp. *Chenjera, u sa putsa rampi.*

Give clean water to the fowls and chickens. *U pe huku*

ne hukwana mvura ya ka naka.

Sweep the yard. *Tsaira pa ruwazhe.*

Take out all the eggs. *Bura mazai ose.*

Go to your room to sleep now. *Inda ku'mba kwako ku ndo yata zino.*

Get up early to-morrow morning to make the coffee. *Fumira mangwana ku zo ita kofi.*

Wake me as soon as you have made it. *Ndi mutse, kana wa i ita.*

IV. FARMING GENERALLY.

Dig in the garden. *Rima mu munda.*

Dig a hole. *Chera gomba.*

Plant the tree. *Sima muti.*

Press it down well. *Ndinyira kwazo.*

Cover up the hole with soil. *Fusira gomba ne vu.*

Water the plants. *Diridza miti.*

Weed this bed. *Sakura ndima iyi.*

Pull out the weeds. *Dzura bundo.*

Carry manure. *Senga mupfudze.*

Level the soil. *Enzanisa vu.*

Plant out the seedlings. *Sima nondo.*

Sow the seeds. *Dzara mbewu.*

Plant peas and maize. *Kavira nyemba na mabargwe.*

Make a fence to keep the cattle out. *Sosa ruzhowa ku dzi-yirira nombe.*

Herd the cattle. *Lisa nombe.*

Take them to good grazing. *U dzi ise ku mafuro a ka naka.*

Drive them slowly. *U dzi tine chinyai.*

Milk the cows. *Kama mou.*

First wash the bucket. *Chi mbo suka bekete.*

Cover the milk, so that the flies don't get in. *Funira mukaka nunzi dzi rege ku pinda.*

Don't give the calves too little milk, they will die. *U sa nyima muru mukaka, dzi cha fa.*

Let the calves remain at home.

Muru dzi sare ku musha.

Shut them up in the hut. *U dzi pfigire mu'mba.*

Repair the kraal that the cattle may not break out. *Gadzira danga, nombe dzi rege ku phanya.*

Take away the mud. *Bvisa matope.*

Close the gate. *Zarira suyo.*

Open the gate of the kraal.

Zarura suyo re danga.

Where are the oxen? *Nombe dzi ri 'pi?*

Bring them. *Vuya na'dzo.*

Insan them now. *U dzi sunge zino.*

Span them out. *U dzi sunungure.*

Can you drive oxen? *U no ziya ku chaira nombe?*

Don't beat them too hard, work gently with them. *U rege ku dzi rovesa, natso ku bata nadzo.*

If you beat wounds on them, I will be very angry. *Kana u chi dzi rovesa, dzi ka ita mayanga, ndi cha tsamga zikuru.*

Have you brought all the cattle? *Wa ka vuya ne nombe dzose here?*

Go and look for the lost cattle. *U ndo kwashe nombe dza ka rashika.*

How many are lost? *Dza ka rashika i ngana?*

Which are lost? *Dza ka rashika nde dzi 'pi?*

Have you found them? *Wa dzi wana here?*

No, I could not find them. *Kwete, nda ka dzi shaiwa.*

If they get into the gardens you will have to pay. *Kana dzi chi pinda mu minda u cha fanira ku ripa.*

Where are the goats? *Mbudzi dzi ri 'pi?*

Where are the sheep? *Makwai a li 'pi?*

Where are the pigs? *Ngurube dzi ri 'pi?*

Take care that the goats do not eat the gardens of the people. *Chenjera kuti mbudzi dzi rege ku ldy minda ya vanu.*

If any sheep have scab, tell me soon. *Kana makwai a no rukundo, chimbidzika ku ndi yudza.*

Don't lose the pigs. *U sa rashe ngurube.*

Shut up the sty very well, let them not come out in the night. *Zarira danga kwazo, dzi rege ku buda vusiku.*

Do not forget to give the pigs food and water. *U sa kanganwa ku pa ngurube zo ku ldy ne mvura.*

Clean the horse. *Bracha biza.*
Pull the ticks off the horse. *Bvisa zishambge pa biza.*

Tie up the horse. *Sunga biza.*
 Untie the horse. *Sunungura biza.*

Catch the horse. *Bata biza.*
 Watch the horse. *Rinda biza.*
 Give the horse water. *U pe biza mvura.*

Saddle the horse. *Isa chigaro che biza.*

Take off the saddle. *Bvisa chigaro.*

Go and cut grass for the horse. *U ndo chekera biza yushwa.*

Give the horse maize early. *Fumira, u go pa biza mabargwe.*

Don't let him out while the dew is on the grass. *U sa ri budisa, yeta ri chi pa yushwa.*

Don't water the horse after it has had maize. *U sa pa biza mvura ra ldy mabargwe.*

Don't let the horse drink water while he is still warm. *U sa nwiswa biza ri chi ne ziya.*

Lead him slowly till he is cool. *U ri fambise chinyai, ku sika ra pora.*

Clean the stable every morning. *Gadzira chiteyere mazuya ose.*

Dust the carriage, and wash the mud off the wheels. *Pukusa gariki (ngoro), suka makumbo, u chi bvisa matope.*

Inspan the horse in the carriage. *Sungira biza pa gariki (ngoro).*

Put on the harness properly. *Isa makashu kwazo.*

When have the wheels been greased? *Makumbo a ka ishwa mafuta lini?*

If you have finished that work, come and tell me, and I will give you another. *Kana wa pedza mubato uwo, yuya u ndi nyepere, ndi go ku pa mumge.*

Don't go and sit down without work. *U sa ndo gara u si no mubato.*

Don't wait for me to tell you your work, do it of your own accord. *U sa mirira kuti ndi go ku nyepera mubato wako, u u bate u mene.*

V. BUILDING AND CARPENTRY.

Can you come and build a hut for me? *U nga yuya ku ndi yakira imba here?*

I want a good native hut. *Ndi no da imba ye Chikaranga kwayo.*

Go and chop the poles and laths. *U ndo tema mapango ne nungu.*

Tie the poles very tightly. *Sunga mapango, a bate zikuru.*

Let them stand straight, so that the house may not afterwards fall. *A mire kwazo, imba i rege ku zo wa.*

The poles are too thin, get thicker ones. *Mapango matete, kwasha makobvu.*

The laths for the roof are not enough. *Nungu dze denga ha dzi ringani.*

Build a large house. *Yaka imba huru.*

Make a high wall. *Ita chidziro chirefu.*

Plait the roof, make it of reeds. *Ruka denga, ita ne shanga.*

Call people to help you lift the roof. *Dana vanu ya ku betsere ku murudze denga.*

Let the women plaster the hut inside and outside. *Yakadzi ya vuwe imba mukati no kuzhe kwayo.*

Beat down the floor. *Rovera guya.*

Put on ant-heap and make it very hard. *Isa chivuru, ri go bata kwazo.*

The floor does not dry soon. *Guva ha ri chimbidziki ku woma.*

Go and fetch white clay and white-wash the walls. *U ndo tora suko, u go dzudzura madziro.*

The clay is too thin, make it thicker. *Suko ya ka tetepa, chi kodza.*

Have you made bricks before? *Wa mbo yumba zidina here?*

Mix the soil and water and tread it thoroughly. *Venganisa vu ne mvura, u go kanyira kwazo.* Go on treading until it is good. *U rambe u chi kanyira ku sika ra ibva.*

Now take the mould and fill it with the mortar. *Zino tora foroma, u dzi zadze ne vu.*

Turn out carefully. *Natsa ku durura.*

If a brick cracks take it, and put it back in the clay. *Kana chidina chi chi paruka, u chi dzosere mu vu.*

Stack the dry bricks carefully, do not break them. *Natsa ku tutira zidina, u sa putsanya.*

Bring raw bricks. *Vuya ne zidina zi sati za pisiwa.*

Bring baked bricks. *Vuya ne zidina za ka pisiwa.*

Throw the bricks to me. *Ndi kandire zidina.*

Hand me these bricks. *U ndi gamuchidze zidina izi.*

Lay the bricks straight. *Ronga zidina, zi rurame.*

Now we shall put on the roof. *Zino ti cha isa denga.*

Bore holes into these poles. *Bvovora mavuli pa matanda iwawo.*

Bring the nails. *Vuya ne mbambo.*

Give me the hammer. *Ndi pe nyundo.*

Hit the nail with the hammer.

Rovera mbambo ne nyundo.

Hit hard. *Roveresa.*

Don't hit hard. *U sa roveresa.*

Hold this pole very tightly.

Bata danda iri ne simba.

Can you thatch? *U nga pfulira here?*

Thatch well so that the house will not leak. *Pfulira kwazo, imba i rege ku zo dona.*

Cut much grass. *Cheka vushwa vuzhinji.*

Bring bark. *Vuya na makayi.*

Put on enough grass and tie

it well. *Isa vushwa yu no ringana, u yu sunge kwazo.*

Plait a native door for this house. *Rukira imba iyi sasa re Chikaranga.*

Now make a nice fence.

Zino vaka rumanda rgwa ka naka.

Make the holes deep. *Dzikisa makomba.*

Put in the poles, and press down the soil well. *Isa mapango, u go ndinyira kwazo.*

Tie the laths strongly. *Sunga mbaliro dzi bate kwazo.*

VI. TRAVELLING.

I want to go on a journey. *Ndi no da ku famba rgwendo.*

Will you guide me? *U cha ndi perekedza here?*

Do you know the road well? *U no natsa ku ziya zhira here?*

Don't lose the road. *U sa rasha zhira.*

Walk in front, I'll follow. *Tungamira, ndi cha teyera.*

I will walk in front, you may follow. *Ndi cha tungamira, u go teyera.*

Walk fast. *Fambisa.*

Don't walk fast. *U sa fambisa.*

Will we reach Gutu's to-night? *Ti cha shika kwa Gutu madekwano here?*

How many days will we walk? *Ti cha famba mazuya mangana?*

We shall sleep two nights. *Ti cha vata masiku maviri.*

How many days shall we spend there? *Ti cha ndo gara 'po mazuya mangana?*

When shall we return? *Ti cha dzoka lini?*

Go with me to buy cattle. *Hendei tose ku ndo tenge nombe.*

Go with me to buy grain. *Hendei tose ku ndo tenge ziyo.*

We shall go with wagon and donkeys. *Ti cha famba ne ngoro ne mbongora.*

We shall go with wagon and oxen. *Ti cha famba ne ngoro ne nombe.*

You must drive the wagon. *U no fanira ku chaira ngoro.*

You must lead. *U no fanira ku bata gashu.*

Get the wagon ready. *Gadzira ngoro.*

Grease the wagon. *Isa ngoro mafuta.*

Load the things on. *Tutira numbi pa ngoro.*

Unload the things. *Tutunura numbi.*

Let us inspan at once. *Nga ti sungei ikozino.*

Do you know S. ? *U no ziya S. here ?*

Do you know where S. lives ? *U no ziya kwa S. here ?*

Is the road good ? *Mugwagwa wa ka naka here ?*

We shall go early to-morrow. *Ti cha fumira mangwana.*

We shall go when the sun rises. *Ti cha inda zuva ro buda.*

We shall go at midday. *Ti cha inda masikati.*

We shall go in the afternoon. *Ti cha inda zuva ro vira.*

Are there any rivers in front ? *Ku ne nzizi pa mberi here ?*

Has the river water ? *Rgwizi ru ne mvura here ?*

Is the ford (drift) good ? *Zambuko ra ka naka here ?*

Where shall we outspan ? *Ti cha ndo sunungure 'pi ?*

Where shall we go and sleep ? *Ti cha ndo yate 'pi ?*

Go to the left. *Inda ku rubo-shwe.*

Go to the right. *Inda ku muldyi.*

A little. *Zi-shomanene.*

Much. *Zikuru.*

Take care of that hole. *Chenjera gomba iro.*

This road is the right one. *Zhira iyi ndi 'yo.*

This road is the wrong one. *Zhira iyi ha i zati i ri 'yo.*

VII. ERRANDS.

I want to send you to S. *Ndi no do ku ku tumira kwa S.*

Take this letter and these things. *Tora mwadi iyi ne numbi idzi.*

The things are not heavy. *Numbi ha dzi remi.*

The things are heavy. *Numbi dzi no rema.*

Carry them well, don't let them fall. *Natsa ku dzi senga, dzi rege ku wa.*

Bring me his answer. *Vuya ne davidzo yakwe.*

Bring back a load. *Dzoka no muhwaro.*

Bring back our post. *Dzoka ne nwadi dze poso yedu.*

Go and be quick. *Inda, u chimbidzike.*

Go and buy bread. *U ndo tenga voroto (chingwa).*

Go and buy milk. *U ndo tenga mukaka.*

Go and buy meat. *U ndo tenga nyama.*

Go to the shop with this letter. *Inda ku vengere ne nwadi iyi.*

Wait a little. *Mira padoko.*

First wait. *Chi mbo mira.*

I am coming. *Ndi no vuya.*

I shall come afterwards. *Ndi cha go vuya.*

Wait for a letter for your master. *Mirira nwadi yo murungu wako.*

Wait for me here. *Chi ndi mirira pano.*

Have you met a white man? *Wa ka shongana no murumbi here?*

Have you met anyone? *Wa ka shongana no munu here?*

Was the man travelling on foot, on horseback, or in a wagon? *Munu wa nga a chi famba na makumbo kana ne biza, kana ne ngoro here?*

I am going out to-day and shall come back on Friday. *Ndi no famba nasi ndi go dzoka ne Chishanu.*

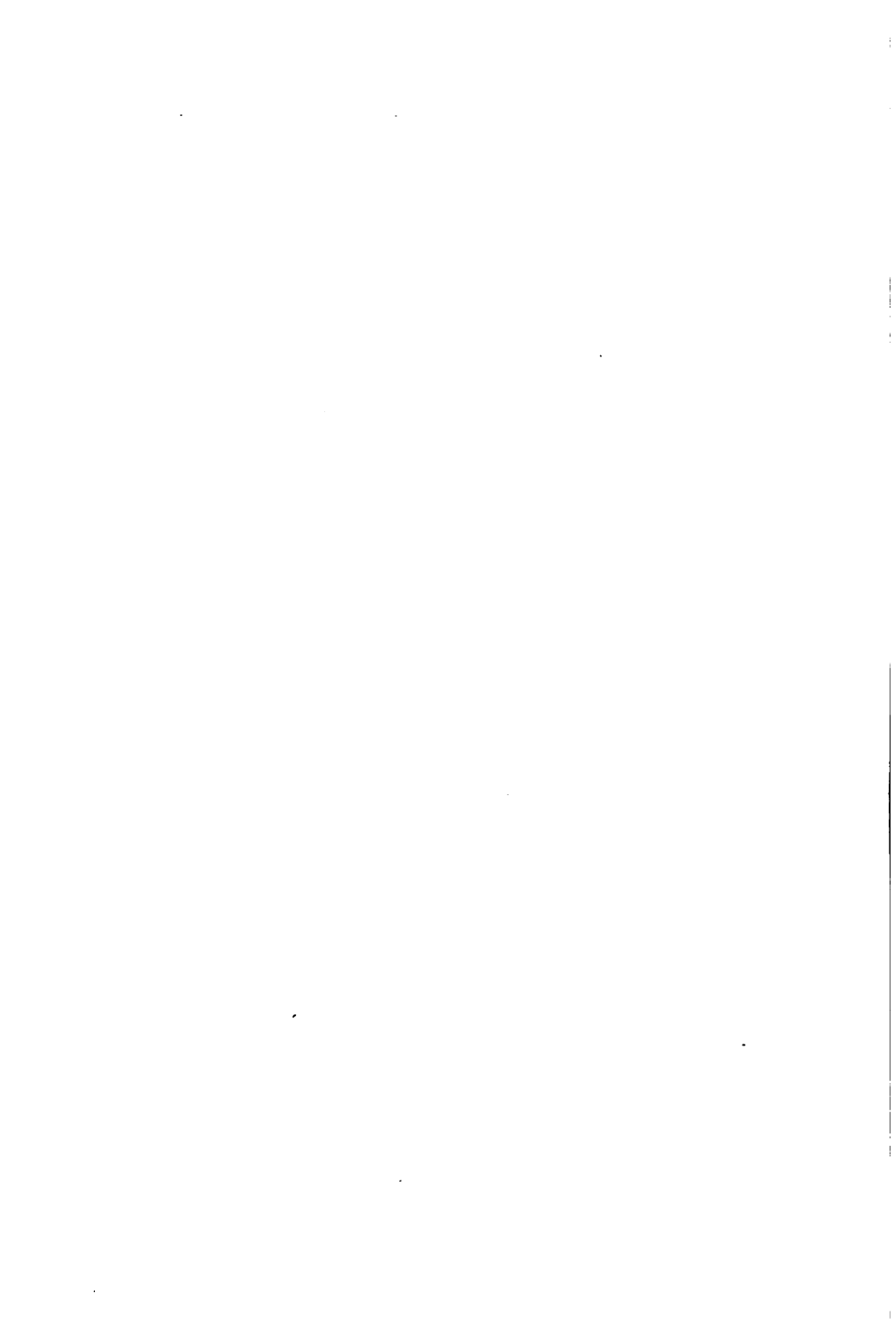
If any people call for me, tell them I'll be back on Friday. *Kana vanu ya no ndi tsaka, ya vudze ndi cha dzoka ne Chishanu.*

Tell them I'll be back to-night. *U ya vudze ndi cha dzoka madeko.*

Look well after everything. *Natsa ku tarira zose.*

Look out for me on Thursday. *U ndi tarire ne China.*

Good-bye, boys! *Sarai yako-mana!*



PART IV

VOCABULARY

(ENGLISH—CHIKARANGA AND CHIKARANGA—ENGLISH)

VOCABULARY

IN the following vocabulary, in assigning Chikaranga equivalents to the English words, those most commonly used in the Victoria district have generally been placed first, and then those less known, or used in other dialects.

To make the book less bulky, many English words, for which the more common synonyms had already been used, have had to be left out. So, for instance, instead of having both *deception* and *deceit*, we have struck out the former, so also with *declivity* and *slope*, *efface* and *erase*, *decapitate* and *behead*, etc.

For the same reason most of the *abstract nouns* have been omitted; these could, however, be easily made by prefixing 'ku' to the verb root, or according to rules under Derivative Nouns. Likewise the *derivative* and *passive* forms of the verb have not been given, as the student will be able to make them for himself, according to Lessons XXXV.-XXXVII.

The *Class* to which a noun belongs is indicated by the figure in brackets after it. For the *Locatives* we have used (9).

The Infinitive particle 'ku' (to) of the verb has been omitted throughout, a hyphen being placed before the verb root both in English and Chikaranga. Only where the same word could be used either as a noun or verb, the letters 'n.' and 'v.' were inserted to indicate the part of speech. Otherwise the hyphen or figure will show whether the word is a verb or noun.

The following abbreviations have been employed: n. (noun); v.i. (verb intransitive); v.t. (verb transitive); adj. (adjective); adv. (adverb); pron. (pronoun); rel. pron. (relative pronoun); interr. pron. (interrogative pronoun); prep. (preposition); conj. (conjunction); interj. (interjection); gen. part. (genitive particle); gov. n. (governing noun); sing. (singular); pl. (plural); aux. (auxiliary); for. (foreign word introduced into Chikaranga from English, Dutch, or a native language).

Wherever a letter or letters are put in brackets, as (nz̄)wa, (s)hwera, it means that nz̄wa and wa, shwera and hwera are used in different dialects respectively. An aspirated consonant is indicated by (h) after it; e.g. dan(h)a; sin(h)e, &c. This has been done only in cases where there is a difference in the meaning of words, which would be spelt alike, but are clearly pronounced differently by the native.

Of the numerous foreign words which are, unfortunately, used in ordinary conversation, we have given only those for which there is no native equivalent, or which are so universally used that it was impossible to omit them.

ENGLISH—CHIKARANGA

A

- abandon, - siya ; - rasha.
- — oneself, - zi raranisa ; - zi rega.
- abase, - ninipisa ; - dokosa ; - do-
kopadza ; - shoyora ; - zidza.
- abate, - va shoma ; - (of rain), - ga-
nuka (- gamuka) ; - kasa ; - sa-
kasira ; - dzimuka ; — (of river),
- serera ; - dzoka ; — (of swell-
ing), - pheva ; — (of pain),
- nyarava.
- abbreviate, - fupisa (- fupikisa) ;
- tapudza.
- abdomen, dumbu (5) ; mu vura (9) ;
side of —, numburiro (4 pl.)
- abhor, - sema ; - nenga.
- abide, - gara ; (perf. gere) ; - va po ;
(remain over), - sara.
- ability, vuchenjeri (7), ku chenjera (8) ;
njere (4 pl.) ; (natural —), nno
(4 pl.).
- able, - be, - va ne simba ; - va na
mafupa ; - va ne nungo.
- (can), - gona ; - bvidza.
- ably, adv., no ku chenjera ; ne simba.
- abode, yugaro (7) ; ku musha (9).
- abominate, see 'abhor.'
- abort, - sodza ; - kaya ; - wisa ;
- rongera ; - poza.
- abortion, gaya mgedzi (5) ; gamba
mgedzi (5).
- abound, - wanda ; - va za ka wanda ;
- va zhinji.
- about, prep. (concerning), cha, za ;
— (nearly), pamge ; kuda.
- about to do, - be, - rgwisa, followed
by the Infinitive.
- above, adv., pa msoro ; ku msoro,
(high), ku denga ; mu kudenga ;

- (above up in the sky), mu gole ;
mu gole dema.
- abreast, - go, - ita sara ; - ita runda ;
—, - be, - runda.
- abroad, adv., ku imge nyika ; pamge ;
kumge.
- abroad, - go, - famba rgwendo ; - papa
ne nyika.
- abrupt, - be, - fupika ; - gulika ;
- chimbidzika ku guma.
- abscess (before breaking), mota (5) ;
(after breaking), ronda (5).
- absent, - be, 'po' preceded by the
negative particle and the pre-
fixal pronoun, e.g. he is not here,
ha a po.
- absentmindedness, changaira (3) ; chi-
angatira (3).
- absolute, adj., - ose (see Lesson IX.).
- absolutely, adv., chose ; kwazo.
- absorb, v.t., - phisa ; - womisa ;
- ed, - be, v.i., - pha ; - woma ;
- nwirira.
- abstain, - rega ; - regedza ; - ira
(yira) ; - ramba ; (- deny one-
self), - zi nyima ; - zi ra-
mbisa.
- absurd, - be, - setsa ; - sekisa.
- abundance, ku wanda (8) ; vuzhinji
(7) ; yuwandi (7).
- (of food), buvuyo (5) ; makoyole
(5 pl.) ; mafaiyai (5 pl.) ; guta
(5), mapfachupfachu (5 pl.) ;
matevunevu (5 pl.) ; mayovonde
(5) ; muchokothwa (2) ; macha-
chacha (5 pl.) ; manyanwa (5 pl.)
- abundant, adj., - zhinji.
- , - be, - wanda, - pafuma ; - ti name.

- abuse (scold), - *tuka*; - *soverera*; — (use badly), - *ita za ka ipa*; - *chinya*; - *shatsa*; - *ipisa*; - *tadza*.
- abyss, *mawere* (5 pl.); *vuṣasi* (7); *vuṣiṣa* (7); edge of —, *mutṣedu* (2).
- acacia, *muwunga* (2); *muṣora* (2).
- accelerate, - *chimbizikisa*; - *kurumidzisa*.
- accentuate, - *ita ne simba*; - *simbisa*.
- accept, - *gamuchira*; - *chingamidza*; - *chingura*; - *chinga*; - *tora*. — with joy, - *tenda*; - *dambirira* (- *dambirirwa*); - *yonga*.
- access, *suṵo* (5); *mukoya* (2); *pa no pindiwa* (9); *ngamo* (4); *njemo* (4); have —, - *pinda*.
- accessible, - *be*, - *pindiwa*; - *sikirgwa*.
- accident (misfortune), *namo* (4); *rushambga* (6); *rukono* (6); *rushaya-shaya* (6). See 'calamity.'
- accidentally, pron. with 'si nga ziṵi' (i.e. not knowing).
- acclaim, - *kudza*; - *pururudzira*; - *pemberera*.
- acclimatised, - become, - *royera*; *royerera nyika*.
- accommodate (oneself), - *zi enzanisa*; (— people, etc.), - *garisa*.
- accompany, - *pereka*; - *perekedza*. — (a little way), - *sundidza*; - *ṣusuyidza*; - *sundaidza*; - *sunda*.
- accomplice, *shamgari* (4); *mubatisi* (1); *mubetsiri* (1).
- accomplish, - *pedza*; - *ita*.
- according to, prep., *pa*; *na*.
- accordingly, adv., *ipopo*; *saka*; *ndo za*.
- account (give an account), - *yudza*; - *nyepera*; - *paridza*; on — of, *ne maka ya*; *no kuda kwa*; *pa msoro pa*.
- accumulate, - *vungaidza* (*vungaidza*); - *ita murgwi*; - *ita dutu*; - *tuta*.
- accumulation, *dutu* (5); *murgwi* (2); *chivunga* (3).
- accurate, - *be*, - *rurama*; - *rungama*.
- accusation, *maka* (4); *moṣa* (4).
- accuse, - *ṽusidzira*; - *yudzisira*; - *chera*; - *cheta*; - *kwirira pana she*.
- accuse falsely, - *pa maka*; - *pomera*; - *namatidza*; - *kamukira*; - *yirimira*; - *dadira*; - *reyera nema*.
- accuser, *muṽudzisiri* (1); *muṽusidziri* (1); *mupomeri* (1); *mucheri* (1).
- accustom, - *royedza*; - *ziyisa*; - *didi-dza*; - *dowedza*; get — ed, - *royera*; - *ziyira*; - *didira*.
- ache, - *rgwadza*. See 'pain.'
- achieve, - *ita*; - *pedza*.
- achievement, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
- acid, - *be*, - *yaya*.
- acknowledge, - *tenda*; - *bvumira*. — (thank), - *yonga*; - *tenda*. — a fault, - *tenda*; - *dudza*.
- acquaint, - *ziyisa*; - *yudza*; - *ta-wurira*; - *nyepera*; - *shuma*.
- acquainted, - *be*, - *ziya*.
- acquaintance, *muzikani* (1); *muzikanwa* (1); *shamgali* (4); *sawira* (1).
- acquire, - *wana*; - *pfuwa*; - *fuma*; — knowledge, - *dzidza*; - *chenjera*.
- acquit, - *pembedza*; - *sunungura*.
- across (- go — country), - *chinjika nyika*; - *gure nyika*; - *lay —*, - *chinjikisa*.
- act, v., - *ita*; - *bata*. — well, - *natsa*. — badly, - *nyangadza*.
- act, n., *mubato* (2); *basa* (5); *chiito* (3).
- active, - *be*, - *bata-bata*; - *chenjeresa*; - *sa gara*; - *sa zorora*.
- actual, *cha zokwadi*; 'kwa' followed by emph. pron.
- actually, adv., *zokwadi*; *giro kwago*.
- acute, - *be*, - *nyanya*.
- acuteness, *ku nyanya* (8).
- adapt, - *enzanisa*; - *kwanisa*; - *ringanisa*.
- add, - *wedzera*; - *kumusa*; - *tuna*; - *tunidza*; - *pamidzira*; (count), - *verenga*; - *bgerengedza*; — to, - *ṣisidzira*; — over and above, - *yirika*; — liquid to what is in a vessel already, - *tuvidzira*.
- adder, *nyoka* (4); *muṽumbi* (4).
- addicted to, - *be*, - *karira*; - *karatira*.
- address, - *nyepera*; - *reva ku*.
- adequate, - *be*, - *kwana*; - *ringana*; - *ya ndigo*.

- adhere, - *namatira*; - *namira*.
 adieu! *sarai! sara hako!* (*sara zako!*) *sarai henyu!* (*sarai zenyu!*) *ta siya!*
 - bid —, - *woneka*.
 adjacent, - *be*, - *batana na*; - *ya pedo na*; - *garana*.
 - adjourn, - *buda*; - *rega*; - *para-dzana*.
 adjournment, *maradzano* (4 pl.).
 - adjust, see 'arrange'.
 - administer (medicine), - *rapa*.
 — (government), - *bata*; - *yusa*.
 administrator, *she* (I); *mubati* (I); *muyusi* (I).
 - admire, - *kanuka*; - *ya ne yeyergwa* (*cheyergwa*); - *shama*.
 - admit (acknowledge), - *tenda*; - *tendera*.
 — (cause to enter), - *pinza*.
 - admonish, - *raira*; - *ranga*.
 admonishment, *chirangiwa* (3); *chirango* (3).
 - adopt (a child), - *rera*; - *kurisa*.
 adoration, *ku kudza* (8); *ku pira* (8); *ku namata* (8).
 - adore, - *kudza*; - *pira*; - *namata*.
 — (kneel), - *fugamira*; - *gwadamira*.
 - adorn, - *natsa*; — oneself, - *shonga*; — another, - *shongedza*; - *shongesa*.
 adult (person), *munu* (I); *mukuru* (I); *mukuwane* (I); — man, *murume* (I); *munurume* (I).
 — (woman), *mukadzi* (I); *munukadzi* (I).
 - adulterate, - *venganisa na*; - *shatsa*; - *ipisa*.
 adulterer, adulteress, *mupati* (I); *mombge* (4); *nzenza* (4); *zengeya* (4).
 very bad —, *mushwerakwenda* (I); *mvemvetsi* (4); *mbgamati* (4); *ziyeve* (5).
 adultery, *ku pata* (8); *yumombge* (*yupombge*) (7); *yulere* (7); *yufeye*.
 - commit —, - *ita yupombge*; - *pata*; - *pombgora*; - *feya*.
 - advance, - *pfuyurira mberi*; - *inda mberi*; - *tungamira* (- *tungamirira*) *mberi*.

advance guard, *muromo we pfumo*; *nungamiri* (4); *mupingo* (I).
 advantage of, take, - *gonera*; - *gondera*.
 advantageous, - *be*, - *betsera*; - *batisa*; - *baisa*.
 adversary, *pfumo* (5); *muyengi* (I); *murgwisi* (I).
 adversity, *namo* (4); *dambudzo* (5); *dzingo* (5); *njodzi* (4).
 - meet with —, - *yone namo*; - *tambudziwa*.
 advertisement, *ziviso* (4).
 advice, *zano* (5).
 - advise, - *pa zano*; - *raira*; - *betsera*.
 advocate, n. *mureveri* (I); *mumiriri* (I); *samukuru* (I).
 - advocate, v. - *reyera*; - *mirira*.
 adze, n. *mbezo* (4).
 —, v. - *papa*; - *sesa*; - *kwazha*.
 afar, adv., *kure*.
 affair, *maka* (4); *shoko* (5); *moša* (4); *ndevo* (4); *chirevo* (3).
 - affect, - *baya*; - *bata*; — (to do), - *ita*.
 affected, - *be*, - *dada*; - *dadira*; - *dambgadzika*; - *rangazuka*; - *runguzika*; - *zunguzika*.
 affection, *rudo* (6); *kuda* (8).
 affectionate, - *be*, - *ya no rudo*; - *ya no kuda*.
 - affirm, - *simbisa shoko*; - *reya ne simba*; - *pupura*.
 - affix, - *isa sule*; - *teyedza*.
 - afflict, - *wisa yurombo*; - *tambudza*; - *nyangadza*; - *netsa*, - *nanga*.
 afflicted, - *be*, - *yone namo*; - *yone dambudzo*; - *tambudzika*; - *tambura*.
 affliction, *namo* (4); *yurombo* (7); *dambudzo* (5); *netso* (4); *njodzi* (4); *rgwayaira* (4); *mandu* (4); *netseko* (4); *nyangadzo* (4); *chipando* (3); *dzingo* (5).
 - afford (give), - *pa*.
 afoot, *na makumbo*.
 aforetime, adv., *pa mberi*; *pa ku tanga*.
 afraid, - *be*, - *thia*; - *karuka*; - *rgwenda*; - *yinyuka*; - *vunduka*; - *teta*; — to speak, - *dzidzira*; - *be* — of work, - *kaza*.
 afresh, adv., *ze*; *ruša* (*kufša*).

after, prep. *sule kwa*; *mu sule ma*; *pa sule pa*.
 — adv., *sule (sure)*.
afterbirth (in animals), *musali* (2); (*musari*) (2); *musana* (2).
afternoon, *masikati dekwé*; — (towards evening), *rudekhwana* (6); *madekwana* (5 pl.).
afterwards, adv., *pa sule (pa sure)*; *pa shure*; 'zo' before verb root, e.g. *ti cha zo yuya*, we shall come afterwards.
again, adv., *ze*; — *do* —, *-pama ze*; *pamidza ze*; — *ita ze*; — *bǵuru-dzura*.
again and again, adv., *ipapo na ipapo (ipopo na ipopo)*; *pe kare na pe kare*.
against, prep., *pa*; *ku*; *pana*; *kuna*.
age, *yukuru* (7); *zero* (4); *chimi* (3); *old* —, *yukweguro* (7).
aged, — *be*, — *ya mukuru*; — *kwegura*; — *chembera*; — *man*, *mutana* (1); — *woman*; *muchembere* (1); *chembere* (4).
- aggravate, — *isamǵisa*; — *tambudza*; — *nyangadza*; — *netsa*; — *pasa*. See 'annoy'.
— illness by casting a shadow, — *kanda mamvuli*.
— (- make worse), — *nyanyisa*.
- aggregate, v., — *bǵerengedza*; — *verenga*.
— n. bǵerengedzo; *verengo*.
aghost, — *be*, — *karuka*; — *kanuka*; — *shama*.
- agitate, — *pesaisa*; — *pesanisa*.
agitated, — *be*, with *fear*, — *huta*; — *vunduka*; — *dedera*; — with *anger*, — *fa ne shungu*; — *moniwa ne shungu*; — *pesaisiwa*.
agitator, *mupesaisi* (1) (*mupesanisi* (1)); *muparanzongo* (1); *mbvanago* (1).
ago, long, *kare*; *kare-kare*; *chinguya cha*; *musi we kare*; *na kare na kare*.
agony (of pain), *ku rgwadza kukuru*; *ku tambura kukuru*; — of death (be on the point of death), — *rgwisa ku fa*; — *kara ku fa*; — *tandadza*.

- agree, — with one another, — *tenderana*; — *davirana*; — *bvumirana*; — *kodzera*; — (to be friends), — *wana*; — *ita yushamǵali*; — *ita yukama*. See 'satisfied'.
agreeable, — *be* (pleasant), — *naka*; — *zipa*; — *nakidza*.
agreement, *yukama* (7); *sungano* (4); *shongano* (4); *rangano* (4); *yuw(h)a* (7); *tenderano* (4); *bvumirano* (4); *ndanga* (4).
agriculture, *ku rima minda* (8).
ague, *hosha*, *yo ku hula* (shivers); *ku pisa muviri* (fever).
ah! interj. *a!* *ai!* *wa!* *nandi!* *gara!* *mai wei!* *hezo!*
ahead, adv., *pa mberi*; *mberi*.
aid, n., *batiso* (4); *betsero* (4); —, v., — *batisa*; — *betsera*; — *batisa*; — *batira*.
- ail, — *rgwara*; — *rgwadziwa*; — *zokwara*; — '(nzǵ)wa' followed by the name of illness, or part affected.
ailments, *zowera* (3 pl.); *margwadzi* (5 pl.);
- aim, — *shumba*; — *tsitsika*; — *nangidzira*; — *yereka*.
air, n., *mǵeya* (2); *mepo* (4).
akin, — *be*, — *ita sa*; — *fanana na*.
alarm, n., *mere* (4); — *raise an* —, — *ridzemere*; — *yuremere*.
- alarm, v., — *karudza*; — *vundudza*; — *ihisa*; — *patidza*.
alarmed, — *be*, — *karuka*; — *paruke hana*; — *robga ne hana*.
alas! interj., *mai wei!* *baba vangu wei!* *yo wei!*
albumen (of egg), *ganda* (5).
alert, — *be*, — *sinura*; — *chenjera*; — *tarisisa*; — *ngwara*.
alien, *mǵeni* (1); *mutorgwa* (1).
alike, — *be*, — *fanana*; — *todzana*; — *enzana*.
alive, adj., — *penyu*, with class prefix; (after nouns of i cl., *menyu*); (after nouns of ri cl., *benyu*).
- be —, — *rarama*; — *ya* — *penyu*, with class prefix.
all, adj., — *ose*, with gen. part. of governing noun.
all together, adv., *kamǵe*; *panu pamǵe*.

- **allay**, - *nyaradza*; - *rapa*; - *dri-mura*.
allegiance, *ku namatira* (8).
alleviate, - *rerusa*.
— pain, - *nyaradza*.
alliance, *yukama* (7). See 'agreement'.
— allot, - *koyaisa*. See 'divide'.
— allow, - *tendera*; - *bvumira*; - *rega*; - *regedza* (- *regera*).
allowable, - *be*, - *tendergwa*.
— allure, - *kweya*; - *idza*; - *tsawusa*.
ally, *shamgali* (4); *mubetseri* (1).
almighty, - *be*, - *ya ne simba rose*; - *ya na masimba ose*.
almost, adv., - *rgwisa* (followed by the Inf.) ; - *yayirira* and - *kara* are used in the same way.
alms, *chipo* (3), *zipo* (3 pl.); *zipiwa* (3 pl.).
aloe, *gayakaya* (5); *rumangamuno* (6).
alone, adj., - *oga*; (I —), *ndoga*; (thou —), *woga*; (he —), *oga*; (we —), *toga*; (you —), *moga*; (they —), *yoga*.
along, prep., *mu nyasi ma*; *mu dzinga ma*; *pa rutiyi pa*.
aloof, adv., *kuve*; *pa diyi*; — *oga*.
aloud, adv., *zi no wihwa* (i.e. which is heard).
already, adv., *kare*; 'to' inserted before verb root, e.g. *wa to yuya* (he has already come) or, *nguya* followed by depend. v., *wa nguya a yuya*.
also, *yo* (adv.); *na* (conj.).
altar, *altare* (5) (for.); *singo* (5).
— alter, v.t., - *shandura*; - *pindura*.
— v.i., *shanduka*; - *pinduka*.
alternate, - *be*, - *rayana*.
although, conj., *nyangwe*; *nyangu-ya*; *nyangwe za ka daro*.
altitude, *yurefu* (7); *yukuru* (7).
altogether, adv., *chose*; *kwazo*; *kwazo-kwazo*.
always, *mazuya ose*; *misi yose*.
amazed, - *be*, - *karihiamara*; - *vundu-ka*; - *karuka*; - *kamuka*; - *shama*.
ambassador, *mutumga* (1); *munyai* (1).

ambition, *rgwedzo-moyo* (6); *rgwedza-haya* (6).
ambitious, - *be*, - *rgwadza moyo*; - *ya na makukumushwa*.
amiable, - *be*, - *dikanwa*; - *wuni-dza*.
amid } (prep.), *mukati ma*; *pakati*
amidst } *pa*; *mu*; *pa*.
ammunition (powder), *musiri* (2); *yusiri* (7); *yunga* (7).
— (shot), *chifeze* (3).
— (bullet), *kuru* (4) (for.).
among, prep., *mukati ma*; *pakati pa*; *mu*; *pa*.
amount, *bgerengedzo* (4); *dutu* (5); *chivunga* (3).
ample, - *be*, - *kura*; - *fara*; - *ya zhinji*; - *wanda*.
— (- be enough), - *ringana*; - *kwana*; - *ya ndigo*.
— amputate, - *gura*; - *dimura*; - *cheka*.
— amuse, - *setsa*; - *fadza*; - *ta-mbisa*.
— oneself, - *tamba*.
amusing, - *be*, - *setsa*.
— person, *nyanyanya* (4).
anæsthetic, *bganga* (7); *rufimbi* (6).
ancestors, *mateteguru* (1); *vateteguru* (1 pl.); *yatateguru* (1 pl.); *mabambo* (*madzibambo*) (1 pl.); *yakuru* (1 pl.).
ancient, adj. *kare-kare*; 'pa ku tanga' with gen. part. of governing noun.
in — times, *kare-kare*.
and, conj., *bva*; *na* (*ne*, *no*).
anecdote, *shumo* (4).
anew, adv., *ze*; *rutša* (*kutša*).
angel, *mutumga wo Mudzimu* (1); *muengeri* (1) (for.).
anger, *hasha* (4 pl.); *shungu* (4 pl.); *rushanya* (6); *ku tsamga* (8).
angry, - *be*, - *tsamga*; - *ya ne hasha*; - *ya ne shungu*; - *kurudada* (- *kurududika*); - *be* — with, - *tsamgira*; - *sinukira*; - *shinwa*; - *get* — soon, - *ya no ruhandu*; - *ita rusanya*; - *fiduka*.
animal (general name), *muka* (4); (live stock), *zipfuwo* (3 pl.); (beast of prey), *chikara* (3).

animal (game), *muka* (4); — (fat), *horonga* (4).

— (handsome), *murenga* (2).

ankle, *chiziso* (3); *chizondo* (3); *riso re gumbo* (5).

- annihilate, - *pedza*; - *paradza*.

- announce, - *yudza*; - *reya*; - *ziyisa*; - *paridza*; - *tawurira*.

announcement, *chiziyiso* (3); *ziyiso* (4).

- annoy, - *nelsa*; - *soša*; - *pedza moyo*; - *tambudza*; - *nyangadza*; - *birisha*; - *sembura moyo*; - *mutsa*; - *tsamgisa*. See 'tease.'
— ed, - *be*, - *tsamga*; - *šinukira*; - *fututa*.

annoyance, *netso* (4); *dambudzo* (5); *nyangadzo* (4).

annually, adv., *ne gole rimge ne rimge*; *na mahole ose*.

- anoint, - *zodza*; - *zora*.

another, 'mge' with characteristic class prefix.

answer, n., *dayidzo* (4); *dayiro* (4).

— v., - *dayidza*; - *bufura*.

— in defence, - *pingudza*; - *shandura*.

ant (white), *mujuru* (2).

(small black —), *rusose* (6).

(large red —), *samukange* (5); *dumbgi* (5); *juru* (5).

(large black —), *gangemukange* (5); *surira* (5).

(flying —), *shwa* (4); *gururumba* (5); (small —), *muchenji* (2); *mita* (4).

ants (- catch), - *juruja*.

ant-bear, *dikita* (5).

ant-eater, *gwerekwete* (5).

- antecede, - *tungamira*; - *tangira*.

antelope, *muka* (4); (duiker), *membge* (4); (steenbuck), *mene* (4); (reedbuck), *mima* or *bima*; (kudu), *noro* (4); (sable), *marapara* (4); (eland), *mofu* (4); (hartebeest), *chengu* (4); (klipspringer), *ngururu* (4); (bushbuck), *soma* (4); (buffalo), *nyati* (4); (waterbuck), *huro* (4); (giraffe), *hwiza* (4); (grysbuck), *miti* (4); *deke* (4).

ant-hill, *churu* (3); *ruyamba* (6); small —, *chivuru* (3) (*chivurgwi*).

ant-hole, *bgendedzo* (7).

ant-queen, *zimai ra majuru*.

anvil, *nera* (4).

anxiety, *ku iſia* (8); *gahadziko* (4); *haika* (4); *ku pikanya mu moyo* (8).

anxious, - *be*, - *iſia*; - *funganya*; - *gi pedza moyo*.

any, adj., 'mge' or '-pi na -pi' with characteristic class prefix, see Lesson XXIV.

anything, *zose*.

anywhere, *kwose*; *kwose - kwose*; *pose*.

apart, adv., *oga* (i.e. alone), *pa diyi*.
- set —, - *sanangura* (- *shanangura*).

- place —, - *taranza*; - *paradza*.

ape, *shoko* (4); (small —), *shokorupani* (4); *shiriri* (*siriri*) (4).

— (male), *wandamakwakwa* (4); (small night —), *gwagwe* (5).

- ape, - *edzerera*.

aperient, *mushonga wo ku pazha*; *muti wo ku budisa*.

aperture, *guli* (5).

apostle, *muapostola* (1) (for.).

- appal, - *iſia*; - *vundusa*; - *karudza*.

apparent, - *be*, - *yoneka*; *yonekara*.

- appear, - *yonekwa*; - *buda pa chena*; - *budiha*; — unexpectedly, - *tukunyuka*.

— (to seem), - 'nenge' with independent indicative.

appetite, *zhara* (4).

- applaud (clapping of hands), - *yuchira*; — a chief, - *wombera*; - *lidze nondo*; — (with dancing), - *pemberera*; - *dzanirira*; - *tambirira*; — (with shouting), *pururudza* (done by women).

apple (small bitter), *nundurgwa* (4).

applicable, - *be*, - *kwana*; - *fanira*; - *ringana*.

- apply, - *isa*; - *kwanisa*; - *fana-nidza*; — medicine, - *rapa*.

— an ointment, - *zodza*; - *nyarira*; - *nyanga*; - *zora*.

— powder, - *nyunyulidza*.

- appoint, - *ita*; - *isa*; - *gadza*; - *goyera*.

appoint a time or a day, - *tara nambo*; - *tara zuya*.
 - apportion, - *govana*. See 'divide.'
 — work in garden, - *kayulira*.
 - approach, - (s) *hwedera*; - *sedera*.
 - appropriate, - *be*, - *kwana*; - *fanira*.
 - approve, - *tenda*; - *bvumira*.
 apron, native, *nguyo* (4); *nembe* (4);
 (of women) front —, - *chiyendera*
 (3); *nere* (4); *shashiko* (4);
shayiro (4); *chitayo* (3); back —,
marawuro (4).
 — (of men) front —, *dumbu* (5);
 back —, *mapa* (4); *nambga* (4);
malinga (5 pl.); old —, *gwawu*
 (5); small — (of kid-skin), *isotso*
 (4).
 apt, - *be*, - *fana*; - *fanira*.
 aquatic, - *be*, - *gara mu mwira*.
 ardent, - *be*, *moyo u no pisira*;
 - *rgwadza moyo*.
 area, *yukuru* (7); *yufari* (7); *hanu* (4).
 - argue, - *ita nyaya*; - *tanukidza*.
 argument, *nyaya* (4), *shoko* (5) (i.e.
 word).
 aright, no mutoyo wa ka rungama;
 no mutoyo wa ka fanira; no
 mutoyo kwawo.
 - arise (from sitting), - *muruka*;
 - *simuka*; — (from stooping)
 - *kotoroka*; - *tasanuuka*; — (from
 sleep), - *muka*.
 ark, *areka* (4) (for).
 arm, *ruyoko* (6).
 - arm oneself, v., - *bata zibatiro ze*
pfumo.
 armadillo, *hambakubvu* (4).
 armour (or arms), *zibatiro ze pfumo*.
 armpit, *mu hapba* (9).
 army, *pfumo* (5); *kondo* (4); the
 foremost in —, *rupingo* (6).
 aromatic, - *be*, - *nuwira*.
 around, - *go*, - *poterera*; - *kombe-*
rera; - *monereka*.
 - arouse, - *mutsa*.
 - arrange, - *gadziwa*; - *gadza*; - *ro-*
ngedza (- *rongedzera*); - *ruramisa*;
 - *rungamisa*; — (settle finally),
 - *teramisa*.
 - arrest, - *sunga*; - *bata*; - *manga*;
 one under —, *musungwa* (1).
 - arrive, - *sika*; - *yuya*.

arrive at, - *sikira*.
 arrow, *museye* (2).
 arrow case, *mukutu* (2) (without
 arrows); *goba* (5) (with arrows).
 art, *yuchenjeri* (7); *njere* (4).
 artery, *rutsinga* (6).
 article, *chinu* (3); *numbi* (4);
 strong —, *chikenge* (3); — with
 which to fill another, *humbi-*
dziro (4).
 — carried on head, or placed on
 another, *durikidzga* (5).
 artificial, - *be*, - *iihwa na mayoko*.
 artisan (good), *mizha* (4).
 as, adv. (like), *sa*; (since), *za*.
 as if, conj., *sa*; *kunge*.
 - ascend, - *kwira*.
 ascent, *chikwiriro* (3); *mukwidza* (2);
gome (5); *chigome* (3).
 ascension, *ku kwira kudenga* (8).
 ashamed, - *make*, - *nyowedza*; - *nya-*
dza; - *nyadzisira*; - *sodesa*.
 —, - *be*, - *ya ne nyowa*; - *nyowegwa*;
 - *nyara*; - *soda*.
 ashes, *dota* (5); hot —, *rufuse*
(ruvuzi) (6).
 ash heap, *durunuro* (5).
 ashore, adv., *pa menderchedzo*.
 aside, adv., *pa rutivi*; *pa divi*;
 - stand —, - *tseduka*; - draw —,
 - *tsedusa*; - *weshura*; - draw —
 a curtain, - *pengura*; - put —,
 - *isa pa divi*.
 - ask, - *kumbira*; — from a chief or
 great person, - *namata*.
 — (inquire), - *vunza*.
 — (beseech), - *nyengetera*; - *tetedza*.
 — (beg), - *pema*; - *gomba*.
 — (- continue —ing, though refused),
 - *gwembetereka*.
 askance, - look (in disdain), - *pevuuka*;
 (in anger), - *dzokora*; - *wetsa meso*.
 asleep, - *be*, - *yata hope*.
 ass, *mbongora* (4); *dongi* (5) (for).
 - assail, - *yamba*; - *wira*.
 assegai, *pfumo* (5).
 — (large), *manga* (5); *gano* (5).
 — spiral shaft of, *nyenza* (4).
 — wooden handle of, *rgwiriko* (6).
 — blade of, *manda* (4); *chese*
 (4).
 — the edges of, *minzo* (4).

assegai, ridge of, *musana* (2).
 — **point of**, *murumo* (2).
 — **assemble**, v.t., - *yunganidza* ;
 - *kokorodza*.
 —, v.i., - *yungana*.
 — (**call together**) - *koka* ; - *kokera*.
assembly, *yungano* (4) ; *chiyunga* (3) ;
 shongano (4).
 — **assent**, - *tenda* ; - *tendera* ; - *buvu-
 mira*.
 — **assert**, - *simbisa mashoko* ; - *veya ne
 simba*.
 — **assign**, - *rayira*. See 'appoint.'
 — **assist**, - *betsera* ; - *batisa* ; - *batsa* ;
 - *batira*.
assistant, *mubatisi* (1) ; *mubetseri*
 (1).
 — **associate**, - *gara na* ; - *tamba na* ;
 - *ita yushamgali na* ; - *fambidza-
 na*.
 — n., *shamgali* (4).
 — **assort**, - *shara* ; - *shanangura* (- *sana-
 ngura*) ; - *tsawura* ; - *rayura*.
 — **assure**, - *ziyisa zokwadi* ; - *ziyisisa*.
 - **be** — **ed**, - *ziya zokwadi* ; - *ziya
 kwazo*.
assuredly ! interj., *zokwadi* ! (*so-
 kwadi* !) ; *giro kwazo* ! *sa mazo-
 kwadi* !
 — **astonish**, - *karudza* ; - *vundudza* ;
 - *shamisa* ; - *kathiamadza* ; - **be**
 — **ed**, - *karuka* ; - *kanuka* ;
 - *shama* ; - *kathiamara* ; - *vu-
 nduka*.
astray, to go, - *rashika*.
 — to lead, - *rajanisa* ; - *rasha*.
asunder, adv., *oga*, *oga* ; *imge*,
 imge ; also expressed by suffix
 '*anya*' to verb.
at, '*pa*' or '*ku*' used before nouns ;
 '*pana*' and '*kuna*' before
 prons., proper nouns, and adjs.
at all, '*to ngo*' (before verb root).
 See Lesson XXXII.
at this place, *kuno* ; *pano*.
at once, *kamge* ; *pakarepo* ; *musi
 we kare*. See 'immediately.'
atmosphere, *mgeya* (2) ; *mepo* (4).
 — **atone**, - *dzikunura* (- *dzikinura*) ;
 - *sunungura* ; - *ripira*.
 — **attach**, - *namatidza* ; - *sungira* ;
 - *rumatidza*.

— **attack**, - *yamba* ; - *wira*.
 — **attain**, - *wana* ; - *yona* ; - *bata* ;
 - *sikira*.
 — **after much trying**, - *kupuka*
 (for.).
 — **attempt**, - *idza*. See 'try.'
 — **attend** (- **be present**), - *ya po*.
 — (- **listen**), - *terera*.
 — (- **take care**), - *chengeta* ; - *rinda* ;
 - *tarira*.
attention, *ku terera* (8) ; *ku nzgwa*
 (8) ; - **attract** — of baby, - *reza*.
attire, see 'apparel.'
attitude, *mutoyo* (2) ; *mugariri* (2).
 — **attract**, - *kweyera* ; - *kweza* (- *weza*) ;
 - *kwezera*.
 — **attention**, - *woza* (- *wozera*).
attractive, - **be**, - *wunidza*.
auburn, adj., *shaya ya ka ita se
 nema* ; *shora*.
audacity, *ku sa nyowegwa* (8) ; *ku
 sa soda* (8) ; *manyawi* (5 pl.).
aunt (elder sister of mother), *maiguru*
 (1) ; (younger sister of mother),
 mainini (1) ; (also *mai vadoko*) ;
 (sister of father), *yatele* (1 pl.) ;
 vasamukadzi (1 pl.) ; *vasangadzi*
 (1 pl.).
author, *muti* (1).
 — **authorise**, - *pa simba* ; - *raira*.
authority, *simba* (5) ; *masimba* (5
 pl.).
 — **avail**, - *batsa* ; - *betsera* ; - *batisa* ;
 - *ya no mubato*.
avarice, *ruchiya* (6) ; *chiyo* (4) ;
 mbayo (4).
avaricious, - **be**, - *ya ne chiyo* ; - *ya
 no ruchiya* ; - *ya ne mbayo*.
 — **person**, *muchiya* (1).
 — **avenge**, - *tsiya* (- *tsiyira*) ; - *ripa* ;
 - *bgiridzira*.
 — **avert**, - *dziyira* (- *dziyirira*).
 — **avoid**, - *renga* ; - *reya* ; - *tiza* ;
 - *nyenyeredza* ; - *tendenedza*.
 — **await**, - *mirira* ; - *tarira* ; - *garira*.
 — **awake**, - *muka*.
 — **suddenly**, - *pepuka*.
 — **be**, - *sinura* ; - **be wide** —,
 - *sinuka*.
away, - *go*, - *bva* ; - *inda* ; - *wenda*.
 — **run**, - *tiza* ; - *nyeruka*.
 — **drive**, - *dzinga* ; - *tizisa*.

away, - take, - buisa.

—, - be, 'po', preceded by the neg. particle and the prefixal pronoun. See 'absent,' e.g. *ha ya po*, they are away.

awe, *ku ihia* (8); *changaira* (3); *chiangatira* (3).

awful, - be, - *ihisa*; - *karudza*.

awl, *chibayo* (3); *tsunda* (4).

axe, *sanu* (*shanu*) (5); *dimuro* (4);

large —, *ganu* (5); battle —,

hubga (*humbga*) (4).

aye! interj., *hono!* *e!* *eya!* *hekani!*

B

- babble, - *popota*; - *popoma*; - *rosha*; - *bgereketesa*; - *reyeteka*; - *shoshota*; - *pawumba*.

babe (baby), general term, *mucheche*

(1); very young —, *rushiye* (6);

very plump —, *chibgindikiti* (3).

baboon, *gudo* (5); *pfene* (5) (for.).

— large male, *mombo* (4).

— small, *chibombana* (*chimombana*) (3).

— large lonely, *chenda*; *njenda* (4).

— infant, *ruishweye* (6).

babyhood, *yushiye* (7); *yucheche* (7).

bachelor, *simburume* (4); *mujaya*

(1); *mushaninga* (1).

— (old), *simburume hora*; *tsukachinai* (4).

back, *musana* (2).

—, small of, *chiyuno* (3).

— (between shoulders), *bgeze* (*bgenze*).

back, adv., *sule* (*shure*); *mu sule* (*mu shure*).

— (go), - *dzoka*; - *bgirira*.

— (come), - *dzokera*; - *yuya ze*.

— (give), - *dzosa*; - *bgiridza*; - *ripa*; - *dzosera*.

— (turn), - *tendeyuka*; - *furatira*.

— (look), - *chewuka*.

backache (severe), *muchinyihenyu* (2).

- backbite, - *ita makuwa*; - *reyera nema*.

backbone, *musana* (2); *muzongoza* (2); *zongoza* (5).

backdoor (small), *mindirira* (4).

- backslide, - *dzokera sule*.

backward, - be, - *sara sule*; - walk

—, - *famba ne gotsi*; - lean —,

- *sendama*.

bacon, *nyama ye nguruye ya ka woma*.

bad, - be, - *ipa*; - *shata*; - *nyangara*;

- *nyanya*.

bad, - be (rotten), - *yora*; (of meat),

- *yundunda*; - *yuyuma*.

— - make, - *yodza*.

— person, *munu wa ka ipa*; *nubu* (4).

— tempered, - *ita rusanya*.

badge, *chiga* (3); *chiratidzo* (3);

naridzo (4); *chamu* (3); *yoneso*

(4); *ziyiso* (4).

badger, *mbira* (4).

badly, *za ka ipa*; *za ka shata*.

bad language, - use, - *ita mareyo*.

bad temper, *rushanya* (*rusanya*) (6);

hasha (4 pl.).

badness, *ku ipa* (8); *yuipe* (7);

yushati (7); *zitema* (3 pl.).

baffled, - be, - *koniwa*; - *kundiwa*;

- *kona*.

bag (general), *homo* (4); — of rope,

mbanga (4); *naya* (4).

(large rope bag carried by ox), *tsapo*

(4).

— made of bark, *gumbu* (4).

— (small — like purse), *hobodo* (4);

mbudu (4).

— of salt, *humbu* (4).

bag full, *deye* (5); *mukwende* (2).

baggage, *numbi* (4).

bait, *bgazo* (7).

- bake, - *bika mu choto*.

baker, *mubiki we chingwa*.

- balance, {v., - *enzanisa*. See 'weigh.'

— n., *cho ku idza* (3); *chiidzo* (3);

chiuro (3).

bald, - be, - *ya ne mazha*; - *verenguka*.

— head, *mazha* (4).

bale, *mukunguru* (2).

- bale out, - *kupa*.

ball (bullet), *kuru* (4) (for.).

— of foot or hand, *chipamano* (3).

bamboo, *rushenjere* (6); *mushenjere*

(2).

bamboo, joint of, *nengo* (4).
 banana, *hova* (5); — tree, *muhova* (2); *muhobo* (2).
 band, *rgonzi* (6); *rukashu* (6); *musungo* (2); *chisungo* (3); *sungale* (4).
 — attached to clothes, *munza* (2).
 — for head or waist, *rundaza* (6).
 — of wire, *rundanyara* (6).
 — of beads for forehead, *rundanyara* (6); *rusore* (6).
 — bandage, — *mininga*; — *pombera*.
 bangle (grass) for wrist, leg, or neck, *rushambo* (6).
 — banish, — *dzingira*; — *tata*; one who is — ed, *mudzingwa* (1).
 bank (of river), *miri* (4); *diyi* (5).
 — of pool or river, *nemberekedzo* (4 pl.); *menderedzo* (4 pl.); *nenderedzo* (4 pl.); *mahumbikumbi* (5 pl.); *mahomberedzo* (5 pl.).
 banna, *ziyiso dzo ku wana* (4 pl.).
 baobab tree, *muwuyu* (2).
 baptism, *nyorovedzo* (4); *bapatidzo* (4) (for.).
 — baptize, — *nyorovedza*; — *bapatidza* (for.).
 bar (for closing door), *muzariro* (2); *chiholi* (3); *miyo* (4).
 — (pole), *danda* (5); *bango* (5).
 — (v.t.), — *dziyira*; — *zarira*; — *pfiga*.
 barb (of spear), *zheye* (4); *nazho* (4).
 — (of grain), *yuriri* (7).
 barbarian, *mambara* (4).
 barber, *mutseguri* (1); *muwuyuri* (1).
 bare, — be, — *ita shiku*; — *ita mushu*; — *ita pushu*; — *ngo deno*.
 bare, adj., ‘*bunyumunyū*’ with class prefix.
 bark (of tree), *gwande* (5); *gwati* (5); (freshly stripped—), *dshgwa-shhwati* (5); broad piece of — used for mat, *makwaya* (5 pl.); rope of —, *gavi* (5); *rgonzi* (6); *bote* (5); — strip off —, — *suwura*.
 — beat off —, — *pondora*.
 — v., — *yukura*, — *gawura* (of small dog).
 barrel (cask), *fachi* (5) (for.).
 — (of gun), *mumembe* (2) (*mupembe* (2)).

barren woman, *ngombga* (4); *hana* (4); *tsoti* (4).
 — cow, *ramba* (5).
 — sell, *gwangwarati* (5); *vu ri si nga woleri*.
 — tree, *muti u si nga berehi*.
 barrier, *chidziyisi* (3).
 — barter (— buy), — *tenga*; (— sell), — *te-ngesa*; — *shaya*; (— grain only); — *shuzha*; (— go about to sell), — *shambadzira*; — *ambadza* (— *shambadza*).
 base (bottom), *magaro* (5 pl.); *chigadziko* (3).
 base, — be, — *ipa*; — *shata*.
 bashful, — be, — *soda*; — *nyara*.
 basin, *chikotoro* (3) (for.); (small —), *mbiya* (4).
 — bask, — *shanira mushana*.
 basket (large), *dengu* (5); (middle-sized), *dengwana* (5); (ordinary, small), *muhwanda* (2); *ru(s)hwanda* (6); (s)hwanda (4); *shandiro* (4); (flat), *musero* (2); *rusero* (6); (small, flat), *numbana* (4); (very small), *chi(s)hwanda* (3); (small flat), *chisergwana* (3); *chisero* (3); (large, for measuring), *doyo* (5); (large, old), *danza* (5); (small old), *rutsanza* (6); *zengwe* (5); (for straining beer), *chisino* (3).
 — full of unthreshed grain, *mutitsi* (2).
 — very full of meal, *nuli yo vupfu* (4).
 bat, *chamuremgaremga* (3).
 bat (in game), *mugombo* (2); *mugombo* (2).
 batch (of chickens), *yutiyo* (7).
 bathe, — *ngura*; — *shambira* (— *shamba*); — *tiya*; — another, — *ngudza*; — *shambidza*.
 battle, n., *ku rgwa* (8).
 battle-axe, *hubga* (4) (*humbga* (4)).
 battle-field, *rgwiro* (5) (*margwiro* (5 pl.)).
 — be, — *li*; — *ya*.
 beach, *menderedzo* (4).
 beads (small), *chuma* (3); (very small), *yuzuma* (7); (large), *mabge*; (bead ornament across forehead), *rundanyara* (6);

- runaro (6); sungale (4); bade (5); rusore (6); — strung to tuft of hair, *chamugo* (3); girdle of —, *mukonde* (2); large string of —, *badza* (5); nni ye chuma (4); — sewn on in squares, *chinyamungwali* (3); — sewn in a circle, for head-dress, *chipete* (3); — sewn zigzag, *nanda* (4).
- beak, *muromo we shiri* (2).
- beam, *danda* (5).
- (of sun), *bḡirazuva* (7) (*bḡera-zuva*).
- v., see 'shine.'
- bean (small), *nyemba* (4); *rusiri* (6).
- (large ground), *nyimo* (4).
- (small ground), *nyimḡana* (4); *dabḡa* (5).
- beans, mixed with maize and cooked, *mutakura* (2).
- mash of small, *rupiza* (6).
- sauce of, *nahara* (4).
- green, boiled in pods, *mukoye* (2); *hoye* (4).
- hard, *nira* (4) (*mira*).
- itching wild, *hurukuru* (4).
- bear (carry), — *senga*; — *takura*.
- (give birth), — *bereka*; — *zara*; — *pona*; — *surumuka*; — *pombonoka*.
- (twins), — *rongera*.
- much, children or fruit, — *rudzanisa*; — *rurudza*; — *džaranisa*.
- (yield), — *bereka*.
- (forbear), — *tsunga*.
- a grudge, — *ila zishura*.
- bearable, — *be*, — *sengeka*; — *bvidzika*.
- See 'tolerable.'
- beard, *ndebevu* (4 pl.).
- of maize, *chirebevu* (3).
- man with large —, *gutuyese* (5).
- beast (animal), *muka* (4); (of prey), *chikara* (3); (head of cattle), *nombe* (4); (male —), *mukono* (2); (female —), *hadzi* (4); *gadzi* (5).
- beat, — *roya*.
- very hard, — *pura*; — *zambura*; — *zambadza*; — *rikita*; — *džana*; — *shashanga*; — *shana*; — *phatsa*; — *sodogora*; — *tipura*; — *rina*;

- *ligidza*; *takasha*; — *sukuta*; (*yukuta*); — *yundura*.
- beat with the hand, — *phadura*; — *budura*; — *gutsura*; — *gwetsa*.
- gently, — *nyaputsira*.
- because reminded of debt or promise, — *tsindika*; — *tsindikidza*.
- by turns, — *kutsira*.
- down floor, — *royera*.
- for correction, — *worora*.
- from both sides, — *royengedza*.
- the innocent, — *kamukira*.
- (of the heart), — *pfura*.
- of (carpet), — *zuza*; — *gugudza*; — *buuyudza*.
- off (as of fruit), — *kuhumura*.
- off the bark, — *kuma*; — *kumura*.
- on mouth with fingers, — *kodobora*.
- out a lump of iron, — *tsina*.
- with the fist, — *roya ne tsiya*; — *puḡunyura*; — *puḡura*; — *liḡidza*.
- with stick, — *kwishura*; — *punza*.
- hard with stick, — *puḡuzura*.
- with small stick, — *džatura*; — *džutura*.
- wounds, — *phatsa*; — *phatisa*; — *kwatura*; — *suḡyura*; — *pambadza*.
- beautiful, — *be*, — *naka*; — *nakisa*; — *yayaya*; very —, — *putsire zai*.
- beautiful, adj., *yuya*; and *tsene*, with class prefix.
- beautify, — *natsa*; — *nakisa*; — *shoḡgedza*.
- beauty, *ku naka* (8); *yunaki* (7); *runako* (6).
- because, conj., *nokuti*; *za* (since).
- become, — *ya*; (— be changed), — *shanduka*.
- becoming, — *be*, — *nakira*; — *kodzera*.
- beckon, — *kapidza*; — *ninira*.
- bed, *noyo* (4); *yuyato* (7); (bedstead), *mubeda* (2) (for.).
- bedroom, *imba yo ku yata* (4).
- bedtime, *chinambo cho ku yata* (3).
- bee, *nyuchi* (4); (small kind), *monga* (4); *nonongora* (4); (drone), *donga nyuchi* (5); (queen), *zimai re nyuchi* (5);

bee (grub), *zana* (5); —'s wax, *namu* (4); —'s sting, *rumbolera* (6); *nyovora* (6).
 beef, *nyama ye nombe* (4).
 bee-hive (artificial), *mukoko* (2).
 — (large), *goko* (8).
 — in accessible place, *gonera* (5).
 — in ground, *guru* (5).
 — in tree, *mango* (4).
 — in rock, *gwangwadza* (5).
 beer, *doro* (5); *bḡabḡa* (7); *yusukwa* (7); (strong —), *chiḡaḡa* (3); *chibababa* (3); *chagandanga* (3); *zindunje* (5); *chikanura* (3); *ndurunduru* (4); *mamba* (4); *zimbavi* (5); (mild —), *mutili-kidi* (2); *mawene* (5 pl.); *ndale* (4); *diba* (5); *biti* (5); *magwidikwididi* (5 pl.); (sour —), *shwarandanda* (4) (*sharandanda* (4)); (diluted —), *chisusu* (3); (— of 'munga'), *mandgwa* (5 pl.); — strainer (basket), *chiḡino* (3); (remains after straining —), *masese* (5 pl.); (— drinking party), *juviro* (4); small calabash of —, *mbukuro* (4); large pot of —, *mambe* (4).
 beetle, *chitoto* (3); (dung —), *chituta matuzi* (3); *demḡe* (5); (other kinds), *ziriri* (5); *chikuhuhu* (3); *dundira* (4); *gutaguta* (5); *nyangari* (4) (*nyangarivo*); *nyenzo* (4); *nyezhe* (4) (*nyenzhe* (4)).
 — (edible), *ndere* (5); *gurgwe* (5); *narara* (4); *janya* (5); *chikumbḡe* (3); *harurgwa* (4).
 before, prep., *pa mberi pa*; adv., *pa mberi*; *pa ku tanga*; or 'mbo' inserted before verb root.
 -beg, - *pema*; - *gomba*; - *kumbira*; - *namata*; - *gombedzera*.
 -beget, - *bereka*; - *zara*.
 beggar, *mupemi* (1); *mukumbiri* (1); *rombe* (4).
 -begin, - *tanga*; - *yamba*; - begin at, - *bvira*; - *ti nyetu*; - *nangira* (- *tangira*).
 — (establish), - *para*; - *nara*.
 — put on flesh, - *zindira*.
 — (be first), - *tangira*.

- begin a friendship, - *tsa yukama*.
 — (of rains), - *turuka*.
 beginner, *nyakayambe* (1); *mutangi* (1); *muḡambi* (1).
 beginning, *matanga* (5 pl.); *mayambo* (5 pl.); *nango* (4).
 behalf of, on, no *kuda kwa*; *pa msoro pa*.
 -behave, - *zi fambira*; - *famba*.
 — well, - *natso famba*.
 — badly, - *veḡa ku famba*; - *sa famba kwazo*.
 behaviour, *mufambire* (2); *mufambiro* (2).
 -behead, - *gura musoro*.
 behind, prep., *sule* or *sure kwa*; *pa sule pa*; *mu sule ma*; *seri kwa*.
 — adv., *sule*; *pa sule*; *mu sule* (*mu shule*).
 -behold, - *tavira*; - *yona*.
 -belch, - *dzoya*.
 belief, *chitendeso* (3); *ku tenda* (8); *rutendo* (6); (pretence), *nende-dzero* (4).
 cause for —, *tendiḡo* (4); *dendeso* (4).
 -believe, - *tenda*; - *dayira*; - *bvu-mira*; - *kodzera*.
 believer, *mutendi* (1).
 bell, *dare* (5); *simbi* (4) (i.e. iron).
 — (something that rings), *chingwere-ngwere* (3).
 -bellow, - *kuma*.
 bellows, *mvuto* (4); mouth of —, *nyengo* (4).
 (place where the iron is heated), *yira* (4).
 belly, *dumbu* (5); *mu yura* (9); under —, *bḡamba* (7).
 belongings, *fuma* (4); (inanimate things only), *numbi* (4).
 beloved, - *be*, - *dikanwa*; - *diwa*.
 — n., *mudikanwa* (1); *mudiwa* (1).
 below, prep., *pasi pa*; *pa nyasi pa*; *pa zasi pa*; *mu nyasi ma*; *kusi kwa*.
 — adv., *pasi*; *zasi*; *nyasi*; *kusi*.
 belt (of calico), *rundaza* (6).
 belt (of leather), *rgwarada* (6); *banire* (5); *rubande* (6); *bande* (5) (for.).

belt of white, round body of cattle,
bamba-mucheka (5).

- bend (down), v.i. - *kolama*.

— over with head, - *shunama*.

— v.t., - *kombamisa*; - *minamisa*;
- *kondamisa*.

— v.i. (of a thing), - *tefa*; - *tepuka*.

— over, - *tsikutsira*; - *tsinamira*;
- *tsininira*.

— (of a road), - *kombama*; - *monereka*;
- *potereka*.

— round, - *komba*.

— a bow, - *wembura* (- *wemura*).

beneath, see 'below.'

benediction, *ropafadzo* (4); *komboro* (4).

benefactor, *muchidzi* (1); *mukomboreri* (1).

beneficent, - *be*, - *pa*; - *pavulira*;
- *komborera*; - *chidza*.

benefit, *chikomborero* (3); *komborero* (4).

- bequeath, *siyira*.

bequest, *naka* (4).

bereaved, - *be*, - *firgwa*; - *siyiwa*.

- beseech, - *kumbirisa*; - *nyengetera*;
- *detembura*; - *telezera*; - *gomba*;
- *gombedzera*; - *pema*.

— incessantly, - *rgwaririra*.

beside, prep., *pa divi ra*; *pa rutiya*
pa; *pa nyasi pa*; *pedo na*.

besides, *kuzhe kwa*; (except), *asi*.

besiege, - *komba*; - *kombera*; - *kombe-*
redza.

- bestow, - *pa*. See 'give.'

- betray, - *pandukira* (- *panduka*).

- betroth, - *royora*; - *be* — *ed*, - *royo-*
rgwa.

better, it is, *ku li nani*.

- get —, - *pora*; - *rara ma*; - *naya*.

between, *pakati pa*; *mukati ma*.

- beware, - *chenjera*; - *tarisisa*.

— interj., *mbezoko!* *mbonezoko!*
mbonezeyo! *hezoko!* *hokoyo!*
(for.).

— of, - *tiza*.

bewilder, - *pesaisa* (- *pesanisa*); - *ka-*
nganisa; - *kangaidza*.

- bewitch (with food or water), - *roya*;
- *rowa*.

— by burying medicine in the ground,
- *tsinga*; - *kwina*; - *teya*.

bewitcher, *muroyi* (1); *murowi* (1).

beyond, prep., *seri kwa*; *pa seri pa*;
pa mberi pa.

— adv., *seri*; *mberi*.

Bible, *Buku yo Mudzimu*; *Bibele* (4) (for.).

- bid, - *raira*; - *yudza*.

- bide, - *mirira*; - *garira*; - *rindira*.

bier, *bḡanyanza* (7); *yukayaya* (7);
yutanda (7).

biestings, *manombḡe* (5 pl.).

big, adj., *kuru*; *refu* (high) with
class prefix.

to be —, - *kura*; - *reba* (be high).

— (stout), - *ya no muyiri*; - become

—, - *iia muyiri*; - *fera*; - make

—, - *kurisa*. See 'bulky.'

— (be wide open), - *papa*.

bile, *nduru* (4).

bill (beak), *muromo we shiri* (2).

billow, *fungo* (5); *mvututu* (4).

- bind, - *sunga*.

— loosely, - *sungata*.

— very tightly, - *mininga*.

bird (general term), *shiri* (4); young

—, *mḡana we shiri*; *zana* (5);
mupupu (2).

bee-eater, *gwirokwiro* (5).

butcher-bird, *jenjera* (5).

finch, *sakabuya* (4).

'go-away' —, *funye* (4).

honey —, *shezhu* (4).

lark, *ndzowera* (4).

sparrow, *ngozha* (4).

water-birds, *runyurura hoye* (6);
dambira muroye (5); *hoto* (4).

woodpecker, *hohodza* (4).

other kinds: *namḡa malinga* (4);

chijururu (3); *tunjenje* (4);

shwinya (4); *gundya* (4);

teyergwa (4); *rutodzo* (6);

rutimba (6); *chikwenule* (3);

mbudzi-mukumba (4); *nzembe*

(4); *rudiidii* (6) (*rusiisti*); *gu-*

rukuru (5); *gotokoto* (5); *hu-*

rekure (4); *husu* (4); *gatawa*

(5); *ruḡeyere nombe* (6) (*ru-*

tine nombe); *tsekedzamutsetse*

(4).

bird-lime, *yulimbo* (7).

- set a trap with —, - *dziha yulimbo*.

bird-lime, - take away, - *dzikunura yulimbo*.

birth, *ku poniwa* (8); *ku zargwa* (8); *ku berekwa* (8).

birthday, *zuya ro ku poniwa*.

birthright, *yudangwe* (7).

bit (general), *guranyo* (4).

— of anything that crumbles, *chi-medu* (3).

— (morsel), *chipefu* (3).

bitch, *hadzi ye mbga* (4); *mbgakadzi* (4).

- bite, - *ruma*; — (of snake), *koyona*; - *konora* (goñora); — off flesh, - *rundubvura*.

bitter, - *be*, - *yaya*.

black, adj., 'tema' with a prefix; (cl. 4 *nema*); pitch —, *widzi-nema*; *hunzi-nema*; — and shining, *hushu*.

- *be* —, - *šiba*.

- *be* black and lowering, - *fiduka*; - *senguka*.

- blacken, - *šibisa*.

blackness, *yutema* (7); *ku šiba* (8).

blacksmith, *mupfuri* (1); *mizha* (4).

bladder, *dundira* (5); *furidzo* (5).

blade (of grain or grass), *chipande* (3); — (leaf), *shashu* (5); *shizha* (5); — of knife, *chese* (5) and (4); *njese* (4).

- blame, - *pa maka*; - *pomera*; - *bomokera*; - *namatidza*; — the same person always, - *simbirira*.

— n., *maka* (4); *moša* (5); *ngaya* (5); *ndevo* (4); *rubvivito* (6).

blanket, *jira* (5); *nguyo* (4); *gombeša* (5) (for.); — (large thick), *mvumi* (4); *ngurungunda* (4); — (worn), *rukanara* (6); — (old), *rusakadzwa* (6); — (striped), *muposo* (2) (for.).

- blaspheme, - *tuka Mudzimu*; - *dadira Mudzimu*; - *šawura*.

blast (of wind), *dutu guru* (5).

- blase, - *pfuta kwago*.

— (flame), n., *murago* (2).

— seen from afar, *chadzera* (3).

— (of horse), *ndoro* (4).

- bleat (of sheep), - *chema*; - *rira*.

- bleed, v.i., - *budisa ropa*; - *buda ropa*.

— from the nose, - *budisa muhothwe*.

— v.t., - *rumika*.

- bless, - *taririra*; - *ropafadza*; - *komborera*; - *naisa*.

— (by laying on hands), - *kwidze-ngava*.

blessing, *chikomborero* (3); *komborero* (4); *ropafadzo* (4).

blind person, *bofu* (5).

—, - *be*, *pofumara*.

—, - make, - *pofumadza*.

— eye, *dondoro* (5).

blindness, *yupofu* (7).

- blink, - *bšaira*; - *boyira*.

bliss, *mufaro mukuru* (2).

blister, *moni* (4); blood —, *mbundulira* (5).

block (of wood), n., *danda guru* (5).

— v., - *dziyira*.

blood, *ropa* (5); clot of —, *govo* (5); suck —, v., *rumika*.

— from slaughtered animal, *musiya* (2) (*mushiya*).

— from nose, *muhota* (2); *muhothwe* (2).

- bloodshot, - *be*, - *tsuka*.

- blossom, v., - *tumbuka*; - *budisa maruya*.

— n., *ruya* (5).

blot, *gwapa dema* (5).

—, v., - *šibisa*.

- blow (of wind), - *rira*.

— away, - *pepereka*.

— with mouth, - *fulidza*.

— the nose, *fura*.

— fire, - *futidza*.

— out, - *dzima*.

— up, - *futisa*; *futunura*; - *fufumusa*.

— up oneself, - *futunusa*.

— bellows, - *vula*.

— (pant), - *femesa*.

blue, adj., *pfumbu*; dark —, *tema hushu*; light —, *pfupfuma*.

bluebottle, *dunzi* (5).

- blunder, - *paremaka*; - *chinya*; - *tadza*; - *nyangadza*; - *kanganisa*.

blunt, - *be*, - *koma*; - *komara*; - *gomara*.

- boar (pig), *gono re nguruye* (5);
mukono we nguruye (2).
 wild —, *nguruye ye bundo*; *njiri*
 (4); *woha* (5); *wami* (5).
 board (plank), *pranga* (5) (for.).
 - boast, - *zi kudza*; - *zi rumbidza*;
 - *ila manyawi*.
 boat, *bḡato* (7); *gwa* (5).
 - bob up and down, - *tibvinyika*.
 body, *muwiri* (2); *mumbiri* (2);
 dead —, *mutumbu* (2); *chituna*
 (3); *chibumba* (3).
 — (crowd), *dumbu* (5); *sumbu* (5).
 bog (muddy place), *machakinya* (5
 pl.); *machakwinya* (5 pl.);
dope (5).
 — (very bad), *yutofuna* (7).
 — (swamp), *deketa* (5); *deve* (5).
 - boil, v.i., - *yira*; — fast, - *vaira*;
 - *kwataira*; - *shapaira*; (of water),
 - *venduka*; - *veruka*.
 — slowly (of food), - *fazha*; - *kwata*.
 — quickly (of food), *thiaka*.
 — v.t., - *bika*.
 — porridge, - *kurunga*; - *sika*; - *ko-*
dzonga; — (quickly), - *tivura*;
 - *fuwura*.
 — like fat, - *chachadza*; — like soap,
 - *yiriruka*.
 — up (like milk), - *fumuka*.
 — over, - *pupira*; - *tutuma*; - *pu-*
puma; — cause to —, - *virisa*;
 - *virudza*; - *virusa*; - *vidza*.
 — n., *mota* (5).
 bold, - *be*, - *tsunga*; - *sa thia*; - *sa*
karuka; - *sindimara*.
 — (- be audacious), - *ya na manyawi*.
 - bolt, - *sungisa*; - *pfigisa*; *dzivirisa*;
 - *zaririsa*.
 — one's food, - *sangaridza*; - *boyera*.
 — (- flee), - *tiza*; - *wewera*; - *wi-*
winya.
 — n., *cho ku sungisa* (3); *cho ku*
pfigisa (3).
 bond, *musungo* (2); *cho ku sunga*
 (3); *chisungo* (3).
 bondage, *yusungwa* (7).
 bone, *godo* (5); *fupa* (5).
 —, dry, *hona* (4).
 bones, witch-doctor's, *hakata* (4 pl.).
 book, *buku* (4) (for.); *ḡwadi* (4).
 boot, *shangu* (4).
 - boot (something to —), *marenje* (5
 pl.).
 - give to —, - *yirika*; - *wedzera*.
 booth, *musasa* (2); *dumba* (5);
chitumba (3).
 — (a garden hut), *daga* (5).
 booty, see 'spoil'.
 border, *mugano* (2); (side), *diyi* (5).
 — (hem), *mupendero* (2); *mendero*
 (4).
 - bore, - *buoyora*; - *boyora*; - *yurura*.
 — like weevil, - *pfukula*; - *pfuna*.
 — n., *muḡururo* (2).
 borer (insect), *chipfuno* (3); *chisekeso*
 (3).
 born, - *be*, - *poniwa*; - *berekwa*;
 - *zargwa*.
 first —, *dangwe* (5).
 last —, *rugothwe* (6).
 - borrow, - *tora mutali* (of grain);
 - *kwerela* (for.); - *lāya chikwerete*;
 - *posa* (- *posha*); - *tore ngaya*.
 bosom, *chifuya* (3).
 — (conscience), *hana* (4).
 both, *yayiri yose*.
 - bother, - *tambudza*; - *netsa*: See
 'trouble'.
 bottle, *boldyera* (5) (for.).
 bottom, *magaro* (5 pl.); *pasi* (9);
chigadziko (3); *gadzik* (5).
 flat —, *chipamano* (3).
 bough, *davi* (5).
 boulder, *bḡe* (5); *ruḡinga* (6); *dombo*
 (5).
 - bound (- limit), - *ila mugano*.
 - bound (jump), - *kwakuka*; - *tumuka*;
 - *wuruka*; - *nyiminyira*; - *dayuka*.
 - *be* —, - *sungwa*; - *mangwa*.
 boundary, *mugano* (2).
 bow, *yuta* (7); toy —, *chitate* (3);
 end of —, *sholi* (4).
 bow-string, *rukanda* (6); *rukungiso*
 (6).
 - bow (down), v.i., - *kotama*.
 — (kneel), - *gwadama*; - *fugama*.
 bowels, *yura* (7).
 — (large bowel), *yura yukururu* (7);
guru (5); *chisusu* (3).
 — (small intestines), *yura yutele* (7);
manyongo (5 pl.).
 bowl, *mbiya* (4); *chikotoro* (3) (for.).
 boy, *mukomana* (1).

- boy (small), *chikomana* (3).
 — (big), *murumbgana* (1).
 — (grown up), *jaya* (5).
 — (big, fat), *ganyangwa* (5); *duru-rasita* (5); *gomana* (5); *yimbi* (5); *chizombo* (3).
 box, *bokisi* (5) (for.).
 bracelet (of grass), *rushambo* (6).
 — of iron, *joli* (5).
 — of brass, *rundarira* (6); *rusa-fuli* (6).
 - brag, - *gi kudza*; - *gi rumbidza*; - *ita manyawi*; - *ya na magatishwa*; - *gata*.
 - braid, - *ruka*.
 brains, *yurozi* (7).
 brake, *cho ku sunge ngoro* (3).
 — v.t., - *sunga ngoro*.
 bran (of all grains stamped), *guva* (5).
 — (of grains threshed), *windi* (4); *hundi* (4).
 branch, *davi* (5).
 — es, projecting, *ngara* (4 pl.).
 - brand (cattle), - *pisa*.
 — n., *runyoro* (6).
 — new, adj., *tša*.
 brandy, *branga* (5) (for.).
 brass, *dare jena* (5); *dare shaya* (5).
 — wire, *safuli* (4); *ndarira* (4 pl.).
 brave, - be, - *tsunga moyo*; - *sa ihia*; - *sa karuka*.
 — man, *mare* (4); *ninini* (4); *mutsungu* (1).
 bravery, *yumare* (7); *yunini* (7).
 - bray (of an ass), - *rira*.
 bread, *chingwa* (3); *voroto* (7) (for.).
 breadth, *ku fara* (8); *bğazha* (7); *yupami* (7).
 - break, - *puisa* (- *punza*).
 — up (- be loose), - *fashuka*.
 — wood, - *vuna* (*buna*).
 — off, - *gura*.
 — a rope, - *bvambura*; - *dambura*; - *gwimbura*; - *dashura* (*tashura*).
 — (crumble), - *pefura*; - *mepfura*; - *medura*.
 — into small pieces, - *pemura*; - *gu-ranya*; - *mepfuranya*; - *vunyana*.
 — into, - *paza*.
 — in two, - *godora*; - *gura*; - *wa-dzura*.
 - break open as of abscess, - *putika*; - *dzutuka* (- *dzutuka*); - *roya*.
 — with noise, - *bogora*.
 — off a piece of wood, - *kwazura*; - *pazura*; - *isemura*; - *pfemura*.
 — off a small piece, - *pedura*; - *pu-duka*; - *kwashura*; - *kwatsura*; - *mğawura*; - *kwishura*; - *kwa-bura*.
 — off and fall with noise, - *vozhoka*.
 — out (of cattle), - *roya*; - *mananyura*; - *phanya*.
 — (of floor), - *pfumbudza*; - *tsindimura*.
 — off branches, - *pfawura*.
 — — (as elephant), - *ponga*.
 — open, - *phatsa*.
 — up lumps of soil, - *kuta*.
 breakfast (native), *chisusuro* (3); - take —, - *šusura*.
 breast, *zamu* (5).
 — (chest), *chifuya* (3).
 — bone (end of), *rukwa-rikwa* (6); *rudikwa-dikwa* (6).
 — bone of animal, *chithiu* (3).
 breath, *mğeya* (2); *ku fema* (8); hard — ing, *mafemo* (5 pl.).
 — be short of —, - *ya ne chifemo*; - *femedzeka*.
 - breathe, - *fema*.
 — heavily, - *femereka*; - *femedzeka*; - *takwaira*; - *femesa*; - *ita mafemo*.
 breeches, *buruku* (5) (for.).
 - breed, - *pfuwa*; - *berekesa*.
 — n., *rudzi* (6).
 strange — of cattle, *moromoka* (4).
 breeze, *mepo* (4); *mğando* (2).
 brevity, *yufupi* (7).
 - brew (beer), - *bika doro*.
 - bribe, - *tsindira*; - *pa fumbamuro*; - *fufura*.
 — n., *fumbamuro* (4); *fufuro* (4).
 brick, *chidina* (3) (for.).
 — (clot of earth), *vinga* (5).
 bricklayer, *muwaki* (1).
 bride, *mğenga* (1).
 — (newly married woman), *muro-yora* (1).
 bridegroom, *chikomba* (3); *sakwana* (1).

bridge, *matano* (5); *yutanda* (7); *zambuko* (5).

— of nose, *mutanda-mino* (2); *mazhuruzhuru* (5 pl.).

bridle, *matomo* (5 pl.) (for.).

brief, adj., *fupi*; *doko*; *shoma*; with class pref.

briefly, adv., *no ku chimbidzika*; *na mashoko mashoma*.

bright, - *be*, - *bġinya*; - *chena*; - *penya*; - *bġibġinya*; - *yunguma*; - *nanima*.

- **brighten**, - *bġinyisa*; - *penyisa*; - *chenisa*.

brightness, *ku bġinya* (8), etc.

brilliant, see 'bright.'

brim, *muromo* (2); *niyi* (4 pl.) (i.e. sides).

brimful, - *be*, - *zara na pa muromo*; - *ti pa*; - *ti pfa*; - *ti papanana*.

- **bring**, - *yuya na*.

— **for**, - *yigira*.

— **in**, - *pinda na*; - *pinza*.

— **up**, - *kwira na*; - *kwiridza*.

— **out**, - *buda na*; - *budisa*; - *dusa*.

— **down**, - *buruka na*; - *burusa*.

— **back**, - *dzoka na*; - *dzosa*.

— **near**, - *shwedera na*; - *shwededza*; - *sededza*.

— **forth**, - *bereka*; - *gara*.

— **up children**, - *rera*; - *kurisa*.

— **(a present)**, - *perekera*.

— **together**, - *shonganisa*; - *rumikidza*.

brink (edge of precipice), *mutsedu*.

— (edge of water), *niyi* (4 pl.). See 'bank.'

bristle, *guse* (5).

brittle, - *be*, - *pefuka*; - *meduka*; - *mepfuka*; - *kwatsuka*; - *mge-wuka*; - *pfumbukira*.

— **thing**, *yuyurumbġe* (7).

broad, adj., 'pami' with class prefix (see Lesson XVIII.).

- *be* —, v., - *fara*, - *pamama*.

broadcast, - *scatter*, - *kushanya*.

- **broil**, v.i., - *pfapfata*; - *wawama*.

— v.t., - *gocha*; - *kanga*.

broken, - *be*, - *pulsika*; - *be broken off*, - *meduka*. See 'break.'

brokenhearted, - *be*, - *paruka hana*; - *putikira ne shungu*.

brood, n. (of chickens), *yutiyo* (7); *hukwana* (4 pl.).

— v. (as hen), - *yatira*; - *garira*; - *rindira*.

— (fret), - *zi lday moyo*; - *ita rukurududu*; - *punyaira*. See 'fret.'

brook, *rukoya* (6).

brooklet, *rufuya* (6).

broom, *mutsauro* (2).

brother of brother (elder), *mukuru* (1); *mukoma* (1).

— (younger), *munununa* (1); *munukona* (1); *mushoma* (1).

— of a sister (or sister of a brother), *hangadzi* (4); *hanganzi* (4).

— in-law (of husband), *mukarabġa* (1); (youngest), *muramu* (1).

— in-law of wife (elder), *murumekuru* (1); (younger), *murunyana* (1).

brow, *huma* (4).

— of eye, *siye* (4 pl.).

brown, adj., *shora*; dark —, *shora*; *dema*; light —, *shaya*; reddish —, *deko nziro*.

—, - *be*, v., - *tsuka*.

- **bruise**, - *kwatika* (kwatikira); - *manika*; - *mbandika*.

— between two stones, - *dovorera*.

— n., *ronda* (5); *yabġa* (5).

- **brush** (- dust), - *tsaira*; - *pukusa*.

— (polish), - *wawacha*.

—, n., *brache* (4) (for.).

- **bubble** (of water when boiling), - *veruka*; - *vaira*; - *shapaira*; - *fazha*.

—, n., *furo* (5).

buck, *mukono we muka*; *muka* (game).

- **buck** (as horse), - *vinyinguka*; - *kwa-kuka*; - *rinyuka*; - *rimbinyuka*.

bucket, *belete* (5) (for.).

- **buckle**, - *sunganidza*.

bud (of flower), *chifundo che ruya* (3).

— (of leaves), *pfumvudza* (5).

— v., - *tunga*; begin to —; - *bara*.

buffalo, *nyati* (4).

bug, *tsikidzi* (4) (*sikidzi*).

- **build**, - *yaka*; - *ronga*; begin to —, - *yalira*; - *rura*; — a hut (i.e. put in poles), - *komera*; - *cause to* —, - *yakisa*.

— **put in small poles where holes are left**, - *konera*.

builder, *myuyaki* (1).
 building, *yuyaki* (7).
 — place, *yudziko* (7); *yuyako* (7).
 bulb, *zimai* (5).
 bulk, *yuwandi* (7); *ku wanda* (8).
 bulky, - be, - pangama; - pangamuka.
 See 'big.'
 bull, *hando* (4); *mukono* (2).
 — (big), *handira* (4).
 — (ugly big), *findimagona* (5).
 — (large vicious), *chirara-musango* (3).
 bullet (native), *mbumburu* (4).
 —, *kuru* (4) (for.).
 bullock, *nzombe* (4); *nombe* (4);
 ngayi (4) (for.).
 bulrush, *nokwe* (4 pl.).
 - bump, - *bondera*; - *gumura*; - *gudura*.
 bunch (of fruit), *sumbu* (5); *rumbu* (6); *buma* (5); *bundu* (5);
 mazakwatira (5 pl.).
 bundle (parcel), *muhwaro* (2); *musengwa* (2).
 — of wood, *singa* (5).
 — of grass or grain, *chisote* (3);
 mganda (2); *chishwa* (3); large
 —, *mukwende* (2).
 burden, *muhwaro* (2); *musengwa* (2);
 mutoro (2).
 —, v., - *remedza*.
 burdened, - be, - *remergwa*; - *remedzwa*; - *rembga*.
 burglar, *gororo* (5).
 burial, *ku vigwa* (8); *ku rashiwa* (8).
 - burn, - *pisa*; - *tša*.
 — beyond redemption, - *shigida*; - *shuguda*; - *rokoteke* (- *rukutika*);
 - *nyuguda* (- *nyuguta*).
 — down, - *ririma*; - *virima*.
 — (- smart), - *yutira*; - *pfuta*.
 — (of fire), - *pfuta*.
 — underneath (while there is water on top) (as of rice), - *tša guni*.
 — round a kraal (to prevent its catching fire), - *yayira*.

burnt, - be, - *pisiwa*; (slightly),
 - *yayaidza*; - *shosha*; - *soma-soma*.
 - burrow, - *chera*; - *tša*.
 — (as of sore), - *fukusa*.
 - burst, - *paruha*; - *pamuka*.
 - burst open, - *putika*; - *tsatika*; - cause
 to — open, - *tsatisa*; - *putisa*.
 - burst through and protrude, - *putikira*.
 - bury, *viga*; - *rasha*; - *cherera pasi*.
 burying-place, *pa mabgiro* (9); *pa malinda* (9).
 bush (small), *gwenzi* (5).
 — of large trees, *dondo* (5).
 — of shrubs, *chitondo*.
 — of mushuku trees, *jiri* (5).
 — of thorn trees, *chiwunga* (3).
 — (thick), *denere* (5).
 — (prickly), *rgwenya* (6); *mombge* (4).
 — for making native salt, *mutšangidze* (2) (*mushungidze*); *mutakata* (2).
 bush-buck, *soma* (4).
 bush-dove, *metura* (4).
 business, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
 — (affair), *maka* (4); *moša* (4).
 busy, - be, - *ya ne mibato*; - *batabata*.
 - be very —, - *bindikita*; - *bishinga*;
 - *bunurika*; - *ita chimere-mere*.
 but, *bua*; (except), *asi*.
 butcher, *mubayi we nyama* (1).
 butt, *nina*.
 butter, *mafuta e nombe*.
 —, - make, - *roga*.
 butterfly, *shayi-shayi* (4); *narira* (4).
 butter-milk, *mutadza* (2).
 buttock, *dako* (5).
 button, *konopo* (4) (for.).
 — v., - *konopera* (for.).
 button-hole, *yuli re konopo* (5).
 - buy, - *tenga*.
 - buzz, - *ziririka*; - *zirika*.
 — n., *muririka* (2).
 by, prep., *na* (ne, no), *pa*.
 by-and-by, *pa sule*.

C

- cackle, - *sehesera* ; - *kekehedsa*.
 cage (to carry birds or fowls), *dendere* (5) ; *selete* (5).
 calabash, *dende* (5).
 — (small) for fat, *chin(h)u* (3).
 — for child's food, *shupa* (4).
 — for churning, *ndogo* (4) ; *shupa* (4).
 — (long), for carrying food, *guchu* (5).
 — for medicine, *gon* (5) ; *nekwe* (4).
 speaking —, *mazangwa* (5 pl.).
 piece of —, *deme* (5).
 — with small hole for straining, *surudzo* (4).
 dish of —, *nemba* (4).
 calamity, *rukono* (6) ; *rushambga* (6) ; *namo* (4) ; *ruliza* (6) ; *rumbambanda* (6) ; *rupfupfuneko* (6).
 - calculate, - *yerenga* ; - *raya*.
 calf, *mur* (4).
 — (fat), *singa re muru* (5).
 — (young), *nunjana* (4) ; *munaya* (2).
 — (big, weaned), *gondoro* (5).
 — of leg, *shafu* (4).
 calico, *muckeka* (2).
 — for bartering, *limbo* (4) (for.).
 —, strip of, *rundaza* (6).
 - call, - *dan(h)a* ; - *singudzira*.
 — to someone at a distance, - *shoye-dzera*.
 — out, - *kuwa*.
 — for help, - *ridzemere*.
 — out loud, - *danidzira* ; - *zhamba* ; - *kwamisa*.
 — together, - *koka* ; - *kokera* ; - *korokodza* ; - *kokorodza*.
 — (name), - *ti*, - *tumidza* ; - *tuma*.
 called, - *be*, - *daywa* ; - *nzi* ; - *wi* ; (be named), - *tumidzwa*.
 one who is —, *mudanwi* (1).
 calm, - *be*, - *dzikama* ; - *nyarara* ; - *gadzikana* ; - *ti tera-tera*.
 — v.t., - *nyaradza*.
 camel, *kamera* (5) (for.).
 — (giraffe), (s) *hwiza* (4) ; *wiza* (4).
 camelion, *gwaivi* (5).
 camp (for the night), *musasa* (2) ; *charadza* (3).

can, aux., 'nga' before verb root, or 'bvidza,' '- gona' (followed by infinitive).
 - cancel, - *bvisa* ; - *dzima*.
 candelabra tree, *mukonde* (2).
 candle, *mgenje* (2) ; *chiveneko* (3).
 candlestick, *cho ku timika mgenje* (3).
 cane (sugar), *pha* (4).
 — (rod), *shamu* (4).
 cannon, *ndurunduru* (4).
 canoe, *gwa* (5) ; *bgato* (7).
 canopy, *denga* (5).
 - canter, - *pipitika* ; - *papatika* ; - *ripitika*.
 canvas, *muckeka mukobvu* (2).
 cap, *ngowani* (4).
 — (of gun), *chibabangu* (3) ; *kothio* (4) (for.) ; *chifofo* (3) ; *gadzo* (5).
 capability, *simba* (5) ; *ku chenjera* (8) ; *njere* (4).
 capable, - *be*, - *gon* ; - *bvidza* ; - *gonera*.
 capable man, *nyanzi* (4) ; *mizha* (4) ; *chizazamburo* (3).
 capacity, *yukuru* (7).
 capital, *muzinda* (2) ; *musha wa she* (2).
 capricious, - *be*, - *ya ne nando*.
 - capsize, v.i., - *wa* ; - *shakuka* ; - *pidiguka* ; - *chanjamara* ; - *njakuka*.
 captain, *she* (1) ; *mubati* (1).
 — of war, *mukuru we pfumo* (1).
 captive, *mutaphi* (1) ; *mutapha* (1).
 - capture, - *tapa* ; - *bata*.
 care, *runyunyutiro* (6).
 - take —, - *ngwara*. See 'take.'
 - take — of, - *chengeta* ; - *tarira* ;
 - (take — of sick), - *kota* ; - *pepa* ; - *wonga*.
 - have many cares, - *tambura* ; - *nyunyuta* ; - *tambudzika*.
 one who does not care for relatives, *zivira* (5).
 careful, - *be*, - *ya ne hanya* ; - *naiso ku ita* ; - *chenjera*.
 carefulness, *hanya* (4 pl.) ; *chiti* (3) ; (economy), *yukurudza* (7).
 careless, - *be*, - *sa ye ne hanya* ; - *sa naiso ku ita* ; - *sa chenjera*.

- careless person, *zidya* (5) ; *zengeya* (4) (stupid and careless).
- carpenter, *muvezi wa malanda* (1).
- carpentry, - do, - *veza*.
- carriage (cart or waggon), *ngoro* (4) ; *chingoro* (3) ; *kochi* (4) (for.) ; *garigi* (4) (for.).
- carrier, *musengi* (1).
- carry, - *senga* ; - *takura* ; - *tuta*.
- an invalid, - *senguza* ; - *tapura*.
- heavily, - *gakamura*.
- heavily in hands, - *tekaira* ; - *teka-teka*.
- on the back, - *bereka*.
- cause to —, - *sengedza*.
- two articles, one on the head, and the other in the hand, - *ita ndedzekero* ; - *ita redzekergwa* ; - *ita ndedzekergwa*.
- cart, see 'carriage.'
- cartridge case, *nyere* (4).
- carve (wood), - *veza*.
- (meat), - *cheka-cheka* ; - *guranya*.
- (- plane), - *senda*.
- case (box), *bokisi* (5) (for.).
- (affair), *shoko* (5) ; *maka* (4) ; *ndebea* (4) ; *ndevo* (4).
- cask, *fachi* (4) (for.).
- cast (- throw), - *kanda* ; - *poshera*.
- (- throw st), - *kandira*.
- away, - *rasha*.
- lots, - *kanda majenyu*.
- the skin, - *zuyura* ; - *guyura* ; - *zuyuka* (- *zuyurgwa*).
- castor oil plant, *mufute* (2) ; — bean, *fute* (5).
- castrate, - *cheka*.
- cat, *kaisi* (4) (for.) ; *chimange* (3) ; *mangowe* (4) (*chimangowe* (3)).
- (small), wild animals belonging to the cat species : *simba* (4), *niriri* (4), *yunana* (7), *chidumbu* (3) ; *goyo* (5).
- (large), *gora* (5) ; *dyanga* (4) ; *nzunza* (4) ; *jachacha* (5).
- cataract, *bopopo* (5) ; *machiti* (5 pl.).
- (rapids), *mangondo* (5 pl.).
- on eye, *shanga* (4) ; *gangara* (5) ; *nakara* (4).
- catch, - *bata* ; - *kwinyata*.
- catch fish, - *bata* ; (with hook), - *rayura* ; - *redza* ; (with native trap of reeds), - *kukudza* ; - *teya*.
- catch water, - *chingidzira*.
- hold of, - *haka* (- *aka*) ; - *hatura* ; - *hasura*.
- in a trap, - *teya*.
- catechism, *katekisma* (4) (for.).
- cattle (general name), *zipfuwo* (3).
- , head of, *nombe* (4) ; *nzombe* (4) ; *mombe* (4).
- kraal, *danga* (5).
- disease, *ndali* (4) ; *murenge-nyama* (2).
- caught, - be (as by a branch or peg), - *pfakama*.
- (by one's own words), - *koreka*.
- caul (suet), *bambasusu* (5).
- cause (to do), - *ita* ; usually expressed by the causative of the verb in 'isa,' e.g. - *fambisa*, - *cause to walk*.
- cautious, - be, - *chenjera* ; - *tarisisa* ; - *ngwara* (- *ngwarira*) ; - *funganya*.
- cave, *bako* (5) ; *nave* (4).
- (very deep), *ninga*.
- (large), *mangondo* (5).
- (small), *rukwama* (6).
- (opening between rocks), *gwanwadza* (5) ; *munwanwa* (2) ; *gwama* (5).
- cavity, *yuli* (5) ; *chikomba* (3).
- cease, - *rega* ; - *regedza* ; - *guma* (*kuma*).
- from doing, - *kawura*.
- (- be finished), - *pera*.
- (of rain), - *gasa* ; - *ganuka*.
- ceiling, *denga* (5).
- celebrate, - *tamba mutambo* ; - *tamba bira*.
- ed, - be, - *ya no mukurumbira*.
- cell (of honey), *nyere* (4).
- (of prison), *imba yo mu trongo*.
- censure, - *tuka* ; - *pa maka*.
- centipede, *zongororo* (5) ; *mani* (4) ; *rgwambura* (6).
- central, 'pakati,' preceded by gen. part. of governing noun.
- centre, *pakati* (9) ; *mukati* (9).
- centurion, *mukuru we zana* (1).
- century, *makole a ne zana* ; *zana ra makole*.

- certain (some), 'mge' with class prefix.
 - be —, - ziya zokwadi; - ziya kwazo.
 certainly! zokwadi! ziro kwazo! kwazo-kwazo!
 certainty, zokwadi (4); sa mazokwadi.
 - chafe, - suyura; - solora; - pozora; - pondora.
 chafed, - be, - suyuka; - sotoke; - pozoka; - pondoka.
 chaff, hundi (4); windi (4); harana (4).
 chain, gedani (5) (for.); matale (5 pl.).
 chair, chigaro (3); po ku gara (9).
 - challenge, - yambira; - soşera; - tanga; - tipitira.
 — n., ruşoşera (6).
 chance, chinambo (3).
 - change, - shandura; - pindura.
 — (exchange), - tengana; - tsinana.
 — money, - tsinana; - chinjisa (for.).
 — place or direction, - shandudza.
 — about, - shanduridza.
 — one's mind, - shanduka; - shandukira.
 change, n., for the better, muchenje-mekwa (2).
 changed, - be, - shanduka; - pinduka; - shandukira.
 chapter, ganurgwa (4); chikamu (3).
 character, moyo (2); — (habit), mutoyo (2); mugariro (2); mugarire (2).
 charcoal, masimbe (5 pl.). See 'coal'.
 charge, - be in — of, - raira; - tarira; be in — of part of village, senge mana.
 take —, - rinda; - tarira; - che-ngeta.
 give in — of another, - ronza.
 live stock given in — of another, ronşgwa (4).
 — a gun, - paka.
 - charm, - fadza; - farisa.
 charm (of witch-doctor), zango (5); teye (4).
 — (for evil spirits, 'mazungu'), ndoro (4).
 - chase, - dzinga; - tata; — (- hunt), - vima; - cause to — (as of dog), diva.
 chaste, - be, - sa chinya; - sa pata.
 - chastise, - roya; - raira; - ranga.
 - chat, - kurukurirana; - tauwulirana.
 - chatter, - rosha. See 'talk'.
 — (of teeth), - gweda meno.
 chatterbox, murosiki (1).
 cheap, - be, - sa kosha; - ldyali mali mashoma.
 - cheat, - nyengera; - nyengedzera. See 'deceive'.
 - check, - dziyisa; - mirisa.
 — oneself, - zi dzora.
 check (colour), yutsaratasa (7).
 cheek, dama (5).
 — bone, rushaya (6).
 hollow —, n(h)ama (4).
 inside of —, marikisha (5 pl.).
 cheeky, - be, - ya no muromo.
 - cheer, - yaraidza; - farisa; - chenesa moyo.
 — (- applaud), - pururudza.
 cheerful, - be, - ya no mufaro; - fara; - kodza.
 cheerless, - be, - sa ya no mufaro.
 - cherish, - disa; - dikana.
 chest, chifuva (3); diti (5).
 — of animal, chithiu (3).
 - chew, - tsenga; - tafuna; - tsakunya.
 — with mouth full, - fondota.
 — the oud, - dzeya.
 — something hard, - banda; - gegedura; - gwegwedura; - tetenera (tetena).
 chicken, hukwana (4); rutiyo (6); mupupu (2).
 chief, she (1); ishe (1); mambo (1); mubati (1).
 — adj., - kuru with class prefix (Lesson XVI).
 — person, sazita (1); sakuwana (1); singwisigwi (4).
 chiefly, zikuru.
 chieftainship, yushe (7); yumambo (7).
 chilblains, yunyiriri (7).
 child, mgana (1).
 — of chief, muchinda (1).
 step —, mubandiripo (1).
 new-born —, rushiye (6).
 — (baby), mucheche (1); chana (3).
 — (older), phere (4); chiphere (3).

child (few months old), *chizaranyara* (3).
 — (two or three years old), *ndumule* (4).
 — (fat), *singa ro m̄gana*; *zana* (5); *chib̄gindikiti* (3).
 — (illegitimate), *munungwa* (1).
 — (first-born), *dangwe* (5).
 — (last-born), *rugothwe* (6).
 — (male), *m̄ganakomana*.
 — (female), *m̄ganasikana*.
 only —, *norongondo* (4); *dondi* (5).
 — (tall, overgrown), *diwa-tiwa* (5); *docha-tocha* (5).
 — (very thin), *kanana*.
 childbirth, *ku surumuka* (8). See 'bear.'
 childhood, *yum̄gana* (7); *yushiye* (7); *yucheche* (7).
 childish, so *mucheche*.
 childless, - be, - *sa yo no m̄gana*.
 childlike, so *m̄gana*.
 chill, *dzigba* (5); *bembo* (5); *muvi* *wa pinde chando*.
 chin, *chirevu* (3).
 — (double), *humbu* (4); *skin under* — of animal, *rembe* (5).
 chip of a pot, *chaenga* (3).
 — (of wood), *chipfemurgwa* (3); *chikwanzurgwa* (3). See 'splinter.'
 — v.t., - *pfemura*; - *kwazura*; - *pa-zura*.
 — ped off, - *meduka*; - *mewuka*; - *m̄gawuka*.
 - chirp, - *rira*.
 chisel, *mbezo* (4).
 —, v., - *yeza*; - *senda*; - *papa*.
 choice, - be, - *shanangurgwa*; - *tswawurgwa*.
 — n., *chishananguro* (3); *chitsawurgwa* (3); *tsawuro* (4).
 - choke, v.t., - *dzipa*; - *bitirisa*; - *phitisa*; - *ronda*. See 'stifle.'
 — v.i., - *bitiririgwa*; - *dzipha*; - *phitishwa*.
 — with smoke or dust, - *pfungaidza*; - *pfungidzira*.
 — (of weeds), - *vunga*.
 - choose, - *shanangura*; - *tsawura*; - *shara*.
 - chop, - *tema*. See 'cut.'
 Christ, *Kristu* (1).

- christen, -*nyorovedza*; - *bapatidza* (for.).
 Christian, *muKristu* (1) (for.).
 Christianity, *yuKristu* (7).
 Christian name, *zita ro ku nyorovedziwa*; *zita re bapatidzo*.
 Christmas, *Krisimisi* (4) (for.).
 chrysalis, *dekwende* (5).
 chum, *shamgali* (4).
 church, *hereke* (4) (for.).
 — building, *hereke* (4 for.); *imba yo Mudzimu*.
 - churn, - *roza*.
 — n., *ndozo*.
 cinders, *mazimbe* (5 pl.).
 circle, *chinenderere* (3); *chitenderedzwa* (3); *chitenderedzi* (3); *chitenderere* (3).
 — of people, *darivo* (5).
 —, make a, - *tendenudza*; - *tendenura*.
 - circulate (as blood), - *tenderera*; - *potereka*.
 - circumcise, - *dzinga*; - *dzingisa*.
 —ed, one who is, *dzinga* (5); *muizingwi* (1).
 circumcision, *yudzingiso* (7); *yudzinga* (7).
 circumference, see 'circle.'
 circumspect, - be, - *chenjera*.
 cistern, *guyi* (5); *diy* (5).
 city, *musha mukuru-kuru*; *very large native village, nzanga* (4); *jarati* (5).
 civil, - be, - *dayira za ka naka*; - *bvumira za ka naka*.
 clad, - be, - *fuka*; - *pfeka*; - *simira*.
 - claim, - *reya*.
 - clamber, - *kwira*.
 — on hands and feet, - *nanaira*; - *naira*.
 - clamour, - *popota*.
 clan, *rudzi* (6); *gayu* (5).
 clang, *ku rira* (8).
 - clap the hands in greeting, - *yuchira*; - *wombera*; - *ridza gusi*; - *ridze nondo*; - *bonda*.
 — for joy, - *ita zabgabga*.
 — fast, - *bobodza*.
 — the hands and sing, - *ita mazembera*.
 - clarify, - *natsa*; - *chenesa*.

- clasp, - *bonderana*; - *gumirana*.
 - clasp, - *fumbatira*.
 — in arms, - *bungatira*; - *fungatira*.
 class, *boka* (5) (lit. a flock); *rayuro* (5) (i.e. section).
 — (kind), *rudzi* (6).
 — classify, - *rayura*.
 claw, *runjara* (6) (*runzara* (6)).
 clay, *vu ra kanyiwa*; *ganyu* (5).
 — (mud), *dope* (5); *munyawu* (2).
 — (white), *suko* (4).
 clean, - *be*, - *naka*; - *sa ya ne sina*; - *chena*.
 — v.t., - *chenesa*; - *natsa*.
 — boots, - *suka*; - *bgingyisa*.
 — a sore, - *kupa*.
 cleanliness, *vundere* (7).
 cleanness, *ku naka* (8); *ku chena* (8).
 - cleanse, - *natsa*; - *chenesa*; - *suka*.
 clear, - *be*, - *naka*; - *chena*; — (transparent), - *njenjemera*.
 — up (of rain), - *dzimuka*; - *yara*; - *dovera*.
 — away, - *bvisa*; - *bisa*.
 — (of grass for garden), - *seyura*.
 — out, - *kutura*.
 — throat, - *šipa*.
 — make —, - *dudzira*.
 clearly, adv., *ga ka naka*; *pa chena*.
 - cleave (split), - *tsemura*; - *kwazura*; - *pfemura*.
 — (stick to), - *namatira*; - *namira*.
 cleft, *mupata* (2); *mukaha* (2); small —, *munwanwa* (2).
 clergyman, *mudzidzisi* (1); *mufundisi* (1) (for.).
 clever, - *be*, - *chenjera*; - *ngwara*; - *ngwarira*; - *šinuka*; - *šinkura*.
 — man, *sharara* (4); *chizazamburo* (3); *mbarayara* (4); (*mbareyare*).
 cleverness, *njere* (4); *yungwali* (7); *yuchenjeri* (7); *nno* (4).
 cliff, *šingo* (5).
 climate, *mepo* (4).
 - climb, - *kwira*.
 — (of plants), - *tandira*; - *tanda*.
 — up a tree with smooth stem, - *gonyera*.
 - oling, - *namatira*.

- clip, - *cheka*; - *gura*.
 clock, *chinambo* (3); *chiringiriro* (3).
 clod, *vinga* (5).
 - clog, - *dziyira*; - *tsida*.
 - close (finish), - *pedza*; - *pedzisa*; - *gumisa*.
 — partly, - *kwatidza*.
 — lips, - *bumira*; - *duhumira*.
 — mouth with the hand, - *fumbira*.
 — eyes, - *tsinzina*.
 — one eye, - *tsinya*; - *phanya ziso*.
 — ears, - *dziyira* (- *zheve*).
 — hand, - *fumbatira*.
 — door, - *pfiga*; - *zarira* (- *zharira*).
 — with a cover, - *funira*; - *duhumidza*; - *tibikira*.
 — with a cork, - *dziyira*.
 — by, *pedo*; - *be* — together, - *batana na*.
 - be — (of weather), - *tiyurira*.
 - come — by, - (s) *hwedera*; - *sedera*.
 - bring —, - (s) *hwededza*.
 clot, *bundu* (5).
 — of blood, *goyo* (5).
 cloth, *mucheka* (2); red head — of doctor, *chiremba* (3).
 - clothe, - *fukidza*; - *simidza*; - *pfekedza*.
 — oneself, - *fuka*; - *simira*; - *pfeka*.
 clothes, *hazu* (4); *nguyo* (4); *go ku fuka* (3); *gisimiro* (3); *chafukwa* (3); *ziambaro* (3 pl.).
 cloud, *gole* (5).
 thick rain —, *hole* (4).
 small —, *mafuya* (5 pl.); *hanga* (4 pl.).
 thunder —, *mvumi* (4); fleecy —, *yunga* (7).
 dark, lowering —, *mazizidza e mvura* (5 pl.).
 rainless —, *furere* (5).
 cloudless, - *be*, - *mğawura*.
 cloudy, - *be*, - *ya na makole*.
 - cluck (of hen), - *gugudzira*.
 clump, *sumbu* (5); *buma* (5); *bundu* (5); *shango* (4).
 — of trees, *dondo* (5); *shango* (4).
 — of grass, *mazunga* (5 pl.).
 cluster, *sumbu* (5); *mazakwatira* (5 pl.); *buma* (5); *rumbu* (6); *bundu* (5).

coach, *ngoro* (4); *kochi* (4) (for.).
 coachman, *muchairi we kochi* (1).
 - coagulate, - *gwamba*; - *tsingana*.
 coal (of fire), *zimbe* (5); *chochonyo* (3); (charcoal), *masimbe* (5 pl.).
 coarse, - be, see 'grind.'
 — in speech, - *nyangara*.
 — (not soft), - *ya na mabvivvi*.
 coast, *menderekedzo* (4). See 'bank.'
 — (bank of river), *miri* (4).
 coat, *bachi* (4) (for.).
 (overcoat), *jasi* (5) (for.).
 - coax, - *gombedzera*; - *nyengetedza*.
 - cob, v. (of maize), - *pakata*.
 — n., *hupi* (4); — (part of), *guranwa* (5); *hupanwa* (4).
 — with leaves removed, *sotorgwa* (5).
 — without maize, *guli* (5).
 cobra, *mungu* (4); see 'serpent.'
 cobweb, *mutandiro* (2).
 cock, *gukurume* (5); *jongwe* (5).
 — of a gun, *chikoyono* (3).
 — v. (as of gun), - *teya pfuti*; - *thesa* (dyesa).
 cock's comb, *jorochoro* (5); *vaza* (5); *musanga* (2).
 cockroach, *bele* (5); kind of — found in clusters on rocks, *gwamurashoka* (5).
 cocoon, *numbana* (4); *chisakafuriro* (3).
 coffee, *kofi* (4) (for.).
 - coil, - *monera*; - *pombera*; - *petana*.
 — as of snake, - *gonyana*; - *gungana* (- *gunga*).
 coin, *mali* (5 pl.).
 coincide, - make to, - *teyedzera*.
 coincident, - be, - *yerekana*.
 cold, *chando* (3); (severe —), *jekacheka* (5).
 it is cold, *ku ne chando*; - *ya no rgwando*.
 - be —, - *tonora*; - *pora*.
 - feel cold, - *tonorgwa*.
 - have a — in the head, - *nzgwa dzibga*.
 - have a — in the chest, - *nzgwa chifuya* (or *diti*).
 (a bad —), *bimidza* (5); *bembo* (5).
 colic, - have, - *nzgwa nyoka*; - *rumga-rumga*. See 'gripes.'

collar, *cho ku sunga pa huro* (i.e. something to bind on the neck); *kara* (4) (for.).
 collar-bone, *ruchechete* (6).
 - collect, - *yungaidza*; - *yunganidza*; - *gugumira*; - *bgerengedza*.
 — in one place (as dirt), - *kura*; - *kukura*.
 — taxes, - *teresa*; - *ruyisa*.
 — people, - *kokera*; - *koka*.
 — (heap up), - *tutira*.
 — in a bundle, - *mbundanidza*.
 — all, - *kokorodza*.
 — v.i. (- assemble), - *kokorodzana*; - *yungana*; - *kokerana*.
 collection (a heap), *dutu* (5).
 — (of people), *yungano* (4).
 colour, *muyara* (2); *yara* (5).
 colt, *māna we biza*.
 column (of book), *ganuro* (4).
 — (of building), *mbiru* (4).
 - comb, v.t., - *sarudzira*.
 comb (cock's), see 'cock's-comb.'
 comb of honey —, *zinga* (5).
 - combine, - *shongana*; - *vengana*.
 — v.t., - *shonganidza*; - *venganisa*.
 combustible, - be, - *hatuka*.
 - come, - *yuya*.
 — back, - *dzoka*.
 — from, - *bva*.
 — in, - *pinda*.
 — out, - *buda*.
 — down, - *buruka*; - *dzira*; - *dzaka*; - *pfozoka*.
 — near, - *shwedera*; - *sedera*.
 — together, - *yungana*; - *shongana*; - *kokerana*.
 — up (of seeds), - *mera*; - *buda*; — profusely, - *fashura*.
 — (arrive), - *sika*.
 — together (of sides of sore or bark of tree), - *sunda*.
 — in quick succession, - *pitana*; - *pumana*.
 — to light, - *putsika*; - *budika*.
 — between two parties, - *randusa*; - *nanura*.
 — unexpectedly, - *totonyoka*.
 — out of hole (as of snake), - *tutunuka*.
 — to oneself, - *pengenuka*.
 — suddenly upon, - *nanga*; - *wira*.

- come to an end, - *pera* ; - *guma*.
 - comfort, - *nyaradza* ; - *varaidza* ;
 - *gadza moyo* ; - *kungura* ; - *ku-*
 mbura.
 — n., *varaidzo* (4) ; *nyaradzo* (4).
 comfortable, - *be*, - *nakira*.
 - *be made* —, - *nakirgwa*.
 comforter, *munyaradzi* (1).
 comical, - *be*, - *setsa*.
 - command, - *raira* ; - *raza* ; (- tell),
 - *yudza* ; - *reya* ; - *kurudzira* ;
 - *sambazura*.
 commander, *murairi* (1) ; *she* (1) ;
 mubati (1).
 commandment, *murairo* (2) ; *chireyo*
 (3) ; *murawo* (2) ; *murazo* (2).
 - commemorate, - *rangarira* ; - *funga*.
 - commence, - *tanga* ; - *vamba* ;
 - *pinda* ; - *tangidzira* ; - *bva*.
 commission for bartering, *shayiro* (4).
 - commit (a sin), - *ita zivi*.
 — a crime, - *pare moša* ; - *pare maka* ;
 - *shayira moša*.
 — perjury, - *pika nema*.
 — suicide, - *zi sungirira* ; - *ita tsunga*.
 — oneself, - *zi isa* ; - *zi susuyidza*.
 - communicate, - *yudza* ; - *nyepera* ;
 - *zivira* ; - *zivisa*.
 communion (holy), *chirayiro* (3).
 compact, n., *yukama* (7) ; *sungano*
 (4).
 - *be* —, v., - *batana*.
 companion, *shamgali* (4).
 company, *yungano* (4).
 - compare, - *fananidza* (- *fanaidza*) ;
 - *tadzaisira* ; - *enzanisa*.
 comparison, *chifananidzo* (3).
 - compass, - *poleredza* ; - *komberedza*.
 compassion, *sisi* (4) ; *ngoni* (4) ;
 nyasha (*nyasa*) (4) ; *chiridzi* (3).
 - *have* —, v., - (*nzg*)wira *yurombo* ;
 - (*nzg*)wire *sisi* ; - (*nzg*)wire *ngoni* ;
 - (*nzg*)wire *nyasha*.
 - call forth —, - (*nzg*)wisa *yurombo*.
 - compel, - *gombedzera* (- *kombedzera*) ;
 - *royerera* ; - *gwaririra* ; - *itisa*.
 - compensate, - *ripira* ; - *tsiya* (- *tsi-*
 vira).
 compensation, *chiripiro* (3).
 competent, - *be*, - *goni* ; - *buidza*.
 complacent, - *be*, - *dzikama* ; - *gadzi-*
 kana.

- complain, - *nyunyuta* ; - *demba* ;
 - *ya no rudembero* ; - *bundu-*
 kuta ; - *kungura*.
 — of someone, - *yudzisira* ; - *chera*.
 complainant, *munyudzisiri* (1).
 complaint, *runyunyutiro* (6) ; *rude-*
 mbero (6).
 — (fault), *maka* (4) ; *moša*
 (4).
 lodge a —, - *kwirira kuna she*.
 - complete, - *pedza* ; - *pedzisa* ; - *kwa-*
 nisa.
 - *be* —, - *pera* ; - *kwana*.
 completely, adv., *chose* ; *kwazo* ;
 zokwadi.
 - comply, - *tenda* ; - *bvumira*.
 - compose (make), - *ita*.
 composed of, - *be*, - *itihwa na*.
 - comprehend, - (*nzg*)wa ; - (*nzg*)wi-
 sisa.
 - compress, - *tsikisa* ; - *ndonyera* ;
 - *ronda*.
 - put on a compress, - *toya*.
 compulsion, *gombedzero* (4) ; *gwari-*
 riro (4).
 comrade, *shamgali* (4).
 - conceal, - *vanza*.
 — oneself, - *vanda* ; - *zi viga*.
 conceit, *mafaimga* (*mafamga*) (5 pl.) ;
 manyawi (5 pl.) ; *mafama*
 (5 pl.) ; *mavimga* (5 pl.).
 conceited, - *be*, - *ya na manyawi* ;
 - *tusaira* ; - *ita manyawi* ; - *zi*
 kudza ; - *zi tungamidza* ; - *zi*
 tuna ; - *nyawuka* ; - *nyanduka*.
 - conceive (understand), - (*nzg*)wisisa.
 — (think), - *funga*.
 — (become pregnant), - *mita* ; - *ya ne*
 mimba ; - *tora mimba*.
 - concentrate, - *isa panu pamge* ;
 - *yunganidza panu pamge*.
 concerning, *cha* ; *za*.
 - conciliate, - *vananisa*.
 - conclude (- finish), - *pedza* ; - *pe-*
 dzisa ; - *gumisa*.
 conclusion, *ku pedzisira* (8) ; *ku pera*
 (8) ; *ku guma* (8).
 - condemn, - *gura* ; - *tonga*.
 condemnation, *ku gura* (8) ; *ku*
 gurira (8) ; *ku tonga* (8).
 condiment, *yusayi* (7) ; *chiseyo* (3) ;
 cho ku seyesa (3) ; *seyo* (5).

condiment, (hot), *miri-piri*.
 — (dry 'yusayi,' such as roasted monkey nuts), *netennergwa* (4 pl.).
 condition, *mutoyo* (2); *mugarire* (2).
 - conduct (- direct), - *raira*; (- accompany), - *perekedza*.
 — (- bring), - *isa*; - *perekera*.
 — (- go ahead), - *tungamira*; - *tunga-midza*.
 — (a service), - *pinza*.
 coney, *mbira* (4).
 - confer (together), - *rangana*; - *nyeperana*.
 — (bestow), - *pa*.
 conference, *yungano* (4); *shongano* (4); *rangano* (4).
 - confess, - *dudzira*; - *reya*; - *budisa pa chena*; - *d(h)ura*.
 confident, - be, - *tenda*.
 confined, - be (in childbirth), - *suru-muka*.
 confined woman, *muzere* (1).
 - confirm, - *simbisa*; - *kodzera*; - *simbisa shoko*; - *tenda*.
 confirmation, *chisimbiso* (3).
 conflict, *ku rgwa* (8).
 confluence (of rivers), *mawiro* (5 pl.).
 - confuse, - *venganisa*; - *pesanisa* (- *pesaisa*); - *shonganisa musoro*; - *korekanya*; - *kanganisa*; - *nyonganisa*; - *piyanisa*; - *kangaidza* (- *kanganidza*); - *kanyawura*.
 confused, - be, - *pishana*; - *pishingingana*; - *piyana*.
 - congratulate, - *farira*; - *korokotedza*.
 congratulations! *makorokoto!*
 - congregate, - *yungana*. See 'assemble.'
 congregation, *yungano* (4); *shongano* (4); *chiyunga* (3); *Kereke* (4) (for.) (church).
 - connect, - *batanidza*; - *sunganisa*; - *shonganisa*.
 - conquer, - *kunda*; - *kurira*.
 conqueror, *mukundi* (1); *mukuriri* (1).
 conscience, *hana* (4); *chifuya* (3).
 - have a guilty —, - *duka-duka*.
 conscious, - become, - *pengenuka*.
 consciousness, *ku zi ziya* (8).
 consecutive, - be, - *teperana*.

- consent, - *tenda*; - *tendera*; - *dayira*; - *buumira*.
 consequence, *neyerero* (4).
 - consider, - *funga*; - *fungisisa*; - *rangarira*; - *fungidzira*.
 considerateness, *ku funga yamge* (8).
 consolation, *kumburo* (4); *varaidzo* (4); *nyaradzo* (4).
 - console, - *kumbura*; - *nyaradza*; - *varaidza*; - *kungura*.
 conspicuous, - be, - *yonekwa zikuru*.
 - make oneself —, - *zi duna* (- *zi tuna*); - *sasayara*.
 - conspire, - *rangana ga ka ipa*.
 constant, - be, - *tsunga moyo*; - *tsungirira*; - *rambirira*.
 constantly, adv., *maruya ose*; *misi yose*.
 - constrain, - *gombedzera*; - *rgwaririra*.
 - construct, - *itayaka* (i.e. build).
 - consult, - *vunza*.
 — dice, - *shopera*; - *hakata*.
 — together, - *rangana*; - *vunzana*; - *nyeperana*.
 — a witch doctor, - *yuka*.
 consulting place of witch-doctor, *mayukiro* (5 pl.).
 consumption, *rukoshoro* (6) (*rukosoro* (6)).
 contact, - have, - *shongana*; - *rgwizana*.
 contagious, - be, - *pomera*; - *namatira*.
 - contain, construed by 'ku ya na' (to have), e.g. the bag contains four baskets, *homo i na matengu manna*.
 - contaminate, - *pomera*; - *shatsa*; - *ipisa*; - *zadza*.
 - contemplate, - *fungisisa*. See 'consider.'
 contempt, *ninipiso* (4); *ninišo* (4); *dokhopadzo* (4); *ruzidzo* (6) (*chizidzo* (3)).
 - contend, - *rgwa*; - *pikidzana*.
 content, - be, - *tenda*; - *yonga*; - *fara*; - *wonera*.
 contented person, *muyongi* (1).
 contents, *zi ri mo* (i.e. (the things) which are in it).
 continual, - be, - *ita dotera*; - *rambirira*; - 'ramba' followed by present part. of princ. verb.

continually, *maruya ose*; *misi yose*; *pakare na pakare*.

- continue, - 'ramba' followed by the pres. participle.

— (do same thing repeatedly), - *sima*.

— (of rain or talking), - *dolera*.

contract, n., *rukama* (7); *sungano* (4).

— v., a disease, - *pindiwa*; - *nya-ngiwa*.

— (shrink), - *dzoka*; - *wonyana*.

— (of fruit), *boyera*.

- make a —, - *tenderana*.

- contradict, - *nyanyaidza*; - *ramba*;

- *pulingidza*; - *vulingidza*; - *pika*

kani; - *pungaidza*; - *kangaidza*;

- *kaidza*; - *kanganidza*.

contrary, - be, to one another, - *pesana*.

contrast, *ku sa fanana* (8); *ku sa enzana* (8); *ku siyana* (8).

- contribute (- give), - *kutsira*.

— (along with others), - *kutsirana*.

— (add), - *wedzera*.

contribution, *chikutsirano* (3).

- contrive, - *ita zano*; - *landa mano*.

- control oneself, - *gi dzora*; - *gi kunda*; - *gi misa*.

— v.t., - *kunda*; - *buidza*; - *bata*; - *misa*.

controversy, *rutaya* (6); *rukayi* (6). See 'dispute.'

convalescent, - be, - *naya*; - *pora*; - *tolova*.

— person, *dandabvu* (5); *dandadzi* (5).

convenient, - be, - *nakira*; - *ruramira*; - *fanira*.

- converse, - *bgereketana*; - *nyeperana*; - *lawulirana*; - *kurukurirana*.

conversion, *ku tendeyuka* (8); *ku pinduka* (8); *ku shanduka* (8).

- convert, - *tendeyudza*; - *pindusa*; - *shandura*.

converted, - be, - *tendeyuka*; - *pinduka*; - *shanduka*.

- convey, - *senga*; - *isa*; - *tuta*.

conveyance, *cho ku senga na'cho* (3); *cho ku famba na'cho* (3).

convicted, - be, - *batywa ne maka*.

- convince, - *phisa*.

convinced, - be, - *pha*; - *koreka*.

— of one's own inability, - *tsoya*.

convulsions, - have, - *batywa ne buka*; - *pfure shangu*; - *pfayuma*.

cook, n., *mubiki* (1).

— one who is quick at cooking, *rushatushatu* (6).

— v.t., - *bika*.

— a little for child or invalid, - *bvuwa*.

— over again, - *nyewura*.

— for first time in earthenware pot, - *pfurura*; - *tutumisa*.

cooked, - be, - *ibva*.

badly — (of vegetables), - *naya*; - *fuya*.

cooking vessel, *hali* (4).

- cool, - *podza*; - *tonodza*.

cool, - be, - *tonovera*; - become —, - *pora*.

coop (to carry fowls in), *dendere* (5), *seketi* (5).

— (house), *danga re huku*; *zumbu* (5).

- co-operate, - *batisana*; - *betserana*; - *yamurana*; - *kutsirana*; - *ita makutse*.

copper, *ndarira* (4 pl.).

— wire, *mundarira* (2); *rundarira* (6).

- copy (imitate), - *edzerera*; - *fanaidza*.

cord, *musungo* (2); *rgonzi* (6); *tambu* (4) (for.).

— for catching game, *nangandi* (4).

core, *moyo* (2).

cork, *chidziyiro* (3).

— v., - *dziyira*.

corn (in general), *ziyo* (3 pl.). See 'grain.'

Indian —, *mabargwe* (5 pl.).

Kaffir —, *mapfunde* (5 pl.).

pop —, *maputi* (5 pl.).

corn (bunion), *n(h)ono* (4).

corner, *mashonganirano* (5 pl.);

— (inside), *mupata* (2).

— (outside), *muwuyo* (2).

corner-stone, *bge ra mashonganirano*.

corpse, *mutumbu* (2); *chituna* (3); *chibumba* (3).

correct, - be, - *rungama*; - *rurama*; - *ya ndigo*.

— v.t., - *rungamisa*; - *ruramisa*; - *gadzira*.

- correct (- punish), - *raira*; - *ranga*; - *orora* (- *worora*).
- correspond, - *nyoverana*.
- corroborate, - *tsinira*; - *simbisa*.
- corrupt, v.t., - *shatsa*; - *ipisa*; - *yodza*.
- be —, - *shata*; - *ipa*; - *yora*.
- cost, - 'ldya,' followed by amount of money.
- n., *mali* (5 pl.), *mutengo* (2).
- cotton (thread), *harani* (4) (for.).
- cough, - *koshora* (- *kosora*).
- n., *gosoro* (5); *chikosoro* (3); *gosorgwa* (5) (*gosorgwa*) (5); *rukoshoro* (6) (*rukosoro*) (6).
- council, *ya-samukuru* (1 pl.); *makuru-kota* (5 pl.).
- (Church), *yakuru ye Kereke* (1 pl.).
- councillor (chief), *neyanje* (1).
- counsel, - *raira*; - *pa mano*.
- n., *zano* (5 sing.); *mano* (5 pl.).
- , take, - *rangana*.
- count, - *yerenga*; - *raya*.
- countenance, *chiso* (3); *pa meso* (9); *yuso* (7).
- (- allow), - *farira*; - *tendera*.
- countless, - be, - *sa ravyiwa*; - *sa yerengwa*.
- country, *nyika* (4).
- (open), *mapani* (5 pl.); *marenje* (5 pl.).
- (veld), *bundo* (5); *sango* (4) (*shango*) (4).
- couple, adj., 'viri' with class prefix.
- courage, *moyo* (2); *ku tsunga* (8); *tsungu* (4); *yumare* (7).
- , - take, - *tsunga moyo*; - *tsungirira*.
- courageous, - be, - *tsunga moyo*; - *sa thia*; - *sindimara*.
- man, *mare* (4); *tsungununu* (4).
- court, - *nyenga*; - *ruma*.
- n. (of chief), *ruyazhe* (6).
- courting, - go, - *tsetsa*; - *dzinge ndoye*.
- courtship, *ku rumana* (8).
- court-yard, *ruyazhe* (6); (division of kraal containing several huts), *mana* (5).
- cousin (child of elder maternal uncle), *sekurgwana* (4).
- cousin (child of older brothers or sisters of parents), *mukuru* (1).
- (child of paternal aunt), *muzukuru*.
- cousins whose mothers are sisters, *bganamai* (1).
- covenant, *sungano* (4); *yukama* (7).
- cover (with blanket, &c.), - *fukidza*; - *fukidzira*.
- (with a lid), - *funira*; - *kwidibira*; - *fudigira*; - *duhumidza*.
- the sky (as of clouds), - *tibikira*; - *tiyirira*.
- cover, n. (lid), *chifuniro* (3); *chikwidibidzo* (3).
- covering, *cho ku fuka* (3) (*zo ku fuka* (3 pl.)); *chisimiro* (3); *chafukwa* (3).
- covet, - *shumba*; - *chiya*; - *chochora*; - *sora*; - *ya no ruziso*; - *yemura*, - *ya no moyo*.
- everything, - *karatira*; - *ya ne chiyonera*; - *dongonyoka* (off food).
- covetousness, *rushumbo* (6); *ruchochoro* (6); *ruziso* (6); *chiyo* (4); *ruchiya* (6).
- cow, *mou* (4); — that has borne one calf, *shunga-mou* (4); *shungatsiru* (4). See 'heifer.'
- very old —, *dole* (5).
- with hanging horns, *ngwere* (4).
- without horns, *nzuma* (4).
- barren —, *ramba* (4).
- coward, *dera* (4); *bepu* (5); *mutshi* (1).
- cowardice, *yutera* (7), *rumepu* (6).
- cow-dung, *ndoye* (4); (dry —), *ndobga* (4).
- (manure), *mupfudze* (2).
- cow-hide, *debge re nombe* (5).
- crab, *gakanje* (5).
- crack, v.i., - *pamuka*; - *tsemuka*; - *bamuka*; - *paruka*; - *dedenya*.
- the ground (of growing plant), - *bandira*.
- (nuts), - *kacha*; - *taka*.
- , n., *mushwi* (2); *mutywanwa* (2).
- in hands or feet, *mana* (4).
- crackling sound, - eat with, - *duduna*; - *dudumira*.
- craftily, adv., *ne njere*; *na mano*.
- craftiness, *njere* (4 pl.); *mano* (5 pl.); *yunjenda* (7).

crafty person, *njenda* (4).
 cramps, *nyoka* (4). See 'gripes.'
 — (of infants), *ruzoka* (6).
 - have —, v., - *chanyawurgwa* (- *tsanyawurgwa*).
 crane, *mukwashi* (2) (*mukwasi* (2)); *hororo* (4). See 'bird.'
 cranium, *dehenya* (5).
 crash (of thunder), *mupande we mvura* (2).
 — v., - *putsa*; - *phanya*.
 - crave, - *yinga*; - *panga*; - *fa no moyo*; - *pungaira*; - *dokwaira*; - *dakarira*; - *daka-daka*; - *dongo-nyoka*.
 craving, n., for salt or condiments, *nomba* (4 pl.).
 — for beer, *rgwaraka* (6).
 — for tobacco, *havi* (4 pl.).
 - crawl (of children), - *avura*; - *kambaira*; - *nanaira*; - *pakanya*.
 — (of insects), - *pfakanya*; - *pfakanyika*; - *takanyika*.
 — out, - *tutunuka*.
 — stealthily, - *nyanga*.
 crazy, - be, - *penga*.
 - creak, - *rira*.
 cream, *ruyomba* (6); *mafuta* (5 pl.).
 - create, - *wonyanisa*; - *funyanisa*.
 - create, - *sika*; - *yumba*; - *ita*.
 creation, *ku sikiwa* (8); *ku sikwa* (8); *ku yumbiwa* (8); *ku iŋwa* (8).
 creator, *musiki* (1); *myumbi* (1); *muti* (1).
 creature, *musikiwa* (1); *myumbiwa* (1); *mutiwa* (1); *chiyumbŋa* (3).
 credit, - give, - *pa chikwereta* (for.).
 - take on —, - *kwereta* (for.); - *posa*.
 - creep (as snake), - *monereka*; - *monyoroka*.
 — in, - *senerera*.
 — (as plant), - *tandira*.
 — (as child or insect). See 'crawl.'
 — stealthily, - *nyanga*.
 creeper, *muti u no tandira*.
 crest (of feathers or hair), *bumu* (5).
 crestfallen, - be, - *nera*; - *nyara*; - *ŋoda*; - *ti maramanya*, - *ti bondokoto*.
 cricket (house), *chikumbŋe-muroyi* (3).
 — (eaten by natives), *gurgwe* (5); *chikumbŋe* (3).

cricket (large), *wishu-wishu* (5).
 crime, *maka* (4); *mosa* (4); *murando* (2).
 — (sin), *chiyi* (3); *rutadzo* (6).
 crimson, adj., *shaya*.
 —, - be, v., - *tsuka*.
 cripple, n., *chirema* (3).
 —d, - be, v., - *rema*; - *rema*.
 - croak (of frog), - *rira*; (of bull-frog), - *kuma*.
 crocodile, *ngwena* (4); *gargwe* (5); *gandwe* (5); *gambinga* (5).
 crooked, - be, - *kombama*; - *minama*.
 make —, - *kombama*.
 crop (after-), *goko* (5).
 — (of bird), *gurokuro* (5).
 cross, *chinjikano* (4); (cross stick or bar), *muchinjikwa* (2); *chichinjikiro* (3); *chaho* (3); *chihuli* (*chiholi*) (3).
 - cross, v., — a river, - *ambuka*.
 — a road or country, - *gura*; - *daliha*; - *dimbura*; - *chinjika*.
 — two objects, - *chinjikisa*.
 — arms, - *bungatira*; - *fungatira*; - *gumbatira*.
 — legs, - *koredzanya*; - *korekanya*; - *turikidza*.
 — one another on the way, - *pesana*.
 crossing of roads, n., *maradzano* (4 pl.).
 - cross-question, - *kotsa*.
 crossways, - cut, - *gura*.
 —, - go, - *chinjika*.
 crow, *gunguru* (5); *chikunguru-baya* (3); *mucherambi* (2).
 scare —, *ŋipeto-peto* (3 pl.).
 — v.i., - *rira*; - *kuma*; - *kukuridza*.
 crow-bar, *simbi* (4) (lit. iron).
 crowd, n., *yuzhinji* (7); *yuwandi* (7); *dumbu* (5); *rumbu* (6); *sumbu* (5); *manyongoviro* (5 pl.); *manyongoli* (5 pl.).
 — v.i., - *yunganira*; - *ita yuzhinji*; - *yumbirira*; - *yumbira*; - *pu-pira*.
 — (press one another), - *tsikirirana*; - *mbandidzirana*; - *dzinyirirana*; - *manikidzana*; - *shinyidzana*.
 crown, *hata* (4); *ngundu* (4).
 - crucially, - *royera pa chinjikano*.

- cruel, - be, - *ya no moyo mukukutu* ;
- *tsungarara* ; - *yangarara*.
- crumb, *chipefu* (3) ; *chimedu* (3) ;
fufu (5) ; *mupfupfumidzwa*
(2).
- crumble, v.t., - *pefura* ; - *mepfura* ;
v.i. (— to pieces), - *pepfuka* ;
- *mokoteka*.
- crumple, - *funyanisa* ; - *wonyanisa*.
- crumpled, - be, - *kokonyara*, - *wonyana*.
- crush, - *phanya* ; - *shwanya*.
- the soil in order to sow rice,
- *putsiwa*.
- crust, *goko* (5) ; *gweko* (5).
- crutch, *dondoro* (5).
- cry (weep), - *chema* ; - *rira*.
- very much, - *zhamba* ; - *zhamba-
tata* ; - *mbaya* ; - *wungudza* ;
- *yara*.
- loud, - *ridzemere*. See 'shout.'
- constantly (of infant), - *ndarazuka* ;
- *shshwaradzwa*.
- violently, - *nashuka* ; - *paruka*.
- and lose breath, - *ndangandira*.
- cucumber (wild), *nganganga* (5).
- cud, *dseyo* (5).
- culprit, *muchinyi* (2) ; *mutadzi* (2) ;
muvepi (2).
- cultivate (general term), - *rima*.
- (begin a garden), - *yunda*.
- (clear grass), - *seyura*.
- (make ridges), - *parura* and - *tsipira*.
- (break up clods), - *kuta*.
- (fallow ground), - *timba*.
- and sow at same time, - *bvukuta*.
- (clear old lands), - *chacha*.
- See 'sow' and 'weed.'
- cunning, - be, - *chenjera* ; - *ya ne
njere*.
- cup, *mbiya* (4) (i.e. small pot) ; *komi-
chi* (4) (for.).
- for drinking of calabash, *mukombe*
(2).
- cupping, *ku rumika* (8).
- curable, - be, - *bvira ku rapiwa*.
- curdle, - *ita mapundu* ; - *ita mage*.
- courds (of milk), *mage* (5 pl.) ; *ma-
shorongwa* (5 pl.) ; *mahonnya*
(5 pl.).
- cure, - *porisa* ; - *podza*.
- curl, - *ita motsi* ; - *wonyana* ;
- *monyana* ; - *funyana* ; - *petana*.
- current (of stream), *mgenda-chirimo*
(2) ; *muyero* (2) ; *pa mutsedu*
(9).
- course, - *tukisa* ; - *tuka*.
- curve, - *kombanisa* ; - *minamisa* ;
- *kondamisa*.
- cushion (pillow), *mitsago* (2) (i.e.
head-rest) ; *mitsamiro* (2).
- custody, - give in, - *ronza*.
- custom, *mutopo* (2) ; *tsika* (4) ;
mugarire (2).
- customer (buyer), *mutengi* (1).
- out (general word), - *cheka*.
- with axe, - *tema*.
- through, - *gura* ; - *dimura* ; - *di-
mbura* ; - *kwehura* ; - *nyetura*.
- lengthwise, - *pazura* ; - *kwazura* ;
- *pamura* ; - *tsemura*.
- out larger, - *chekera* ; - *cheche-
gudza* ; - *checheyura* ; - *dende-
nura* ; - *tendenura* ; - *chechenedza*.
- open, - *chenyura*.
- (split off), - *tsemura* ; - *pfemura* ;
- *bamura*.
- in halves, - *gura na pakati*.
- up (small), - *chekanya* ; - *gura-
nya* ; - *cheka-cheka* ; - *paza* ;
- *gura-gura* ; - *sazanya*.
- cloth or bark, - *yenda*.
- the throat, - *shizha* (- *shinzha*).
- off a small piece, - *nyadura* ;
- *nyamura*. See 'remove.'
- in strips, - *vedzenga*.
- out (as of rotten place), - *sende-
nudza*.
- (of a splinter or grass), - *sema*.
- off branches, - *rangura*.
- off branches, and place round
stem, - *sanira*.
- down brushwood, - *pemena* ; - *pu-
nura* ; - *kuhuna*.
- down to the ground, - *rigura* ;
- *mushura*.
- grass, - *mgita*.
- off joint, - *rungura*.
- cutting, *chitemga* (3) ; *chigurgwa*
(3).
- cyclone, *dutu guru* (5) ; *chamupupuli*
(3) (whirlwind).

D

dagger, *munondo* (2).
 daily, adv., *mazuya ose*; *misu yose*.
 — adj., 'mazuya ose,' preceded by gen. part. of govern. noun, e.g. *dally work, mubato wa mazuya ose*.
 dainty, *childyayarimi* (3); *chi no tapira* (3); *chi no zipa* (3).
 dale, *mupata* (2).
 dam, *driya* (5).
 - damage, - *chinya*; - *chinyidza*; - *chinyira*; — ed., - *be*, - *chinyika*.
 — n., *chinyiko* (3); *nyamadzi* (4); *nyangadzo* (4).
 - damn, - *gura*; - *tonga*.
 damp, n., *mğando* (2); *muniyawi* (2).
 — adj., *nyoro*.
 - be —, - *nyoroya*, - *ya no mutsaya*.
 dance (native, with drum), *chimbo* (3).
 — v., - *dzana*; - *tamba*.
 — for joy, - *pembera*; - *bundukuta*; - *bvukura*.
 dancer, *mudzani* (1); (beggar —), *mupemi* (1).
 dancing for evil spirit 'jugwa,' *mande* (4);
 — (for payment), *bema* (5).
 dandy, *muduni* (1); *musasayari* (1).
 danger, *njodzi* (4); *rufu* (6) (i.e. death).
 — from which one has escaped, *bosho* (5).
 dangerous, - *be*, - *ya no rufu*; - *ya ne njodzi*.
 - dangle, - *ngekaira*.
 daring, - *be*, - *tsunga*; - *sa thia*.
 dark, adj., *tema*, with class prefix; *nema* (4 cl.); *dema* (5 cl.).
 —, - *be*, v., - *siba*; - *ya ne rima*; - *tsetera*.
 — and lowering (of clouds), - *fithiuka*; - *fiduka*.
 - darken, - *sibisa*; - *ita rima*.
 darkness, *rima* (5); *ku siba* (8); intense —, *zarima* (5).
 darling, *mudiwa* (1); *mudikanwa* (1).

- dash away, - *sundidzira ne simba*; - *pumura* (- *pumurira*).
 date (time), *musi* (2); *nguya* (4); *zuya* (5).
 daughter, *mğanasikhana* (1).
 — of a father, *mukunda* (1).
 — of a chief, *yamoyo* (1).
 — in-law, *mukadzi wo mğana* (1).
 - dawdle, - *nonoka*.
 - dawn, - *tsuka yutonga*.
 — of day, *mambakwedza* (5 pl.) *yutonga* (7).
 day, *zuya* (5); *musi* (2).
 — in commemoration of some calamity, *musi muyi* (2).
 — (eighth) (rest day of Yakaranga), *rusere* (6).
 same —, *musi we hare*.
 — before yesterday, *zuroliya* (*zhuroliya*).
 day-break, *mambakwedza* (5 pl.). See 'dawn.'
 day by day, *zuya rimge ne rimge*.
 day-light, *masikati* (5 pl.).
 it is —, *kwa edza*.
 - dazzle, - *teya meso*; - *toşora*; - *bvuta meso*; - *baya meso*.
 dead (deceased), *wa ka fa*. See 'deceased.'
 deadly, - *be*, - *yuraya*.
 deaf person, *matsi* (4); *chiyule-zheye* (3).
 deaf-mute, *mbeyeve* (4).
 - deal out, - *govera*. See 'divide.'
 dear, - *be* (- *be beloved*), - *diwa*; - *dikanwa*.
 — (costly), - *kosha*; - *lida mali mazhinji*; - *dura* (for).
 dear me! interj., *nandi! nandi wei! oi wei! yedu yehama! yehama! hai wa! hinga!*
 death, *rufu* (6); *ku fa* (8).
 death-rattle, *dziya yafi* (5); *rambga* (5).
 debt, *maka* (4); *moşa* (4); *ngaya* (5).
 - make —, - *tora mangaya*; - *ita chikwerete*; - *posa* (- *posha*).
 - pay —, - *ripa mangaya*; - *ripa maka*.

debtor, *u ne maha*; *u ne moša*; *u no murandu*; *u ne ngaya*.

- decay, - *vora*.

- de cease, - *fa*; - *parara*.

deceased, n., *wa ka fa* (1); *mupebvu* (1); *mushakabvu* (1).

deceit, *nyengedzero* (4); *ku nyengera* (8); *nema* (4 pl.).

gross —, *ziveve* (5); *veve* (4); *yumvumve* (7).

- deceive, - *nyengera*; - *nyengedzera* (- *nyengeredza*); - *veva*; - *chengedza* (- *chengedzera*); - *chengera*; - *varanisa*.

deceiver, *munyengeri* (1); *munyengedzeri* (1); *zinyange* (5); *rumvumve* (6).

decent, - *be* (proper), - *fanira*; - *kwa dzana*.

- decide a case, - *gura maha*; - *razura*; - *tema chireyo*.

decision, *shoko ro ku pereredza*; *mereredzo* (4).

- declare, - *reva kwazo*; - *reva pa chena*.

- decline, - *ramba*.

- decorate, - *natsa*; - *shongedza*.

— excessively, - *biya*.

— oneself, - *shonga*.

decoration, *yukomba* (7); *zishongo* (3 pl.).

decrease (in bulk), - *derera*; - *serera*; - *ya shoma*; - *shomapara*; — in size, - *ninipa*; - *dokopa*.

— v.t., - *tapudza*; - *shumura*; - *ninipisa*.

- dedicate, - *shanangurira*.

- deduct, - *tapudza*; - *shumura*.

deed, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).

in very — ! *zokwadi-kwadi*.

deep, - *be*, - *dzika*.

- deepen, - *dzikisa*.

deer, *muka* (4).

- defeat, - *kunda*; - *kurira*.

- defend, - *rgwira*.

- defer, - *tuna*; - *tunidzira*; - *tuniridza*.

deficient, - *be*, - *sa ringana*; - *sa kwana*; - *taira*.

- defile, - *gibisa*; - *shatsa*; - *ipisa*.

- define, - *ita mugano*; - *ganura*.

— (explain), - *dudzira*; - *paridza*

deformed, - *be*, - *remara*.

— person, *chivema* (3).

deformity, *yurema* (7).

- defraud, - *nyengera*. See 'deceive.'

- degenerate, - *ipika*; - *shatika*.

- degrade, - *ninipisa*; - *dokopadza*.

degree (measure), *chitanda* (3);

chitando (3); *chitandiro* (3).

Deity, *Mudzimu* (1).

dejected, - *be*, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*; - *ya ne shungu*; - *nyu*.

- delay, v.i., - *nonoka*; - *garisa*.

— v.t., - *nonosa*; - *garisa*; - *yetsa*;

- *pingaidza* (- *pinganidza*).

— v.i. (of rains), - *sungwa minyato*; - *tarama*.

delegate, *mutumga* (1).

- deliberate, - *funga*; - *tanda xano*.

delicacy, *chi no tapira*; *chi no ripa*.

See 'dainty.'

delicious, - *be*, - *tapira*; - *zipira*.

- delight, v.i., - *farira*.

delight, n., *mufaro* (2).

delirious, - *be*, - *reva-reva*; - *popotedsa*; - *vumuka*; - *vamuka*.

- deliver, - *rgwira*; - *ponesa*; - *sunungura*; - *nunura*.

— (redeem), - *dzikunura* (- *dzikinura*).

— up (hand over), - *zuzuzidza*; - *zuzukidza*.

deliverance, *dzikunuro* (4); *sununguro* (4).

deliverer, *murgwiri* (1); *muponesi* (1); *musununguri* (1).

deluge, *mvura zhinji*.

- delve, - *chera*; - *dzikisa*.

- demand, - *reva ne simba*.

- demolish, - *paradza*; - *pedza*; - *putsa*.

— (pull down), - *koromora*; - *poromora*.

demon, *mudemona* (1 for.); *mgeya wa ka ipa*.

den (of wild animal), *ngimba* (4).

- denote (- say), - *ti*.

dense, - *be* (of trees), - *batana*; - *tsinana*.

dentition, *ku¹ mera meno* (8); *ku tenga meno* (8).

- deny, - *ramba*; - *randura*.

— guilt, - *satuka*; - *garuka*.

one who denies guilt, *satu* (4).

- deny oneself, - *zi nyima*; - *zi dzora*; — *zi rambisa*.
 - depart, - *bua*; - *inda*; - *famba* (shift), - *tama*; - *siya*.
 - depend, - *tarira*; - *ringira*; - *cheke-tera*.
 - deplore, - *chema*; - *rgwadzira moyo*.
 depressed, - *be*, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*; - *nuya*; - *remergwa*.
 - deprive, - *torera*; - *pamba*; - *shazhira*.
 — *d*, - *be*, - *torergwa*; - *pambirgwa*.
 —, utterly, - *ldyiwa mazonde*; - *ldya mupfuko*; - *ldyiwa mumbiri*.
 one who is —, *muldyiwa* (1).
 depth, *ku dzika* (8); *yudziko* (7).
 - derange, - *bvanyangura*; - *bvo-nyongedza*.
 - deride, - *seka*.
 - derive, - *tora*; - *piwa* (- *puwa*) (i.e. to be given).
 - descend, - *buruka*; - *pfzoka*; - *dzira*; - *dzaka*.
 descendant, *mğana* (i.e. child); *wo rudzi rgwa* (i.e. of the tribe of).
 descent, *maburustiro* (5 pl.). See 'slope'.
 - describe (explain), - *yudza kwago*; - *paridza*; - *dudzira*; - *tadzaisira*.
 - desecrate, - *pungunura*; - *sawura*.
 — the things (or wife) of the dead before being doctored, - *punjira*.
 desert, *chiwunde* (3); *renje* (5).
 — v.i. (flee), - *tiza*.
 — (betray), - *panduka*; - *pandukira*.
 deserted dwelling, *dongo* (5); *da-ngwasa* (5).
 — lands, *makura* (5 pl.).
 - deserve, - *fanirgwa*.
 - design, - *nyora*; - *tara*.
 - desire, - *chemera*; - *yinga*; - *shuya*; - *pungaira*; - *yayaira*; - *da*; - *ya no moyo*.
 — food, - *panga*; - *ya ne nomba*. See 'crave'.
 desolate, - *be*, v.i., - *rashiwa*; - *siyiwa*.
 — v.t., - *paradza*.
 - despatch (- send), - *tuma*; - *tumira*; — (- kill), - *baya*; - *yuraya*; - *kowo-yedza*.

desperate, - *be*, - *pera moyo*.
 - despise, - *ninipisa*; - *ninisa*; - *do-koša*; - *dokopadza*; - *shopora*; - *mura*; - *gidza*; - *shona*.
 - *be* — *d*, - *ya no rushayashaya*.
 — *d* person, *mulereveni* (1).
 destination, *pa no indiya*; *chigoni* (3).
 destitute, - *be*, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *bomara*; - *bomergwa*.
 — of food, - *suyura*.
 destroy, - *paradza*; - *pedza*; - *putsa*; - *shakadza*.
 — suddenly, - *ti nyopa*.
 — mercilessly, - *rura*.
 — a garden, - *pfudza*.
 destroyer, *muise* (1), *muparadzi* (1).
 - detail (in speaking), - *paridza*; - *vaya*.
 - detain, - *nonosa*.
 - detest, - *wana*; - *yona*; - *bata*.
 determined person, *musimiki* (1).
 - detest, - *sema*. See 'abhor'.
 - devastate, - *paradza*; - *pedza chose*.
 - develop (- grow), - *kura*.
 - deviate, - *tsawuka*.
 device, *zano* (5); *mano* (5 pl.).
 — to ensnare another, *neya* (4).
 Devil, *Satane* (1) (for.); *Diabolose* (1) (for.); *mudemona* (1) (for.); *mğeya wa ka ipa*.
 - devise, - *funga mano*; - *tanda zano*.
 devoid, - *be*, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *ya ku si na*.
 - devote (give), - *pa*.
 - devour, - *ldya*; - *pedza*; - *rura*.
 — as beast of prey, - *teza*.
 dew, *yeta* (5); *doya* (5); *mğando* (2).
 dexterous, - *be*, - *chenjera*.
 dialect, *rulimi* (6).
 diaphragm, *ruzarira* (6).
 diarrhoea, - *have*, - *pazha*; - *wa muyura*; - *derudza*; - *budisa*.
 dice, *hakata* (4 pl.).
 - consult —, - *shopera hakata*.
 - throw —, - *yuka hakata*.
 - die, - *fa*; - *parara*; - *inda zakwe*; - *pindana ne zakwe*; - *noya*.
 — (be dying), - *varadza*; - *shangaya*; - *tandadza*; - *pfayuma*.
 — (- be called or taken away), - *danwa*; - *torgwa*.

- die in great numbers, - *ita murarira* ;
- *ita murakatira*.
- differ from one another, - *sa fanana* ;
- *sa enzana* ; - *siyana* ; - *pesana*.
different, 'mge' with plur. class
prefix.
difficult, - *be*, - *rema* ; - *gozha* ; - *sa*
bvira ; - *tana* ; - *karadza*.
- dig a hole, - *chera* ; - *tisa* ; - *pana*
pasi.
— out beans, - *ambura*.
— out loose soil, - *yashura*.
— hard ground, - *panda*.
— a hole in dry ground, - *pagadura*.
— a garden, - *rima* ; - *timba*.
- digest, - *yotesa* ; - *kanya*.
dignity, *yukuru* (7).
dilapidated, - *be*, - *putsika* (- *be*
broken) ; - *shakara* (- *be* old).
diligent, - *be*, - *sa ya no yusimbe*.
— person in garden work, *mbirimi*
(4).
- dilute, - *vengeanisa ne mvura* ;
- *diridzanya*.
dim, - *be*, - *šiba* ; - *sa yonekwa*
kwazo.
— (see dimly), - *yonera madzerere*.
dimension, *yukuru* (7) ; *yupami* (7).
- diminish, - *tapudzisa* ; - *shumura*.
dimple, *binde* (5).
dingy, - *be*, - *šiba*.
dining-room, *imba yo ku ldyira*.
dinner, *dina* (4), (for).
- dip (- draw water), - *chera* ; - *teka*.
— out a little from top, - *nyesura* ;
- *nyemura*.
— into water, - *nyika* ; - *nyudza* ;
- *nyakidza*.
— hand into sticky substance, - *tsura*.
— carefully, - *nyenga*.
— with gurgling sound, - *dudumbgidza*.
— porridge into relish, - *sevesa*.
- direct (tell), - *raira* ; - *yudza* ; - *kuru*
dzira.
— (show), - *ratidza* ; - *taridza*.
— go —, - *zurama*.
direction, *divi* (5).
in — of, *ku* ; *kuna* ; *pa* ; *pana*.
See 'to.'
directly, adv., *ikogino* ; *zino-zino*.
dirt, *marara* (5 pl.) ; *šina* (4) ;
mašina (5 pl.).

dirt of face, *mabori* (5 pl.).
dirtiness, *yufende* (7).
dirty, - *be*, - *šiba* ; - *ya ne šina* ;
- *katara*.
— person, *fende* (4).
dirt-heap, *durunuru* (5) ; *duiro* (5).
- disagree, - *pesana* ; - *sa wana*.
- disappear, - *nyangalika* ; - *nyere*-
reka ; - *nyerenyendeka* ; - *nya*-
ngara.
— into, - *nyenguka*.
— by fleeing, - *nyeruka* ; - *werera*.
- disappoint, - *rgwadza moyo* ; - *nedza*
moyo ; - *dzimbira moyo* ; - *dzi*-
ndira moyo ; - *yodza moyo* ;
- *gumura moyo*.
— ed, - *be*, - *nera* ; - *šaya* ; - *šoya*.
- disapprove, - *sa tenda* ; - *ramba*.
- disarrange, - *buanganyura* ; - *bua*-
nyangura ; - *buonyongedza*.
disaster, *rukono* (6) ; *rushambga* (6) ;
rupfupfuneko (6) ; *namo* (4) ;
ruliza (6).
- discern, - *yona*. See 'see.'
- discharge (- do), - *ita* ; - *bata*.
— a gun, - *dinura* (- *tinura*) ; - *fura* ;
- *ridza*.
— from prison, - *budisa* ; - *sunu*-
ngura ; - *regedza*.
— from work, - *kumura*.
disciple, *mudzidzisiwa* (1) ; *mudzidzi*
(1) ; *mudzidziswa* (1).
- disclose, - *budisa pa chena* ; - *ziyu*-
rura.
discontented, - *be*, - *sa tenda* ; - *nyu*-
nyuta ; - *sa farira* ; - *karara*.
discord, *ku pesana* (8) ; *ku rgwa*
(8).
- discourage, - *pedza moyo* ; - *lāya*
moyo.
— ed, - *be*, - *rasha moyo* ; - *pedziwa*
moyo ; - *lāyiwa moyo*.
- discover, - *wana* ; - *yona* ; - *bozha* ;
- *tumba* (- *tomba*) ; - *nunga* (no-
nga) ; - *yonyorora*.
— an unknown thing, - *ita ruso* ;
- *wana*.
discovery (object discovered), *chiwa*-
niko (3) ; *chiwanikwa* (3).
discretion, *njere* (4) ; *ku gura*
kwo moyo (i.e. judgment of
heart).

- discuss, - nyeperana; - tawuri-rana; - rangana; - bğereketana; - paridzana.
- disease, yurgwere (7); hosha (4); yukosha (7); yutenda (7); kuvwara (8); maberayera (5); mabesa (5).
- all kinds of —, nenda (4 pl.); matenda (5 pl.); margwadzi (5 pl.).
- malignant —, ngwere (4).
- wasting —, membğana (4).
- skin —, mizi (4 pl.).
- of animals, ngonda (4).
- infectious cattle —, murenganyama (2). See 'epidemic.'
- disengage from work, - sunnungura; - kumura.
- disentangle, - pfumvunura (pfumvunura); - pfudunura; - pfudzunura; - tsudunura.
- by shaking, - zaxamura.
- disgrace, - ninipisa; - dokopadza.
- disguise, - zi shandura (- change oneself); - yanza (- hide oneself).
- disgusted, - be, with, - sema; - tsamğa; - nenga.
- disgusting, - be, - sisimisa moyo.
- dish, ndiro (4); chikotoro (3) (for.).
- up, - pakura; - kwakura.
- out, - nyemura.
- dishearten, see 'discourage.'
- dishonest, - be, - nyengera; - nyengedzera. See 'deceive.'
- (to steal), - ba.
- disincline, - zezisa.
- ed, - be, - zezisa; - zengulira.
- dislike, - sa da; - vengisa; - nenga; - ramba; - sema.
- dislocate, - nefuka.
- ed, - be, - shodoka; - shonyoka; - ninguka; - rungumuka.
- dismiss from work, - kumura.
- from school, &c., - budisa.
- dismount, - buruka; - dzaka; - pfozoka; - dzira.
- disobedient, - be, - sa terera; - sa nzgwa; - hunguka; - wungumara, - dalishwe numbi.
- disobedience, hunzi (4); yuhunzi (7); yungonono (7);

- disorder, - put into —, - bvonyongedza; - bvonyongora; - vengana (mix up).
- dispensary, imba ye mishonga (i.e. house of medicines).
- disperse, v.i., - pararira; - parana; - tarangana; - tekeshera.
- v.t., - paradzira; - taranzanya.
- (of soil), - pambadzira; - pakasha; - pfunyangura; - pfunyangura.
- display, - yonasa; - taridza; - rati-dza.
- displease, - sa fadza; - tsamğisa; - nyangadza; - nyangara.
- disposition, moyo (2).
- dispute (- fight for), - rgwira. See 'quarrel.'
- disregard, - zidza; - nyenyeredza; - pungaira.
- others, - tusaira.
- disreputable, - be, - ipa; - sodesa; - nyadza; - zi reza.
- condition, yumvumeyo (7).
- disrespect, - sa kudza; - dada; - dadira; - mura; - sawura.
- ful, - be, - sawuka; - yimba; - yirima (- yirimirira); - razuka.
- dissatisfied, - be, - sa tenda; - nyunyu; - tsutsumğa; - rurumğa; - karara; - popota; - koma.
- dissolve, v.i., - nyongovera; - nyakatika; - nyorododeka; - nyawuka.
- v.t., - nyongoyedza; - nyakatidza; - nyorododedza; - nyawusa.
- ed, - be, - nyakatira.
- dissuade, - kweza; - dzora; - kazira; - pima; - pimirira.
- from marrying, - ita sere.
- distance, nambo (4); ruweya (6).
- , long, runambo (6); ku refu (9).
- , short, chinambo (3); pa fupi (9).
- distant, kure; kure-kure (very far).
- distemper, ndali (4); zowera (5).
- distended, - be, - zimba; - kuta; - futa; - ti nde nde nde.
- distinct (alone), oga; (one by one), - mge, - mge.
- , - be, - pfumba; - ita kwazo (e.g. be distinct in speaking, - reya kwazo).
- distinctly, kwazo; - see —, - yonisisa.

- distinguish, - *shara* ; - *shanangura*.
 - distract, - *fungidzira chimŋe* ; - *pe ngisa* ; - *penza*.
 —ed, - be, - *funga chimŋe*.
 — by grief, - *pungaira*.
 distress, *namo* (4) ; *dambudzo* (5) ; *yurombo* (7) ; *ku chema* (8).
 - distribute, - *goya* ; - *goyera*. See *divide*.
 distributor, *mugoveri* (1) ; *mukoya-nisi* (1).
 district, *nyika* (4).
 - distrust, - *sa tenda* ; - *nyunyuta*.
 - disturb (- trouble), - *tambudza* ; - *nyangadza* ; - *kanganisa* ; - *pesaisa* ; - *neisa*.
 - disturb water, - *bvongodza*.
 —ed, - be, by noise, - *punga* ; - *pe chiya* ; - *pwawudza*.
 disturbance (noise), *bopoto* (5) ; *ruzha* (6).
 ditch, *rukoya* (6) ; *mugero* (2) (aque-duct).
 - dive, - *nyura* ; - *nyuya*.
 - divert, - *tsawusa*.
 - divide, - *hamura* ; - *ganura* ; - *gura* ; - *koya* ; - *pambura*. See 'distribute.'
 - divide amongst, - *koyaisa* ; - *koya-nisa* ; - *ringanisa*.
 — from one another, - *rayura* ; - *pambazura* ; - *sambazura*.
 — into pieces, - *garanya* ; - *chekanya*. See 'cut.'
 — beer, - *pima doro*.
 —ed, - be, - *paradzana* ; - *pesana* ; - *sa wana*.
 divider, *mugoveri* (1).
 divine, *Mudzimu* with gen. part. of governing noun.
 divinity, *yu-Mudzimu* (7).
 division (boundary), *mugano* (2) ; *gayu* (5).
 — (piece), *guranyo* (4) ; *mugoye* (2) ; *chikamu* (3) ; *ganurgwa* (4).
 — in garden, *ndima* (4). This word is also used for 'verse,' i.e. division of a chapter or hymn.
 - divorce, - *rambana* ; - *rashana*.
 dizziness, *dzungu* (4 pl.).
 dizzy, - be, - *nzŋwa dzungu* ; - *bathwa ne dzungu* ; - *dzungurgwa*.

dizzy, - make, - *dzungura*.
 - do, - *ita* ; - *bata*.
 — just in time, - *teydzera*.
 — on purpose, - *ita mayune* ; - *ita bŋoni*.
 — in unison, - *ita mawa*.
 — in quick succession, - *ita mutute* ; - *ita chingaya-ngaya* ; - *ita mudove* ; - *ita mukata-mukata*.
 — quickly and badly, - *ita mvinya-mvinya*.
 — badly, - *ita za ka ipa* ; - *siyira* ; - *siyirira*.
 — thus (or so), - *dero* ; - *daro* ; - *dai* ; - *dai on* ; - *deya* with the infinitive.
 — together (as in stamping), - *dzidzana*.
 — an improper thing, - *pata*.
 — reluctantly, - *kaza* ; - *nyongoroka*.
 — in a wrong way, - *lega* ; - *isa*.
 — abundantly, - *wanza*.
 — again, - *pama* ; - *pamidza*.
 — regularly, at right time, - *ita mashonga*.
 — carefully, expressed by 'natso' (or 'nyatso') before verb root.
 — in a different way, - *piningura*.
 — well and abundantly, - *zazambura*.
 — in turn, - *rayana*.
 doctor, *nanga* (4) ; *yachiremba* (1) ; *dokotera* (4) (for.).
 doctrine, *dzidzo* (4) ; *ku dzidza* (8).
 - dodge (with head), - *reya* ; (with body), - *tsedukira* ; - *renga*.
 doer, *muti* (1).
 dog, *mbga* (4).
 male —, *gono* (5) ; *hono* (4).
 female —, *mbgakadzi* (4).
 wild —, *mumi* (4) ; *dumi* (4).
 large male —, *gondoya* (5).
 small —, *chigawo* (3).
 mad —, *chigevenga* (3).
 domestic animals, *zipfuwo* (pl. of *chipfuwo* (3)).
 dominion, *vushe* (7) ; *simba* (5).
 donation, *chipo* (3).
 done, - be, - *ibva* ; - *pera* ; - *tiya*.
 not —, - *sa ibva* ; - *fuya*.
 — in this way, - *wangwo* ; - *wergwo*.
 doomed, - be, - *guririgwa rufu*.
 door (— way), *mukoya* (2) ; small back —, *mindirira* (4).

door (sash), *goni* (5).
 — (of reeds), *sasa* (5).
 — sill, *chikumbaridzo* (3).
 — to cattle kraal or village, *suvo* (5); *musuvo* (2).
 dot, *shanga* (4); *chiyaabga* (3); (full stop), *chimiro* (3).
 double, - be, - *ita mbiri*.
 - fold —, - *ita meto mbiri*.
 doublefaced, - be, - *ita mutendareyi*; - *ya na manzwgi maviri*.
 - doubt, - *nyunyuta*; - *tsutsumga*; - *rurumga*.
 — (indecision), *jiwa-chiwa* (5).
 doubtless! *gokwadi!* *ziro kwazo!*
 dough, *mukanyiro* (2).
 dove (turtle), *njiya* (4); (veld —), *hangaiya* (4).
 bush —, *yukutiya* (5); *metura* (4).
 — (green pigeon), *huliti* (4).
 small —, with long tail, *nzembe* (4); *dzembe* (4).
 down, adv., *pasi*; *nyasi*; *zasi*; *pa nyasi*; *pa zasi*.
 — n. (soft feathers), *mambaya* (5 pl.); *guse* (5).
 downcast, - be, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*; - *ita ruhurududu*.
 downhearted, - be, - *nyu*; - *rembga*; - *shaya*.
 downright, adv., *kwazo*; *kwago-kwazo*.
 - doze, - *kotsira*; - *tsimgaira* (*tsu-mgaira*); - *yezera* (- *yezereka*).
 dozen, *gumi ne mbiri* (*maviri*, *miyiri*, &c.).
 draft horse, *biza ro ku kweya ngoro*.
 — ox, *nombe yo ku kweya ngoro*.
 - drag, - *kweya*; - *kweyera*; - *kakata*.
 — about on the ground, - *zuzuta*; - *zuzurudza*.
 — with noise, - *gugurudza*; - *kwe-kweredza*; - *weweredza*.
 — fishes, - *kukudza*.
 — to and fro, - *vuurudza*.
 — out of hole, - *zuva*.
 dragon-fly, *mukonikoni* (2).
 — drain, - *mimina*; - *surudza*; - *kuna*.
 — gradually, - *bomesa*.
 — n., *rukoya* (6); *mugero* (2); *mukurehure* (2).

drake, *gukurume re sekwe*.
 - drape, - *fukidza*; - *shongedza*.
 draught, *chinwo* (3); *chinwiwa* (3) (*chinwiwe* (3)).
 - draw (- pull), - *kakata*; - *kweya*.
 — towards one, - *kweza*; - *weza*.
 — aside, - *pengura*.
 — a tooth, - *gura*.
 — water, - *chera*; - *teka*.
 — a picture or line, - *nyora*; - *tara*; - *ita chifananidzo*.
 — up stomach, - *fenga*.
 — in legs, - *gonya*; - *funyisa*.
 — back, - *kweyera sule*.
 — aside quickly, - *weshura*.
 — up, - *soza*.
 — up milk (of cow), - *tulikira*.
 — a bow, - *kunga*; - *tipura*.
 — together, - *kunga*.
 drawback, *chimomu* (3).
 drawn together, - be, - *kokonyara*.
 - dread, - *itha*; - *karuka*; - *vunduka*.
 dreadful, - be, - *itha*; - *karudza*; - *vundusa*.
 - dream, - *rota hope*; - *rota*.
 — n., *hope* (4 pl.); *chiroto* (3); *murolero* (2).
 dreamy, - be, - *ya ne gope*.
 dregs (of beer), *masese* (5 pl.); *weta* (4).
 - drench (- wet), - *nyoroyesa*; (- give water), - *nwisa*.
 — (- water plants), - *diridza*.
 — (- steep in water), - *nyika*; - *nyudza*.
 — ed, - be, - *nyoroya*; - *niwa* (with rain); - *nyorogiwa*; - *nyayama*; - *takashiwa*; - *toyozwiwa*; - *pu-pungwa*; - *poponorgwa*; - *pu-rgwa*; - *shashangiwa*.
 - dress oneself, - *fuka*; - *pfeka*; - *simira*.
 — in fine clothes, - *shonga*.
 — v.t., - *fukidza*; - *pfekedza*; - *simidza*.
 — hair or beard, - *petura*.
 — scantily, - *ita shuku*.
 — n., *hazu* (4); *zo ku fuka* (3 pl.); *zisimiro* (3 pl.); *roko* (4) (for.).
 - dribble (of a child), - *ya na masiriri*.
 drift, *zambuko* (5).

drift-wood (rubbish), *makotorodzi* (5 pl.); *makukurudzi* (5 pl.).
 - drink, - *nwa*; - *mga*.
 - from hands, - *kapa*.
 - fast and much, - *bapaira*; - *nwaira*.
 - noisily, - *gwakwaira*.
 - at a river by lying down, - *naira*.
 - by lapping, - *nanga*; - *kaga*.
 - something to drink, *chinwa* (3).
 drinking vessel, *cho ku nwira* (3); *chinwiro* (3); *mukombe* (2).
 - water, *mwura yo ku nwa*.
 - place, *chinwo* (3).
 - drive (a wagon), - *chaira* (for.); - *fambisa*.
 - cattle, - *tina*; - *sunda*; - *sundira*.
 - away, - *dzinga*; - *nina*; - *tizira*; - *tizirira*; - *pfusa*; - *tata*; - *dina*; - *vuruvunyisa*.
 - out, - *budisa*.
 - into, - *tenera*; - *pinza*.
 - away wild beasts, - *soverera*.
 - away flies or locusts, - *nina*; - *soa*.
 - away every one, - *kurumura*.
 - on, - *nangaidza*; - *nanyaidza*.
 driver (of wagon), *muchairi* (1) (for.).
 - drizzle, - *pfira-pfira*; - *pfuna-pfuna*.
 drone, *donganyuchi* (5).
 - droop, - *nyu*.
 - (- be withered), - *saya*.
 - drop, - *dona*; (leak), - *vinza*; - *punzika*.
 - (fall), - *wira pasi*; - *mbgera*.
 - (- let fall), - *mgedza*; - *wisa*.
 - (of liquids), - *donedza*.
 - (of fruit), v., - *rudzanisa*.
 - n., *donedza* (5); *donwe* (5); *done* (5); *donedzwa* (5).
 dropsy, *rukandgwe* (6).
 drought, *ku shaiwa mwura* (8); *ku woma* (8).
 drove (of cattle), *boka* (5).
 large —, *dambi* (5).
 - drown, - *bitirirwa ne mwura*. See 'choke.'
 drowsy, - be, - *ya ne hope*. See 'doze.'
 - drudge, v., - *shereketa*.
 - n., *shangazhiki* (4).

drug, *mushonga* (2); (anæsthetic), *rufimbi* (6); *bganga* (7).
 - v.t., - *dira rufimbi*; - *dira-bganga*.
 drum (native), *ngoma* (4); *dumba* (5).
 hand —, *gandira* (5).
 large —, *mutanda* (2).
 drunk, - be, - *bathwa* (ne doro); - *varadza*.
 - en man, *mubathwi* (1).
 drunkard, *mukariri we doro* (1); *duiro* (5).
 dry, - be, - *woma*. See 'wither.'
 quite —, - be, - *gwangura*; - *shhwa-huka*; - *kwasharara*.
 - be half —, - *sota*; - *dawuka*; - *ya no mutsaya*; - *saya*.
 - v.t., - *womisa*; put out to dry, - *nika*.
 - up, *pha*; (of a cow), - *suka*.
 - at fire, - *sasika* (- *shashika*).
 - bread or fruit, *zigwegwedo* (3 pl.) (i.e. anything hard).
 drying line (or anything on which to put out things to dry), *nikiro* (4).
 duck, *sekwe* (5).
 duiker, *membe* (4); young —, *gurukuru* (5).
 dull, - be, - *ya no musoro mukukulu*; - *ya no musoro wa ka woma*; - *ya no musoro u ne mwura*.
 - person, *benzi* (5); *dununu* (5); *chirema* (3).
 dullness, *vutununu* (7); *vupenzi* (7).
 dumb, - be, - *sa bgereketa*.
 - person, *mbeyeye* (4).
 dumbfounded, - be, - *ldya haika*.
 dunce, *benzi* (5). See 'dull person.'
 dung, *matuzi* (5 pl.).
 - of cattle, *ndoye* (4).
 - of goats, *noko* (4); *manoko* (5 pl.).
 - of fowls, *matoto* (5 pl.).
 - (dry cow-dung), *ndobga*.
 - (manure), *mupfudze* (2).
 durable, - be, - *bata*; - *simba*.
 during, prep., *mu*; *na*; *pa*.
 dusk (evening), *ruvunza yaeni* (6); *ku siba* (8).
 - dust, v., - *pukusa*; - *pisika*.
 - n., *bukuta* (4); *guruya* (5); (*huruya* (4)); *mukuta* (2).

dust (fine) of grain, *yunye* (7); *nyiriri* (7).
 fine —, caused by weevil, *mupfupfumidzwa* (2).
 dusty, - make, - *pfumbudza*; - *pfumburira*.
 dust-pan, *gwande* (5).

duty, *mubato* (2); *mushumo* (2); *basa* (5).
 dwarfed, - be, - *fupika*; - *ninipa*.
 - dwell, - *gara*.
 dwelling, *imba* (4).
 - place, *yugaro* (7); *musha* (2).
 dysentery, *ku pazha ropa* (8).

E

each, 'mge no mge' with class prefix.
 each other, rendered by the reciprocal suffix 'ana,' e.g. *betserana*, help one another.
 eager, - be, - *rgwadza moyo*; - *da zikuru*; - *yinga*; - *chemera*; - *shuya*.
 eagle, *nyamu dzura* (4); *chinyamu dzura* (3).
 ear, *zheye* (4).
 inside of —, *mazhuruzhuru* (5 pl.).
 ear of grain, *hura* (4).
 — of 'munga,' *mgonzora* (2); *mu-shongoli* (2).
 unfertile ears of grain, *mambubu* (5 pl.).
 early morning, *mangwanana* (5 pl.); *rungwanana* (6).
 early rains, *munakamge* (2).
 —, - be, - *tanga*; - *yamba*.
 - earn, - *sezenzera*; - *wana* (i.e. - find).
 — food, - *amukura*; - *ruyira*.
 earnest, - be, see 'eager.'
 earring, *chindole* (3).
 earth (the world), *nyika* (4); *pano pasi*; *pasi pose*.
 — (ground), *pasi* (9).
 — (soil), *vu* (5).
 — (mud), *dope* (5).
 earthen, - 'vu' preceded by gen. part. of gov. n.
 earthenware pot, *hali ye vu*.
 large —, with wide mouth, *gate* (5).
 large —, with narrow mouth for water or beer, *nyengero* (4).
 — (for water), *chirongo* (3).
 small — (for water), *chirongwana* (3).
 large — (for meal), *dene* (5).

earthenware pot, with long neck for water, *pfuko* (4).
 — to cook porridge, *shambakodzi* (4).
 — to cook 'yusayi,' *halyana* (4).
 — with large mouth for serving porridge, *mbiya* (4).
 — with large mouth for serving 'yusayi,' *chikalyana* (3); *chido-do* (3).
 — (small) for 'yusayi,' *rongo* (4).
 — (small), for fat, *chin(h)u* (3).
 earthquake, *ku dengeniyika kwe nyika*.
 ear-wax, *manongora* (5 pl.); *madzi-gire-zheye* (5 pl.).
 easily, - do, - *bvidza*; - *gon*.
 east, *yubva-zuya* (7); *yutonga* (7).
 easy, - be, - *bvira*; - *reruka*; - *sa rema*; - *sa tana*, - *ita nyore*; - *sa kadza*.
 - eat, - *lalya* (- *lya*); - *la*.
 — much, - *lindiza*; - *tapa*; - *rokosha*; - *tanaira*.
 — anything, - *ponga*.
 — little with finger, - *topora*.
 — liquid food with hand, - *kambura*.
 — something hard or crackling, - *pupuna*; - *banda* (- *panda*), - *checheyura*.
 — noisily, - *sipura*.
 — grain before it is ripe, - *surura*.
 — other people's food, - *shusha*.
 — off a piece, - *kwishura*.
 — gluttonously, - *fundata*; - *fundara*; - *tsonyera*; - *tsumgera*; - *rondera*.
 — big pieces holding with both hands, - *kanyura*.
 — remains out of a pot, - *kokota*.
 — morning meal, - *susura*.
 — the evening meal, - *rayira*.
 — without 'yusayi,' - *temura*.

- eat all the 'yusayi,' - *tapa*.
- (of weevil), - *sekesa*.
- not to —, - *ira* (- *yera*).
- estable, - *be*, - *ldyiwa*.
- eating vessel, *childiyo* (3).
- eaves, *gumbi* (5); *daya-mvura* (5).
- eaves-dropping, - *be*, - *ita* mandiwise.
- echo, *mawungira* (5 pl.) (*wungira* (5)).
- eclipse of moon, *mgedzi wa yora*.
- of the sun, *suya ra yora*.
- economical person, *hurudza* (4).
- economy, *yukurudza* (7).
- edge, *dzi* (5).
- of a precipice, *mutsedu* (2).
- be on —, - *dzidzira*; - *bḡadzira*.
- edifice, *yuyako* (7).
- edify, - *yakisa*.
- educate, - *dzidzisa*.
- (bring up), - *rera*; - *kurisa*.
- eel, *hunga* (4); *nyamasase* (4).
- effect, n. (power), *simba* (5).
- v., - *ita*.
- effeminate man, *murumekadzi* (1).
- effervesce, - *tutuma*; - *shinyira*;
- *yira*; - *fazha*.
- efficient, - *be*, - *bridza*; - *gona*.
- person, *nyanzi* (4); *mizha* (4).
- effort, - make an, - *idza*.
- egg, *zai* (5).
- white of —, *ganda* (5).
- yolk of —, *chapfudo* (3).
- form eggs, - *ronga mazai*.
- shell, *deme* (5); *deko* (5).
- eight, 'sere' with proper class prefix, e.g. *yamu yasere*.
- eighth, 'rusere' with gen. particle of gov. noun, e.g. *nombe yo rusere*, eighth ox.
- eight times, *rusere*.
- eighteen, *gumi ne sere*.
- eighty, *makumi masere*.
- either . . . or, *kana . . . kana*; *nya-ngwe . . . nyangwe*.
- eject, - *budisa*.
- eland, *mofu* (4); *nuka* (4).
- elapse, - *pfuyura*; - *pinda*.
- elastic, - *be*, - *dadamuka* (- *tata-muka*); - *tamuka*; - *namuka*.
- elbow, *gokora* (5).
- elder, *mukuru* (1).
- brother, *mukuru* (1).

- elders of village, *makurukota* (1 pl.).
- elderly, - *be*, - *ya' mukuru*; - *ya musasu*; - *sasuka*; - *sasira*.
- elect, - *shara*; - *shanangura*; - *tsa-wura*.
- person, *mushanangurwa* (1); *mutawurwa* (1).
- elephant, *zhou* (4).
- elevate, - *murudza*; - *simudza*. See 'raise.'
- ed, - *be*, - *tunumara*.
- elevation, *chikwiriro* (3); *gome* (5); *mukwidza* (2); *chikwidza* (3); *dunumabvu* (5); *gwatara* (5).
- eleven, *gumi ne imḡe*.
- elope, - *tiza*; - *tizisa mukumbo*; - *dongera*.
- eloquence, *godoboro* (5); *chikadza-mburo* (3); *chikadaburo* (3).
- eloquent, - *be*, - *reya kwazo*.
- eloquent person, *chikodoboro* (3).
- elsewhere, *kumḡe* (9); *kamḡe* (9).
- elude, - *renga*; - *nzenga*.
- emaciated, - *be*, - *wonda*; - *wondo-roka* (- *wonduruka*); - *ngwarangwanduka*; - *tanurwa* (- *tanayurwa*); - *wonzheka*.
- (thin), - *tetepa*.
- embarrass, - *pesaisa*; - *pesanisa*; - *kanganisa*.
- emblem, *fananidzo* (4); *chiratidzo* (3).
- embrace, - *mbunda*; - *mbundikira*; - *bungatira*; - *fungatira*.
- each other, - *mbundana*; - *mbundikirana*.
- emerge, - *tumbudruka*.
- emetio, *mushonga wo ku rutsisa*; *rutsiso* (6).
- emigrate, - *tama*; - *lamira*.
- eminent, - *be*, - *ya mukuru*; - *kurumbara*.
- emphasis, *simba* (i.e. strength).
- empire, *yushe* (7).
- employee, *mushumiri* (1); *muranda* (1).
- employer, *tenzi* (1); *murungu* (1) (i.e. white man).
- empty, - *be*, - *sa ya ne chinu*.
- out, - *kupfura*; - *kutura*.
- place, *pamene* (9).
- enable, - *gonesa*; (- help), - *betsera*; *batisa*; (- strengthen), - *simbisa*.

- enclose, - *komberedza*; - *poteredza*; - *isa mukati*.
- with rope or wire, - *tandira*.
- with hedge, - *sosa* (*shosha*); - *sosera* (*shoshera*).
- enclosure (yard), *mu ruyazhe*.
- inside of net for game, *mutandiro* (2).
- encounter, - *shongana na*. See 'meet.'
- encourage, - *simbisa*; - *hurudzira*; - *yirikidza*; - *kukumidza*; - *tešera*; - *tusa* (- *tuisa*); - *ita guse*.
- encroach upon, - *ziginyidza*.
- end, *gumisiro* (4); *mugumo* (2); *yugumo* (7); *pedziro* (4); *medziro* (4); *medzo* (4); *ku pera* (8); *bereredzo* (4); *merere* (4); *mereredzo* (4); *mušiyi* (2); *chipedzo* (3).
- make an —, - *guma*; - *pedza*; - *gumisiro*; - *roza*.
- come to an —, - *pera*; - *guma*; - *roza*.
- endear oneself, - *zi disa*.
- endeavour, - *idza*. See 'try' and 'attempt.'
- endless, - *be*, - *sa pera*; - *sa guma*.
- endurance, *tsungo* (4 pl.); *ku tsungirira* (8); *ku tsunga* (8).
- endure, - *tsungirira*; - *tsunga moyo*.
- enemy, *pfumo* (5); *muŷengi* (1); *hondo* (4).
- energetic, - *be*, - *ita ne simba*.
- energy, *simba* (5).
- enervate, - *shaisa simba*; - *gura nungo*.
- engage in marriage, - *pikirana*; - *rumana*.
- for work, - *bata*; - *tora*.
- great work, - *pika*; - *tetedza*.
- engine, *chitimira* (3) (for.); *njini* (4) (for.).
- English (or any other white man's language), *Chirumbi* (3); *Chirungu* (3).
- Englishman (or any other white man), *murumbi* (1); *murungu* (1).
- enjoy, - *farira*; - *farikana*; - *shari nganya*; - *fara na*; - *nakirgwa na*; - *zipirgwa*; - *gura mate*; - *toga moyo*.

- enjoy something eaten for the first time, - *anganuka*.
- enlarge, - *kudza*; - *kurisa*; - *fadza*.
- a hole, - *ita mare*.
- enmity, *ku ŷengana* (8); *ruyengo* (6).
- enormous, adj., *kuru-kuru*; *kurusa* with class prefix.
- , - *be*, - *kurisa*.
- enough, it is, *ndizo*; *za ringana*; *za kwana*.
- be —, - *ringana*; - *kwana*; - *ya ndizo*.
- have —, - *guta*; - *shayura*.
- be not —, - *taira*; - *kaira*.
- enquire, - *vunza*.
- into case, - *feya*; - *tamba maka*; - *kotsa*; - *kwaya*.
- enrage, - *tsamgisa zikuru*; - *pe ngesa*; - *mutsa hasha*.
- d, - *be*, - *ldya gacha*; - *penga ne hasha*.
- enrich, - *fumisa*.
- ensnare, - *teya*; - *bata ne njere*; - *bingisa*.
- entangled, - *be*, - *katana*; - *piyana*.
- enter, - *pinda*; — in succession, - *tenderedzana*.
- one who enters, *mupindi* (1).
- enterprise, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
- entertain a stranger, - *varaidza*.
- ment, *varaidzo* (4).
- enthusiasm, *rgwedzahaya* (6); *rgwedzomoyo* (6).
- entice, - *nyengera*; - *tsawusa*; - *idza*; - *kuzha*; - *kweya*; - *kweza*; - *wega*.
- d, - *be*, - *ita guzhe*; - *ita guzhe-kuzhe*.
- entire, 'ose' with gen. part. of governing noun.
- entirely, *chose*; *kwazo-kwazo*.
- entrails, *yura* (7).
- take out —, - *tumbura*.
- entrance, *swyo* (5); *musuyo* (2); *mukoya* (2) (i.e. door).
- to a cave, *muromo* (2).
- entreat, - *kumbirisa*; - *kumbira*; - *nyengetera*.
- enumerate, - *raya*; - *yerenga*.
- envelope, - *putira*.
- n., *butiro* (5).

- envy, - *ya ne godo* ; - *godora*.
 envy, n., *godo* (5).
 epicure, - *be an*, - *ita m(h)ango* ; - *ya ne nafu*.
 epidemic, *hosha i no pomera zikuru* ; *rusukira* (6).
 epiglottis, *rudikwadi kwa* (6).
 epileptic fit, *zinu* (3 pl.) ; *zipupununu* (3 pl.).
 epistle, *nwadi* (4) ; *runyoro* (6) ; *rurgwaro* (6).
 epoch, *nambo* (4) (*chinambo* (3)). See 'time.'
 equal, - *be*, - *enzana* ; - *izana*. See 'similar.'
 - *be almost* —, - *susumira*.
 equality, *ku enzana* (8).
 equally, adv., *zi chi enzana*.
 equivalent, - *be*, - *enzana na* ; - *ya chinu chimge*.
 - eradicate, - *bvisa chose*.
 - erase, - *dzima* ; - *bvisa* ; - *isipisira* ; - *nyangaridza*.
 - erect (- build), - *yaka*.
 - *be* —, - *rurama*.
 - *stand* —, - *mira kwazo*.
 - err, - *chinya* ; - *tadza* ; - *rashika* ; - *paremaka* ; - *kanganwa* ; - *kanganisa* ; - *posha*.
 errand, *shoko ro ku tumga* (i.e. word of being sent).
 person sent on —, *munyai* (1).
 error, *poso* (4). See 'mistake.'
 eruption of the skin, *mizi* (4 pl.) ; *mapundu* (5 pl.).
 - escape, - *pukunyuka*.
 — (when surrounded), - *pfuka* ; - *puya* (*poya*).
 - try to — blame, - *satuka*.
 — (run away), - *tiza*.
 - *help to* —, - *pfusa*.
 - escort, - *perekedza* ; - *fambisa* ; - *pe-reka*.
 especially, adv., *zikuru*.
 essential thing, *chinu chikuru* ; *singwi-singwi* (4).
 - establish, - *isa* ; - *misa* ; - *drika* ; - *pava* (i.e. begin) ; — (lay a foundation), - *teya* ; (- strengthen) - *simbisa*.
 - esteem, - *kudza* ; - *da zikuru*.
 - estimate, - *kambira*.

eternal, - *be*, - *sa pera* ; - *sa guma*.
 eternity, *yu sa pera* (7) ; *yu sa guma* (7).
 - evade, - *renga* ; - *nzenga*.
 — a question, - *tapatira* ; - *tapitira*.
 evangelist, *we Evangeli* (1).
 - evaporate, - *phisa* ; - *seta*.
 even, conj., *na* ; *nyangwe*.
 — *as*, *sa* ; *mgene sa*.
 - *make* —, - *enzanisa* ; - *pamba-dzira*.
 (- *make smooth*), - *kwesera* ; - *puru-dzira*.
 — *so*, *no mutoyo wa ka dero*.
 evening, *madekwana* (5 pl.) ; *madeko* (5 pl.) ; *rudekwana* (6).
 this —, *madekwano* (5 pl.).
 last —, *madekwe* (5) ; *madeko* (5 pl.).
 towards —, *madekwana* (5 pl.).
 early in the — (twilight), *ruvunza yaeni* (6) ; *rufura-membge* (6).
 late in the —, *madeko kwa siba* ; *maidzisiro* (5 pl.).
 evening-star, *venehera simburume* (4).
 event, *cha iihwa* (3).
 ever, 'mbo' or 'to ngo' before verb root.
 —, *na hare na hare*.
 for —, *no ku si nga peri* ; *no ku si nga gumi*.
 evergreen tree, *muti u si nga zuki*.
 everlasting, see 'eternal.'
 every, 'mge ne mge' with class prefix. See 'each.'
 everything, *gose* (3 pl.) ; *chimge ne chimge*.
 everywhere, *kwose-kwose* ; *pose-pose*.
 evidence, *yuchapupu* (7) ; *yupupuro* (7).
 - *give* —, - *pupura* ; - *fakaza* (for.).
 evident, - *be*, - *yonekwa* ; - *yonekara* ; - *buda pa chena*.
 evil, *zivi* (sin) (3 pl.) ; *za ka ipa* (3 pl.) ; *yushati* (7).
 - *be* —, - *ipa* ; - *shata*.
 - *do* —, - *chinya* ; - *tadza* ; - *nya-ngara*.
 evil-doer, *muipe* (1) ; *muchinyi* (1) ; *muniyangari* (1).
 evil-speaking, *makuwa* (5 pl.) ; *mbayo* (4) ; *momera* (4).

- ewe (of goat), *sheche* (4); (with kid), *nunzi* (4).
 — (of sheep), *gisheche* (5); (with lamb), *dungi* (5).
 exact, - be, - *ruramisa*; - *sa posha* (i.e. not to make a mistake).
 - exaggerate, - *kayulira*; - *kurisa*; - *pamidzira*; - *ita mukatirgwa*.
 exaggeration, *mukanjiro* (2); *mukatirgwa* (2).
 exaggerator, *mukanjiri* (1).
 - exalt, - *kudza*; - *rumbidza*. See 'praise.'
 - examine, - *fuwa*; - *cherekedza*; - *nanaidza*; - *tadzanisa*; - *tari-sisa*; - *memu*.
 example, - set, - *tungamirira* (i.e. to lead); - *siyira makwara*.
 — n., *chiraidzo* (3); *gwara* (5) (i.e. footprint); *mabvumba* (5 pl.).
 - excavate, - *chera*; - *buoyora*.
 - exceed, - *pfuyura*; - *kunda*; - *kurira*; - *pinda*; - *viya*.
 exceedingly, adv., *zikuru-kuru*; *kwagokwago*; 'ku nyanya' followed by infin. of principal verb; e.g. the flower is exceedingly beautiful, *ruya ri no nyanya ku naka*.
 - excel, see 'exceed.'
 one who excels, *mukuriri* (1).
 excellence, *ku nakisa* (8); *yunako* (*yunaki*) (7).
 excellent, - be, - *nakisa*; - *pfuyura no ku naka*.
 except, *asi*; — (if), *asi kana*; *asi kuti*.
 excess, - do in, - *nyanyisa*.
 - exchange, - *tsina*; - *tsinana*; - *ten-gana*.
 — by mistake, - *ita mosha*; thing to be exchanged, *mutenganiso* (2).
 - excite, - *mutsa*; - *kurumidza*; - *pesera*; - *paša*.
 — to anger, - *tsamgisa*; - *mutsa hashu*; - *kware*; - *kwarakwata*.
 - exclaim, - *dana*; - *danidzira*.
 - exculpate, - *pembedza*; - *ridzira munyere*.
 — oneself, - *tenura*.
 excuse (reason), *maka* (4); *shoko* (5); *nzgwi* (5).
 false — s, *maka dza mano-mano* (4).
 — v. (allow), - *tendera*.
 - execute, see 'accomplish.'
 — (- behead), - *gura musoro*.
 - exempt, - *kumura*, - *tsipisira*.
 exercise, - take, - *tambisa muziri*; - *tamba*; - *simutsa makumbo*; - *tamburudza muziri*; - *tambunuka*.
 - exert oneself, - *ita ne simba*; - *rgwadza moyo*.
 - exhale, - *pugura*.
 - exhaust (- finish), - *pedzisa*; - *kurura*.
 — ed, - be, - *nyara*; - *neta*; - *ziya*.
 exhaustion, *manyaro* (5 pl.); *maneto* (5 pl.).
 - exhibit, - *ratidza*; - *taridza*; - *yonesu*.
 - exhilarate, - *mutsa simba*.
 - exhort, - *raira*; - *ranga*.
 exile, *mudzingwa* (1).
 — d, - be, - *dzingwa*; - *tathwa pa nyika*.
 - exist, - *va 'po*.
 exorbitant, - be, - *koshisha*; - *ldya mali a ka wanda*.
 - expand, - *farisa*; - *kumuka*; - *kukumira*; - *kurisa*; - *futisa*; - *kutisa*; - *fufumusa*.
 — of itself, - *futa*; - *futunuka* (- *futunuka*); - *kukumuka*; - *fufumuka*; - *futura*; - *fututa*; - *papa*.
 - expect, - *tarira*; - *mirira*; - *ringira*; - *vetera*; - *ringirira*; - *garira*.
 expectation, *tariro* (4); *miriro* (4); *gariro* (4); *rindiro* (4).
 - expectorate, - *pfira mate*; - *sipa*.
 expedition (journey), *rgwendo* (6).
 expeditious, - be, - *chimbidzika*; - *kurumbidza*.
 expensive, - be, - *kosha*; - *dura* (for.); - *ldya mali a ka wanda*.
 experiment, *ku idza* (8); *idzo* (4).
 expert, *mugoni* (1); *mubvidzi* (1).
 - expire, - *pera*; - *guma*. See 'end.'
 — (- die), - *parara*; - *fa*.
 - explain, - *dudzira*; - *rondezira* (*rondezira*); - *paridza*; - *zizisa*.
 — minutely, - *dongonyora*; - *donongora*; - *motsa*.
 one who explains, *mududziri* (1).
 explanation, *dudziro* (4); *rondezira* (4); *paridzo* (4).

- explore, - *cherekedza*; - *nananidza*; - *meta*.
- expose (- bring to light), - *budisa pa chena*; - *reyurura*; - *riyurura*; - *dumbunura*; (- shame), - *nyadzisa*; - *nyowedza*.
- a secret, - *yonyorora*.
- oneself, - *zi nika*.
- exposition, *dudziro* (4); *rondedzero* (4).
- expound, see 'explain.'
- express (in words), - *reya*; - *nyepera*; - *bgereketa*.
- expressly, adv., *kwago-kwago*.
- exquisite, - be, - *nakisa*.
- thing, *chiyaraidzo* (3), *chiyayayo* (3); *chiyezo* (3).
- extend (in size), - *kudza*; - *kurisa*; - *wedzera* (add).
- (in width), - *fadza*; - *farisa*.
- (in length), - *rebesa*.
- the hand, - *tandayadza*; - *tambunudza* (*tambanudza*).
- extensive, - be, - *kura*; - *fara*.
- , adj., *guru*; *bami* (with class prefixes).
- extent, *yukuru* (7).
- exterior, *kuzhe* (9).
- exterminate, - *yuraya*; - *pedza*; - *paradza*.
- external, 'kuzhe', preceded by gen. part of governing noun.
- extinguish, - *dzima*.
- extol, - *kurumbidza*. See 'praise.'
- extort, - *torera*; - *pamba*.
- extract, - *bvisa*; - *tumbura* (- *tomhora*); — a tooth, - *gura*.
- a thorn, - *tumbura*.
- extraordinary, - be, - *shura*; - *kathiamadza*.
- thing, *nenji* (5); *dambi* (5). See 'miracle.'

- extravagant, - be, - *chinya*; - *tamba*; - *paradza*.
- ly, - do, - *dapa*.
- extreme, - be, - *nyanyisa*.
- extremity, - be in, - *rgwisa ku fa*; - *kara ku fa*; - *yavavira ku fa*; - *tandadza*.
- n. (end), *gumisiro* (4). See 'end.'
- exult, - *farisisa*; - *shangara*; - *sharanganya*.
- eye, *ziso* (5).
- close —, - *tsinzina* (- *tsinzinyina*); - *tsinzira*.
- open the —, - *sinura*; - *sinudza* (v.t.).
- wink with the —, - *bgaira*; - *boyira*; - *bonya*.
- close one eye (as in taking aim), - *tsika ziso*; - *tsinya ziso*.
- half close eye in scorn, - *pebvura*.
- half open eyes (as in illness), - *toira*.
- have sore —s, - *pupira*.
- turn the —, - *chochorodza*; - *vundura*.
- hurt the —, - *tošora*; - *teya*; - *tongodza*.
- make big —s, - *welsa meso*; - *dzutuka meso*.
- (of fountain), *chitubu* (3).
- of needle, *yuli* (5).
- pupil of —, - *mboni* (4).
- eye-bone, *chombe* (3).
- eye-brow, *chombe* (3); *chihombe* (3).
- eye-lash, *siye* (4).
- eye-lid, *fungiro* (5); *ganda re ziso* (5).
- turn —s inside out, - *yendura meso* (- *yindura*).
- eye-tooth, *rumahara* (6).
- eye-sight, *ku yona na meso*.
- eye-witness, *chapupu* (3).

F

- fable, *shumo* (4); *rungano* (4).
- fabric (woven), *muruko* (2); *nduko* (4).
- face, *chiso* (3); *yuso* (7); *pa* (or *ku*) *meso* (9).
- have a smiling face, - *genyuka*.
- lie on the —, - *dziyama*.
- pull —s, - *chonya*.

- face, v. (look towards), - *lingira*.
- (be opposite), - *tariadzana na*.
- fade (of colour), - *kuna*; - *pfunara*; - *pfuruyara*.
- (of flower), - *gaya*.
- fall, - *koniwa*; - *kona*; - *bomoka*; - *chinya*.
- (to miss), - *posha*.

failure, *ku posha* (8); *ku koniwa* (8).
 — (in cooking), *mbodza* (4).
 faint, - be (of a path), - *sa pfumba*;
 - *pfuruyara*.
 — (of writing, &c.), - *sa yonekwa*;
 - *pfuruyara*.
 — (from hunger or fatigue), - *ziya*.
 fair, - be, - *naka*; (just), - *rungama*;
 - *rumama*.
 faith, *ku tenda* (8); *rutendo* (6);
 chitendero (3).
 faithful, - be, - *tendika*; - *tendiwa*.
 faithfulness (as of a dog), *ku nama-*
tira (8); *namatiro* (4).
 — (in service, &c.), *ku tendiwa* (8).
 - fall, - *wa*; - *punzika*.
 — down, - *wira pasi*; - *mbgera*.
 — from a height, - *poromoka*; - *koro-*
moka; - *pfochoka*; - *phatsira pasi*.
 — to the ground as of ripe grain,
 - *shakanika*.
 — (with a thud), - *pfochoka*.
 — into an abyss, - *pewuka*.
 — in (as house), - *mgahuka*; - *koro-*
moka; - *kuhumuka*.
 — out (as hair or feathers), - *tayuka*;
 - *zuyuka*; - *wanduka*; - *yundu-*
ka; - *duyuka*.
 — on knees, not being able to walk,
 - *gwadalika*.
 — out (as a piece from jug), - *peduka*;
 - *mgahuka*; - *kwatsuka*.
 — (as of plaster), - *kuhumuka*; - *koro-*
moka.
 — on the face, - *wa ne chiso*.
 - let —, - *wisa*; - *wisira*.
 — on the back of head, - *wa ne*
gotsi.
 - let — anything heavy, - *rigira*.
 false (not true), *zi sati zi ri 'go*.
 - be — (deceive), - *nyengera*; - *nye-*
ngedzera; - *ya ne nema*.
 falsehood, *nema* (4 pl.); *manyepo*
 (5 pl.); *nyengero* (4); *nye-*
ngedzero (4).
 - tell —, - *nyepa* (or *reya*) *nema*;
 - *nunge nema*.
 fame, *yukurumbira* (7); *kurumbiro*
 (4); *mukurumbira* (2); *guhu*
 (5); *dama* (5).
 family, *buli* (5); *mulu* (4); *nundu*
 (4) (family and goods).

family (tribe or class), *rudzi* (6).
 See 'tribe.'
 famine, *zhara* (4); *shangwa ye zhara*
 (4); *binduku* (5).
 - famish, - *ziya*; - *fa ne zhara*.
 famous, - be, - *kurumbira*; - *yirikira*.
 - fan (the air), - *fumira*.
 fan, n., *fumiro* (5).
 fang, *zino re nyoka*.
 far, *kure*; *kure-kure*.
 farewell! *sarai! sarai henyu! ta*
siya hedu!
 - bid —, - *woneka*; - *eneka*.
 farm, *purazeni* (5) (for.).
 farmer, *murimi* (1).
 farther, adv., *pa mberi*; *seri*.
 fashion, *mutoyo* (2); *mugarire* (2).
 — v., - *yumba*; - *ita*.
 fast, - be (= be firm), - *simba*; - *bata*.
 - make —, - *simbisa*; - *batisa*; - *su-*
ngisa.
 - run —, - *yanga*; - *yangisa*;
 - *manya*.
 - go —, - *chimbizika*; - *kuru-*
mbidza; - *fambisa*; - *kasika*.
 — (- abstain from food), - *zi nyima*
zo ku idya.
 - fasten, - *sunga*.
 — a bundle, - *mininga*.
 — (- tie together), - *sunganidza*;
 - *batanidza*.
 — a door, - *pfiga*; - *zarira*.
 fat, adj., *mafuta* (5) (pl. only).
 fat, - be, v., - *kora*; - *ya na mafuta*.
 — (of cattle), - *nona*.
 — (of locusts), - *ya ne chizai*.
 fate, *gumisiro* (4). See 'end.'
 father, *dambo* (1); *baba* (1).
 father-in-law (of husband), *mukara-*
bga (1).
 — (of wife), *tezara* (1); *tozara* (1);
 segara (1).
 fatigue, *ku nyara* (8); *manyaro* (5
 pl.); *maneto* (5 pl.).
 fatigued, - be, - *nyara*; - *neta*; - *ziya*.
 - fatten, - *kodza*; - *koresa*.
 fault, *ku chinya* (8); *ku tadza* (8);
 maka (4); *mosa* (4); *murando* (2).
 - be at —, - *tsura*.
 - commit —, - *chinya*; - *tadza*;
 - *paremaka*.
 - find —, - *pa maka*.

favour (grace), *nyasha* (4); *sisi* (4) (*tsiksi*); *ngoni* (4).
 - ask for —, - *kumbira*; - *gomba*; - *namata*.
 - v. (choose out), - *shanangura* (- *sanangura*), - *shava*; - *tsawura*.
 favourite, *mudikanywa* (1); *mudiwa* (1); *chi no lāya ndere* (3); *chi lāyira pa gwidi* (3); *chi no lāya na she* (3).
 - fear, - *thia*; - *teta*.
 - n., *ku thia* (8); *garu* (5); *mazhuru-shuru* (*mazuruzuru*) (5 pl.); *ruhuru* (6).
 fearless, - *be*, - *sa thia*; - *tsunga*; - *tsungarara*.
 fearless man, *mutsungu* (1); *chipunguzuru* (3); *ninini* (4); *mare* (4); - in war, *mandu* (4).
 fearlessness, *gutsungi* (7); *yumare* (7).
 feast, *bira* (5); *mutambo* (2).
 - (supper), *chirayiro* (3).
 marriage —, *mutambo wo ku wanisiwa*.
 - make a — for those who helped in garden, - *ita mutali*.
 feathers, *minenga* (2 pl.), *mambaya* (5 pl.).
 - (head ornament of —), *ngundu* (4); *chigura* (3).
 - standing up, *mabviyi* (5 pl.).
 - fecate, - *mama*.
 feeble, - *be*, - *sa ya ne simba*; - *shaiwa simba*; - *sa ya ne nungo*.
 - person, *zinyakatira* (5); *dera* (5).
 - feed, v.i., - *lāya*.
 - (- graze), - *fura*; - *chera*.
 - v.t., - *lāyisa*; - *pa go ku lāya*.
 - the hungry, - *ziyinura*.
 - a child, - *paka*; - *kika*; - *kwika*.
 - feel, *w(h)a*; - (*nzgwa*).
 - fresh, - *ti dzidzinindi*; - *ti gwi-ndiri*.
 - if ripe, - *teketedza*; - *tobvonyesa*.
 - one's way, - *tsangadsira*; - *tsanza-dzira*; - *fambiromo*.
 - (by touching), - *bata-bata*; - *nya-ngata*; - *yambamira*.
 - (groping about), - *yambama*; - *totsa*.
 feeling, n., *ndinde* (4).
 - fell, - *tema*.

fellow (man), *munu* (1).
 - (mate), *shangali* (4).
 fellowship, *shongano* (4); *yukama* (7).
 female (human), *mukadzi* (1).
 - (animal), *hadzi* (4); *gadzi* (5).
 fence (of poles or reeds), *rumanda* (6).
 - (of branches), *ruhowa* (6); *ruso-sera* (6).
 - (of stones), *singo* (5); *ruzingo* (6).
 - put up a —, - *shosha* (- *sosa*).
 - ferment, - *yira*; - *yirisa*; - *tutuma*; - *shinyira*; - *shikida*.
 fern, *mumvuli we bge* (2).
 fertile, - *be*, - *bereka*; - *yovera*.
 - fertilise, - *bereka*.
 fervour, *ku pisa kwo moyo* (8); *gwedzomoyo* (6); *gwedzahaya* (6); *ku isa kwo moyo* (8).
 - fester, - *yodza*; - *ita yurgwa*.
 - fetch, - *tora*; - *yuya na*.
 fever, - have, *muyiri u no pisa*.
 feverish, - *be*, - *pfuta*; - *pisa muyiri*.
 few, adj., - *shoma* (- *shomanene*) with class prefix.
 very —, *shoma-shoma*.
 fickle, - *be*, - *tendereka*.
 - fidget, - *gerekeza* (*sherekeza*); - *shezherera*.
 fie! *hinga! ai! iyo!*
 field (garden), *munda* (2).
 grazing —, *mafuro* (5 pl.); *yuchedzo* (7).
 - s (large cultivated), *ruwa* (6); *narawunda* (4). See 'garden'.
 - (uncultivated), *bundo* (5); *sango* (*shango*) (5).
 fierce, - *be*, - *ya ne hashu*; - *ya ne shungu*.
 fifteen, *gumi ne shanu*.
 fifth, 'shanu' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 fifty, *makumi mashanu*.
 fig, *yonde* (5); *sita* (5); *guyu* (5).
 dry —, *gweru* (5).
 - tree, *muyonde* (2); *musita* (small kind which bears near the ground); *mukuyu* (2).
 - fight - (*rgwa*) - *royana* (i.e. beat one another).
 - constantly, - *kwazhamurana*; - *kwazwana*.

fight, n., *makoyole* (5 pl.).
 — v. (- wrestle), - *ita mitsimba*.
 — for, - *rgwira*.
 — against, - *rgwisa*.
 — against one another, - *rgwisaisa*.
 figure, *chifanaidzo* (3) (*chifananidzo*);
chiyumbiko (3); *muturu* (2).
 file (a long row), *mudungwe* (2).
 — (tool), *chirodzeso* (3); *fero* (4)
 (for.).
 — v., - *kwesera*.
 — go in single —, - *ita mudungwe*.
 — fill, - *zadza*; - *zarisa*.
 — the sky (as rain), - *pamba denga*.
 — (- satiate), - *gutisa* (- *gutisa*).
 — up a hole with soil, - *fusira*.
 — up a measure, - *sisisa*; - *sisidzira*.
 — partly, - *ita gama*; - *ita dikatika*;
 — *ita xiamia*; - *ita xiamga*; - *xia-*
misa.
 — to overflowing, - *tutumbgidsa*; - *ita*
mupfunga.
 — to certain height, - *sisisa*; - *sisisira*
 (lit. to cause to come to).
 filth, *marara* (5 pl.); *sina* (4);
yufende (7).
 filthy, - *be*, - *kalaria*; - *ya no yufende*;
 — *ya ne sina*.
 fin, *chimbi che hoye*. See 'fish'.
 final, - *be*, - *pedzisira*; - *pereredza*;
 — *dziya*; - *gumisa*.
 finally, adv., *po ku pedzisira*; *po ku*
pereredza; *po ku bereredza*, &c.
 finch, *chizaza* (3).
 — find, - *wana*; - *yona*; - *gumana na*.
 — fault, - *nenera*; - *pe maka*.
 — something lost, - *ita ruso*; - *wana*.
 — (pick up), - *kumba* (- *tomba*); - *nunga*
 (- *nonga*); - *bozha*.
 — (look for), - *tsaka*; - *kwasha*.
 not —, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *sa*
wana.
 — out, - *korona*; - *feya*.
 — out in nice way, - *kwerenga*.
 fine, n., *chiripiro* (3); *chiripo* (3).
 — v. (make to pay), - *ripidza*.
 — adj., 'yuya' with class prefix.
 fine, - *be*, - *naka*; - *nakisa*.
 — *be* — (nice), - *zipa*; - *tapira*;
 — *dongera*.
 fine article (piece of work), *chiyayayo*
 (3); *chiyevo* (3); *chiyaraidzo* (3).

fine person or thing, *nango* (4).
 finger, *munwe* (2); *munwe* (2).
 — (thumb), *chingunwe* (3); *chigunwe*
 (3).
 — (index), *mulendeke* (2).
 — (little), *munwana* (2); *chikunwa-*
hunwane (3).
 — nail, *runjara* (6) (*runzara*).
 — finish, - *pedza*; - *pedzisa*; - *gumisa*.
 — entirely, - *pereredza*; - *pedzisisa*;
 — *pedzisira*.
 — ed, - *be*, - *pera*; - *guma*; - *kwani-*
sika.
 fire, *moto* (2) (*mgoto* (2)).
 flame of —, *murago* (2); *rulimi*
rgwo moto (6).
 slow creeping —, *mberevere* (4).
 grass — at night, *chedzera* (3);
chadzera (3).
 — make a — guard, - *yayira*.
 — kindle a —, - *yesa moto*; - *batidza*
moto.
 — kindle — by rubbing sticks to-
 gether, - *sika*.
 — borrow — to light another, - *goka*.
 — re-start a —, - *yedzera*.
 materials for starting —, *sika* (4).
 — extinguish —, - *dziima*.
 — be out (of fire), - *dziima*.
 — be out entirely (of —), - *rota*.
 — stir up —, - *kutidzira*; - *kuchi-*
dzira; - *kunidzira*.
 — blow —, - *pfutidza*; - *pfutsa*.
 — — off a gun, - *ridza pfuti*; - *fura*.
 firebrand, *tsika* (5); *rukuni* (6);
chiisa (3); *isa* (5).
 — after fire is out, *chisarachoto* (3).
 firefly, *chitailai* (3); *chinainai* (3).
 fireplace, *choto* (3).
 firewood, *huni* (4 pl.).
 — (kindlings), *masoso* (5 pl.).
 bundle of —, *singa re huni* (5).
 piece of —, *rukuni* (6).
 firm, - *be*, - *ya ne simba*; - *bata*;
 — *simba*.
 — put in —ly, - *timika*.
 — (determined), - *simika*; - *simikwa*.
 — person, *misimiki* (1).
 first, *mbo* used before verb root;
ku tanga; *chimotsi*; *ku yamba*;
pa mberi, all used with gen. part.
 of governing noun.

first day of week (i.e. Monday), *chimo-tsi che Sondo* (3); *Musumburuko* (2) (*Musumburuko* (2)) (for.).
 - be first, - *tangira*; - *tangidzira*.
 - (in the beginning), *pa ku tanga*; *pa ku yamba*.
 first-born (of men), *dangwe* (5).
 - (of animals), *mongora* (4); 'ku *pongora*' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 fish, *hoye* (4).
 - bait, *bāgo* (7).
 - fin, *chimbi* (3).
 - tall, *māise* (2); *besu* (5).
 - hook, *chiredzo* (3); *chirawuro* (3); *chikandira* (3).
 - scale, *funurgwa* (5).
 - trap, made of reeds, *duyu* (5).
 - fish, v., - *redza*; - *rawura*; - *bata*; - *teya*; - *kukudza*.
 fisherman, *muredzi* (1); *mubati we hoye* (1); *muteyi we hoye* (1); *mukukudzi* (1).
 fissure, *mu(s)hwe* (2).
 - of rock, *munwanwa* (2).
 fit, *tsiya* (4); *huli* (4); *hodzo* (4).
 - make a —, - *fumbata*; - *fumbatira*.
 fit, n., *drungu* (5).
 v., - (suit), - *kwana*; - *ringana*; - *fanira*; - *nakira*.
 - on, - *kwanisa*; - *idza* (i.e. try).
 - loosely (of stopper or shoes), - *ngurangura*.
 - be — for, - *fanirgwa na*; - *ringana*.
 fits (epileptic), *zimu* (3 pl.); *zipu-pununu* (3 pl.).
 five, 'shanu' with class prefix.
 - shillings, *chishanu* (3).
 - fix, - *batisa*; - *simbisa*; - *isa*.
 - a time, - *tara ruya*.
 - a pole in the ground, - *tsindira*; - *ndinyira*.
 flabby, adj., 'nete' with class prefix;
 - *sa ya ne simba*.
 - become — (of something blown up), - *foya*; - *foyoza*; - *fovera*.
 flag, *mucheka* (i.e. linen).
 flame, *murago* (2); *rulimi rgwo moto* (6).
 flank, *diyi* (5); *rumbabvu* (i.e. rib).
 hollow — as of cattle when thin, *goyo* (5); *goyoyo* (5).

flank (i.e. single file in army or hunting party), *rupingo* (6).
 - flap the wings, - *babamira*; - *bubumira*.
 - v.i. (of clothes in walking), - *fumura*.
 flash (of light), *ku penya kwe chiedza* (8).
 flat (country), *bani* (5); *renje* (5).
 - stone, (r) *gwendefa* (6); *vendefa* (5).
 - iron, *simbi* (4).
 - place or sheet of water, *sandairira* (5).
 - be —, v., - *pambadzika*; - *ita chivata*; - *ita bayapaya*.
 - put down —, - *radzika*.
 - flatten, - *pambadzika*; - *radzika*.
 - flatter, - *bata ku meso*; - *ita zifadza-wa-fa*; - *ita zimunanga-haranga*.
 flatterer, *jenesa moyo* (5); *mute-ndareyi* (2).
 - flavour, - *zipidza* (- *zipisa*); - *ta-pidza*.
 - (relish to eat with porridge), *yusayi* (7); *chiseyo* (3); *cho ku seyesa* (3).
 flatulence, *manyongo* (5 pl.).
 - from over-eating, *izi* (4).
 flea, *nata* (4); (small —, or hen lice), *yutata* (7).
 - flee, - *tiza*; - *nyeruka*; - *wewera*; - *wiwinya*.
 - secretly, - *nyerereka*; - *nyerenyendeke*.
 - to, - *tizira*.
 - cause to —, - *tizisa*.
 fleece, see 'hair' and 'wool'.
 flesh, *nyama* (4).
 - put on —, - *fera*; - *sinira*; - *ita muyiri*.
 - begin to put on —, - *zindira*.
 flexible, - be, - *tefa*; - *tepuka*.
 - flicker, - *iaima*. See 'gleam'.
 flight, *ku bururuka* (8); *ku uruka* (8).
 - (of birds), *huruya* (5); *guruya* (5).
 flimsy (thin), adj., 'nete' with class prefix.
 - be —, - *sa ya ne simba*.
 - material, *rufeshera* (6).
 - fling away, - *rasha*.
 - at, - *kandira*; - *poshera*.
 flint (steel used with), (r) *gwenya* (6).
 - (stone), *musara-sara* (2).

firt, n., *chipezhupeshu* (3); *mufekenyeki* (1).
 — v., - *pezhuka*; - *jejenjeka*; - *ya na meso-meso*.
 — **float**, - *papamara*; - *angarara*.
flock, *boka* (5); *bapa* (5); *gole* (5).
 — **flog**, - *roya*; - *sodogora*; - *yukuta*; - *gambura*; - *gambadza*; - *shashanga*. See 'beat'.
 — **with switch**, - *wapura*.
flood, *mvura zhinji* (4).
floor, *guya* (5); *pasi* (9).
 — **beat down** —, - *royera guya*.
flour, *yupfu* (7).
 — **flow**, - *yerera* (- *erera*).
 — (**oome out**), - *tuduka*.
 — **out** (of blood or water), - *juja*; - *jujuma*.
 — (**sink into ground**), - *nwirira*.
 — **with noise**, - *chachama*; - *chururuka*.
 — **thickly** (like honey), - *rezuka*.
flower, *ruya* (5).
 — **bud**, *chifundo che ruya* (3).
fluent, - **be** (in speech), - *dekudza*; - *denenedza*.
 — (**scolding**), - *ita rusho*.
fluffy, - **be**, - *nyanduka*.
flute, *nyere* (4); *munanzi* (2); *humbge* (4); *tsere* (4); *mupaza* (2).
 — **flutter**, - *pepera*; - *peruka*.
fly, *nunzi* (4).
 — **small** —, *nesa* (4).
 — **big** —, *dunzi* (5).
 — **tsetse** —, *chirono* (3).
 — **horse** —, *nono* (5).
 — **blind** —, *yuyu* (5).
 — v.i. (**flee**), - *tiza*.
 — **in confusion** (as locusts), - *yiriruka*.
 — (**of birds**), - *bururuka*; - *uruka*.
 — **high**, - *nyumira*; - *tupira*.
 — **upwards** (as sparks or feathers), - *pupuruka*.
 — **upwards** (as dust), - *fumuka*.
fly-blow, *honye* (4).
foal (of horse), *mğana we biza* (1).
foam, *furo* (5).
 — v.i., - *ita furo*; - *pupuma*.
 — **at mouth**, - *pupira*.
foe, *pfumo* (5); *muwengi* (1); *musemi* (1).

fog (rainy), *guti* (5).
 — (**dry**), *bute* (5); *mule* (4); *mu-bvumbi* (2); *mumvumbi* (2).
 — **fold**, - *pela*.
 — **arms**, - *bungatira*; - *fungatira*.
 — **arms crosswise on shoulders**, - *gumbata*.
 — **arms on chest**, - *funyisa*.
 — **hands**, - *fumbatira*.
 — **hands** (as in prayer), - *pfekhanisa minwe*.
 — n., *meto* (4).
 — n. (for sheep), *chirugu* (3) (i.e. native sheep hut).
foliage, *mashazhu* (5 pl.); *mashizha* (5 pl.); *mazani* (5 pl.).
 — **follow**, - *tevera*; - *ita muse*; - *ita musule*.
 — **one another**, - *ita mutute*; - *tevedzana*; - *teverana*.
 — **a track**, - *ronda makwara*; - *ronda makumbo*; - *rondedza*.
 — **up**, - *isinira*.
 — **with the eye**, - *pina*.
follower, *muteyereri* (1).
folly, *yurema* (7); *yupenzi* (7).
fond of, - **be**, - *kara*; - *karira*; - *karadza*.
fontanelle (on child's head), *nongonya* (4).
food, *go ku ldaya* (3 pl.); *zildyiwa* (3 pl.); *zildyo* (3 pl.).
 — **badly cooked** —, *mbodza* (4).
 — (**roasted**), *halinge* (4).
 — (**porridge**), *sadza* (5).
 — **for children**, *bota* (5); *chinamu* (3).
 — **for invalids and infants**, *yusususu* (7).
 — (**greens**), *mulivo* (2).
 — **left over**, eaten without 'yusayi', *isin(h)e* (4); *nemga* (4).
 — (**remaining over night**), *mura-dzğa* (2).
 — (**remaining over day**), *mu(s)hwe-dzğa* (2).
 — **little** — as payment, *gamba* (5).
 — **for journey**, *mbuya* (4); *norgwa* (4).
fool, *benzi* (5); *dacha* (5).
foolish, - **be**, - *ye benzi*; - *ye chi-remā*.

foot, *rushoka* (6) (pl. *shoka*); *dziho* (5).

hollow of —, *yura bge gumbo* (7).

footmark, *rushoka* (6); *vgwara* (5); *gumbo* (5).

footpath, *zhira* (4); *mushwayira* (2).

footstool, *chitsiko* (3).

for (because), conj., *ga*; *nokuti*.

— prep., usually rendered by the gen. part. of the governing noun, or by the relative form of the verb; e.g. food for the child, *go ku ldyo go mgana*; to cook for the child, *ku bikira mgana*.

forasmuch, *nokuti*; *na ipopo*; *na izogo*; *no ku daro*.

- forbid, - *dziyisa*; - *rambisa*; - *kanjudza*.

force, *simba* (5); *masimba* (5 pl.); *bamba* (5).

— v., - *ita ne simba*; - *gombedzera*.

— in, - *sokedzera*.

— a way for oneself, - *verevedza*.

— a way into, - *pasura*; - *pangura*; - *pasanura*.

— a way through a crowd, - *pambura*; - *mapanyura*; - *pasanura*; - *burihidza*.

forceps, for teeth, *chiguro* (3).

— (pincers), *mbato* (4).

ford, *zambuko* (5).

— (on flat rock), *gweke* (5).

— v., - *ambuka*.

foreboding, *mashuruzhuru* (*mazuruzuru*) (5 pl.).

forefathers, *madzibambo* (1 pl.); *matateguru* (*mateteguru*) (1 pl.); *yakuru ye kare* (1 pl.).

forehead, *huma* (4).

outstanding —, *guma* (5).

large —, *mazha* (4).

foreigner, *mgeni* (1); *munu we imge nyika* (1); *mutorgwa* (1); *nuruka* (4); *norongondo* (4).

— (white man), *murumbi* (1); *murungu* (1); *muzungu* (1).

forelock, *bumu* (5).

foremost, adv., *pa mberi*; *pa muromo*; *pa chiromo*.

— in surrounding game in hunting, *mudzingiri we nyama* (1).

foremost in army, *rupingo* (6).

forenoon, no special name. Natives specify, e.g. *ku chi mangwanana* (early); *mafura mushana* (sunrise); *madziya mushana* (some time later); *madziyiro* (5); *kwa dziya*; *masusuriro* (about ten o'clock); *rasikata*; *masikati ngwana* (about eleven o'clock).

forest, *dondo* (5).

— of mashuku trees, *jiri* (5).

— (clumps of trees on the open veld), *chiwungwe* (3); of small trees, *dzate* (5); (thick — or jungle), *denere* (5).

foretell, - *fembera*.

for ever, *na mazuya ose*; *na makole ose*; *no ku si nga peri*; *no ku si nga gumi*.

forfeit, *rudungo* (6).

— v., - *ldyiwa mazondo*; - *ldyiwa mumbiri*; - *ldya mupfuka*.

— one's possessions, - *loriwa madza*.

- forge, v., - *pfura simbi* or *matale*.

— n., *yira* (5); *chido* (3).

- forget, - *kanganwa*; - *kairirigwa na*; - *shezherera*.

- make to —, - *nyangaridza*; - *roza*.

forgetfulness, *kanganwa* (4).

- forgive, - *kanganwira*; - *regerera maka*.

forgiveness, *kanganwiro* (4).

forgotten, - be, - *kanganika*.

fork (or anything with which to pierce), *chibayo* (3); *mubayo* (2); *forogo* (4) (for.).

— of a branch (or space between fingers), *manda* (4).

forlorn, - be, - *rashiwa*; - *siyiwa*.

— person, *siyiwana* (4).

- form, - *yumba*; - *ita*.

— n. (shape), *chiyumbiko* (3); *muturu* (2); *mgomu* (2).

formerly, adv., *kare*; *pa ku tanga*.

former place, *pa kare*.

- forsake, - *rasha*; - *siya*; - *regedza*.

fort (stronghold), *nale* (4).

— (stone wall), *singo* (5).

- fortify, - *yaka mazingo*; - *ita nale*.

fortunate, - be, - *ya ne ropa ra ka naka*; - *ya na yadzimu*.

fortunate person, *mubozhi* (4).
 fortune, *fuma* (4).
 — (inheritance), *naka* (4).
 forty, *makumi manna*.
 forward, adv., *pa mberi*.
 - be —, v., - *wunguka*; - *wunga-mara*.
 - go —, - *pfuyura mberi*; - *indika*; - *tungamira mberi*; - *inda mberi*; - *pinda mberi*.
 foul, - be, - *ya ne sina*; - *siba*; - *ipa*.
 - found, - *dziika*; - *para*.
 foundation, *mayambiso* (5 pl.); *mitsigo* (2 pl.); *muteyo* (2).
 - lay —, - *ronga mitsigo*; - *teya mitsigo*; - *dziika mitsigo*.
 — stone, *urwonga* (6).
 founder, *nyakayambe* (1).
 fountain, *isime* (5).
 eye of —, *chitubu* (3).
 four, *chinna*, 'nna' with class prefix as adj. numeral.
 fourteen, *gumi ne 'nna'* with class prefix.
 fourth, 'chinna' with gen. part. of gov. n.
 fowl, *huku* (4).
 - droppings, *matoto* (5 pl.).
 — house, *danga re huku* (5); *zumbu* (5).
 —'s nest, *dendere* (5).
 fox, *gaya* (5); *mungubge* (4).
 fragment (general), *chigurgwa* (3).
 See 'part.'
 fragrance, *ku nuwira* (8); *ku zipa* (8); *bge* (7).
 freckles, *vunyodzi* (7).
 free, - be, - *sununguka*; - *sa sungwa*.
 set —, - *sunungura*; - *regedza*.
 - freeze, - *gwamba ne chando*; - *ite chando*; - *ita mazaya*.
 frequently, adv., *rushinji*; *kashinji*; *mazuya mashinji*; *misi mizhinji*.
 — (again and again), *ipopo na ipopo*; *pa kare na pa kare*.
 fresh, adj., 'tsa' with gen. part. of gov. n.
 - feel —, - *ti dzidzinindi*.
 - fret, - *zi ldy* *moyo*. See 'brood' and 'sad'.
 — (of child), - *shwinya*; - *shwinyi-dzika*.
 Friday, *Chishanu* (*che Sondo*) (3).

friend, *shamgali* (4).
 — (acquaintance), *muzikani* (1); *sawira* (4).
 — (relation), *kama* (4).
 - be friends, - *shamgaridsana*; - *fambidsana*; - *yanana*; - *kumbidzana*.
 friendship, *yushamgali* (7).
 - make —, - *isa yukama*; - *pangurana*.
 - frighten, v.t., - *thisa*; - *harudza*; - *vundusa*; - *patidza*; - *buuyusa*; - *shuruyadza*.
 — (in play), - *kaza*; - *kazina*.
 — (threaten), - *thithidzira*; - *wuwudzira*.
 frightened, - be (- startle), - *karuka*; - *thia*; - *vunduka*; - *patika*; - *buuyuka*; - *robga ne hana*.
 fringes, *mapfuno* (5 pl.); *pfuna* (4).
 frivolous, - be, - *verukira* (- *veruka*).
 — person, *mujekeneke* (1); *mupezhuki* (1).
 frog, *dafi* (5); *zura* (5).
 little poisonous —, which encloses itself in grass, *rgwangachere* (6); *tumbale* (4).
 land —, *dacha* (5).
 bull —, *dzetse* (5); *jichidza* (5).
 — (tadpole), *buruyuru* (5).
 from, prep., 'ku' before common nouns; 'kwa' before proper names of persons; before proper names of places no prep. is used.
 from . . . till (to), *ku bva . . . ku sikira* or *ku sika*.
 frontier, *mugano* (2).
 frost, *chando* (3); *mazaya* (5 pl.).
 piece of —, *zaya* (5).
 froth, *furo* (5).
 - make —, - *pupuma*.
 - frown, - *sinama*; - *wonyesa meso*; - *wonyanisa ku meso*.
 fruit, *mgana wo muti*; *zana* (5); *chibereko* (3).
 — (gathered), *muchero* (2); *chero* (4).
 — (unripe), *ganga* (5).
 — (last of the season), *hubga-kubga* (4).
 — (well ripe), *mbune* (4).
 — (very young), *ndora* (4).

fruit (edible), *muldyiwa* (2).
 fruitful, - *be*, - *bereka*.
 — (of soil), - *yovera*.
 - fry, - *kanga*; (anything to be fried),
hangira (4).
 frying pan, *hangiro* (4).
 fuel, *huni* (4 pl.).
 - fulfil, - *ita*; - *pedza*.
 fulfilled, - *be*, - *iika* (- *iikara*);
 - *zadzika*.
 full, - *be*, - *zara*; - *ti pa*; - *ti papa-*
nana.
 half —, - *be*, - *ita gama*; - *ita gaza*;
 - *ita ziamga*.
 — (satisfied with food), - *guta*.
 — (satisfied with water), - *gungwa*.
 full-grown, - *be*, - *kura* (used in perf.).
 See 'grown'.
 full moon, *jena guru* (5).
 fun, - *have*, - *tamba*; - *seka*.
 — n., *rusetso* (6); *mushazhe* (2);
musere (2); *ku seka* (8).

funny, - *be*, - *setsa*; - *tambisa*; - *ita*
mushazhe; - *ita musere*; - *zhanga-*
ndira.
 fur, *muere* (4); *guse* (5); *mambaya*
 (5 pl.).
 furious, - *be*, - *penga ne hasha*;
 - *isamga zikhuru*; *u no ldy a mgoto*
 (he eats fire).
 furnace, *bisiro* (5); *choto* (3); *vira*
 (5).
 smelting —, *nyawusiro* (4).
 - furnish a house, - *rongedza* (- *ronge-*
dzera) *imba*.
 furrow, *mugero* (2); *mukurehure*
 (2).
 further, *pa mberi*; *ze* (i.e. again).
 fury, *yumare* (7); *ku isamga* (8);
shungu (4 pl.); *hasha* (4 pl.).
 future times, *lisi i no vuya*; *pa*
mberi; *mazuva a no vuya*;
mazuva a no za.
 future matters, *zi no vuya*.

G

- *gag*, - *fumbira muromo*; - *sunga*
muromo.
 - gain, - *yona*; - *wana*; - *fuma*.
 gait, *mufambire* (2); *mufambiro* (2).
 gale, *dutu guru* (5).
 gall, *nduru* (4).
 - gallop, - *pipitika*; - *papatika*; - *pana*
pasi.
 game, *muka* (4).
 — (sport), *chitambo* (3).
 names of games are:—*fuya* (4);
nodo (4); *ndoma* (4); *tsuli* (4);
dzare (5).
 gaol, *trongo* (4) (for).
 gap (hole), *yuli* (5); *isaka* (4).
 — (between teeth), *saka* (5).
 — (where tooth was extracted), *yende*
 (5).
 — (broken place in rim of vessel),
yende (5).
 — between stools of grain, *gamba* (5).
 - gape, - *shama*; - *shamisa*.
 — (yawn), - *shamenyai*.
 garden, *munda* (2).
 place where large gardens are,
ruwa (6); *narawunda* (4).

garden of chief, *zunde* (5).
 small —, *bindu* (5).
 small — of tobacco, *dandare* (5).
 old —, *gura* (5).
 early —, on bank of river, *jeke* (5).
 — (in swampy place), *doro* (5); *dzere*
 (5); *deye* (5).
 — of ground-nuts, *seyu* (4); *seyura* (4).
 new —, *museyura* (2).
 good — soil, *dikidza* (5).
 site for —, *gombo* (5).
 unweeded —, *gwidi* (5).
 unhoed —, *rara* (5).
 — hut (for watching), *mataga* (5 pl.);
dumba (5); *chirindo* (3).
 — hut in tree for watching, *mutano*
 (2).
 — hut, for storing grain, before it is
 threshed, *isapi* (4).
 gardener, *murimi* (1).
 - gargle, - *sukurudza mu huro*.
 garment, *hazu* (4); *cho ku fuka* (3);
chisimiro (3).
 old —, *chisakara* (3); *rusakara*
 (6); *rusakadzwa* (6).
 gash, *vanga* (5); *nemo* (4).

- **gasp**, - *hataira*; - *takwaira*; - *femesa*; - *femereka* (- *femedzeka*).
- gate**, *suvo* (5) (*musuvo* (2)); *zambara* (5).
- **gather**, - *yungaidza* (- *yunganidza*); - *kuya*; - *kuyanidza* (- *kuyaidza*); - *kuyira*.
- **v.i.** (meet), - *yungana*; - *shongana*; - *kokorodzana*.
- (of abscess), - *ita yurgwa*.
- (of sore eyes), - *pupira*.
- **wood**, - *fufudzira*; - *nongedzera*.
- **up what had been spread out**, - *wora*.
- **dung for smearing floors**, - *tapa ndoye*.
- (call together), - *koka*; - *kokera*; - *kokorodza*.
- **together (in one place)**, - *kulira*; - *kumba*; - *kura*; - *singa*.
- (as fruit or flowers), - *lana*.
- **much**, - *chokota*; - *womora*.
- (as a hen her brood), - *yuyatira*; - *fungatira*.
- gathering**, *yungano* (4); *chiyungano* (3); *mbungano* (4).
- **gaze**, - *tarisisa*; - *shiwiridza*; - *napanidza*.
- (in wonder), - *shama*; - *karthiamara*. See 'surprised.'
- general**, *mukuru* (1); *she* (1); *mubati* (1); *mutungamiri* (1).
- **be** — (common), - *iŋwa na yose*; - *bvira gose*.
- **name**, *zita ro ku bata gose*; *zita ro ku bgerengedza gose*.
- **generate** (- *make*), - *ita*.
- (- *bear*), - *bereka*.
- generous**, - *be*, - *pavulira*; - *pa*.
- **person**, *makumbe* (1); *gumbire* (5).
- gentle**, *adj.*, *nyoro* with class prefix.
- be** —, *v.*, - *ya no moyo munyoro*; - *ya no moyo muchena*.
- **person**, *doro* (5); *shunguwasha* (4).
- gently**, *adv.*, - *no moyo munyoro*; *no yunyoro*.
- (softly, slowly), *adv.*, *ziyuya*; *chinyai*; also expressed by *aux. verb*. 'natso' or 'nyatsa', followed by *infin.* of *prin. verb*; e.g. *natso ku famba* (or *natso famba*), *walk gently*.
- germ**, *moyo* (2) (heart).
- gesture**, - *make a*, - *uruka*; - *pu-ngira*.
- **get** (- *obtain*), - *wana*; - *yona*; - *fuma*.
- **up (rise from sitting)**, - *simuka*; - *muruka*.
- **up suddenly**, - *barabadika*.
- **up from sleep**, - *muka*.
- **much**, - *koma*.
- **ready**, - *rongedza*; - *gadzira*.
- **out of the way**, - *bva*.
- **better**, - *naya*; - *pora*.
- ghost**, *mŋeya* (2); *chitukhwani* (3); *chitebge* (3). See 'spirit.'
- giant**, *chihwede* (3); *gokonya* (5).
- (very strong), *chitelema* (3).
- (very stout), *hofoli* (4); *chidakwa* (3); *chiduza* (3); *chihwehwenende* (3); *chihwahwa* (3); *hodzongwe* (4); *hodzororo* (4); *hongonye* (4).
- giddiness**, *dzungu* (4).
- giddy**, - *be*, - *nzŋwa dzungu*; - *dzungu(r)gwa*.
- **make** —, - *dzungura*.
- (light) **person**, *datanana* (5); *data* (5).
- gift**, *chipo* (3); *chipiwa* (3).
- **giggle**, - *kekedza*; - *gegedza*; - *seka-seka*; - *gegedzera*; - *nyemganga*.
- gill** (of fish), *dakashwa* (5).
- giraffe**, (s) *hwiza* (4).
- **gird**, - *sunga*; - *sungira*.
- girdle**, *chisungo* (2); (r) *gwarada* (6); *banire* (5); *rubande* (6) (for.).
- **of beads**, *mukonde* (2).
- girl**, *musikana* (1).
- (well-proportioned), *dururaŋita* (5).
- (little), *chisikana* (3).
- (about twelve years old), *buna* (5); *chipotera* (3).
- (full grown), *hombe* (4).
- **of marriageable age**, *mandara* (4).
- **give**, - *pa*; - *vigira*.
- (to hand), - *gamuchidza*; - *achidza*.
- **on the sly**, - *fufura*.
- **a name**, - *tumidza*; - *tuma*.
- **something into another's hand**, - *tsinza*.
- **evidence**, - *pupura*; - *fakara* (for.).
- **back**, - *dzosa*; - *dzosera*.

- give up, - *susukidza* ; - *susuyidza*.
- liberally, - *pavulira* ; - *komborera* ;
- *chokomora* ; - *fokomora* ; - *fo-*
- *shora* ; - *funda* ; - *fundura* ;
- *kodzeka* ; (especially of beer),
- *isotša* ; - *gwetsa* ; (of tobacco),
- *duna*.
- more, - *wedsera* ; - *pamidza*.
- less than is due, - *ponya*.
- reluctantly, - *konyodza*.
- way, - *suduruka* ; - *suduyuka*.
- gizzard, *chisusu* (3) ; *chikangawwe-*
hama (3) ; *chihururu* (3).
- glad, - *be*, - *fara* ; - *ya no moyo*
muchena.
- be very —, - *dambirira* ; - *fari-*
kana ; - *shangara* ; - *sharanganya* ;
- *zekenya*.
- gladden, - *fadza* ; - *farisa* ; - *chenesa*
moyo ; - *dzimura* (or *dzima*) *moyo*.
- gladness, *mufaro* (2) ; *moyo muchena*
(2).
- glass (looking —), *chiyoniyoni* (3).
- gleam, - *penya*. See 'glitter.'
- (- shine faintly), - *taima*.
- glean in garden, - *fumurudza*.
- glide (as snake), - *xonga* ; - *zoya*.
- out of hole, - *shozhonoka* ; - *soya* ;
- *totonyoka* ; - *tutunuka*.
- (steal away silently), - *guva*.
- glimpse, - have a, - *vona madzengerere*
(*madzereere*).
- glitter, - *penya* ; - *bġinya* ; - *bġi-*
bġinya ; - *bġituka* ; - *naima* ;
nanima ; - *ngaima* ; - *vaima*.
- gloomy, - *be*, - *šiba* ; - *šibirgwa*.
- glorify, - *kudzisa* ; - *tunidza* ; - *tuni-*
ridza.
- glory, *kuanya* (8) ; *ku bġinya* (8).
- glow, - *penya* ; - *tsuka*.
- glue, n., *namu* (4).
- v., - *rumatidza* ; - *namatidza* ; - *rumi-*
kidza ; - *batanidza*.
- gluttonous, - *be*, - *ya na madyo* ;
- *ladyisa* ; - *ya ne guru*.
- (be an epicure), - *ya ne nafu* ;
- *ya ne mango*.
- gluttonously, - eat, - *fundarara* ; - *fu-*
ndata.
- gnash, - *rumanya meno* ; *gwedagwe-*
desa.
- teeth, if very ill, - *ita wiche*.

- gnat, *runyunyu* (6) (pl. *yunyunyu*).
- gnaw (as mice), - *telena* ; - *nununa* ;
- *gededza* ; - *checheta* ; - *gededura* ;
- *chechenya*.
- (eat something hard as toast),
- *pupuna* ; - *panda* (*banda*) ;
- *pupunura* ; - *duduna* ; - *dudu-*
nura ; - *gwegwedura*.
- (pick a bone), - *nununa*.
- go, - *inda* (*enda*) ; - *wenda* ; - *famba* ;
- *kwenda* ; - *minawuka*.
- across country, - *gure nyika* ;
- *chinjika*.
- back, - *dzoka* ; - *dzokera* ; - *bġirira*.
- further, - *pinziridza* ; - *pfuyura*
mberi ; - *pindirira mberi*.
- abreast, - *famba no musara* ;
- *famba ne runda*.
- apart, - *paradzana*.
- in file, - *ita mudungwe* ; - *teyerana* ;
- *tungamizana*.
- up, - *kwira*.
- down, - *buruka* ; - *dzira* ; - *dzaka* ;
- *pfozoka*.
- in, - *pinda*.
- in front, - *tungamira* ; - *pfuyura*
mberi.
- right into, - *pangura* ; - *pasura*.
- near, - (s) *hwedera* ; - *sedera*.
- out, forth, - *buda* ; - *bva*.
- on side of road, - *vandulira*.
- astray, - *rashika* ; (wandering,
looking for path), - *dzungaira*.
- past, - *pfuyura* ; - *pinda*.
- abroad, - *papa nyika*.
- in another direction (as of rain),
- *zenga* ; - *zenga-zenga*.
- away, - *bva* ; - *tama* ; - *siya* ;
(without saying goodbye), - *we-*
shuka.
- altogether (very far), - *pewuka* ;
- *wunga*.
- backwards, - *inda na masunda* ;
- *inda ne nenda sule* ; - *inda ne*
sule ; - *funduruka* ; - *suduruka* ;
- *suduyuka*.
- in round-about way, - *chengudzira*.
- backwards and forwards, - *dze-*
mberera.
- by another way, - *tendenedza*.
- cautiously (as snake or cat),
- *veryaira*.

- go down, - *dzira*; - *buruka*; - *pfosoka*; - *dzaka*.
- down (of river), - *dzoya*.
- down stream, - *kuku(r)gwa*; - *ku-mu(r)gwa*.
- forward, - *pfupura mberi*; - *pindi-rira mberi*; - *tutsa*.
- on belly, - *zoza*.
- on some distance, - *tutsa nambo*.
- off (as a gun), - *rira*.
- out of the way, - *tsawuka*.
- out (as of fire), - *dzima*.
- round, - *pota*; - *yandulira*.
- by the way of, - *pota na*; - *potera na*.
- round and round, - *monereka*; - *potereka*; - *dzunguruka*.
- down (as the sun), - *yira*; - *doka*; - *nyura*.
- in the direction of the wind, - *furaira mepo*.
- against the wind, - *chingura mepo*; - *tarira ku mepo*.
- straight, - *rurama*; - *ruramisa*.
- home from garden, - *kotoka*; - *kotoroka*.
- in different directions, - *reyana*; - *tekeshera*; - *pararira*.
- often to same place, - *pfudza*.
- with (- accompany), - *perekedza*; - *pereka*; (- a little way), - *sunda*.
- without invitation, - *kotosa*.
- on foot, - *famba na makumbo*.
- on horseback, - *famba ne biza*; - *taza biza*.
- through, - *duka*.
- round (as the hand of a clock), - *dzunguruka*.
- from one place to another, - *tsekaira*.
- for something (e.g. medicine for invalid), - *chikaira*.
- goal, *naridzano* (4).
- goat, *mbudzi* (4).
- (old), *goko* (5).
- (female), *nunzi* (4).
- (male), *nongo* (4).
- (ram), *gweme* (5); (old ram), *wotora* (4).
- (kid), *mbudzana* (4).
- native — hut, *chirugu* (3); (place for fastening goats in hut), *chihoko* (3); *chisungo* (3).

- God (of heaven), *Mudzimu we denga* (1); *Musika yanu* (1) (i.e. Creator).
- Godhead, *yu-Mudzimu* (7).
- godless, - *be*, - *sa* *thia Mudzimu*; - *sa shumira Mudzimu*.
- gold, *boudo* (4) (for.); *ndarama* (4).
- good, adj., 'yuya,' with class prefix.
- *be* —, - *naka*; - *pfaya*.
- it is good! *za ka naka! ndigo! za ya ndigo!*
- natured, - 'nyoro' with class prefix.
- good-bye! *sarai! sarai henyu! ta siya!*
- bid —, - *woneka*.
- good day! *kwaziwa! ta wombera! sikati!*
- good manners, - *have*, - *zi ruramisa*; - *zi fambira za ka naka*.
- goodness, *ku naka* (8); *yunaki* (7); *yunyoro* (7) (i.e. kindness).
- goods, *numbi* (4); *fuma* (4).
- good-will, *moyo muchena* (2).
- goose, *sekwe* (5).
- *gore*, - *baya*; - *tunga*; - *tatura*; - *yodzonga*.
- gorge, n., *mukaha* (2).
- v. (eat gluttonously), - *fundata*; - *fundarara*.
- Gospel, *Eyangeli* (4) (for.).
- *gossip*, - *ita makuwa*; - *ita chimbere*.
- n., *makuwa* (5 pl.).
- (tale bearer), *chinyange* (3).
- *govern*, - *bata*; - *yusa*; - *raira*.
- government, *horumende* (4) (for.).
- (kingdom), *yushe* (7).
- governor, *mubati* (1); *she* (1); *mambo* (1) (great chief).
- *grab*, - *pamba*; - *tora ne simba*; - *wika*; - *bvuta*. See 'snatch.'
- food from others, - *bvuyana*.
- grace, *nyasha* (4); *sisi* (4) (*tsitsi*); *ngoni* (4).
- gradually (slow or gently), adv., *chinyai*; *zivuya*.
- grain (general), *ziyo* (3) pl. only.
- single —, *shanga* (4).
- the day's portion of —, *njera* (4).
- a little — on grinding stone, *dzinde* (5).
- abundance of —, *muchokothwa* (2).

grain (maize), *mabargwe* (5); *chibargwe* (3); (kinds of maize), *mushaya guli* (2); *gweru* (5); *godí* (5); *runuli* (6).
 — (stamped), *shoyo* (4).
 — (small blue), *munga* (4).
 — (small brown), *rukweza* (6); (kinds of *rukweza*), *mbewana* (4); *chibge* (3); *garindi* (5); *changa-mire* (3); *chikwai* (3); *ndundu* (4); *wishu* (4); *mashoyole* (5 pl.); *chinyamandi* (3); *mande* (4); *chimbire* (3); *malamba* (5 pl.).
 — (Kafir corn), *mapfunde* (5 pl.).
 — and chaff mixed, *makoto* (5 pl.).
 — coming up too thickly, *runye* (6).
 heap of unthreshed —, *buro* (5).
 granary, *dura* (5).
 — (small), *chitura* (3); *gombana* (5).
 — full of last year's grain, *chipebge* (3).
 — for storing grain before threshing, *tsapi* (4).
 — plastered all round, also roof, *wikwiyo* (4).
 grand, - be, - *kura*; - *nakisa*.
 grandchild, *muzukuru* (1); (— son), *mukoroli* (1).
 grandfather (maternal), *sekuri* (1).
 — (paternal), *tateguru* (1); *teleguru* (1).
 grandmother (maternal), *mbuya* (1).
 — (paternal), *mbuya* (1).
 - grant (give), - *pa*; - *tendera* (i.e. allow).
 grape (wild), *zambiringa* (5); *sambasi* (5).
 - grapple, - *ita mitsimba*; - *tsukunika*.
 - grasp (take hold), - *batisa*; - *bata ne simba*; - *wika*; - *wikira*; - *kwi-nyata*; - *haka* (aka).
 — at something, - *tsomekera*.
 — (snatch from), - *momotera*; - *bvuta*; - *wita*; - *hasura*; - *hatura*.
 grass, *yushwa* (*yushwa*) (7); *mbushwa* (*mbushwa*) (4).
 (thick —), *mova* (4).
 (thick and tall —), *nenje* (4).
 kind of sharp —, *domba mou* (5).

grass, luxuriant —, *bomo* (5).
 grazing —, *bundo* (5).
 young —, *bumudza* (5); *rushwishi* (6); *mavividza* (5 pl.); *mazizidza* (5 pl.).
 old —, *yusharu* (7); (last year's —), *murara* (2).
 tall —, *nutu* (4 pl.).
 — remaining after fire, *zitsinzinzi* (3 pl.).
 — (rushes), *nokwe* (4).
 long coarse —, *shaya-huru* (4).
 reed —, *dangaruhwa* (5); *mutopota* (2).
 — for plaiting, *rushambo* (6).
 broom —, *dzairo* (5).
 — (a short, soft kind for mattresses), *rukukun(d)gwa* (6).
 grasshopper (large), *mashu-mapfunde* (4); *doronoro* (5); *sumga-sumga* (5); *bamba-mukota* (5); *mota-no-musha* (4).
 — (small), *chidodo* (3); *chipashu-pashu* (3); *chitota* (3).
 grassy place, *dina* (5).
 - grate, v., - *kwiza*; - *fufumura*.
 — (on ears), - *yawuwiza*.
 — n. (hearth), *choto* (3).
 grateful, - be, - *tenda*; - *yonga*.
 gratitude, *ku tenda* (8); *rutendo* (6); *nendo* (4).
 grave, *bgiro* (7); *rinda* (5).
 — (of chief), *mapa* (4); *banya* (5).
 gravy, *muto* (2).
 gray-haired, - be, - *ya na mavudzi machena*; — *man*, *nyamupembe* (1).
 - graze, v.i., - *fura*; - *chera*.
 — v.t., - *fudza*; - *chedza*.
 — (chafe), - *gotora*.
 grazed, - be, - *gotoka*; - *gotiwa*; - *swuka*.
 grazing-field, *mafuro* (5 pl.); *bundo* (5).
 grease, n., *mafuta* (5 pl. only).
 — v.t., - *zora*; - *zodza*.
 great, adj., 'kuru' with class prefix.
 greatly, adv., *zikuru*; *kwazo*.
 greatness, *yukuru* (7).
 greedy, - be, - *ya na malayo* (in eating).

greediness, *yuchiwa* (7); (— in eating), *mawanzishwa* (5 pl.); *mam(h)angira* (5 pl.); *rukarasira* (6).

green, adj., 'tema' with class prefix.

light —, *pfumbu*; 'chena' with class prefix.

—, - be, v., - *siba*.

greens, *mitigo* (2 pl.).

- greet, - *kwazisa*.

— (with clapping), - *yuchira*; - *bonda*; - *sozera* (*sozesa*).

— a chief, - *wombera*.

— the new moon, - *kuwa*.

greeting (general), *kwaziwa*!

grey, adj., *pfumbu*; 'chena' with class prefix.

grief, *ku chema* (8); *ku rgwadziwa moyo* (8); *shungu* (4).

- grieve, - *chema*; - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*.

— (- be in great sorrow), - *wungudza*.

grieved, - be, - *dumbira*; - *rgwadziwa moyo*.

grievous, - be, - *ipa zikuru*; - *ipisa*.

- grill, - *gocha*.

grimaces, - make, - *chonya*.

- grin, - *mngenguka*; - *mgekulira*; - *mgenyuka*; - *nyemganga*; - *chenama* (i.e. show the teeth);

- *nyenama*.

- grind, - *kuya*; - *gaya* (for.).

— a little meal, - *kwadzura*; - *wadzura*.

— fine, - *tsetsa*; - *nana*.

— coarsely, - *mazha*; - *kundira* (*gundira*); - *mazhura*; - *gazhura*;

- *pazhura*; - *moisa*; - *sundira*.

— over again, - *tsetsenura*.

grinding-stone, *chirodzo* (3).

— for tobacco, *chikuyo* (3).

— for grain, *guyo* (5).

— (small upper), *huyo* (4).

griped, - be, - *rumga mu dumbu*; - *chanyawurgwa*; - (*nzg*) *wa nyoka*;

- *shonyorogwa*; - *rumga-rumga*.

gripes, *manyongo* (5 pl.).

— (of infant), *ruzoka* (6).

- groan, - *gomera*; - *yuyura*.

groaning (in sleep), *mbuyudzi* (4).

groin, *mgabavu* (2); *vandamga* (5).

- grope, - *vambama*; - *fambiromo*; - *tsangadzira*; - *tsanzadzira*;

- *vambamira*; - *bamadzira*.

ground, *pasi* (9).

— floor, *guya* (5).

— (soil), *vu* (5).

ground-bean, *nyimo* (4).

ground-nut, *nzungu* (4).

group, *chipoka* (3); *chisumbo* (3);

chipororo (3); *chitsama* (3);

muzama (2) (*chizama* (3)); *maza-*

kwatira (5 pl.).

- grow (of person), - *kura*.

— fast, - *hataira*; - *tutuma*.

— (of grain), - *mera*.

— afresh, - *surura*.

—, begin to (of grass after having been burnt), - *sinira*.

— thickly, - *kukumuka*.

— large, - *kura*; - *reba*.

- make to —, - *medza*.

— old, - *kwegura* (of human beings); - *chembera* (of women); - *tanamara* (of men); - *shakara* (of things).

— fat, - *kora*.

— thin, - *wonda*.

— stop growing, - *soka*.

- growl, - *vomba*; - *gannya*; - *rumba*; — as lion, - *ita madududu*.

grown, - be, - *aruka*.

grown up, - be, - *ya mukuru* (1); (of girl), - *pita*.

— girl, *mandara* (4).

— boy, *jaya* (5); *mujaya* (1).

grub, *honye* (4); *gonye* (5).

— (young bees), *zana* (5).

- grudge, v., - *nyima*; - *ita zishura*; - *ponya*.

— n., *zishuro* (5).

- grumble, - *nununa*; - *koma*; - *gannya*; - *vurama*.

- grunt, - *vomba*.

grysbuck, *miti* (4); *deke* (5).

- guard, - *rinda*; - *tarira*; - *chengeta*.

— against, - *chenjera*; - *tarisisa*.

guardian, *murindi* (1); *mutariri* (1); *muchengeti* (1).

— of child whose father is dead, *bambo* (1).

- guess, - *fembera*; - *kambira* (estimate).

guest, *mgeni* (1); *mumutsi* (1); *mushanyi* (1).
 - guide, - *perekedza*; - *pereka*; - *tu-ngamirira*.
 — n., *muperekedzi* (1); *mupereki* (1); *mutungamiri* (1).
 guile, n., *ku nyengera* (8); *ku nyengedzera* (8); *nema* (4 pl.).
 guilt, *maka* (4); *mosa* (4); *ngaya* (5); *murando* (1).
 guilty, - be, - *ya ne maka*; - *va ne mosa*.
 guinea fowl, *hanga* (4).
 gulf, *mukaha* (2).
 - gulp, - *gwakwira*.
 gum (of trees), *namu* (4); *donje* (5); *nyonje* (4).

gums (of teeth), *mataadza* (5 pl.).
 gumboil, *mota mu mataadza*.
 gun, *pfuti* (4); *chigidi* (3).
 barrel of —, *mumembe* [(2), *mu-pembe* (2)].
 stock of —, *garu* (5).
 lock of —, *meno* (5 pl.).
 trigger of —, *chikogono* (3).
 sight of —, *ziso* (5).
 ramrod of —, *musopero* (2).
 gun-cap, *kothio* (4). See 'cap.'
 gunpowder, *yunga* (7); *musiri* (2); *yusiri* (7).
 — horn, *gonapombe* (5).
 - gush out, - *dubvuka*; - *dzutuka*; - *tuduka*.
 — (flow fast out of vessel), - *chururuka*; - *chachama*.

H

habit, *mutoyo* (2); *tsika* (4); *mugarire* (2); *munyire* (2); *musangu* (2).
 - be in the habit, - *royera*; - *royerera*.
 habitually, adv., 'si' used before verb root.
 hail, *chimvura-mabge* (3).
 — v. (call from a distance), - *shoyedzera*; - *singudzira*.
 — v. (greet), - *kwazisa*; - *yuchira*.
 hail! interj., *kwaziwa! ia wombera!*
 hair of head, *vudzi* (5).
 — (unkempt), *mabviyi* (5 pl.); *mamvaranyanya* (5 pl.).
 — (short woolly), *motsi* (4).
 — (big bunch, matted), *mutsikwa* (2); *nduni* (4).
 — of body, *mvere* (4 pl.).
 — of animal, *mvere* (4 pl.); *makuse* (5 pl.); *mananga* (5 pl.).
 — (very small tuft on head), *ruzumu* (6).
 — (forelock), *bumu* (5).
 — (tuft on head), *rudongo* (6); *dendeyule* (5).
 strip of —, *betu* (5); *gwara-kwara* (5).
 — (round patch on top of head), *nemba* (4); *nesa* (4).

hair shaven on one side, *mavezhu* (5 pl.).
 - shave the —, - *yeyura*.
 - cut the —, - *gurira*; - *gera* (for.); - *gunda*.
 dress the — or beard, - *petura*.
 hairless, - be, - *sa ya ne mvere*; - *sa ya ne vudzi*.
 hairy, - be, - *ya ne mvere*.
 hale, adj., 'kukutu,' with class prefix.
 half full, - be, - *ita dikatika*; - *ita gama*; - *ita ziamga*; - *ita gasa*; - *ita nenga*.
 half cooked, - be, - *fuva*.
 — done, - be (of work), - *siyirigwa pa zira*.
 — hearted, - be, - *ya ne chinyara*; - *ita dawaira*; - *ya ne sine*; - *kondoroka*.
 — heartedness, *runyara* (6).
 half-crown, *fogoroi* (5) (for.).
 - hallow, - *shanangura*; - *isawura*.
 - halt, - *mira*.
 halting-place, *mazororo* (5 pl.); *mapanururo* (5 pl.) (for.); *masununguro* (5 pl.).
 - halve, - *gura na pakati*.
 ham, *nyama ye nguruzye* (4).
 hammer, *nyundo* (*nyondo* (4)); *ndo-vero* (4).

hammer for stone, *chiyangamabge* (3).
 — v.t., - *roya ne nyundo*; - *pfura ne nyundo*.
 — gently, - *dododza*; - *gogodza*; - *jowonya*. See 'rap.'
 — out, - *worora*.
 hand, *ruyoko* (6).
 — (palm of), *chanza* (3).
 — (right), *ruyoko rgwo muldyi* (6); *rudyi* (6).
 — (left), *ruyoko rgwo rubo(s)hwe*; *mubo(s)hwe* (2).
 to put out the —, - *tambunudza*.
 to open the —, - *tadzamira*.
 to close the —, - *fumbatira*.
 - hand on, v., - *gamuchidza*; - *achidza*; - *pa*.
 — over chieftainship, - *kwidzengara*.
 handful, (r)gwaza (*rgwanza*) (6); *ruyoko ru zere*; *isama* (4).
 take —, - *isamura*.
 — (palmful of tobacco), *nembe ye foldya* (4).
 handle, *chibato* (3); *mupini* (*mupinyi*) (2).
 — of knife, *chihara* (3).
 — v.t., - *bata*.
 handsome, adj., 'yuya' with class prefix.
 handsome, - be, - *naka pa chiso* (or *meso*).
 — be very —, - *yayaya*.
 — person, *zinyakatira* (5).
 — hang up, - *remberedza*; - *rembedza*.
 — (put on high), - *tuliha*.
 — on a nail or peg, - *pfakamisa*; - *korekedza*; - *kochechera*; - *pfenedza*; - *pfekedza*; - *kashamisa*.
 — hang oneself, - *zi sungirira*; - *gi sungira*.
 — down, - *rembera*; - *remberera*; - *re-ruka*.
 — down (droop), - *yuna*.
 — out in the sun, - *nika*.
 hanging, - be (remain hanging), - *korechera*; - *pfakama*.
 - happen, - *i(t)hwa*; - *itika*; - *itihara*.
 - happen to, - *yinga*; - *wira*.
 happily, - live, - *garika*; - *gara za ha naka*.
 happiness, *mufaro* (2); *ku fara* (8); *mufargwa* (2).

happy, - be, - *fara*; - *shangara*; - *sharanganya* (very happy); - *ita muchechelere*.
 hard, adj., *kukutu*, with class prefix.
 —, - be, v., - *kukutara*; - *gozha*; - *woma*.
 — (difficult), - *gozha*; - *rema*; - *sa buira*; - *tana*.
 — (as of master), - *kasharara*.
 — be — (of pumpkin), - *komba*.
 — have a — time, - *tambura*.
 — harden, - *womesa*.
 — (heart), - *womesa*; - *yangaradza*.
 hardened, - be, - *yangarara*; - *riri-yara*; - *siriyuka*; - *tiriyara*.
 hard-hearted, - be, - *chachayara*; - *simbarara*; - *yangarara*.
 — person, *chirara* (3).
 hardness, *yukukutu* (7); *yutsungi* (7).
 hardship, *namo* (4); *ku tambura* (8).
dzingo (5); *njodzi* (4).
 hare, *shuro* (4); *mangeya* (4).
 — (jerboa), *gwizhu* (*gwizu*) (5).
 harm, n., *chinyiko* (4); *tadziko* (4); *maka* (4); *ku rgwadziwa* (8).
 there is no —, *ha ku ne maka*.
 — v.t., - *chinya*; - *chinyidza*; - *rgwadza*.
 harness, *makashu* (5 pl.) (i.e. *riema*).
 harp (native, of string), *chidandare* (3).
 harrow, *haraka* (4) (for.).
 harsh, - be, - *ya ne hashaka*.
 — (of sound), - *nwawudza*.
 harshly, adv., *ne hashaka*.
 —, - speak, - *yomba*.
 hartebeest, *nondo* (4).
 harvest, n., *ku cheka* (8); *ku kowa* (8).
 —, v., - *cheka*; - *kowa*.
 — take care of —, - *korona*.
 harvest time, *mu* (or *pa*) *ku cheka*.
 harvest time of green maize, pumpkins, etc., *zhezha* (5); *masutsiro* (5 pl.).
 harvester, *mucheke* (1); *mukowi* (1).
 haste, *ku chimbidzika* (8).

- hasten, - *chimbizika*; - *chimbirika*; - *kurumbidza*; - *kurumidza*; - *yirikhidza*.

— (run fast), - *yangisa*; - *manyisa*.

hat, *ngowani* (4); *rutenga* (6).

- hatch, - *garira*; - *yatira*; - *varira*; - *rindira* (*mazai*).

hatchet, *sanu* (5) (*shanu* (5)); *dimuro* (5).

- hate, - *yenga*; - *sema*; - *nenga*; - *ita runainai*.

- be —d by all, - *shambga*.

hatred, *ku yenga* (8); *shungu* (4 pl.); *mbengo* (4).

haughty, - *be*, - *zi kudza*. See 'proud.'

- have, - *ya* (i.e. the verb 'to be') followed by the part. *na* (no, ne). See p. 67.

hawk, *njerere* (4); *ruyangu* (6); *gondo* (5).

harmless —, *gwamuramakwande* (6).

hay, *yu(s)hwa bga ka wome(s)hwa*.

haze, *mute* (4); *yuma* (7).

he, 'u' in independent, and 'a' in dependent sentences; 'wa' in past tense.

— (this one), *iye*, *uyu*.

— (that one yonder), *uyo*; *uyoyo*.

head, *musoro* (*mushoro*) (2).

— (large flat), *baro* (5).

— rest, *mutsago* (2); *chitsamiro* (3).

— of grain, *hura* (4); *mgonzoro* (2) (of 'munga').

— of maize, *hupi* (4).

— shaven off on one side, *vezhu* (5).

—, — altogether, *barayara* (5).

back of —, *goti* (5).

- shake the —, - *dzungudza*.

- nod — in assent, - *gutsura*.

headache, - *have*, - (*nzg*)*wa musoro*; - *ya no musoro*.

headman, *mukuru* (1); *she* (1).

headstrong, - *be*, - *ya no musimbga*; - *ya no yuhunzi*; - *simbarara*.

- heal, - *podza*; - *porisa*; - *ponesa*; - *raramisa*.

— v.i., - *pora*.

health, n., *mufargwa* (2); *yukukutu* (7).

health, - *be in good* —, - *fara*; - *buda*; - *famba*; - *farikana*.

- *be in bad* —, - *rgwara*; - *rgwaziwa*; - *ya ne denda*.

heap, *dutu* (5); *murgwe* (2); *chamungwe* (great heap).

— of dirt, *durunuro* (5); *dutiro* (5).

— up, v., - *tutira*; - *ita murgwe*; - *yungaidza*; - *yungaidza*; - *tutu-mbgidza*.

- hear, - *w(h)a*; - (*nzg*)*wa*.

heard, - *be*, - *wikwa*; - *nzgwika*; - *nzika*.

- hearken (= listen), - *terera*; - *nzgwa*.

heart, *moyo* (2); *mgoyo* (2); *mumba* (9).

— (pith of tree), *moyo wo muti* (2).

heartsome, - *be*, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*; - *zi ldya moyo*; - *moniwa ne shungu*.

- make —, - *yungaidza ne shungu*.

— n., *rutina* (6); *chatsura* (3); *chirunguriro* (3).

hearth, *choto* (3).

— stones, *mapfiwa* (5 pl.); *matego* (5 pl.).

heartily, adv., *no moyo wose*; *no moyo muchena*.

heat, *xiya* (5); *ku dziya* (8); *ku pisa* (8).

— (close weather), *divutigu* (5).

—, v.t., - *dziyisa*.

heathen, *muheideni* (1) (for.).

heaven, *denga* (5); *ku denga* (8).

heavy, - *be*, - *rema*; (very —), - *remesa*.

— (with sleep), - *rembga*.

- *be rather* —, - *remererera*.

- *be heavy and black* (of clouds), - *senguka*.

- *make* —, - *remedza*.

hedge, *ruzhowa* (6).

— of poles, *rumanda* (6). See 'fence.'

hedgohog, *nungu* (4); *ngara* (4).

- heed, - *terera*; - *ya ne hanya*.

not to —, - *ila mgya-mgya*; - *sa ya ne hanya*.

- *take* —, - *chenjera*; - *tarisisa*; - *ngwara*.

— illness, - *terera muziri*.

— n., *hanya* (4).

heel, *chitsitsinu* (3); *chidondoya* (3).
 he goat, *nongo* (4).
 heifer (three or four years old), *tsiru* (5).
 — (small, about one year), *shoppha* (4); *morombe* (4).
 — (rather large), *shunga-tsiru* (4).
 — (full-grown), *shunga-mou* (4).
 height, *yurefu* (7); *yukuru* (7); *chimi* (3); *mum(h)u* (2).
 inaccessible —, *ngurungundu* (4).
 — overlooking surrounding country, *muturamire* (2).
 heir, *mugari we naka* (1); *mulayi we naka* (1); *m̄anazari* (1); *sazita* (1).
 hell, *moto u si nga dzimi* (i.e. fire that does not go out), *gomba ro moto* (i.e. pit of fire).
 - help, - *betsera*; - *batisa*; - *batsa*; - *betsa*; - *detsera*.
 — an invalid to walk, - *nanaidza*.
 helper, *mubetseri* (1); *mubatsi* (1); *mubatsi* (1).
 helpless, - *be*, - *shaiwa mubetseri*.
 — (weak), - *sa ya ne simba*; - *shaiwa simba*.
 — (stupid), - *shaiwa mano*.
 — person, *dera* (5); *neya* (4).
 helplessness, *yutera* (7); *yuneva* (7); *yutere* (7).
 hem, *mupendero* (2); *mendero* (4); *meto* (4); *mupeto* (2).
 - hem in, - *komberedza*; - *poteredza*; - *komba* (- *kombera*).
 hemp, *mbanje* (4).
 hen, *mambo* (4); *nunzi ye huku*; *hadzi ye huku*.
 her (poss. pron.), 'ke' or 'kwe', preceded by the gen. part. of governing noun.
 — (acc. pers. pron.), 'mu' before verb root.
 — self (emphatic pron.), *iye a mene*; (reflex pron.) 'zi' before verb root.
 herb, *gwenzi* (5).
 — used for medicine, *muti* (2).
 herbivorous, - *be*, - *ldya yushwa*; - *chera*; - *fura*.
 herd, *mufudzi* (1); *mulisi* (1).
 — (drove), *boka* (5); (large drove), *dambi* (5).

- herd, v., - *fudza*; - *lisa*; - *chedza*.
 here! interj., *nandi*!
 here, adv., *pano*; *yuno*; *kuno*; *muno* (i.e. in here).
 he is not —, *ha a po*.
 hero, *mare* (4); *mutsumgi* (1).
 heroism, *yumare* (7).
 heron, *kondo* (4); *hondo* (4).
 - hesitate, - *nyunyuta*; - *rurumga*; - *tsutsumga*; - *kasa*.
 - hew, - *tema*.
 — off, - *gura*.
 — lengthwise, - *pamira*; - *bamura*; - *pazura*.
 hiccough, *munikwi* (2).
 — v., - *dikurgwa*.
 - hide, - *vanda*; - *vandira*.
 — v.t., - *yanza*.
 — n. (skin), *debge* (5); *ganda* (5).
 hide and seek, *chamuyandgwamu-vandgwa* (3).
 hiding place, *nzimba* (4).
 high, *refu*; *ndefu* (i cl.).
 —, - *be*, - *reba*.
 —, - *make*, - *rebesa*.
 — adv., *ku msoro*; *ku denga*.
 very — up, *ku refu*.
 — priest, *muprisita mukuru* (1) (for.).
 — priesthood, *yuprisita yukuru* (7).
 highest point of rock (or mountain), *nulika* (4); *nulikwa* (4).
 highway, *gumbu* (5); *zhira huru* (4).
 hill, *gomo* (5); (small —), *chikomo* (3); *chinwara* (3).
 — where chief of tribe lives, *gadzingo* (5).
 stony —, *gangarabge* (5).
 — with good soil, *zwara* (5).
 side of —, *jinga re gomo*.
 — (very hilly country), *nyika i na mangorongondo*.
 him, 'mu', before verb root.
 — (emphatic), *iye*.
 himself (emphatic), *a mene*; (reflexive), 'zi' before verb root.
 hind, 'sule', preceded by gen. part. of governing noun, e.g. *hind leg, gumbo re sule*.

- hinder, - *dziyisa*; - *dziyirira*; - *rambisa*; - *dzemberedza*; - *pingaidza*; - *pinganidza*.
- hint, - *tindika* (- *tindikira*).
- n., - *dindikwa* (5).
- hip, *hulyu* (4).
- bone, *nunje* (4).
- hippopotamus, *ngwindi* (4); *mvuyu* (4).
- hire (for war), - *pika*. See 'engage.'
- his, 'ke' or 'kwe' preceded by the gen. part. of governing noun.
- hiss (of snake), - *shinyira*.
- hit, - *roya*; (— hard) - *dabura*.
- the head, - *tema*. See 'beat.'
- hive, *mukoko* (2); — in an inaccessible place, *gonera* (5). See 'bee.'
- hoard up, - *banga*.
- hoar-frost, *chando* (3); *mazaya* (5 pl.).
- hoarse, - be, - *shaiwa nzgwi*; - *dziyira nzgwi* (- *dziyira*); - *foyoa*; - *zarirgwa nzgwi*.
- hoarseness, *chidziyira nzgwi*.
- hoe, *badza* (5); *piki* (5) (for.).
- (old), *gwawu* (5).
- (very much worn), *chinwango* (3); *chisarima* (3).
- v., - *rima*. See 'cultivate.'
- hoeing party (to work in garden), *humge* (4).
- hog, *nguruye* (4); *humba* (4). See 'pig.'
- hold, - *bata*.
- take —, - *kwinyata*; - *bata*.
- the hand, - *tambunudza*; - *chingudzira*; - *chinga*.
- in the arms, - *senga*; - *fungatira*; - *bungatira*.
- hole (opening), *vuli* (5); *buli* (5).
- small —, *rusuruyuli* (6).
- deep —, *bgendedzo* (7); *gwir-ngwindi* (5).
- in the ground, *gomba* (5); — (for storing sweet potatoes), *fimbi* (4).
- in a tree or tooth, *mango* (4).
- in something hard, *mbuldya* (4); *mbuldyo* (4).
- (well or shaft), *mugodi* (2); *ninga* (4).

- hole made for planting maize, *ga* (5).
- of small animal, *mgena* (2).
- of mouse, *mbuldyo* (4).
- large —, *guru* (5).
- s of ants, *nnono* (4).
- holiday, *makakulimge* (day of cessation of work).
- hollow (in fruit or skin), *gofa* (5).
- adj., 'gofu' with class prefix.
- out, - *chera*; - *fenga*.
- be — at stomach, - *ti hobo*; - *kabuka*.
- side of belly, *gana* (5).
- holy, - be, - *shanangurgwa*; - *tsawurgwa*.
- one, *mutawurgwa* (1).
- thing, *cha ka shanangurgwa* (3); (*cha ka sanangurgwa*) (3); *cha ka tsawurgwa* (3).
- homage, - do, - *kudza*; - *namata*; - *rumbidza*.
- home, *musha* (2); *yugaro* (7).
- honest, - be, - *rungama*; - *rurama*; - *sa nyengera*.
- honey, *vuchi* (7); — of small kind of bee, *monga* (4).
- bear, *sere* (4) (*chisere* (3)).
- bee, *nyuchi* (4).
- bird, *shezhu* (4).
- oomb, *zinga* (5).
- empty dry — oomb, *beperera* (5); *mondo* (4).
- (liquid), *mudo* (2); *musi* (2).
- cell, *nyere* (4).
- (wax), *namo* (4).
- take out honey, - *bura*.
- honour, *ku kudziwa* (8).
- v., - *kudza*; - *kudzisa*; - *kurisa*.
- hool, *wanda* (5); *gwanda* (5); small —, *chizondo* (3); *dziko* (5).
- hook, *chikokoyo* (3); *chikokoyono* (3).
- fish —, *chiredzo* (3); *chirawuro* (3).
- hoop, *gango* (5).
- hope, *tariro* (4); *miriro* (4); *naviro* (4).
- v., - *tarira*; - *mirira*.
- horn, *runyanga* (6).
- for smoking, or for gunpowder, *gonanombe* (5).

horn for sucking blood, *murumiko* (2).

war —, *wamanda* (4) (*wama*);
space between horns, *dongoma* (5); *manda* (4).

hornet, *go* (5).

small —, *gombudzi* (5).

large —, *wombera* (5).

horse, *biza* (5).

horse fly, *yuyu* (5); *nono* (4).

— hair, *pfuna* (4).

host, see 'crowd.'

hot, - be, - *pisa*; - *dziya*; (of weather), - *tiyurira*.

hot weather, *ziya* (5); (close —), *diyutiyu* (5).

hour, *nambo* (4); *nguya* (4); *nguli* (4).

house (hut), *imba* (4); *mu'mba* (in the house); — of chief, *numba* (4). See 'hut.'

household, *mulu* (4); *bulu* (5).

— work, - do, - *shanda*.

- hover, - *engerera*; - *dsengerera*.

how? *sei? sei? ko? ku dini?*

— many? *ngana? ngani?*

— often? *rungana? kangana?*

however, *nyangwe za ka dero*; *nyanguya ku dero* (or *za ka dero*); — (but), *bua*.

- howl, - *rira*; - *chema*; - *wudza* (of dog).

- huddle together, v.i., - *vungana panu pamge*; - *vumbira*; - *manikidzana*.

(sit huddled up), - *buubuwara*.

huge, adj., *kuru-kuru*; *kurusa*, with class prefix.

- hum (as of bee), - *wunga*.

— a tune, - *imbira mu muromo*; - *imbira mu meno*.

human, 'munu' preceded by the gen. part. of governing noun, e.g. human arm, *ruyoko rgwo munu*.

humble, - be, - *zi ninipisa*; - *zi dokopadza*; - *zi ita mudoko*; - *zi dokosa*.

- humiliate (- despise), - *ninipisa*; - *dokopadza*; - *dokosa*; - *shoyora*; - *zidza*; - *pungunura*.

— (- make ashamed), - *nyadza*; - *so-desa*.

humiliation, *yuninipiso* (7); *yuniniso* (7), &c.

humour (fun), *mujeye* (2); *musere* (2); *mushazhe* (2); *rusetso* (6).

humorous person, *mushazhi* (2).

hump (of man), *bundu* (5).

— (of animal), *nyungwa* (4) (*nyundgwa* (4)); *rutisinga* (6).

hundred, *zana* (5).

hundredth, 'zana' preceded by gen. part. of governing noun.

hunger, *zhara* (4).

hungry, - be, - *fa ne zhara*; - *ziya*.

- hunt, - *vima*; — (go about hunting), - *ndandamira*.

— (- search), - *kuasha*; - *tsaka*.

hunter, *muwimi* (1); *mudzimba* (1); *mubayi we nyama* (1).

hunting on a place where grass is not burnt, *rute* (6).

hurricane, *dutu guru* (5).

- hurry, - *chimbizika*; - *kurumbidza*; - *kurumidza*; - *chimbirika*; - *ita mvinya-mvinya*; - be in a —, - *yivigwa*.

- hurt, - *rgwadza*; - *kuwadza*; - *remadza*; - *chinya*.

— very much, - *ndulika*.

— the eye, - *teya meso*; - *toşora*.

— the skin, - *pozora*.

— a sore place, - *dzindira*; - *dzimmbira*.

— by knocking against, - *bondera*; - *gumura*.

— by knocking the foot, - *gumbura*.

— (as of indigestion), - *gomora moyo*.

— one's feelings, - *rgwadza moyo*; - *tubura moyo*.

— sharply, - *gogonera*; - *dzadzambira*.

—, - be, - *rgwadziwa*; - *kuwadziswa*; - *chinyiwa*.

husband, *murume* (1); *munurume* (1); *saimba* (4).

hush! *nyararai! e imgi! hezo!*

husk, *guya* (5); *deko* (5).

— (chaff), *hundi* (4); *windi* (4).

— (- remove husks, i.e. - sift), - *pe-peta*; - *zungura*; - *peya*; - *pesa*. See 'stamp.'

hut, *imba* (4); (of chief), *numba* (4).

hut for unthreshed grain, *isapi* (4); (*chapi* (3)).
 — for boys only, *dale* (5); *gota* (5).
 collection of huts belonging to one family, *mana* (4).
 — built on poles, *mutano* (2).
 — (temporary), *dumba* (5); *chitumba* (3); — with round roof, *gotekwa* (5).
 — (old forsaken), *dangwaza* (5).
 — for watching in garden, *chirindo* (3); *daga* (5).

hut (raised seat in —), *rukuyahuya* (6).
 — (place for pots in —), *chikuya* (3).
 — (place for goats in —), *huyi* (4).
hyena, *bere* (5); *chipere* (3); *chipere-magondo* (3) (laughing —).
hymn, *rguiyo* (6); *chiimbo* (3); *rumbo* (6).
hypocrite, *munyengeri* (1); *munyengedzeri* (1); *batsa-yatsi* (5); *jenesamoyo* (5).
hypocritical, - *be*, - *ita dawaira*.

I

I, pers. pron. (emphatic), *ini*.
 — (prefixal pron.), 'ndi' (past tense 'nda'). I alone, *ndoga*.
 it is I, *ndi'ni*.
 I don't know, *hati zi*; *hameno*; *hapeno*.
ice, *mazaya* (5).
idea, *ku funga* (8); *mufungo* (2).
 See 'thought'.
idiot, *benzi* (5); *dununu* (5); *dunda* (5); *zisumbi* (5); *chirema* (3); *dutsa-tutsa* (5); *wata-wata* (5); *zengeya* (5).
idiocy, *yutununu* (7).
idiotic, - *be*, - *wunduma*; - *ya benzi*.
idle, - *be*, - *ya no yusimbe*.
idleness, *yusimbe* (7).
idol, *chifananidzo* (3); *chifanaidzo* (3); *chi no pirgwa* (3).
idolatry, *ku pira zifananidzo*.
if, *kana*; *kudeno*.
if....then, *deno....deno*; *dai....dai*.
if so, *kana za ka dero*.
ignoramus, *mambara* (4) (for.).
ignorant, - *be*, - *sa ziya*.
 — *person*, *benzi* (5). See 'idiot'.
ill, - *be*, - *rgwara*; - *rgwadziwa*; - *yezereka*.
 - *be very* —, - *zuyura*.
 one who is ill, *murgweri* (1); *mutenda* (1).
ill-feeling, *moyo mutema* (2).
illegal, - *be*, - *daliha murairo*.
illegitimate child, *munungwa* (1).
illness, *ku rgwara* (8); *yurgwere* (7); *rgwadziwo* (6); *hosha* (4); *yutenda* (7); *yukosha* (7).

image, *chifananidzo* (3) (*chifanaidzo* (3)); *fanaidzo* (*fananidzo*) (4).
 - *imitate*, - *edzereza*; - *teyera*.
immediately, *pakarepo*; *kamge*; *zino-zino*; *zino*; *iko zino*.
immense, adj., *kuru-kuru*; *kurusa*; *pami* with class prefix.
 —, - *be*, - *kurusa*; - *pamama*.
 - *immerse*, - *nyudza*; *nyurisa*.
immoral, - *be*, - *pata*; - *pombgora*; - *ita yumombge*.
 — *person*, *mombge* (4); *mupati* (1); *wo yutere* (1); *chifeye* (3); *musevi* (1); *nzenza* (4); *nnyannga* (4).
immorality, *yumombge* (7); *yupombge* (7); *yufeye* (7); *yutere* (7).
immortal, - *be*, - *ya no yupenyu yu si nga peri*; - *ya no yupenyu yu si nga gumi*; - *ya no yupenyu yu si nga yukoni*.
impassable, - *be*, - *sa indiwa*; - *sa fambga*.
 — (of river), - *sa amburgwa*.
impatient, - *be*, - *pera moyo*; - *pera-pera moyo*; - *sa ya no moyo murefu*.
impatience, *rushinga* (6); *zidukurumba* (3 pl.); *zivinyu* (3 pl.); *zifidu* (3 pl.); *ziruudu* (3 pl.); *zifinu* (3 pl.).
impenitent, - *be*, - *sa chema zivi*; - *sa chema mataadzo*.
important, - *be*, - *kura*.
importance, *yukuru* (7); *yukombge* (7).

importunity, *rungwingwi* (6); *ku kumbirisa* (8).
 impossible, - *be*, - *kona*; - *sa bvira*; - *sa gonekwa*; - *konikanwa*.
 - *imprecate*, - *soyerera*; - *panjira*.
 - *imprison*, - *pinza mu trongo*.
 improper, - *be*, - *sa bvira*; - *sa fanira*; - *pata*.
 - *improve*, v.i., - *ila kuli nani*; - *va nani*.
 — v.t., - *rumamisa*; - *natsa*; - *runga-misa*.
 improvement, *muchenjemekwa* (2).
 impure, - *be*, - *va ne sina*; - *va na marara*.
 in, *mu*; (in here), *muno*; (in there), *umo*; in order that, *kuti*; inside, *mukati*; *inumo*; *inasmuch*, *za*; *nokuti*; *na izogo*.
 incense, *zi no nuwira*.
 - *incite*, - *kurumidza*; - *kukumidza*; - *pasa*; - *girusa*; - *parira*; - *pesera*; - *dira*; - *shidzira*; - *sisi-dzira*; - *sakudzira*.
 — to anger, - *tsamgisa*; - *mutsa hashu*.
 - *incline*, v.t., - *rerekesa*; - *rerekera*; - *shunamisa*. See 'slope.'
 — v.i., - *shunama*; - *rereka*; - *sendama*.
 — *ed for*, - *feel*, - *panga*; - *shuya*. See 'desire.'
 inconvenient, - *be*, - *sa kwadzana*; - *sa fanira*.
 incorruptible, - *be*, - *sa vora*; - *sa pera*.
 - *increase*, v.t., - *wedzera*; - *wanza*; - *wandira*; - *tunidza*; - *duma*; - *kukumusa*.
 — above ten, - *rayudzira*.
 — v.i., - *wanda*.
 indeed! *gokwadi!* (*gokwadi!*) *eya!* *giro kwago!* *mane!* (used for emphasis).
 no — *! eyo!* *eyo sa!* *hai sa!*
 why! —, *gara!* *nambergwa!* *nambera!* *nyambergwa!* *nyambera!* *nyambeshwa!*
 indented, - *be*, - *foya*; - *foyera*.
 indigestion, - *have*, - *moniwa moyo*; - *gotiwa*.
 — *give*, - *sota*; - *sotesa*.
 — n., *soto* (5).

indifferent, - *be*, - *nyangara*; - *iseruka*; - *zuruka*; - *dalishwe numbi*.
 indistinct, - *be*, - *pfuruyara* (*pfurayara*); - *sa yonekwa*.
 — (not heard), - *sa wikwa*.
 — of road, - *sa pfumba*.
 individual, 'mge mge,' with class prefix.
 - *indulge*, - *zi regerera*.
 industrious, - *be*, - *bata zose*; - *bata no ku chenjera*.
 — person, *shangazhiki* (4).
 infant (new - born), *rushiye* (6); *nevana* (4).
 — (baby), *mucheche* (1).
 — (a few months old), *chizaranyara* (3).
 — (a very fat baby), *chibgindikiti* (3).
 - *infect*, - *pomera*; — *ed*, - *be*, - *kuma*; - *zodziwa hosha*.
 infinite, - *be*, - *sa pera*; - *sa guma*.
 - *inflate*, - *futisa*; - *futsa*; - *kutisa*.
 — *ed*, - *be*, - *zimba*; - *kuta*; - *futa*.
 influential person, *gombe* (5); *gombge* (5); *gongwa* (5).
 influenza, *bembo* (5); *bimidza* (5).
 - *inform*, - *yudza*; - *nyepera*.
 — by winking or secret sign, - *sora*.
 inturiated, - *be*, - *penga ne hashu*; - *tsamga zikuru*.
 ingenious, - *be*, - *chenjera*; (- *be* able to do many things), - *dzaranisa*.
 ingredient (to mix with snuff), *mukuma* (2); *mudombo* (2).
 - *inhabit*, - *gara*.
 — *ed*, - *be*, - *gargwa*.
 - *inherit*, - *gara naka*; - *ldya naka*.
 inheritance, *naka* (4).
 — (trait in character or occupation inherited from ancestors), *madzinza* (5 pl.).
 - *injure*, - *rgwadza*; - *chinya*; - *chi-nyidza*; - *tadzisa*.
 injustice, *ku sa rungama* (8); *ku sa rurama* (8).
 ink, *muti mutema wo ku nyoresa*; *enge* (4) (for.).
 innocent, - *be* (as of child), - *sa ziya zose*; - *sa va na mano*.
 — (not guilty), - *sa va ne maha*; - *sa va no murando*.

innocent person, *shunguwasha* (4).
 - inoculate, - *temera*.
 - inquire, - *vunza* ; - *vunzisisa*.
 — minutely, - *veya* ; - *feya*.
 inquisitive, - *be* (- know and learn),
 - *ya na mandiziye*.
 — (to hear), - *ila mandiwise*.
 insane, - *be*, - *penga*.
 — person, *mupengo* (1).
 insect, *chipembenene* (3) ; *chitototo*
 (3) ; *chikonono* (3).
 — that feigns dying, *nonono* (4).
 — that plays on water, *chinyungu-
rgwi* (3) ; *chiwurgwi* (3).
 inside, prep., *mukati*. See 'in.'
 — (space inside), *mukato* (2).
 insipid, - *be*, - *furuka*, - *tapa-tapa*.
 — (of salt only), - *durungunda*.
 insolence, *manyawi* (5 pl.).
 insolent, - *be*, - *ya no muromo* ; - *ya
ne hashu* ; - *ya na manyawi*.
 inasmuch, *na izozo* ; *na ipopo* ; *no
ku doro*.
 - inspan, - *sunga* ; - *koranidza* ; - *pana*
 (for).
 - inspect, - *tarisisa* ; - *fuwa* ; - *che-
rekedza* ; - *tadzanisa* ; - *nana-
nidza* ; - *ringirisa*.
 instalments, - *pay by*, - *ita musomovera*.
 instantly, adv., *pakarepo*. See
 'immediately.'
 - instigate, see 'incite.'
 instigator, *mesi* (4) ; *mudzingidziri* (1).
 See 'inciter.'
 - instruct, - *dzidzisa* ; - *raira* ; - *yudza*.
 instrument, *numbi* (4).
 — (musical), *muridzo* (2) ; *mbira* (4) ;
malimba (5 pl.) ; *nyere* (4) ;
dimbga (5) ; *runjari* (6).
 — resembling a bow, *mutengeranwa*
 (2) ; *chipendani* (3).
 — resembling a violin, *rudimbga* (6).
 — for plaiting, *chisingo* (3).
 very sharp —, *yunina* (7).
 — for scraping, *chikokonoro* (3) ;
gwengo (5).
 — for shaving, *chikuyuro* (3).
 — for stripping bark, *chikumo* (3).
 — for beating floor, *chikuyawuro*
 (3) ; *chikuyaro* (3) ; *chipamano* (3).
 — for making holes in ground,
rutsiso (6).

instrument, for sharpening, *chirodzero*
 (3) ; *chirodzo* (3).
 — for ramming in soil, *chitsindiro*
 (3).
 — for removing fat from pot, *chi-
wombokoro* (3).
 — for cutting wire, *nemo* (4).
 insufficient, - *be*, - *kaiza* ; - *laiza* ; - *lai-
rira*.
 - insult, - *shona* ; - *gidza* ; - *pungu-
nura* ; - *yirima* ; - *yirimira* ; - *shu-
rura* ; - *shazhira* ; - *sawura* ;
 - *tubura moyo*.
 intellect, *njere* (4) ; *ku chenjera* (8).
 intelligent, - *be*, - *sasuka*.
 - intend, - *funga* ; - *da* ; - *yavavira* ;
 - *rgwisa*.
 intentionally, adv., *no bgoni* ; *na
mayune*. See 'purpose.'
 intercessor, *mumiriri* (1) ; *mureveri*
 (1) ; *munyengetereri* (1).
 interest, - *take*, - *rangarira* ; - *ya ne
hanya*.
 - interfere, - *zi isa* ; - *zi pinza* ;
 - *bizha* ; - *kamukira* ; - *nanura* ;
 - *sakamara*.
 — by speaking, - *yurumuka* ; - *pinga*.
 - interpose, - *mirira* ; - *reyera*.
 - interpret, - *shandura* ; - *dudzira*.
 interpreter, *mushanduri* (1) ; *mudu-
dziri* (1).
 - interrupt, - *kamukira* ; - *kambe-
nyaya*. See 'interfere.'
 interval, *nambo yo ku rega* (4).
 - intervene, - *nanura* ; - *nunura* ;
 - *randura* ; - *randulira*.
 intestines, *yura* (7) ; *mu dumbu* (9).
 — (large), *chisusu* (3) ; *chisusuyalisa*
 (3) ; *guru* (5) ; *yura yukuru*
 (7).
 parts of small —, *manyongo* (5 pl.) ;
yura yutete (7).
 contents of —, *mazigi* (5 pl.).
 into, prep., *mu* ; *mukati ma*.
 - intoxicate, - *bata*.
 intoxicated, - *be*, - *batwa*, or - *batwa
ne doro*.
 - introduce, - *pinza* ; - *isa*.
 — (cause to know), - *zivisa*.
 invalid, *mutenda* (1) ; *murgweri* (1) ;
nenda (4).
 emaciated —, *ndonda* (4).

- investigate, - *vunzisisa* ; - *tsakisa* ;
- *fuwisa* ; - *feya*.
- invigorate, - *simbisa* ; - *ti gwindiri* !
- invite, - *dan(h)a* ; (— all), - *ko-
kera*.
- involuntarily, adv., *no ku sa ziya* ;
no ku sa da.
- intrude, - *pinda pakati* ; - *pangura* ;
- *pasura* ; - *pasanura*.
- iron, *dale* (5) ; *simbi* (4) (for.) ;
yutale (7).
- flat —, or branding —, *chipiso*
(3).
- ore, *mangura* (5 pl.).
(piece of smelted —), *gonyo* (5) ;
hona yo yutale (4).
- v.t., - *pisa*.
- work in —, - *pfura*.
- irritate, - *tsamgisa* ; - *pesaisa* ; - *mutsa*
hasha.

- irritable, - *be*, - *ya ne girudu* ; - *ya
ne zidukurumga*. See 'im-
patient.'
- island, *chiwi* (3) ; *chisuwa* (3).
- isolated, 'oga' with class prefix.
- it (rep. pronoun), *u*, *chi*, *i*, *ri*, *ru*,
yu, *ku*, according to the class
referred to.
- (emphatic pron.), *uyo* ; *icho* ;
iyo ; *iro* ; *ingo* ; *ibgo* ; *iko*,
according to class.
- (impers. pron.), *ku* ; *zi* (3 pl.).
- (reflex.), *zi*.
- (copula, it is), *ndi* (*nda*, *nde*,
ndo).
- is better, *ku li nani*.
- is dark, *kwa ka siba*.
- itch, - *yaya* ; - *sosona* ; - *yayara*.
- n., *mizi* (4 pl.).
- ivory, *nyanga dze zhou* (4 pl.).

J

- jabber, - *bgereketisa* ; - *reyesa*.
- jackal, *haya* (4) ; *gaya* (4) ; *mungubge*
(4).
- jacket, *bachi* (5) (for.).
- jam, *vuchi* (7).
- jamb, v.t., - *kwatika* ; - *kwatikira* ;
- *mbandizira* ; - *mbandika*.
- jaw, *rushaya* (6) (pl. *shaya*).
- below the —, *dataya* (5) ; *doriro*
(5).
- jealous, - *be*, - *godora* ; - *ya ne godo*.
- jealousy, *godo* (5).
- jelly, - *become*, - *gwamba*.
- jerk, - *jata*.
- jest, - *setsa* ; - *ita jeye*.
- Jesus, *Yesu* (1).
- Jew, *mu-Yuda* (1).
- join together, - *shonganidza*.
- join (by tying together), - *sunga-
nidza* ; - *rumatidza* ; - *rumi-
kidza* ; - *batanidza*.
- (by sewing), - *pfumanidza*.
- joint, *fundo* (4) (*chifundo* (4)).
- of bamboo or other plant, *nengo*
(4).
- (ankle), *chiziso* (3). See 'ankle.'
- be out of —, - *rungunuka*. See
'dislocate.'

- joke, - *ita jeye* ; - *ita musere* ; - *setsa* ;
- *ita muzenza* ; - *nemera*.
- n., *rusetso* (6) ; *musere* (2) ;
muzenza (2).
- jolt, - *jata* ; - *kuchura* ; - *ngocha*.
- journey, *rgwendo* (6) (pl. *nzendo*).
- (long), *rgwendo mutanda*.
- prosperous —, *rgwendo ruvuya*.
- got up in a hurry, *mvurumuko*
(4).
- joy, *mufaro* (2) ; *mufargwa* (2).
- joyfully, adv., *no mufaro*.
- joyous, - *be*, - *fara* ; - *farikana* ;
- *sharanganya*.
- judge, *muguri* (1) ; *mutongesi* (1) ;
mutongi (1).
- judge, - *gura* ; - *tonga* ; - *tongesa*.
- jug, *chirongo* (3) ; *bigiri* (4) (for.).
- juice, *mwura* (4) ; *milky* —, *mukaka*
(2).
- jump, - *kwakuka* ; - *wuruka* ; - *jitiha*.
- down, - *janika* ; - *jakuka*.
- out (as of fire), - *dayuka*.
- from one thing on to another,
- *tipitira* ; - *tapatira*.
- high, - *tapatira*.
- upon, - *kwakukira* ; - *nyimi-
nyira*.

- jump over, - *daliika*; - *chiruka*; - *chirika*.
 jumping game, *chamujaku-jaku*; *chamukwaku-kwaku*.
 junction, *mashonganirano* (5 pl.); *mawirano* (5 pl.).
 jungle, *denere* (5); *jokoto* (5); *chokoto* (3); *buokocho* (5); *chinanga* (3).

just, - be, - *rungama*; - *rurama*.
 just like, adv., *mgene sa*; *sa*.
 just now, adv., *iko gino*.
 just so! *hekani!* *hezo!* *ndipopo!* *ipopo!* *hono yo!* *heyo!* *yeyo!*
 justice, *yurungamo* (7); *yurungami* (7); *yururamo* (7).
 - justify, - *rungamisa*; - *ruramisa*.

K

Kafir corn, *mapfunde* (5 pl.).
kaross, *nguyu* (4).
 - keep (hold), - *bata*.
 — (- save), - *chengeta*; - *yiga*.
 — (- guard), - *chengeta*; - *rinda*.
 — sheep, &c., - *rinda*; - *lisa*; - *ta-rira*.
 — silence, - *nyarara*; - *ti nwiro!*
 — the law, - *chengeta murairo*.
 — at a good distance, - *nara*.
 — sake, *rulo* (6); *cho ku yonera 'po* (3); *chibvo* (3); *chiyono* (3).
 keeper, *mutariri* (1); *muchengeti* (1); *murindi* (1).
 kernel (pith), *moyo* (2); — (stone), *surgwe* (4).
 kettle, *kitiri* (4) (for.).
 key, *chiwoli* (3); *kiyi* (4) (for.).
 - kick, - *pfura*; - *tiyura*; - *ragadza*; - *ragadura*; - *punura* (slightly).
 — each other, - *ita mutayura*.
 kid, *mbudzana* (4).
 kidney, *tso* (4); *so* (4); *chingamo* (3).
 - kill, - *yuraya*; - *yanzalika*.
 — a large animal, - *drukutura*.
 — (slaughter), - *baya*.
 kiln, *bisiro* (5).
 kind, adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix, no *moyo munyoro*; no *moyo muvuya*.
 — (class), *rudzi* (6); *musaku* (2).
 - kindle, - *yesa*; - *batidza*.
 — a candle, - *tungidza*; - *nangidza*; - *batidza*.
 — (by rubbing sticks), - *sika*.
 — (by blowing), - *pfutidza*.
 kindness, *yunyoro* (7); *nyasha* (4) (i.e. grace).
 kindred, *hama* (4); *rudzi* (6).

king, *she* (1); *ishe* (1).
 kingdom, *yushe* (7); *yumambo* (7).
 - kiss, - *kwazisa no muromo*.
 kitchen, *imba yo ku bikira*; *kichini* (4) (for.).
 kitten, *chikatsi* (4) (for.); *chimange* (3); *chimangoye* (3).
 klipspringer, *ngururu* (4).
 kloof, *mupata* (2).
 - knead, - *kanya*; - *kanyira*.
 knee, *bvi* (5).
 - knee-halter, - *sunga gumbo*.
 - kneel, - *fugama*; - *gwadama*.
 knife, *banga* (5).
 sharp —, *chidaduro* (3).
 blunt —, *gwese* (5).
 — (little razor), *chiso* (3); *chinatso* (3).
 - knit, - *ruka*.
 — the eye-brows, - *sinama*.
 knob, *musoro* (2).
 knob-kerrie, *simbo* (4).
 - knock, - *guhudza*; - *dododzera*; - *gogodza*; - *dododza*.
 — down with force, - *rigira*.
 — heads together, - *rovengedza*.
 — against, - *bondera*; - *bonda*; - *bondedzera*; - *bonderedza*; - *gumira*; - *guhuna*; - *kuhunwa*.
 — out of handle (as of hoe), - *gwenya*.
 knot, *fundo* (4).
 — (looped —), *chisungo* (3).
 — (in wood), *bundu* (5).
 - tie a —, - *funda*; - *sunga*.
 - untie a —, - *fundunura*; - *sunungura*.
 - know, - *ziya*.
 knowledge, *ku ziya* (8); *ziyo* (4).

known, - be, - *zikanwa*; - *zikana*;
- *ziyiwa*.
- make —, - *ziyisa*; - *yudza*.
kraal (village), *musha* (2).
— of chief, *muzinda* (2).

kraal, a very large —, *guta* (5); *nzanga*
(4); *jarati* (5).
cattle —, *danga* (5).
knuckle, *chifundo* (3).
kudu, *noro* (4).

L

labour, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5);
mushumo (2).
heavy —, *mukowa* (2); *bolyo* (5).
— v.t., - *bata*; - *shuma*; - *seyenza*
(for.).
- be in —, - *pfumbiwa*.
labourer, *mubatiri* (1); *mushumiri* (1);
museyenzi (1).
lace (of shoe), *rukashu* (6); *rukanda*
(6); *rukanda* (6); *rukusha* (6)
(pl. *husha*).
- lack, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *kairi-*
rgwa; - *kuma*; - *ya ne gumu*;
- *ya ne chisi*.
— grain, - *dza*.
lad, *mukomana* (1).
small —, *chikomana* (3).
ladder, *dan(h)o* (5); *chikwiriso* (3);
gwiro (5); *yukwiro* (7); *yuk-*
wiriso (7).
ladle, *mukombe* (2); (large spoon),
rugwaku (6).
— v.t., - *chera*; - *teka*. See 'dish
up.'
lady, *munukadzi* (1); (first wife),
yahosi (1); *hosi* (4).
white —, *munukadzi wo murumbi*
(1).
- lag, - *sariva*; - *sara sule*; - *siyiwa*;
- *nonoka*.
lake, *gawa* (5); *d(h)iya* (5).
lamb, *bgizana* (5); *gwaiyana* (5).
lame, - be, - *kamina*; - *tsabida*; - *tsa-*
binya.
— person, *chirema* (3).
- lament, - *chema*; - *rira*.
lamp, *mgenje* (2); *rambi* (5) (for.).
lance (assegai), *pfumo* (5).
— v., - *dzutura*; - *tadura*; - *tema*.
land, *nyika* (4). See 'country.'
low lying — (marshy in summer),
goya (5).

land, cultivated —, *munda* (2); *ruwa*
(6); *narawunda* (4 pl.).
uncultivated —, *bundo* (5).
landlord, *mgene we nyika* (1).
language, *rulimi* (6).
- use bad —, - *ita mareyo*; - *janya-*
wura; - *jawura*; - *ganura*.
native — of Mashonaland, *Chika-*
ranga.
languid, - be, - *ita rukope*; - *nyara*;
- *shaiwa simba*; - *rukutika*;
- *ti bvukuchu*; - *ti rukutu*; - *yuma-*
mara.
lap, *pa makumbo* (9).
— v., - *kasa*; - *kapa*; - *kabida* (- *ka-*
bita).
lard, *mafuta e nguruye* (5 pl.).
large, 'kuru' with class prefix;
very — or too —, *kurusa*.
- be —, - *kura*.
largely, adv., *gikuru*.
larynx, *guro-kuro* (5).
lash (of shoe), see 'lace.'
— of whip, *ruisiki* (6).
— v.t., - *royesa*; - *pura*; - *tsipura*;
- *gikila*. See 'beat.'
eye —, *rusiye* (6).
last one, gen. part. followed by - *pe-*
dzisira; - *pereredza*; - *dzivira*;
or - *gumisira*.
— (behind), *sule*; *pa sule*; *mu*
sule; *ma shure*.
— born child, *ruغو(f)hwe* (6); *ruغو-*
(f)hwe (6).
— month, *mgedzi wa ka fa*.
— night, *yusiku bge zuro*.
— week, *yiki ya ka ...* or *Sondo ra ka*
pfuyura.
— year, *makei*; *gole ra ka pfuyura*;
maholdya (5 pl.).
lasting, - be, - *bata*; - *simba*; - *ga-*
risa.

- late, - be, - nonoka ; - saririra ; - sara
sule.
- habitually, - ya no rusaririra ;
- ya no rukota.
- lately, adv., mazuya ano.
- later, expressed by prefixing 'zo'
to the verb root, e.g. I will come
later, ndi cha zo yuya.
- lath, rumbaliro (pl. mbaliro) (6).
- laugh, - seka ; (— much), - sekeru.
- in unison, - ridza chikuwa ; - ita
chikwehe.
- continually, - zekenya.
- make to —, - shangarisa ; - setsa.
- one who laughs stupidly, mupen-
zhuhi (1) ; chizereweri (3).
- laughable, - be, - setsa.
- laughing, setsa (4) ; setshwa (4 pl.).
- law, murairo (2) ; murawo (2) ;
chireyo (3) ; murazo (2).
- of a chief, nemo (4).
- keep the —, - chengeta murairo.
- break the —, - dalika murairo ;
- putsa or vuna murairo.
- lawful, - be, - tendergwa no murairo.
- law-suit, maka yo ku tonga.
- lay (of hen), - kandira mazai ;
- kanda.
- on hands, - kwidzengara.
- down, - radzika ; - yanzalika.
- the head on pillow, - tsamidza.
- hold, - bata ; (slowly), - ti angati.
- waste, - paradza ; - pedza.
- layer, wada (4).
- laziness, yusimbe (7) ; yushovu (7) ;
yutore (7).
- lazy, - be, - ya no yusimbe ; - zeza.
- person, simbe (4) ; shovu (4) ;
muzeri (1). See 'loth.'
- lead, mutobvu (2).
- lead, v.t., - tungamira (tungamirira) ;
- inda mberi ; - dungamidza.
- (- accompany), - perekedza.
- water, - diridza.
- by a rope, - kweya.
- astray, - tsawusa ; - runzira ; - che-
ngera ; - chengedza ; - kuzha ;
- rasha ; - nyengera ; - nyenge-
dzera ; - ravanisa.
- leader, mutungamiri (1) ; muperekedzi
(1) ; mupereki (1) ; mupingi (1)
(in war).
- leader (ring—), singwisingwi (4).
- in singing, mungudzi (1).
- leaf, shazhu (5) (sazu) ; shizha (5) ;
zani (5).
- single —, nangande (4).
- young leaves, pfumvuti (5) ; pfu-
mudza (5).
- of vegetable, depo (5).
- leak, - dona ; - vinza.
- much, - fuja.
- slightly, - sirina.
- out (= come to light), - putsika.
- lean, - be (be thin), - wonda. See
'emaciated.'
- lean over (as of falling house), - tse-
ndama ; - tseyama ; - zenga ;
- bgendama.
- cause to —, - sendeka ; - senda-
misa.
- back or on something, - se-
ndama.
- head upon arm (lying down),
- tsamisa.
- on hand for support in rising,
- dzamba.
- leanness, ku wonda (8) ; yuwondi (7) ;
netepo (4).
- leap, - kwakuka. See 'jump.'
- learn, - dzidza ; - funda (for.).
- learned man, munu wa ka dzidza ;
munu wa ka chenjera.
- learner, mudzidzi (1) ; mudzidzisiwa
(1).
- least, doko pana zose ; shoma pana
zose.
- leather, ganda (5) ; debge (5).
- leave (= depart), - famba ; - inda ;
- bva.
- (- forsake), - rasha ; - siya.
- one dwelling place for another,
- lama.
- one place and collect in another,
- wungira.
- over night, - radza.
- over day, - shwedza.
- off, - rega ; - regedza.
- to oneself, - sairira ; - ravanisa.
- alone, - regera.
- take —, - woneka ; - wonekana.
- an example, - siya makwara.
- behind, - siya ; - pimirira.
- have —, - tendergwa.

- leave at same time (of many), - *wu-nga*; - *kurumuka*.
- one's husband or wife, - *pata*.
- leaven, *mumera* (2); *mbiriso* (4); *yiriso* (4).
- leavened, - *be*, - *yirisiwa*.
- leavings (in pot), *makoko* (5 pl.); *makwengo* (5 pl.). See 'crumbs.'
- ledge (on wall), *mupanda* (2); *mutsedu* (2) (i.e. edge of precipice).
- leech, *chikweya-ropa* (3).
- left, the, *ku ruboshwe*.
- hand, *ruboshwe* (6).
- (past part. of 'leave'), - *siyiwa*.
- leg, *gumbo* (5); (of animal, below knee), *nozo* (4).
- of mutton (or beef), *chidza* (3); *chiraya* (3).
- calf of —, *shafu* (4).
- (shin), *mupimbira* (2).
- above knee, *chitumbi* (3).
- legend, *shumo* (4); *rungano* (6).
- leisure, - have, - *gara*; - *zorora*; - *wusha*.
- lend, - *pa chikwerete*; - *chidza*.
- length, *yurefu* (7); *yurebu* (7); *yukuru* (7) (i.e. size).
- lengthen, - *rebasa*.
- lenient, adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix.
- be —, - *ya ne nyasha*; - *ya ne sisi*; - *ya ne ngoni*.
- leopard, *ngwe* (4); *mbada* (4); *dindingwe* (5).
- leper, *u na* (or *wa*) *maperembudzi* (1).
- leprosy, *maperembudzi* (5 pl.).
- less, *doko pana*; *shoma pana*.
- become —, - *devera*.
- lessen, - *lapudza*; - *kamura*; - *sho-mapadza*; - *shomanidza*.
- lesson (learnt), *dzidzo* (4).
- (taught), *dzidziso* (4).
- lest, expressed by 'kuti' followed by neg. subj., e.g. *lest you fall, kuti u rege ku wa*.
- let (- allow), - *tendera*; - *rega*.
- expressed by subjunctive, e.g. *let me go, ndi inde*.
- go, - *jikitsa*.
- in, - *pinza*.
- let out, - *budisa*; - *fandanyura*; - *tsu-kunura*.
- down, - *burusa*; - *tura*; - *dzisa*; - *dzasa*.
- off, - *regedza*; - *kumura*; - *rega*.
- letter, *rwadi* (4); *runyoro* (6); *paso* (4) (for.); *rugwaro* (6).
- of alphabet, *retere* (5) (for.).
- level, - *be*, - *enzana*; - *ti kwesere*.
- v.t., - *enzanisa*; - *ita muchechetera*.
- place or sheet of water, *sandairira* (4).
- lever up, - *pingura*.
- liar, *we nema*; *u no reya nema*; *munyepi* (1); *munyengeri* (1).
- liberal, - *be*, - *pavulira*; - *funda*; - *komborera*; - *sa nyima*; - *chidza*.
- person, *gumbire* (5).
- lick, - *nanga*; - *tseta*.
- (as of dog), - *tserenga*.
- one's lips, - *nyangira*.
- lid, *chifuniro* (3); *chiduhumidzo* (3); *chikwidibiro* (3).
- lie, - *reya nema*; - *nyepa*; - *nyenge-dzera*; - *chengedzera*; - *dunga*.
- speaking smooth words, - *tsetera*.
- profusely, - *mgayanga*; - *mgenyuka*.
- n., *nema* (4 pl.); *manyepo* (5 pl.).
- lie down to sleep, - *yata*; - *rara*; - *yezera*.
- down, - *isenama*; - *yata pasi*; - *yezereka*; - *kwezera*.
- down (because of sickness) in great numbers, - *ita murarira*.
- down leaning on elbow, - *ita manda ro kokora*.
- down (or settle) all together (as of birds), - *ti handa*; (of cattle), - *pooyongana*.
- on back, - *ita majada*; - *ita maneds*.
- in the sun, - *shanira mushana*.
- in wait, - *yandira*; - *shesha*.
- on face, - *tsiyama*; - *yata ne dumbu*.
- life, *yupenyu* (7); *yuraramo* (7); *ndaramo* (4).
- eternal, *yupenyu yu si nga gumi* (or *peri*); *yupenyu yu si na yukoni*.
- bring back to life, - *nyusa*.

lifeless, - be, - sa *ya no yupenyu* ;
- *fa* (i.e. die).
- lift up, - *murudza* ; - *simudza* ;
- *simidza* ; - *simutsa* ; - *takura* ;
- *kwiridza*.
— something heavy, - *dzadzura* ;
- *kakanyura* ; - *nyadzura* ; - *ti nyadzu* !
— on shoulder, - *shwiga* (*hwiga*).
— hand to strike, - *samudzira* ; - *samura*.
— up on one side (as of piece of wood when trodden on), v.i., - *pinyingura*.
- light, v.t., - *veneka* ; - *venekera*.
— a candle, - *tungidza* ; - *batidza* ;
- *nangidza*.
— a fire, - *yasa* (*moto*) ; - *batidza* ;
- *nangidza*.
- be —, v.i., - *edza* ; - *penya* ; - *reruka*.
- become —, - *edzergwa*.
- come to —, - *buda pa chena* ;
- *putsika* ; (- bring to —), - *revurura*.
— n., *chiedza* (3) ; *kuanya* (8) ;
chadzera (3) ; ray of —, *njemu* (4).
— (of candle, &c.), *chiveneko* (3) ;
mgenje (2).
light, - be (in weight), - *reruka* ;
- *rerukira* ; - *sa rema*.
a very light thing, *rurevurevu* (6) ;
beperere (5).
- lighten, - *verusa* ; - *remudza*.
lightning, *kuanya* (8) ; *meni* (4).
- like, - *da* ; — very much, - *disa* ;
(— food), - *kara* ; - *karadza* ;
- *karira* ; - *ruta*.
- be like, - *fanana* ; - *enzana* ;
- *todza*.
— adv., *sa* ; *mgene sa* (just like).
likely, adv. (perhaps), *kuda*.
likely? is it, *kunge?*
likeness, *chifanandizo* (3) ; (in looks),
modzera (4).
limb, *mutezo* (2).
— of slaughtered animal, *chito* (3).
limbo (calico), *mucheka* (2).
lime, *suko* (i.e. white clay), *karaga* (4) (for.).
bird —, *gulimbo* (7).

limit, *mugano* (2) ; *ganuro* (4).
— (end), *ku pera* (8) ; *pedzisiro* (4).
See 'end'.
— v.t., - *ganura* ; - *ita mugano*.
- limp, - *kamina* ; - *kubidika* ; - *ko-bida*.
line (rope), *rgonzi* (6) (*rgodzi* (6)).
—, straight, *mutaro* (2) ; *mutseta* (2) ;
musara (2).
- stand in a —, - *runda* ; - *ita runda* ; - *ita sara*.
- go in a straight —, - *rurama*.
- link together, v.t., - *kochanidza* ;
- *koranidza*.
— n., *chindole* (3).
lintel, *chidimbale* (3) ; *chikumbaridzo* (3).
lion, *shumba* (4) ; (big male —),
mondoro (4) ; *ndau* (4).
lip, *muromo* (2).
upper —, *muromo wo kumsoro*.
lower —, *muromo we zasi*.
liquid, *chi no erera* (3).
- become — (of porridge), - *sina*.
- lisp, - *ya ne chirimi*.
- listen, - *terera* ; - *w(h)a* ; - *nzgwa*.
listless, - be, - *yumara* ; - *rezuka* ;
- *yezereka* ; - *ita rukope* ; - *ya ne gope*.
litter of pups, *mbganana* (4 pl.).
little (small), *doko* ; *doko-doko* ; *duku* ;
duku-duku ; *diki* ; *diki-diki*.
- be very — (of liquid), - *ita gasa*.
— adv., *gidoko* ; *gidokwane* ; *gidokwanene* ; *pa doko* ; *gishoma* ;
gishomanene.
— (few), *shoma* ; *shomanene*.
— also rendered by diminutive classes, *chi*, *ka*, and suffix *ana*, see p. 13.
- live, - *rarama* ; - *pona* ; - *ya no yupenyu*.
— (- dwell), - *gara*.
— happily, - *garika*.
— adj., 'penyu' with class prefix.
livelihood, *chiponeso* (3) ; *chiraramiso* (3).
lively, - be, - *sinuka* ; - *chenjera*.
— child, *chipezhupezu* (3).
live-stock, *zipfuwo* (3 pl.).
liver, *chiropa* (3).

living, adj., 'benyu' with class prefix.

lizard, *dzinyu* (4); *gorovoldyo* (5).
(large —), *rgwayaya* (6); *goldyo* (4);
rgwereveshe (6); *munaranzha* (2).

(rock —), *rukwamadombo* (6).
(large poisonous — living in ant-heaps), *rgwayaya muchikinya* (6).
(small poisonous —), *chifuramabge* (3).

(house —), *chipfira* (3).
lo! *yona! tarira!*
load, *musengwa* (2); *mutoro* (2);
mu(s)hwaro (2).
— v.t., - *sengedza*.

— a wagon, - *tutira pa ngoro*.
— a gun, - *pakira pfuti*.

loaf (of bread), *bundu re chingwa* (5).

—, v.i., - *famba-famba*; - *mira-mira*.
—, expecting to find something to eat, - *dzetera*.

loan, *chikwerele* (3) (for.).
lock, *kiyi* (4) (for.); *chirotero* (3) (for.);
cho ku pfigisa (3) (i.e. a thing for closing).

— v.t., - *pfiga ne kiyi*; - *kiya* (for.).
locusts, *masu* (4 pl.).

— (large kind), *bandarivo* (5); *njeru* (4).

— (small kind), *chinjiki* (3).
— (very small kind), *chipashupashu* (3).

young —, *gwatakwa* (5); *bgai-rane* (7); *yundiani* (7); *rgwizana* (6). See 'grass-hopper.'

- lodge, - *gara*.
— v.t., - *garisa*.

— a complaint, - *kwirira (pana she)*.
loft, *denga* (5).

log, *rukuni* (6); *tsika* (4) (*tsiga* (4));
danda gobvu (5).

loin-cloth, *mgwada* (2); *minzo* (2).
— put on a —, - *bindira*.

loins, *chiuno* (3).
loneliness, *yusiya* (7); *yusiyanwa* (7); *yushoma* (7).

lonely, - *be*, - *va oga*; - *siyiwa*.
long, *refu*; *ndefu* (i cl.); *refu-refu*.
— distance, *ku refu* (9).
— *be* —, - *reba*.

- long for, - *panga*; - *shuya*; - *shuvira*; - *chemera*; - *yinga*; - *dana*; - *dokwodikwa*; - *fa no moyo*; - *daka-daka*; - *dakarira*.

— ago, *kare*; *kare-kare* (very long ago); also expressed by aux. verb 'nguya,' e.g. *nda nguya nda guya*, I came long ago.

not — ago, *mazuya a si mangana*.
— lived, - *be*, - *garisa*.

longing, *yupango* (7); *shuyo* (4);
chemo (4). See 'desire.'

- look, - *tarira*; - *ringa*.
— well, - *tarisisa*.

— towards, - *lingira* (- *ringira*).
— askance, - *dzokora meso*; - *pebvura*.
— at one another, - *karidzana*.

— for, - *tsaka*; - *kwasha*.
— for something in the veld, - *pu-kaira*.

— back, - *cheyuka*; - *shoshonoka*.
— over shoulder, - *ti kapu*; - *ngazura*.

— at garden, - *nara*.
— have a — at, - *mema*.
— about, - *ringa-ringa*.

— admiringly at something, - *va ne yevergwa*; - *vu ne chevergwa*.

— (- expect), - *tarira*; - *mirira*; - *garira*; - *ringira*.

— intently, - *chevekedza*; - *nanganidza*; - *tarisisa*.

— screwing up the eyes, - *pena*.
— down on ground (pore), - *tsininina*; - *isinamira*.

— (- take care), - *chengeta*; - *tarira*; - *rindu*; (- look after), - *lisa*.

— here! *nandi!*
looking-glass, *chiyoni-yoni* (3); *chirringiro* (3).

loop, *chi(s)hwe* (3) (*shwe*) (4).
loophole, *chiyuli* (3); *ruyuli* (6).

loose, - *be*, - *sununguka*; - *pfumvunyuka*; - *fundunuka*; - *kwatuka*.

— let — (of plaster), - *koromoka*.
— *be* — and raised, - *kwangwanura*; - *kwatuka*.

— (of bowels), - *pazha*; - *pazhuka*.
— of tooth, - *gweda-gweda*.

- loosen, v.t., - *sunungura*; - *pfumvunyura*; - *fundunura*; - *tudzunura*.
See 'undo.'

— soil, - *yandanyura*; - *vukunura*.

-lop trees in making gardens,
-pemena.
loquat (wild), *shuku* (5).
— tree, *mushuku* (2).
lord (chief), *she* (1); *mambo*
(1).
— (owner), *tenzi* (1); *mgene* (1);
muri dzi (1).
-lose, v.t., -*rasha*; -*rashikirgwa*
na; -*dzimatingwa na*; -*dzimi-*
rgwa na.
— by death, -*firgwa na*.
— savour, -*furuka*.
— one's strength, -*yota*.
— the way, -*rashika*; -*rashikirgwa*
ne zhira; -*dzimira*.
— colour, -*kuna*.
— cause to —, -*rashisa*; -*nyanga-*
ridza.
loss (damage), *chinyiko* (4); *nyama-*
dzi (4); *nyangadzo* (4).
lost, - be, -*rashika*; -*nyangalika*.
— in the wilds over night, -*ravanika*.
— (of grain, with none to gather the
harvest), -*sakanikira*.
lot (quantity) *yuzhinji* (7); *ku*
wanda (8); *yuwandi* (7).
— (piece), *govoro* (4); *guranyo* (4);
mgove (2). See 'group'.
loth, - be, -*zeza*; -*sa da*; -*zengulira*.
lots, - cast, -*shopera*; -*kandira ha-*
kata; -*ila majenya*.
loud, *ne nzgwi guru* (i.e. with a
loud voice); *ne simba* (i.e. with
strength).
—, - be, -*nzgwiki zikuru*.
louse, *nda* (4).
- love, v.t., -*da*.
— n. (of agent), *rudo* (6); *chido* (3).
— (for object), *dikanwo* (4); *diwo*
(4).

loved, - be, -*dikanwa*; -*diwa*.
lovely, - be, -*nakisa*; -*dikanwa*.
lover, *gomba* (5); *chikomba* (3).
lovingly, adv., *no rudo*.
low, adj., 'fupi' with class prefix.
— be — (of sun), -*dewuka*; -*ten(h)a*.
— be, —, -*fupika*.
— (of cattle), v., -*kuma*.
- lower, -*burusa*; -*deredza*; -*dzisa*
(-*dzirisa*); -*dzasa*.
lowering, - be (as of clouds), -*shinga*.
lowly, - be, -*zi ninipisa*; -*zi doko-*
padza; -*zi dokoza*; -*zi mura*;
-*zi ninisa*.
low-spirited, - be, -*nyua*; -*ya no moyo*
u no rgwadza.
loyal, - be, -*kwembeta*; -*kwembe-*
tera; -*namatira*.
luck, - have good —, -*ya ne ropa ra*
ka naka; -*ya na yadzimu*.
— have bad —, -*ya ne ropa ra ka*
ipa.
good —, n., *yubozhi* (7).
luggage, *numbi* (4) (pl.).
lukewarm, - be, -*dziya*.
luminous, - be, -*chena*; -*penya*;
-*edza*.
lump, *bundu* (5); *buma* (5).
— of earth, *vinga* (5).
— s on body or tree, *magona* (5 pl.).
lumpy, - be, -*ila mapundu*.
— (of porridge), -*pundira*.
lunatic, *mupengo* (1); *bengo* (5).
lung, *bapu* (5).
lurking-place, *nzimba* (4).
- lust (desire), -*vinga*; -*shuvira*;
-*panga*.
— (in bad sense), -*funga za ka ipa*.
— n., *ruchiwa* (6); *ruziso* (6).
lying-place of fowl, *mufukusiro* (5 pl.).
— of game, *nzimba* (4).

M

mad, - be, -*penga*; -*ya no mgando*;
-*ya ne nyere*.
- madden, -*pengesa*; -*penza*.
madman, *mupengo* (1).
madness, *yupengo* (7); *mengo* (4).
maggot, *honye* (4); *gonye* (5).
magician, *murowi* (1); *muroyi* (1).

magic, *yurowi* (7); *yuroyi* (7);
yunanga (7).
— work —, -*shimga*.
magnificent, - be, -*nakisa*; -*bgingya*;
-*naka kwazo-kwazo*.
- magnify, -*kudza*; -*kurisa*; -*ru-*
mbidza; -*kudzisa*.

magnitude, *yukuru* (7); *yupami* (7).
 maiden, *musikana* (1); (full grown), *mandara* (4).
 maidenhood, *yusikana* (7); *yumandara* (7).
 maimed, - be, - *remara*; - *ya chirema*.
 main, adj., 'kuru' with class prefix.
 - maintain (- support), - *chengeta*; - *raramisa*; - *ponesa*.
 — (- assert), - *reya ne simba*; - *pika*.
 maize, *mabargwe* (5 pl.); *chibargwe* (3).
 — (small kind), *nuri* (4); *runuli* (6).
 — (large kind), *godi* (5); *gweru* (5).
 — (young plant), *nungo* (4).
 young —, *majandu* (5 pl.); *mabgai* (5 pl.); *majandurwa* (5 pl.).
 — stamped and cooked, *mashazhale* (5 pl.).
 — dry cobs boiled, *mahoyera* (5 pl.); *mandire* (4 pl.).
 dry shelled —, *musho* (4).
 majesty, *yukuru* (7); *ku bginya* (8).
 majority, *vazhinji* (1 pl.); *vuzhinji* (7).
 - make, v.t., - *ita*.
 — amends, - *bata huku*; - *bata makuku*.
 — haste, - *chimbizika*; - *kurumbidza*; - *kurumidza*.
 — ready, - *rongedza*; - *rongedzera*; - *gadzira*.
 — (- create), - *sika*; - *yumba*.
 — a law, - *tema chirevo*.
 — (- mould), - *yumba*; - *foroma* (for.) (of bricks).
 — (i.e. - cause), expressed by the causative form of the verb in 'isa' or 'esa'; make believe, n., *nendedzero* (4).
 maker, *muti* (1); *musiki* (1); *mutumbi* (1).
 male (human), *murume* (1); *munurume* (1).
 — (animal), *mukono* (2); *mukonorume* (2); also expressed by 'rume' suffixed to the class noun, e.g. male dog, *mbga-rume*.
 malice, *shungu* (4 pl.).
 malignant, - be, - *ya ne shungu*.
 — (of disease), - *nyanya*.

man (general term), *munu* (1).
 — (as distinguished from women), *murume* (1); *munurume* (1).
 — (husband), *murume* (1); *saimba* (4).
 old —, *mutana* (1); (very old —), *harabga* (4).
 young —, *jaya* (5); *mujaya* (1).
 - manage, - *tarira*; - *rinda*; - *ringira*; - *raira*.
 manager, *mutariri* (1); *murindi* (1); *muringiri* (1); *murairi* (1).
 mane, *zenze* (5).
 mange, *chikwekwe* (3); *rukundu* (6); *gwembe* (5).
 — of dog, *rubvivito* (6).
 manger, *chidyiro cha mabiza* (3).
 manhood, *urume* (7); *yumunurume* (7).
 - manifest, - *yonesa*; - *ratidza*; - *taridza*; - *paridza*; - *dudzira*.
 —, - be, v.i., - *yoneka*; - *yonekara*.
 manifold, 'marudzi mazhinji' preceded by gen. part. of governing noun.
 manioc (native), *chikona* (3); *shezha* (4); *margwa* (4).
 mankind, *vanu* (1 pl.).
 manly, adv., so *murume*.
 manner, *mutoyo* (2); *tsika* (4); *munyire* (2); (habit), *mugarive* (2).
 in what manner? *sei? sei ko? no ku dini? no mutoyo upi?*
 mantis, *mbuya-mbuya* (4).
 manure, *mutfudze* (2).
 many, *zhinji*, with class prefix.
 —, - be, - *wanda*; - *ya zhinji*.
 — times, *ruzhinji*; *kazhinji*.
 - march, - *famba*.
 — together, - *famba mawa*.
 — v.t., - *fambisa*.
 mare, *hadzi ye biza* (4).
 margin, *nenderekedzo* (4); *menderekedzo* (4).
 - mark, - *tara*; - *nyora* (i.e. - write).
 — n., *chiratidzo* (3); *mucherekedzo* (2).
 — at cross roads to show the right one, *chani* (3).
 — s tattooed round abdomen, *magandi* (5 pl.); *manyora* (5 pl.).
 — (scar), *yanga* (5); large —, *vabga* (5).

- market, *marekeni* (4) (for.); *po ku shambadzira* (9); *po ku tenge-sera* (9).
- maroon (dark), *nundu*.
- marriage, *ku wanana* (8); *ku wansiwa* (8); *ku wanawwa* (8); *ku wanikwa* (8).
- marrow, *mḡongo* (2).
- native vegetable —, *gavu* (5); *budzi* (5).
- marry (of man), - *wana*.
- (of woman), - *wanikwa*.
- (of both), - *wanisiwa*; - *wanana*.
- a handsome wife, - *surura*.
- marsh, *deketa* (5) (*dekete*); *dete* (5).
- marvel, - *kathiamara*; - *kahadzika*; - *kanuka*; - *shama*.
- n., *kathiamadzo* (4); *shamiso* (4); *gahadziko* (4); *yava* (5).
- marvellous, - *be*, - *kathiamadza*; - *kanukisa*; - *shamisa*; - *kahadzisa*.
- thing, *kathiamadzo* (4).
- mash, - *kanya*; - *phanyisa*; (by pounding), - *chogengerera*.
- n. (of fruit), *goyole* (5); *mahanya* (5 pl.); *goyorgwa* (5); *manyanwa* (5 pl.).
- mason, *myaki* (1); *murondi* (1).
- mass together, - *yunganira*; - *mandana*; - *tsikirirana*.
- n., *chiyunga* (3); *dutu* (5).
- master, *she* (1); *tenzi* (1); *mḡene* (1); *murungu* (1) (i.e. white man); *mambo* (1).
- mat, *rupasa* (6) (pl. *masa*); *rumasa* (6).
- of rope, *gwaya* (5).
- (very old), *ruitsapata* (6).
- start making a —, - *panjika*.
- matches, *yutanda bḡo moto* (7 pl.); *machisa* (for.).
- mate, *shamgali* (4).
- material (stuff), *mucheka* (i.e. calico). strong —, *chikenge* (3).
- materials, *zo ku ita na zo* (i.e., the things to make with); *ḡiitiso* (3 pl.).
- matter (case), *maka* (4); *moḡa* (4); *ndevo* (4). See 'case.'
- (pus), *yurgwa* (7).
- from eyes, *maranga* (5 pl.).
- v., - *karadzsa*.
- it does not —, *ha ku ne maka*.
- may, - *gona*; - *buidza*; also aux. 'nga,' before verb root.
- (- be allowed), - *tendergwa*.
- me, 'ndi' before verb; *ini*, emph. pron., after verb.
- meadow, *mafuro* (5 pl.); *ku bundo* (8); *yuchedzo* (7).
- meal, *yupfu* (7); (food), *zo ku ldyia* (3 pl.).
- morning —, *chisusuro* (3).
- evening —, *chirayiro* (3).
- mealies, see 'maize.'
- mean, - *bvira*; - *reva*; - *ti*.
- what? - *dini?* - *bvirei?*
- be —, - *nyima*.
- means of ..., *cho ku ...*, *zo ku ...* (lit. the thing of to ...).
- meanwhile, 'sano,' aux., before verb root.
- measles, *biripiri* (5).
- measure, - *ira* (*yira*); - *idza*; - *enza-nisa*.
- just enough, *yeveredza*.
- n., *chitanda* (3); *chitando* (3); *chitandiro* (3); *muidzo* (2); *mḡero* (2); *chiidzo* (3); *chiyero* (3); *chizanziso* (3).
- meat, *nyama* (4).
- boiled —, taken from bones, *mushuna* (2).
- (large piece), *nindi* (4); *bivu* (5); *bimvu* (5).
- (small piece), *nango* (4); *chinindi* (3).
- (long piece), *binya* (5).
- (dry strip), *mudzonga* (2).
- medal (given to natives in receipt of taxes), *chikwangwani* (3).
- meddle, - *zi pinza*; - *zi isa* (i.e. to bring in oneself); - *bizha*.
- mediator, *mumiriri* (1); *mureveri* (1); *samukuru* (1).
- medicine, *mushonga* (2); *muti* (2); *murimo* (2); *chigomboti* (3).
- shrub used as — for a cold, *zombani* (5).
- for preventing disease or trouble, *mingo* (4); one who gives medicine to prevent disease or trouble, *mupingi* (1).
- vessel, *chikona* (3).

- medicine, good, *chikoroso* (3).
 — for child, *dombo* (5).
 — for bewitching, *chikwino* (3); *chitsinga* (3).
 — for driving away birds, *murowa-shiri* (2).
 — for cleansing the possessions of the dead, *mazayani* (5 pl.).
 — ground, and strewn on coals to prevent sickness, *rukata* (6).
 — ground, and mixed with meal, *mamba* (4).
 — ground, and put into the water, *mbanda* (4); *rumbanda* (6).
 — for quarrelsome wife and children, *muranga* (2).
 — administer —, - *rapa*.
 — meditate, - *fungisisa*; - *rangarira*.
 medium of spirit of a dead relative, *sikiro* (5).
 meek, adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix.
 meekness, *yunyoro* (7).
 — meet, - *shongana* (- *songana*); - *gumana na*; - *yonana*; - *ita masanga*; - *sangana*.
 — together, - *yungana*; - *shongana*; - *kumbana na*.
 — unexpectedly, - *ita mashonga*.
 — (- receive), - *gamuchira*; - *chingamidza*; - *chingura*; - *chingudzira*.
 meeting, *yungano* (4); *chiyungano* (3); *shongano* (4); *chishongano* (3).
 — call a —, - *kohera*; - *yunganidza*; - *yungaidza*.
 meeting-place, *naridzano* (4); (of men), *chiyara* (3); *dale* (5).
 melon, *yisi* (5); *nwiwa* (5).
 — (small), *gake* (5).
 — (kind of), *shamba* (5).
 — melt, v.t., - *nyawusa*.
 — v.i., - *nyawuka*; - *nyakatika*.
 — ed., - *be*, - *nyakatira*.
 member (of body), *chirongopedzo* (3).
 memory, *rangariro* (4); *mufungo* (2); *yeyuko* (4).
 — mend (by sewing), - *pfuma*; - *pfumanidza*.
 — (- put straight), - *gadzira*; - *ruandidzira*; — (- cement), - *namatidza*; - *batanidza*; - *rumatidza*.
 — (recover), - *naya*.
 — menstruate, - *tema rushanga*; - *shamba*.
 — mention, - *reya*; - *yudza*; - *bvira*.
 merciful, - *be*, - *ya ne nyasha* (sisi &c.).
 merciless, - *be*, - *sa ya ne nyasha* (sisi &c.).
 mercy, *nyasha* (4); *sisi* (*tsitsi*) (4); *ngoni* (4).
 merely, adv., *oga*; *chete*; *bedzi*; 'ngo' before verb root.
 merry, - *be*, - *fara*; - *farisa*. See 'joyful'.
 meshes (small), *yuyuli* (6 pl.).
 — (large), *mayuli* (5 pl.).
 message, *shoko* (5); *nzgwi* (5); *dama* (5).
 messenger, *mutumga* (1); *munyai* (1); *nume* (4).
 mess, - make a, - *kanyira*.
 metal, *dze* (5); *matara* (5 pl.); *yutale* (7).
 method, *mutoyo* (2); *tsika* (4); *munyire* (2).
 — mew (of cat), - *chema*; - *nyawudza* (*nyawudza*).
 midday, *masikati* (5 pl.); *sikati* (5).
 middle, *pakati* (9); *mukati* (9).
 midnight, *pakati po yusiku*; *chiro* (3).
 midst, *pakati* (9).
 in the —, prep., *pakati* (9); *mukati* (9).
 midwife, *mbuya* (1).
 — act as —, - *surumusa*; - *chinga*; - *gamuchira*; - *tiya*.
 might, *simba* (5).
 — aux. v., past tense of - 'goma' or - 'buidza'.
 mild (meek), adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix.
 — *be* — (as of illness), - *sa ya ne simba*.
 — *be* — (of weather), - *gadzikana*.
 mildew, *chahuve* (3).
 mildewed, - *be*, - *vuvu*; - *vumara*.
 mildness, *yunyoro* (7).
 milk, *mukaka* (2).
 — (new), *mukaka mumbishi*.
 — (thick), *mukaka wa ka fa*.
 — (not quite thick), *sifa* (5).
 — (skimmed), *mahora-kora* (5 pl.).
 (butter —), *mutadza* (2).

milk curds, *mapundu o mukaka*; *mahonnya* (5 pl.).
 — porridge, *munamba* (2); *-mudzamba* (2).
 — blittings, *manombge* (5 pl.).
 — (whey), *mutuyi* (2).
 — v.t., - *kama*.
 — give —, - *sisa*.
 milking vessel, *wedza* (4); *kamiro* (4).
 vessel for sour —, *hodzeko* (4); *hodzeko* (4) (*hodzekero*).
 — pot, *chingo* (3).
 — place, *munanga* (2).
 mill, n., *chigayo* (3) (for.); *guyo* (5).
 millipede, *zongororo* (5).
 — mimic, - *edzereva*; - *ita sa*...
 — n., *muedzerevi* (1); *nnyannya* (4).
 — mimosa, *muwunga* (2).
 — mince, - *chekanya*; - *cheha-cheha*.
 mincing machine, *chigayo* (3) (for.).
 mind (thought), *murangariro* (2); *mufungo* (2); *moyo* (2).
 — (intellect), *njere* (4); *ku chenjera* (8).
 — v. (heed), - *rangarira*; - *funga*; - *terera*; - *ya ne hanya*.
 — (look after), - *chengeta*; - *rinda*; - *tarira*.
 mine, *mgodi* (2).
 — v.t., - *chera*.
 — (poss. pron.), 'ngu' with gen. part. of gov. n.
 — mingle, v.t., - *vengana*; - *shongana*.
 minister (servant), *muranda* (1); *mushumiri* (1).
 — (teacher), *mudzidzisi* (1); *mufundisi* (1) (for.).
 — v. (help), - *betsera*; - *batisa*; - *batsa*; - *shumira*.
 minstrel, *muridzi we mbira* (1).
 wandering —, *mudzungi* (1); *mudzungairi* (1).
 miracle, *nenji* (5); *dambi* (5); *karihiamadzo* (4); *shura* (5); *mapiye* (5 pl.); *likidzingi* (5); *mulyarango* (2); *munale* (2); *munana* (2); *bidi* (5); *mare* (4); *marikidzingi* (5 pl.); *mariyeriyi* (5 pl.).
 mire, *dope* (5).
 thin —, *machakinya* (*machakwinya*) (5 pl.); *machakwi* (5 pl.).
 mirror, *chiyoniyoni* (3); *chiringiriro* (3).

— miscarry (of animals), - *godza*.
 — (of woman), - *shaya*; - *rasha*; - *putsa*.
 miscarriage, *gaya-mgedzi* (5); *gamba-mgedzi* (5).
 mischief, *ku chinya* (8); *ku tadza* (8).
 mischievous child, *nubu* (4).
 mischievous, - *be*, - *zuruka*.
 miser, *mutsungwi* (1); *chinogoro* (3).
 miserly, - *be*, - *tushura*.
 misery, *namo* (4); *dambudzo* (5); *netso* (4); *net(s)hwa* (4); *yuro-mbo* (7).
 — cause —, - *nzgwiswa yurombo*.
 — miss, v.t. (not to find), - *shaya*; - *shaiwa*; - *sa wana*.
 — (long for), - *shuya*; - *chemera*; - *panga*.
 — the road, - *kanganwa*; - *kanganisa*.
 — one another, - *pesana*; - *ita mesaqwa*; - *ita meshwa*.
 — aim, - *posha*.
 — fire, - *bara*.
 missionary, *mudzidzisi* (1); *mufundisi* (1) (for.).
 mist, dry, *bute* (5); *mute* (4); *mu-mvumbi* (2); *mubvumbi* (2).
 rainy —, *guti* (5).
 mistake, n., *posho* (4); *mosho* (4); *kanganiso* (4); *rutadzo* (6); *chikanganiso* (3).
 — make —, - *posha*; - *poshanidza*; - *chinya*; - *kanganisa*; - *isa*; - *tadza*; - *paremaka*; - *bomoka*; - *resa*.
 misty, - *be*, - *ya ne guti*; - *ya ne bute*.
 — misunderstand, - *sa (nzg)wisisa*.
 — (quarrel), - *ldya meshwa*.
 — mix, v.t., - *venganisa*; - *shonganisa*; - *kanganisa*; - *sanganisa*; - *royanidza*.
 — v.i., - *vengana*; - *shongana*.
 — porridge with sauce or milk, - *yanga*.
 — with (as of snuff), - *domba*.
 — tobacco with another ingredient, - *kuma foldya*; - *kanyiridza*.
 something to mix with 'yusayi,' *yuhwiro* (7).
 — up, v.t., - *kanganisa*; - *venganisa*; - *nyonganisa*; - *pesanisa*; - *pesaisa*; - *pinyanisa*.

mixed up, - be, - *nyongana* ; - *piyana* ;
- *pishana* ; - *pishingana*.
mixture, *veganiso* (4) ; *kanganiso*
(4) ; *chivenganiso* (3).
— of different articles, *hanyani-*
rgwa (4) ; *hanyirgwa* (4).
- moan, - *yuyura*.
— of dog, - *shwinya* ; - *shwinyidrika*.
mob, *manyongoli* (5 pl.) ; *manyongo-*
yiro (5 pl.) ; *nyongano* (4).
- mock, - *seka* ; - *dada* ; - *dadira*.
modest, - be, - *sa gi tunidza* ; - *sa gi*
guguyidza ; - *nyara*.
moist, adj., 'nyoro' with class
prefix.
— - be, - *nyoroya* ; - *nyorovesa* ; - *ya*
no mğando.
- moisten, - *nyorovesa* ; - *nyongovedza*.
— (- steep in water), - *nyika*.
molar, *dzezo* (5).
mole, *nukusa* (4) (*nukutsa*) ; *funzi*
(5) ; *nuta* (4).
- molest, - *tambudza* ; - *netsa* ; - *nya-*
ngadza ; - *yirusa* ; - *duna* ;
- *puma*.
— first, - *yamba*.
molten, - be, - *nyawuka* ; - *nyaka-*
tika ; - *nyorododeka*.
moment, *chinambo chidoko* (3).
Monday, *Chimotsi* (3) ; *Musu-*
mburuko (2) (for.) ; *Musumbu-*
nuko (2) (for.).
money, *mali* (5 pl.).
- change —, - *isinana mali* ; - *chi-*
njisa (for.).
monkey, *shoko* (4).
— (male), *wandamakwakwa* (4).
— (baboon), *gudo* (5).
— (large male baboon), *mombo* (4) ;
mbombo (4).
— (small male baboon), *chimbo-*
mbgana (3).
monkey-nuts, *nzungu* (4).
sauce of —, *doyi* (5).
month, *mğedzi* (2).
this —, *mğedzi uno* ; *mğedzi u li*
ku denga.
last —, *mğedzi wa ka fa*.
next —, *mğedzi u no yuya*.
moon, *mğedzi* (2).
new —, *mğedzi wa gara* ; *rusere* (6).
first quarter of —, *ruchenje* (6).

moon (full —), *jena guru* (5) ; *rikati*
(5) (third quarter).
— is eclipsed, *mğedzi wa yora*.
— rises at daybreak, *mğedzi wo*
edzergwa.
last quarter of —, *mindu* (4).
moonlight, *mğedzi muchena* (2).
morning (early), *mangwanana* (5 pl.) ;
rungwanana (6).
this —, *mangwanano* (5 pl.).
— star, *masase* (4) ; *nyamasase* (4).
— (at sunrise), *mafura mushana*
(5 pl.).
morrow, *mangwana* (5 pl.) ; *mu-*
ngwani (2).
morsel (of anything cut), *guranyo*
(4).
— (of anything broken), *chipefu* (3).
— (of porridge), *musuya* (2).
mortar (pestle), *musi* (2) ; *mu(s)hwi*
(2).
— (clay for plastering), *vu ra ka*
kanyiuwa ; *daka* (5) (for.).
mosquito, *rutunga* (6) (pl. *yutunga*
(7) and *nunga* (4)).
moss, *yukungu* (7).
moth, *chikukuyere* (3).
mother, *mai* (1).
— of animals, *mai* (1) ; *nyina* (4).
mother-in-law, *yamgene* (husband's
mother) ; *mbuya* (wife's mother).
mould, n., *chizumbo* (4) ; *cho ku*
yumba (3) ; *foroma* (5) (for.).
— (fungus), *chahuve* (3).
— v.t., - *yumba*.
— bricks, - *foroma* (for.).
— v. (become mouldy), - *ita chahuve* ;
- *vuva* ; - *yora* ; - *vuvana*.
— (- get sour as of food), - *shoya* ;
- *sina* (of porridge).
- moult, - *dayura*.
- mount, v., - *kwira*.
— a horse, - *taša*.
mountain, *gomo* (5).
— (small —), *chikomo* (3).
- mourn, - *chema* ; - *rira* ; - *mirira*
rufu ; - *gomba*.
mourning wail, *rukunga* (6) ; *chiridzi*
(3).
mouse, *gozho* (5).
kind of — with long snout, *dune*
(5).

- kinds of veld mice, *mbeya* (4);
ninga (4); *naro* (4); *nano* (4);
bvoroforo (5); *nambgaza* (4);
dapi (5); *banya* (5); *mbasi* (4);
mudende (2); *shana* (4); *ruda-
 lika-zhira* (6).
- mouse-trap, *riya* (5).
- moustache, *ndeavu dze marhi*;
ndeavu dzo ku msoro; *sekero*
 (4 pl.).
- mouth, *muromo* (2).
 — of bellows, *nyengo* (4).
 inside of —, *mukawwa* (2).
 — have a large — (as of pot),
 — *shana*.
 — be with — turned upwards,
 — *shanyama*.
 sore —, *rushame* (6).
 — open —, — *shama*.
 — close —, — *bumira*; — *dumata*;
 — *bumata*.
 — move, — *dengenyika*; — *zungunuka*.
 — about (fidget), — *zerekeza*; — *tende-
 vera*; — *zherekeza*.
 — away, — *tsuduyuka*; — *tsuduruka*.
 — (shift), — *tama*; — *bva*; — *arudza*.
 — (as tree in wind), — *zungunuka*
 (— *zungumuka*).
 — v.t., — *dengenyisa*; — *zungunusa*.
 — from side to side, — *zengeneka*;
 — *zenga-zenga*.
 — one's face and mouth, — *fenya-
 fenya*.
 much, 'zhinji' with class prefix.
 — adv., *gishinji*; *gikuru*; *ga ka
 wanda*; *kwazo*; also expressed
 by intensive of verb in 'isa'
 and 'esa'.
 mucus (from nose), *dzibga* (5).
 — (from chest), *chikarargwa* (3);
garargwa (5).
 mud, *dope* (5). See 'mire.'
 — muddle (mix up), — *kanganisa*; — *ve-
 nganisa*.
 muddy place, *pa no nyudza* (i.e.
 where it makes to sink).
 mug, *gaba* (5).
 mule, *hesera* (5) (for.).
 — multiply, v.i., — *wanda*.
 multiply, v.t., — *wanza*; — *ita ga ka
 wanda*; — *wedzera*.
 multitude, *yaghinji* (1); *yuzhinji* (7);
yuwandi (7).
 mumble, — *minura*; — *yunduma*; — *yu-
 rumu*.
 mumps, *magwirikwizha* (5 pl.).
 — murder, — *yuraya*; — *baya*.
 murderer, *muwurayi* (1); *mubayi*
 (1).
 — murmur, — *wunga*.
 muscle, *nyama* (4); — (of upper
 arm), *chisasa* (3); (over stomach),
gakaya (5).
 mushroom, *bgowa* (7).
 kinds of —, *dale* (5); *zhouchuru*
 (4); *dindindi* (5); *nedzi* (4);
chambge (3); *mbudzi-huru* (4);
zhou huru (4); *yuzukwe* (7);
mazheye (5 pl.); *naramutanda*
 (4); *horamutanda* (4); *nyambare*
 (4); *dandapakukutu* (5); *dende
 jaya* (5); *chihombiro* (3); *firifiti*
 (5); *chimbayira* (3); *chinyaka-
 sache* (3).
 poisonous —, *foldya ye gudo* (4).
 musical instrument, *cho ku ridza*
 (3).
 names of —, *mbira* (4) (native
 piano); *mutengeranwa* (2) (native
 violin); *chipendani* (3); *rudi-
 mbga* (like banjo); *nyere* (4).
 (flute); *munanzi* (2) (reed flute);
 gourd in which 'mbira' is
 placed, *deze* (5).
 must (ought), — 'fanira,' followed by
 Infinitive; also expressed by
 '— mba' followed by perf. t., e.g.
umba wa inda, you must go.
 Mutabele, *Dgiti* (1).
 mutton, *nyama ye gwai*.
 — muzzle, — *sungira muromo*.
 my, 'ngu' with gen. part. of govern.
 noun.
 myself (reflex pron.), 'gi' before verb
 root.
 — (demons. pron.), 'mene' with
 pers. pron. prefixed.
 mystery, *cha ka yansiwa* (3).

N

nag (horse), *biza* (5).
 — v., - *tambudza*; - *netsa*; - *nyadza*; - *shusha*.
nail, *mbambo* (4); **finger** —, *runjara* (6); *runzara* (6); — v.t., - *royera*; - *be nailed to the ground* (said of someone who remains in one place), - *royergwa ndemeredzi*.
naked, - *be*, - *ita musho*; - *ita sukusa*; - *ita shuku*; - *ngo deno*; - *fuke-nyika*; - *pushuka*.
 — **person**, *bunyumuny* (5).
 — **ness**, *yubunyumuny* (7); *yumusho* (7); *shiku* (4); *shuku* (4).
name, *zita* (5); *sina* (5); **sur-**, *mutupo* (2); **nick**— (in play), *zita re jeye*; **nick**— (in hatred), *zita re shone*; **Christian** —, *zita ro ku nyoroyedziwa*.
 — v.t., - *tumidza*; - *tuma*; - *be named*, - *nzi*; - *ihwa*; - *idziwa*; - *danwa*.
namely, adv., *ndo kuti*.
nape of neck, *chikotsi-kotsi* (3); **back of neck lower down**, *chiranga-ranga* (3).
napkin, *mucheka wo muromo* (2).
- narrate, - *reya*; - *nyepera*. See 'tell'.
narrow, - *be*, - *manikana*. — (not broad), - *tetepa*. — adj., 'tete' with class prefix.
nation, *rudzi* (6); *vanu* (i.e. people) (1 pl.).
nativity, *ku poniwa* (8); *ku zargwa* (8).
naughty, - *be*, - *ipa*.
 — (disobedient), - *ya no musimbga*; - *siriyuka*. See 'disobedient'.
- nauseate, - *misa moyo*; - *sisimusa moyo*; - *sembura moyo*; - *zuruguta moyo*; - *have nausea*, - *moniwa moyo*; - *nenga*; - *sisima*; - *semburgwa moyo*; - *gongwa*; - *zuzungwa*; - *zuruzuihwa*.
navel, *guvu* (5); — **cord**, *rukuvule* (6).
near, *pedo*; **very** —, *pedo-pedo*.
 - *be* — to each other, - *tsinana*; - *come* —, - (s) *hwedera*; - *sedera*; - *bring* —, - (s) *hwededza*; - *sededza*.

nearsightedness, *yutara* (7).
nearly, adj., *padoko*; also expressed by the form, 'nda ka nga ndo,' e.g. I nearly fell, *nda ka nga ndo wa*.
neat, - *be*, - *naka*; - *ya no yundere*; - *ya ne mazha*.
 — **person**, *ndere* (4).
 — **workman**, *nyangi* (4).
 — **ness**, *yundere* (7); *chiti* (3).
necessary, - *be* (needed), - *fanira*; - *shaikwa*.
neck, *mutisiba* (2) (*mutisipa* (2)).
 — **wear**, *chigara-huro* (3).
- need, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*.
needle, *runji* (6); *dumo* (5); *dumbo* (5); *rusono* (6); *mereti* (4) (for.).
- neglect, - *siya*; - *rasha*; - *sa chengeta*; - *siya-siya*.
- neigh (of horse), - *rira*.
neighbour, *wa ka yaka pedo* (1).
neither, *na*; *nyangwe* (with neg. verb); *neither . . . nor*, *nyangwe . . . nyangwe*; *kana . . . kana*, with neg. verb.
nephew (child of sister), *muzukuru* (1); (child of brother), *mğana* (1).
nerve, *rutsingo* (6); *dzira* (5).
nervous, - *be*, - *ihia*; - *teta*; - *vunduka*.
 — **person**, *mutshi* (1).
nest (fowl's), *dendere* (5); *zumbu* (5) (on ground).
 dove's —, *yusazara* (7) (*yusanzara*); *yutara* (7).
 bird's —, *dendere* (5); *chitaha* (3); *dumba* (5).
 rat's —, *mayusa* (5 pl.).
net (of rope for fishing), *mumbule* (2); (of reeds), *duyu* (5); — for catching game, *mambule* (5 pl.).
 — **bag**, *muneya* (2).
nettle, *rgwenya* (6); *chikwene* (3).
never, adv., *no ku si nga peri*, or, 'na kare na kare,' with the neg. verb.
never before, 'to ngo' and 'mbo' before verb root (neg.).
never mind, *ha ku ne maka*; *rega*.
nevertheless, *nyangwe za ka davo*.
new, adj., 'tsa' with class prefix.

new thing, *nyawana* (4) (for.).
 news, *maskoko* (5 pl.); *mawi* (5 pl.); *dama* (5); *guku* (5).
 next, - be, - *tsyera*; - be — to, - *batana na*; - *ya pado na*; - *ya pa rutiya rgwa*.
 - nibble, - *tsena*; - *tsenga-tsenga*; - *chechenya*.
 nice, - be, - *lonongera*; - *naka*; - *na-kidza*; - *zipa*; - *donga*; - *tapira*; - *dunga*; - *dongera*; - *gwangura*; - feel —, - *ti dsidzinindi*.
 nicely, adv., *za ha naka*; also 'natsa' with infinitive or 'natso' before verb root.
 niceness, *musipire* (2); *munakire* (2).
 niche (in arrow), *maniro* (4); *nyasho* (4).
 niece, *muzukuru* (1); *māna* (1).
 night, *yusiku* (7); last —, *yusiku bge zuro*; to-night, *yusiku bga nasi*; *yusiku yuno*; midnight, *pakati po yusiku*.
 — spent, *yato* (5).
 — watch, *chirawi* (3) (*chiro*).
 nine, adj., 'pfumbamge' with plur. class prefix.
 nine times, *rupfumbamge*.
 nineteen, *gumi ne pfumbamge*.
 ninety, *makumi mapfumbamge*.
 ninth, 'pfumbamge' with gen. part. of governing noun.
 ninth time, *rgwe pfumbamge*.
 nipple, *shungu* (4).
 — of cow, *munyato* (2).
 — of gun, *mutoto* (2).
 nit, *gadzanda* (5).
 no! *kwete! sa! hai sa! hai wa! bodo! doyo!*
 nobody, there is, *ha pa no munu*; *ha ku no munu*.
 - nod (in assent), - *kutsura*.
 — (dose), - *kotsira*; - *tsimḡaira* (= *tsu-mḡaira*).
 noise, *ruzha* (6); *chiya* (3); *mere-mere* (4); *nwawudzo* (4); *nwa-wudza* (4).
 — (loud speaking), *bopoto* (5).
 - make a —, - *ita ruzha*; - *pe chiya*; - *puṅga*; - *tinira*; - *ita mere-mere*.
 — (when putting things straight), - *gweregwedeka*.

none, there is, see 'nobody'.
 nonsense (whims), *nando* (4); *zi si po*.
 noon, *masikati* (5 pl.).
 north, *ku msoro* (9).
 — east, *mayodzanyemba* (5 pl.).
 nose, *mino* (4 pl.); *miro* (4).
 large —, *bino* (5).
 pierced — (as of cow), *gangara* (5).
 bridge of —, *mutanda mino* (2).
 nostrils, *mayuli e mino* (5 pl.).
 - blow the —, - *fura dzibga*.
 not, expressed by 'ha', 'zi', 'singa', 'si', in neg. conjugation. See Lesson XXXI.
 nothing, there is, *ha ku ne chinu*.
 - notice (- see), - *yona*.
 — (observe), - *tarira*; - *cherekedza*; - *nanganidza*; - *tadzanisa*; - *tari-sisa*; - *ringirisa*.
 - give —, - *yudza*; - *ziyisa*.
 notwithstanding, conj., *nyangwe za ha dero*; *nyangwe*; *nyanguya*.
 - nourish a child, - *vera*; - *kurisa*.
 — (- be nourishing), - *simbisa* (i.e. to give strength).
 nourishment, *zo ku ldyo* (3 pl.); *childyo* (3).
 now, adv., *zino*; (at once), *iko zino*; *zino-zino*; *zino pano*; *zino uno*.
 nowadays, *zino uno*; *mazuya ano*.
 nowhere, *ha pa na pa*.
 - number, v.t., - *yerenga*; - *raya*.
 — n., *yerengo* (4); *bgerengedzo* (4); *yurabgo* (7).
 numberless, - be, - *sa ravyiwa*; - *sa yerengwa*.
 numerous, *zhinji*.
 — be, - *wanda*; - *ya zhinji*.
 nurse, of sick, *mutoti* (1); *muwongi* (1).
 — of child, *mureri* (1); *mupendi* (1).
 — v. (- look after), - *vera*; - *penda*; - *chengeta*; - *tarira*; - *rinda*.
 — the sick, - *kota*; - *wonga*; - *pepa*.
 — (to suckle), - *mḡisa*.
 nut (ground), *nzungu* (4).
 pressed out —, *machikinyiwa* (5 pl.).
 a stool of —, *gunda* (5).
 unripe —, *rgwezu* (5).
 — shell, *deko* (5).

O

oath, miko (4) (*mike*).

- take an —, - *pika*; - *pikira*.

obedience, ku terera (8); *terero* (4).

- obey, - *terera*; - *nsywa*.

object, chinu (3) (i.e. thing).

— v.t. (- refuse), - *ramba*.

— (- be disinclined), - *zesa*.

objection, rambo (4).

obligation (something that brings under —), ruto (4); *chibvo* (3).

- oblige (- compel), - *gombedzera*

(- *kombedzera*); - *ngwaririra*.

— (- please), - *faaza*.

- obliterate, - *roza*.

— ed, - be, - *roya*.

obscure, - be, - shiba; - *ya ne rima*.

— (not clear), - *yanzika*.

- observe, - *yona*; - *tarira*.

— (keep), - *chengeta*.

— carefully, see 'notice.'

obstacle, chidziyiso (3); *dziyiro* (4);

minganidzo (4); *mingani* (4);

- place an —, - *dziyisa*; - *pinganidza*.

obstinate, - be, - ririyara; - *womesa musoro*.

— person, *manza* (4).

obstinacy, yungonono (7).

- obtain, - *wana*; - *yona*; - *kupuka*.

— cattle or live stock, - *pfuwa*.

— riches of any kind, - *fuma*.

occasion, chinambo (3); *nguya* (4);

nguli (4); *musi* (2).

- occupy (- take by force), - *tora*;

- *pamba*.

— house, &c., - *gara*.

- be occupied, - *gargwa*.

- occur, - *ihwa*. See 'happen.'

ocean, bahari (5); *gungwa* (5).

October, gumi guru (5).

odour, mgeya (2); *bgema* (7).

pleasant —, ku nuwira (8).

bad —, ku nuwa (8).

of, prep., expressed by the gen. particles according to class of governing noun.

off, adv., pa; ku; more generally expressed by the verb itself, e.g. - cut off, - gura.

offence, maka (4); *moša* (4); *chinyo* (4); *naadzo* (4).

- offend, - *isamgisa*; - *yirudza*; - *yirusa*.

— (- transgress), - *paremaka*; - *chinya*; - *tadza*.

offended, - be, - isamga.

offensive, - be, - nelsa; - *tambudza*;

- *nyangadza*.

- offer, - *pa*; - *yigira*.

— a reconciliatory gift, - *bata makuku*.

— sacrifice, - *bayira*; - *pira*.

office (work), mubato (2); *basa* (5); *mushumo* (2).

— (room), *hofisi* (4) (for.).

officer, mutariri (1); *mukuru* (1); *she* (1); *mubati* (1).

often, ruzhinji; kashinji; za ka wanda.

how — ? *rungana? rungani?*

oh! nandi! mai wei! baba yangu wei! yo wei! ail achi!

oil, mafuta (5 pl.).

ointment, mafuta o ku zodza (i.e. oil for rubbing on); *chizoro* (3); *chizodzo* (3).

old, adj., 'sharu' with class prefix; 'kare' with gen. part. of governing noun; - be —, - shakara

(- *sakara*); - *bvanganyuka* (of clothes) (- *bvanyanguka*); — (of people generally), - *kwegura*;

— (of women), - *chembera*; (of men), - *tanamara*; — east-off

tatters, *masakara* (5 pl.); - be — (of road), - *vumara*;

— man, *mutana* (1); *harabga* (4); *chitatarara* (3);

very — man, *dana* (5); *chitole* (5); *goka* (5); — woman, *mu-*

chembere (1); *chembere* (4).

old age, yukuweguro (7).

olden times, kare-kare; misi ye kare.

omen, chiratidzo (3); *shura* (4); **bad —, shurire** (4).

- omit, - *dalika*; - *siya*; - *rega*.

omnipotent, - be, - ya ne simba rose.

omnipresent, ka pa na pa a si ri.

omniscient, - be, - *siya gose*.
 on, *pa*; *pa msoro pa*; on the ground,
 on the floor, *passi* (9).
 once, *kamge*; at —, *iko gino*. See
 'now.'
 one, 'mge' with class prefix; — (in
 counting), *motsi*; — by —,
 'mge mge' with class prefix;
 every —, 'mge na...mge' with
 class prefix.
 only, 'oga' with gen. part. of
 governing noun; adv. *kwoga*;
chete; *bedzi*.
 onward, adv., *mberi*; *pa mberi*.
 - ooze, - *nyuka*; - *sina*.
 - open door, - *zarura*.
 — a lid or book, - *duhumura*; - *funura*;
 - *fudugura*.
 — a bottle, - *dziyura*; - *duhumura*;
 — a dam, - *puzura*.
 — a sore, - *putisa*; - *tumbura*.
 — the eyes, - *sinura*.
 — eyes of another, - *sinudza meso*.
 — the hand, - *tadzanura*.
 — (turn the leaves of a book), - *pasa-
 nura*.
 — (- uncover), - *fukura*.
 — (unfold), - *petenura*; - *fudugura*;
 - *funura*; - *kuadubura*.
 — the mouth, - *shama*; - *nanyura*.
 - be —, - *shanyama*; (of flower),
 - *papa*.
 opening, *yuli* (5); *buli* (5); small —,
chiyuli (3); *ruyuli* (6).
 openly, adv., *pa chena*; *pa mene*.
 opportunity, *chinambo* (3); *nambo* (4).
 - oppose, - *dziyira*; - *dziyisa*. See 'dis-
 pute.'
 opposite, - be, - *taridzana na*; - *ya-
 mbikana*.
 - oppress, - *remedza* (i.e. make heavy),
 - *tambudza*; - *netsa*.
 or, conj., *kana*; *nyangwe*; either...
 or, *kana*...*kana*; *nyangwe*...
nyangwe.
 orange (wild), *damba* (5); unripe —,
hora (5).
 - order (- command), - *raira*; - *raza*;
 - *bata*; - set in —, - *ruramisa*;
 - *rongedza*; - *gadira*.
 — n. (a command), *murairo* (2);
murawo (2); *chireyo* (3); *murazo* (2).

order (a succession), *neyedzano* (4).
 ore (iron), *mangura* (5 pl.).
 — (remains after iron has been
 smelted out), *guta* (5).
 origin, *ku tanga* (8); *ku yamba* (8);
mabviro (5 pl.).
 original, 'ku tanga' or 'ku yamba'
 with gen. part. of govern. noun.
 - originate, - *tanga*; - *yamba*; - *bvira*;
 - *zargwa*.
 - ornament, v.t., - *shongedza*.
 — oneself, - *shonga*.
 ornament, *yukomba* (7); *chishongo*
 (3).
 head — with tassel, *mundende* (2).
 leg —, *sisira* (5).
 — of beads across forehead, *bade* (5).
 — of feathers, *chigura* (3). See
 'bead.'
 orphan, *nevera* (4); *siyiwana* (4).
 orphanage, *yuterera* (7); *yusiyanwana*
 (7); *yusiyanwa* (7).
 ostrich, *mou* (4).
 other, 'mge' with class prefix used
 before noun, e.g. *mumge munu*,
 another man.
 others, 'mge' with plur. class
 prefix.
 otherwise, adv., *no mumge mutoyo*;
na pamge; *no kumge*.
 otter, *dene* (5); *nzidzi* (4).
 - ought, - *fanira*.
 our, 'du' with genitive part. of
 govern. noun.
 out, expressed by verb itself, e.g.
 - go out, - *buda*; - come out
 from, - *bva*.
 outcast, *murashiwa* (1); *murashiwi* (1).
 outcry, *mere* (4).
 - outdo, - *kunda*; - *pfuyura*; - *kurira*.
 outer, *kuzhe* or *pashe*, with gen.
 part. of governing noun.
 outside, *kuzhe*; *pashe*; *pa yazhe*.
 - outspan, v., - *panura* (for.); - *sunu-
 ngura*.
 — n., *mapanuro* (5 pl.).
 over, prep., *pa msoro pa*; also ex-
 pressed by verb, e.g. - cross
 over, - *ambuka*.
 over there, *uko*; *ukoko*; *ikweyo*.
 - overcome, - *kurira*; - *kunda*; - *pinda*.
 - overflow (of water), - *fachuka*.

- overflow (of river), - *faima*; - *fema no kuzhe*.
- (of abundant riches), - *pafuma*.
- overhang, - *ita gofira*.
- overhead, adv., *pa msoro*; *ku msoro*.
- overlook (- miss), - *sayona*; - *dalika*.
- overpower, see 'overcome.'
- overseer, *mutariri* (1); *murairi* (1); *murindi* (1); *muringiri* (1); *mufudzi* (1).
- overtake, - *bata pa zhira*.
- overthrow, - *putsa*; - *paradza*; - *kunda*.
- overturn, - *shandura*; - *shandukura*.
- overwhelm, - *zizinyidza*.
- owe, - *ya ne maka*; - *ya ne moša*.
- owl, *zizi* (5).

- owl (large), *jichidza* (5); *gwikwi* (5).
- (small), *chimboli* (3).
- own (- possess), - *ya na* (i.e. to have). (one's very —), *pa ruzima*; *pa ganda*; or *pa makanda* preceded by poss. pron.
- (- acknowledge), - *tendera*; - *bvumira*.
- owner, *mgene* (1); *tenzi* (1) (master); *muridzi* (1).
- ox, *nombe* (4).
- (trained —), *nzombe* (4).
- (young), *mukono* (2).
- (or cow) without horns, *nzuma* (4).
- (or cow), *nyombe* (4).
- very large —, *nduta* (4).

P

- pace, n., *mufambire* (2).
- (step), *nambge* (4).
- v., - *tsika*; - *tsanduka*.
- pack, - *rongedza*; - *gadzira*.
- (- press in), - *paka*; - *pakisa*; - *isokera*; - *tsikira*.
- (- crowd), - *tsikirirana*; - *manikidzana*.
- (- load), - *tutira*.
- n. (as of hounds), *dumbu re mbga*.
- packet, *butiro* (5); large — or bale, *mukunguru* (2).
- pad for the head (of rope), *hata* (4).
- (of grass), *gungiro* (5).
- paddle (with oars), - *kwaša*.
- (splash), - *chapura*; - *chambgadzira*.
- page, *shazhu* (5).
- pail, *belete* (5) (for.); milk —, *wedza* (4); *kamiro* (4).
- pain, *rgwadziwo* (4); *ku rgwadza* (8); *ku rgwadziwa* (8).
- sharp —, *chinu* (3); *mabayo* (5 pl.); *chithiayuro* (3).
- in side, *ku nzgwa vandamga* (5).
- v. (- have gripings), - *rumgarumga*.
- (throb), - *panda* (- *banda*); - *wita*; - *checheta*; - *yukura*; - *vaira*; - *vanga*.
- have a sharp —, - *thiayurgwa*.
- give sharp —, - *thiayura*.
- continually, - *rgwadza*; - *pisa*.

- pain (burn), - *shosha*; - *pfuta*.
- , - be painful all over, - *vuvutiwa*; - *chichina*.
- paint, - *dzudzura*.
- pair, *mbiri* (two).
- pale, adv., 'chena' with class prefix.
- be —, - *chenuruka*.
- palm of hand, *chanza* (3).
- palm-tree, *murara* (2); *muchingwe* (2) (river palm).
- palpitate, - *pfura*.
- pan (native — made of piece of pot), *gango* (5).
- pant, - *femereka*; - *takwaira*.
- (as of dog), - *hataira*; - *ita mafemo*.
- paper, *rwadi* (4).
- parable, *chifananidzo* (3); *fanaidzo* (4); - speak in —, - *ita chimgonyi*; - *ita diŋa*.
- parakeet, *chiwenga* (3).
- parallel, - be, - *vambikana*.
- paralysis of legs, *membgana* (4).
- parboil meat, - *nyumbgika*, - *nyikira*.
- parcel, *butiro* (5).
- parch, - *womesa*; - *pisa*; —ed, - be, - *woma*; - be —ed with thirst, - *womergwa*; - *fa ne nyota*.
- pardon, - *kanganwira*; - *regera maka*; — n., *kanganwiro* (4).
- parent, *mubereki* (1).
- part, - *paradza*. See 'divide.'

- part from each other, - *paradzana*.
 — grass or leaves of book &c. in looking for something, - *pene-ngura*; - *pengura*.
 — n., *guranyo* (4); *goyero* (4); *ganuro* (4).
 — (cut off), *gwinyu* (5).
 — (broken off), *medu* (4); *mewu* (4).
 — (cut or snapped off), *chidambo* (3); *chidimbo* (3); *chigwimbo* (3).
 — (torn off), *chirendo* (3).
 — (of something broken), *chipeđu* (3); *chimedu* (3); *chimepfu* (3); *chipefu* (3); *chimewu* (3); *chigwegwa* (3).
 large — of broken pot, *gambe* (5).
 — of broken pot for grinding tobacco in, *chiwenga* (3).
 — of wall, *mupanda* (2).
 particular, - be, about food, - *ronda*.
 parting of roads, *maradzano* (4 pl.).
 partridge, *chikwale* (3); *rengé* (5); *wale* (4).
 large —, *gorgwe* (5).
 small kind of —, *chimuto-watša* (3).
 party, *chiyunga* (3).
 - pass, - *pfuyura*; - *pindirira*.
 — in, - *pinda*.
 — out, - *buda*.
 — on, - *inda mberi*; - *pfuyura mberi*.
 — one another (- miss), - *pesana*.
 — through a country, - *gura*.
 — on, v.t., - *pfuyudza*; - *tanuridza*.
 — over a river, - *ambuka*.
 — urine, - *tunda*.
 — by at a distance, - *nyenyeredza*.
 — quickly (- disappear), - *nyenguka*.
 pass, n., for natives, *paso* (4) (for.); *chitupa* (3).
 passable, - be, - *nga indwiwa*.
 — (of river), - *ambukwa*.
 passage, *ngamu* (4); *njemu* (4).
 narrow —, between two objects, *mukoto* (2).
 passion, *hasha* (4 pl.).
 — fly into —, - *yiruka*.
 — (suffering), *ku rgwadziwa* (8); *ku tambura* (8); *namo* (4).
 passionate, - be, - *ya ne zivinyu*.
 Passover, *Paseka* (4) (for.).
 past, *kare*; *pa ku tanga* (i.e. at the beginning).
 pasture, *mafuro* (5 pl.); *bundo* (5); *yuchedzo* (7).
 - pat, - *roya-roya*.
 — (- stroke), - *purudzira*.
 - patch, - *pfumira*; - *sonera*.
 — n. (- sewn on), *chinemo* (3); *chiremo* (3).
 — of grass, *chisuwa* (3).
 — of colour, *gwapa* (5); *muyara* (2); *gwati* (5).
 path, *zhira* (4) (*nzira*).
 narrow —, *rushhwaira* (6).
 — of game, *mğazha* (2); *gwara* (5); *mğezha* (4).
 patience, *ku tsunga moyo* (8); *moyo murefu* (2).
 patient, - be, - *ya no moyo murefu*; - *nyarara*; - *tsunga moyo*.
 — n. (a sick person), *murgweri* (1); *mutenda* (1).
 patriarch, *teleguru* (1) (*taleguru*); *bambo* (1).
 - pause, - *mira*; - *zorora*; - *rega*.
 — n., *zororo* (5).
 paw, *ruyoko* (6); *gumbo* (5).
 - pay, - *ripira*; - *dusira* (- *gusira*); - *fupira*.
 — tribute, - *ruya*.
 — taxes, - *tera*.
 — debt, - *ripa maka*; - *pedza maka*.
 — cause to —, - *ripidza*.
 — for wife, - *royora*.
 — attention, - *terera*; - *nzgwa*.
 — a visit, - *mutsa*; - *shanya*.
 — back, - *tsiya*; - *dzosa*.
 payment, *mubairo* (2); *chiripo* (3); *chiripiro* (3).
 — for bartering, *shaviro* (4).
 — for taking care of things of another, *rutoto* (6).
 payment for making gardens in another chief's territory, *rukoto* (6).
 pea, *nyemba* (4).
 peace, *mugaro* (2); *rugare* (6); *mucheke* (2); *rubvuro* (6); - make —, - *yananisa*; - *kwadzanisa*; - live in —, - *garika*.
 peaceful, - be, - *gadzikana* (- *gadzikama*); - *teramisa*; - *ita mucheche-tere*.
 peacock, *chikidza-mutseta* (3).

peak, *musoro we gomo* (2); *nulikwa* (4).
 pebble, *chibge* (3).
 - peck (of hen), - *ruma*.
 — (of chickens in eggs), - *chochonya*.
 — (pick up food), - *choyona*; - *koyona*.
 peel, *ganda* (5); *deko* (5).
 — v.t., - *menya*; - *sendenudza*; - *funura*.
 — (scrape), - *para*; - *senda*.
 — a pumpkin, - *sesa*.
 — off, v.i., - *zuyuka*; - *baduka*; - *daduka*; - *funuka*.
 - peep, - *dongolera*; - *bokorera*.
 - peer into, - *yonyorora*.
 peg, *mbambo* (4); *chipanda* (3); *chikokoyo* (3); wooden —, *ndemeredzi* (4).
 penalty, *muripo* (2); *chiripo* (3).
 pen, *peni* (4) (for.).
 pencil, *penzere* (4) (for.).
 - penetrate, - *pinda mukati*.
 penitent, - *be*, - *chema zivi*.
 Pentecost, *Pentecosta* (4) (for.).
 people, *vanu* (1); (tribe), *rudzi* (6).
 crowd of —, *manyongoli* (5 pl.); *manyongoyiro* (5 pl.).
 white —, *varumbi* (1); *varungu* (1).
 pepper, *miripiri* (4).
 peremptory, - *be*, - *ya ne gundo*.
 perfect, - *be*, - *zadzisika*; - *kwanisika*; - *rungamika kwazo*.
 - perform, - *ita*; - *baia*.
 perfume, *ku nuwira* (8); *ku xipa* (8).
 perhaps, *kuda*; *pamge*; *chifo*.
 - perish, - *pera*; - *parara*; - *fa*.
 perjury, *ku pika nema* (8).
 permanent, - *be*, - *gara*; - *ya 'po*.
 permission, - *ask*, - *kumbira ku tendergwa*.
 - permit, - *tendera*; — n., *pwadi yo ku tendergwa*.
 perpetual, - *be*, - *sa pera*; - *sa guma*.
 perpetually, adv., *no ku si nga peri*; *no ku si nga gumi*.
 - perplex, - *kanganisa*; - *pesaisa*; - *dzianisa*; - *shonganisa musoro*.
 - be —ed, - *bathwa ne changaira*; - *ita mvinya-mvinya*.
 - persecute, - *lambudza*; - (*nzg*) *wisa yurombo*; - *netsa*; - *shusha*.
 persecution, *dambudzo* (4); *netso* (4); *rgwayairo* (6).

perseverance, *rgwedzahaya* (6); *yu-tsungi* (7).
 - persevere, - *isunga moyo*; - *isungirira*; - *sesemedza*.
 - persist, - *pindira*; - *pinziridza*; - *shinga*; - *shingaira*; also expressed by aux. verb - *'ramba'*, followed by pres. particle, e.g. he persists in asking, *u no ramba a chi kumbira*.
 person, *munu* (1).
 — ally (self), *'mene'* with personal pronoun.
 perspiration, *ziya* (5).
 - perspire, - *budisa ziya*; - *putikire ziya*.
 - persuade, - *gombedzera* (- *kombedzera*); - *zimbirira*; - *ziyirira*.
 pestle, *musi* (2) (*mutshwi* (2)).
 - pet, - *reza*; (stroke), - *purudzira*.
 — n., *mudikanywa* (1); *mudiwa* (1).
 petition, *kumbiro* (4); *nyengetero* (4); *namato* (4).
 petty, adj., *'doko'* with class prefix.
 — chief, *she mudoko* (1).
 pheasant, *wale-matondo* (4); *rengwe* (5); *gorgwe* (5).
 phlegm, *dzibga* (5).
 photograph, *chifanaidzo* (3); *chifanaidzo* (3).
 piano (native), *malimba* (5 pl.); *mbira* (4).
 - pick, - *tana*.
 — fruit, - *tana*; - *puzura*.
 — a bone, - *nupuna*.
 — up, - *nunga* (- *nonga*).
 — up and remove, - *wolera*.
 — up something lost, - *tumba* (*tomba*); - *bosha*.
 — to pieces, - *pfumvunyura* (- *pfumvunura*); - *tadzanura*.
 — (- choose), - *shanangura*; - *isawura*; - *shara*.
 — out here and there, - *nyudzanyudza*.
 — n. (hoe), *badza* (5).
 picture, *chifanaidzo* (3).
 piece, see *'part'*.
 - pierce, - *bvuyora*; - *boyora*; - *yurura*; - *bvolyora*; - *baya*; - *burikidza*; - *pinza*; - *wadza*.
 - be —ed, - *bvolyoka*; - *bvuyoka*.

- pierce, not able to pierce (as of bullet),
- *kunya*; - *ngunya*.
- pig, *nguruye* (4); *humba* (4); wild —,
nguruye ya bundo (4); *njiri* (4);
dikila (5).
- sty, *danga ne nguruye* (5).
- pigeon, *njiya* (4). See 'dove.'
- pile, *dutu* (5); *murgwe* (2).
- up, v., - *tutira*.
- one on top of another, - *ronga*;
- *tulikidza* (- *dulikidza*).
- pill, *shanga* (4).
- pillar (of wood), *mbiru* (4); *mutisiko*
(2).
- (of stone or bricks), *rushongwe* (6).
- pillow, *mutisago* (2); *mutisamiro* (2);
chitsamiro (3).
- v. (- lay down the head), - *tsamira*.
- pimple, *chipundu* (3).
- (on face), *mburgwa* (4); *wemura*
(4); (a rash), *yupundu* (7).
- pin, *chiperechi* (3) (for.).
- pinch (with hand), - *shunya* (- *tsunya*).
- (to be narrow), - *shinya*; - *manika*;
- *mbandidzira*; - *mbandika*.
- n. (a small quantity), expressed by
prefix 'chi' or 'zi,' e.g. a — of
salt, *chimunyū*, or *zimunyū*.
- of tobacco, *gakamira* (5).
- pipe, *chihwepa* (3); *ndudu* (4); *pipi*
(4) (for.); *chiguba* (3); *chanana*
(3).
- pit, *gomba* (5); *mgodi* (2) (for.).
- of stomach, *dundu* (5).
- for catching game, *huzha* (4).
- pitch, *namu* (4).
- v., a tent, - *royera*; - *dzikira*.
- (throw), - *kanda*; - *posha*.
- pith, *moyo* (2).
- pitiful, - be, - *nzg(wisa) yurombo*.
- pitiless, - be, - *sa ya ne nyasha*; - *sa*
ya ne sisi; - *ya no moyo mukuku*.
- place, *dumu* (5); *yugaro* (7); but
generally expressed by loc. 'pa'
or demons. pron. 'paya,' e.g.
pa ndi no famba (the place where
I walk); or, *paya pa ndi no*
famba. See 'spot.'
- sheltered —, *dina* (5).
- lading and unlading —, *yuturu* (7).
- place, stony place, *rujekese* (6);
gangarabge (5).
- full of skulls (and bones), *ma-*
sorocheŋwa (5 pl.); *muchenwa*
(2); *muchenje* (2).
- resting —, *masororo* (5 pl.);
masororero (5 pl.).
- (stead), *chinambo* (3).
- wet —, *muŋwe* (2).
- where gardens are, *ruwa* (6);
narawunda (4); *ndimo* (4).
- v.t., - *isa*; - *gadza*.
- at short intervals, - *tsina*; - *tsina-*
nisa.
- on high, - *kwiridza*; - *tulika*.
- against something in a standing
position, - *sendamisa*; - *sendeka*.
- in a different position, - *dzemura*.
- apart, - *tavanza*.
- down flat, - *gadziha*.
- plague, *nyathwa* (4).
- plain, *bani* (5); *renje* (5).
- be —, - *yonekwa*; - *yonekara*;
- *ya pa chena*.
- plainly, adv., *zi no wikwa* (i.e. plainly
heard); *zi no yonekwa* (plainly
seen); *zi no zikanwa* (plainly
understood).
- (openly), *pa chena*.
- plait, - *ruka*.
- round with wire, - *runda*.
- a string, - *kosha*; - *poshonga*.
- one who plaits, *muruki* (1).
- plan, *mano* (5 pl.); *zano* (5).
- make a —, - *tanda mano*.
- plane, - *yeza*; - *senda*; - *enzanisa*;
- *fufumara*; - *papa*.
- with adze, - *kwazha*; - *sesa*.
- n., *mbezo* (4); *musendo* (2).
- plank, *pranga* (5) (for.).
- plant, - *sima*.
- near each other, - *tsina* (- *tsinisa*).
- maize and beans, - *kayira*.
- again in different way, - *simu-*
nura.
- in firmly, - *simika*; - *timika*.
- in poles (of hut), - *simikira*.
- (- sow), - *dzara*; - *kusha*.
- n., *muti* (2).
- (shrub), *gwenzi* (5).
- (seedling), *nondo* (4).
- of grain, *chipande* (3).

plant of maize, *nungo* (4).
 tender —, *chichindapasi* (3).
 plantain, *kova* (5).
 — tree, *muhoova* (2).
 — plaster, — *yuvu*; — *nama*; — *nami-
 ra*; — *isetera*.
 — over, or white-wash, — *drudura*.
 plate, *ndiro* (4).
 soup —, *ndiro hombge* or *hofu*
 (4).
 small —, *chindiro* (3); *ndirwana*
 (4).
 — play, — *tamba*.
 — (like infant), — *pezhuka*.
 — with infant, — *reza*; — *gayura*.
 — an instrument, — *ridza*.
 — tricks, — *ita musere*; — *ita jeye*;
 — *angarara*; — *ita mushazhe*; — *sha-
 zhira*.
 — (of horse), — *rinyuka*.
 — (— mock), — *yimba*.
 — n. (the act of playing), *tambo*
 (4 pl.).
 — thing, *cho ku tamba* (3); *chitambo*
 (3).
 — plead, — *nyengetera*; — *kumbirisa*.
 — for, — *revera*; — *mirira*.
 pleasant, — be, v.i., — *naka*; — *fadza*;
 — *ya ne mazha*.
 — taste —, — *zipa*; — *zipira*.
 — please, — *fadza*; — *farisa*; — *nakidza*;
 — *dakidza*; — *kodza*; — *chenesa*
moyo.
 — (amuse), — *sekesa*; — *tambisa*.
 — be —ed, — *fara*.
 — with, — *farira*.
 please! *ndi no kumbira* (I ask),
 also expressed by the aux. 'do'
 with imperative, e.g. *do ndi pai*,
 please! give me.
 pleasure, *muvaro* (2).
 pledge, *rubaiso* (6); *rudungo* (6).
 plentiful, — be, — *wanda*; — *ya zhinji*.
 plenty, *yuwandi* (7); *yuzhinji* (7).
 — of food, *guta* (5) (pl. *maguta*). See
 'abundance'.
 pleurisy, *mabayo* (5 pl.).
 pliable, — be, — *tefa*.
 — plot, — *rangana mano*; — n., *zano* (5).
 plough, *badza* (5) re *Chirumbi*.
 — v., — *rima*.
 — pluck, — *bvisa*.

— pluck off feathers, — *tapura*; — *wu-
 ndura*; — *wunyura*.
 — out with roots, — *dzura*; — *drukura*;
 — *tapura*; — *dzipura*.
 — out of eye, — *tonongora*; — *no-
 ngora*.
 — fruit, — *i(h)ana*.
 — fruit or grain, not leaving on
 stalk, — *puvura*.
 — maize, — *sodogora*.
 — off from, or — off, legs and wings
 (of locusts), — *tanayura*.
 — n. (courage), *tsungomoyo* (4).
 plum (native), *nengeni* (4); *nunguru*
 (4); *dunduru* (5); *hute* (4);
chakata (cha) (4).
 — plunder, — *paradza*; — *putsa*.
 — plunge, — *nyura*; — v.t., — *nyudza*.
 pocket, *hobodo* (4) (*hombodo* (4));
mbudu (4); small —, *chihomo* (3).
 point, *muromo* (2); highest —,
yusasi (7); *yusiga* (7); sharp —,
yunzi (7); — (dot), *shanga* (4).
 — v.t. (— sharpen), — *tesa*; — *tesera*.
 — with the hand, — *tendeka*.
 — out, — *aduzira*; — *paridza*.
 — be on the — of, — *yayavira*;
 — *rgwisa*; — *kara*.
 pointer, *chitendeko* (3).
 poison, *mushonga wo ku yuraya* (2);
yuturu (7); *chefu* (3) (for.);
yushungu (7).
 — v., — *rowa*; — *roya*; — *yuraya no*
muti.
 — poke, — *baya*; — *tuputa*; — *tibwura*.
 — with a stick, — *gofa*; — *nyononyedza*.
 — with horns, — *tunga*.
 pole, *bango* (5); long, straight, and
 smooth —, *musubgi* (2); three
 strong —s holding roof, *mapanda*
 (5 pl.); centre pole of hut,
banda (5).
 —s put across a gate, *mapiyo* (5 pl.).
 — stripped of bark, *mondorgwa* (4).
 — to which door is fastened, *gwere*
 (5).
 — for closing reed door, *mupfigo* (2).
 — v., put in poles, — *rura*; — *teya*.
 — put in main poles of hut, — *teya*
imba.
 policeman, *mupulisa* (1); *pulisa* (5)
 (for.).

- polish, - kwesha ; - kweshera ; - bgi-nyisa ; - penyisa ; - kwiza ; - wungumisa ; - wawacha.
- over again, - kweshurura.
- with stick or trowel, - yaza.
- n., muti wo ku bgiinyisa.
- ing stone, chidziro (3).
- politeness, masiku-bgandara (5 pl.).
- pollen, mukume (2) ; brown — (of 'munga'), chitondo (3).
- pond, diyi (5) ; gawa (5) ; deep —, bgenje (7).
- ponder, - fungisisa ; - rangarira. See 'consider.'
- ponderous, - be, - remesa ; - remerera.
- pool, dya (5) ; gangwa (5). See 'pond.'
- long — of water, dandadziya (5).
- very deep —, yusa (7) ; yuyaiya (7) ; yungaza (7) ; yusa (7).
- large — in river, divino (5).
- pop, as of maize, - putika.
- corn, maputi (5 pl.).
- popular, - be, - dikanwa na vanu.
- populated, - be, - gargwa na vanu.
- population, vanu (1 pl.).
- porcupine, nungu (4) ; njenje (4).
- quill, museye (2) (i.e. arrow) ; mu(nz)wa (2).
- pore, ruyuli (6) ; rusuruyuli (6).
- pore (as over book), - tsikitsira ; - tsinamira.
- pork, nyama ye nguruye.
- porous, - be, - ya no yuyuli.
- porridge, sadza (5).
- milk —, mudzamba (2) ; munamba (2).
- very thin —, bota (5) ; (for children), chinamu (3).
- thin — for invalids, yususu (7).
- bad —, watery, mbgizhu (4) (mbgishu (4)) ; dzutsu (5).
- of pumpkin, nopi (4).
- of new maize, deyule (5).
- of new 'munga,' mbisambisani (4).
- of new 'rukweni,' d(h)uche (5).
- heaped up dish of —, chituna (3).
- first cooked in new pot, mawangu (5 pl.).
- piece of stiff —, musuya (2).
- portion, chigoyero (3) ; goyero (4).
- See 'part.'
- position, n., see 'place.'
- stretch into —, - tamura.
- possess, - ya ne fuma. See 'own.'
- possessions (general), fuma (4).
- (cattle), zipfuwo (3 pl.).
- (goods), numbi (4 pl.).
- possessor, mgene (1) ; tenzi (1) ; muridzi (1).
- possible, - be, - bwira ; - gonekanwa ; - bvidzika ; - bwika ; - goneka.
- post (mail), gwadi (4) ; poso (4) (for.).
- (work), mubato (2) ; basa (5).
- (pole), dango (5).
- postpone, - tuna ; - tunidzira ; - tuniridza (- tunuridza).
- pot, hali (4). See 'earthenware.'
- potblack, matsidzi (5 pl.) ; matsito (5 pl.).
- potato, dabura (5) (for.).
- (sweet), bura (5) ; mbambaira (4) ; shezha (4) ; margwa (4) ; bara-yakwambo (4).
- potsherd, chaenga (3) ; chiwenga (3).
- large —, zigambe (5).
- potter, muyumbi we hali.
- pouch, hobodo (4) ; chikwama (3).
- pound, - (s)hwa ; - phanyisa.
- with stone, - kacha ; - kanya.
- pound (money), pondo (4) (for.).
- pour in, - dira.
- away, - teyura ; - rasha.
- from one vessel into another, - diridzanya.
- off some, - mimina ; - pungura.
- out, - durura.
- (of rain), - popoma ; - isoya ; - shinyira.
- water on the hands, - surulidza ; - sururudza.
- poverty, yuchena (7) ; yurombe (7).
- powder, yupfu (7).
- for putting on forehead of young men to attract young girls, doto re hungwe (5) ; doto re hangaiya (5).
- gunpowder, musiri (2) ; yunga (7).
- powder-horn, gonangombe (5).
- power, simba (5).
- powerful, - be, - simba ; - ya ne simba.

powerless, - be, - *shaya simba*.
 pox, *nomba* (4 pl.).
 - practise (to do), - *ita*.
 — (learn), - *dzidza*; - *idza*.
 - praise, - *rumbidza*; - *kudza*; - *wombera*; - *kudzisa*; - *tesera*; - *yirikidza*; - *tumidza*; - *amba*; - *tusa*; - *vaidza*.
 — n., *chiambo* (3); *rumbidzo* (4); *kudzo* (4).
 pranks, - be full of, - *zhangandira*.
 — n., *madayo* (5 pl.).
 - pray, - *nyengetera*; - *kumbira*; - *tetedzera* (*telezera*).
 — for, - *kumbirira*; - *nyengeterera*.
 prayer, *munyengetero* (2); *mutetedzero* (2); *kumbiriro* (4).
 - preach, - *paridza*; - *reya shoko ro Mudzimu*; - *nyepera zo Mudzimu*.
 preacher, *muparidzi* (1); *mudzidzisi* (1); *mufundisi* (1) (for.).
 - precede, - *tungamira* (*dungamira*); *tungamirira*; - *tungamidza*.
 — (be first), - *tangira*; - *nangira*.
 precious, - be, - *diwa*; - *dikanwa*.
 — (expensive), - *kosha*; - *dura* (for.).
 precipice, *mawere* (5 pl.); *yungaza* (7); *ruwere* (6); *yusasi* (7); *yusisa* (7).
 precise, - be, - *natso kw ita*; - *ita chiti*.
 precisely, adv., *za ka rungama kwazo*.
 - prefer, - *shanangura pana*; - *tsawura pana*; - *shara pana*; - *da pana*.
 pregnant, - be, - *ya ne mimba*; - *rema*; - *ya ne dumbu*; - *susuyara*.
 (become —), - *tsika mgedzi*; - *naka pa mugiri*; - *mita* (for.).
 - prepare, - *rongedza*; - *rongedzera*; - *gadzira*.
 - prepare a skin (scrape), - *pfiza*; - *para*; (manipulate), - *suka*; - *sukuta*; - *pfudza*.
 - present, v.t., - *pa*; - *perekera*.
 —, - be, - *ya 'po*.
 — n., *chipo* (3); *chipiwa* (3).
 presentiment, - have, - *zi zivira*; - *gudziwa ne hana*.
 — n., *ziharura* (5).

presently, adv., *zino*; *iko zino*; *kamge*.
 - preserve, - *chengeta*; - *yiga*.
 - press (squeeze), - *sina*; - *tsikirira*; - *royerera*; - *dzinya*.
 — down, - *ndinyira*; - *ndonyera*; - *tsikisa*; - *ndiya*; - *ronda*; - *tsoka*; - *tsokera*; - *tsonyera*.
 — out, - *sina*.
 — hard, - *manikidza*.
 — through a narrow place, - *senerera*.
 — with palm of hand, - *tsamba*.
 — upon one another, - *tsikirirana*.
 See 'crowd.'
 — n., *chiginiro* (3).
 pretence, *mano-mano* (5 pl.); *bgednedzo* (7).
 - pretend, - *ita mano-mano*; - *ita sa*; - *rangazuka*.
 pretty, - be, - *naka*.
 - prevent, - *dziyisa*; - *tandira*; - *pi-mirira*; - *pingaidza*; - *yiya*.
 — sickness, - *taya*.
 — calf from sucking, - *gombera*.
 previous, - be, - *tangira*.
 previously, adv., *pa ku tanga*; *pa matango*; *pa ku yamba*; *pa mayambo*.
 prey, *cha ka yurawa* (3).
 — (half-eaten), *marangwanda* (5 pl.).
 price, *mutengo* (1); *nengo* (4); *yukweyo* (7).
 what is the —? (*chi*) *no lāya mali mangana?* (lit. it eats how much money?)
 - prick, - *baya*.
 pride, *ku zi kudza* (8); *manyawi* (5 pl.); *majaimga* (5 pl.). See 'conceit.'
 priest, *muprisita* (1).
 prince, *mgana wa she* (1); *mugari* (1); *muchinda* (1); *mganazari* (1).
 princess, *yamoyo* (1).
 principal, adj., 'kuru' with class prefix.
 - print, - *tsikisa*; - *nyora*. See 'write.'
 foot —, *gumbo* (5); *rushoka* (6).
 — of finger, *chitsambidzo* (3).
 prison, *Witongo* (4) (for.); *jeire* (4) (for.).

prisoner, *musungwa* (1).
 prize, *mubairo* (2).
 probably, adv., *kuda*; *pamge*;
 - 'nenge' with rep. pron.
 procession, *runda* (6).
 - produce, - *bereka*; - *nyusa*; - *nyuka*.
 — (do), - *ita*.
 — (bring forward), - *yonesa*; - *budisa*.
 — ears (of grain), - *bunda*; - *paka*.
 product, *chibereko* (3).
 - profess, - *reya*.
 proficient, - *be*, - *ita mizha*; - *ziya kwazo*.
 - profit (benefit), - *fuma*.
 progress, - *make*, - *pfuyura mberi*;
 - *pindira mberi*; - *pinda mberi*.
 - prohibit, - *kanyudza*; - *dziyisa*;
 - *rambisa*.
 - project, - *bunda*; - *buda*.
 - promise, - *rayira*; - *pikira*.
 - promote, - *batisa*; - *betsera*; - *fambisa*; - *pfuyudza mberi*.
 prompt, - *be*, - *chimbizika*.
 — (incite), - *mutsa*.
 - pronounce, - *reya*; - *dudza nzgwi*.
 proof, *tendiso* (4).
 - prop, - *tayurira*; - *pikura*; - *tsigira*.
 — up something, so that it does not fall, - *tsigidzira*.
 — n., *tayuriro* (4); *chitayuriro* (3).
 proper, adj., 'kwa' with emph. pron., i.e. *kwaye*; *kwayo*; *kwawo*; *kwayo*, &c.
 - *be* —, - *fanira*; - *fanirgwa na*; - *dzikama*.
 properly, *kwazo*; *no mutoyo kwawo*.
 property, *fuma* (4); *numbi* (4). See 'possessions'.
 - prophesy, - *yuka*; - *profitera* (for.).
 prophet, *muprofita* (1); *muwuki* (1).
 - prosecute, - *kwirira pana she*.
 prosperous, - *be*, - *famba za ka naka*; - *shangara*.
 — (be happy), - *garika*.
 - protect, - *chengeta*; - *rinda*; - *dziyirira*.
 - protrude, - *bvajuka* (*bvujuka*); - *fu-zhuka*.
 proud, - *be*, - *zi kudza*; - *ita manyawi*.
 - prove (try), - *idza*.
 — (show), - *ratidza*; - *taridza*.

proverb, *shumo* (4).
 - provide, - *chengeta*; - *ponesa*; - *raramisa*.
 provision for journey, - *mbuya* (4).
 - provoke, - *tsamgisa*; - *mutsa hashu*; - *yamba*.
 - prow, - *dzengereva*; - *funa-funa*.
 prudent, - *be*, - *chenjera*; - *funganya*.
 - prune, - *rangura*.
 psalm, *rgwiyo* (6).
 public, in (publicly), *pa chena*.
 - publish, - *ziyisa yose*; - *paridzira*.
 - puff, - *futisa*.
 — cheek, - *fundura*.
 puffed up, - *be*, - *futuka*; - *nyanduka*.
 puff of hair to keep snuff in, *rushindi* (6).
 puff adder, *mvumbi* (4).
 - pull, - *kweya*; - *kakata*.
 — apart, - *anyura*; - *nanyura*; - *tanayura*.
 — down a house, - *putsa*; - *pasa*.
 — faces, - *chonya*.
 — off plastering, - *zungumura*; - *koro-mora*.
 — out a tooth, - *gura*; - *gwedura*; - *gudura*.
 — out of sheath, - *wetsa*; - *vuya*; - *vomora*; - *gomora*.
 — out (of thorn), - *tumbura*.
 — down (as of bough), - *woya*; - *woyera*; - *ngoya*; - *ngongoya*; - *kokoya*; - *remba*.
 — out (uproot), - *dzura*; - *tipura* (- *dzipura*); - *kapura*; - *tapura*.
 — away, - *pokonyora*.
 pumpkin (general), *nanga* (5).
 —, kinds of, *fere* (5); *mboko* (4); *shamba* (5); *juwanda* (5); *mofu* (4); *nyimi-nyimi* (4).
 — (squash), *budzi* (5); *gavu* (5); *guna* (5); *dende* (5).
 very nice —, *chapfudu* (3).
 —, watery part (cooked), *mutubge* (2).
 hard or dry —, *detenu* (5).
 soft inside of —, *marovu* (5 pl.).
 — porridge, *nopi* (4).
 — seeds, *munzi* (4).
 - punch, - *bvovora*; - *vurura*.
 puncture, *yuli doko* (5); *chiyuli* (3).

- punish, - raira; - roya; - ranga; - worora.
 punishment, *ku rairgwa* (8); *ku robga* (8); *ku rangiwa* (8); *chirango* (3).
 pup, *mbganana* (4).
 — z, - have, - pfa.
 pupil, *mudridziwa* (1); *mudridzi* (1).
 — of the eye, *shanga* (4).
 - purchase, - tenga.
 pure, - be, - chena; - sa ya ne maka; - ya no moyo muchena.
 — (unmixed), 'oga' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 purgative, *mushonga wo ku budisa*; ...wo ku pazhisa; ...wo ku derudza.
 - purge, v.i., - budisa; - pazha; - derudza.
 - purify, - chenesa; - natsa.
 purity, *ku naka* (8); *moyo muchena* (2).
 purple, 'pfumbu,' 'pfumvu,' or 'pfupfuma' with gen. part.
 - purpose, - zi funga; - yayarira. (on —), no bgoni; yune; no mgoni; mayune.
 — n., *chifungo* (3); *mufungo* (2); *chifungwa* (3); *ndanga* (4).
 purse, *chikwama* (3).
 — (large), *gwama* (5).
 - pursue, - tevera.
 pus, *yurgwa* (7).
 - push, - sundidzira; - sunda; - suku-midza.
 — into dangerous place, - saira.
 - put, - isa.
 — in, - pinza.
 — off with kind words, - yanzalika.
 — forth one's whole strength, - gwi-nya.
 — on right track, - pinga shoka.
 — on clothes, - pfeka; - fuka; - simira.
 — on roof or hat, - dzika; - tulika.
 — together in one place, - tutira.
 — on side, - runguzika.
 — a pot on fire, - gadza.
 — away, - yiga; - yigira.
 — things down disorderly, - radza-misa.
 — away in order to ripen (fruit), - fundika.
 — a receptacle (as for water), - chingidzira.
 — down flat, - gadzika. (lay down —), - radzika.
 — out in sun, - nika.
 — grain into bag, - paka ziyo.
 — different things together in one vessel, - ponga.
 — in a different place, - tsedeyudza.
 — to death, - yuraya.
 - puzzle, - kanganisa; - pesaisa.
 — n., *kanganiso* (4); *pesaniso* (4).
 — (riddle), *chirabge* (3).

Q

- quail, *chikwale* (3); *chimutowatsa* (3); *chihuta* (3).
 - quarrel (fight), - rgwa; - jejedana (*chechetana*); - ita kakaya; - ita gangai; - pesana.
 — about a price, - ita chitebge-kweyereni.
 — with words, - ita rukaye; - tukana; - reyetekezana; - chenjezana; - tekesana; - popongana; - popotana.
 - seek a —, ya ne ziyambira; - yamba.
 — n., *ku tukana* (8); *natara* (4); *bope* (5); *makoyole* (5 pl.).
 quarrelsome, - be, - ya ne kani; - ya ne isitso.
 — person; *maradzi* (4); *mesi* (4); *pfutsi* (4).
 quarrelsome, *rusosera* (6); *rutaya* (6); *ruitsida* (6); *ruyambira* (6); *shanzi* (4); *chikungo* (3).
 quarry, pa no chergwa mabge.
 — v., - chera mabge; - yanga mabge.
 quarter (fore), *bandayoko* (5).
 — (hind), *chidza* (3); *chirdya* (3).
 quartz, *mangura* (5 pl.). See 'ore.'
 queen (wife of chief), *mukadzi wa she*; *hosi* (4).
 — bee, *zimai re nyuchi* (5).

- quell (a rising), - *misa* ; - *dzimurira*.
- quench (thirst), - *rapa* ; - *podza* ; - *dzimura* ; - *dzimurira*.
- fire, - *dzima*.
- question, - *vunza* ; - *korona*.
- minutely, - *sesemedza* ; - *tsetse-nura* ; - *tsotsa*.
- n., *vunzo* (4) ; *chivunzo* (3).
- quick, - *be*, - *chimbizika* ; - *kuru-midza* ; - *ita hayukayu*.
- come in — succession, - *pumana*.
- one who is — at work, *rushashatu* (6).
- quickly, adv., *no ku chimbizika*.

- quickness, *rushati* (6).
- quiet, - *be*, v.i., - *nyarara* ; - *ti nwi* ; - *ti gwiro* ; - *nana* ; - *gadzikana*.
- v.t., - *nyaradza* ; - *varaidza* ; - *dzikamisa*.
- person, *sungununu* (4).
- (of weather), - *gadzikana*.
- quill (feather), *munenga* (2).
- of porcupine, *museye* (2) ; *muwa* (2) (*munzŋwa* (2)).
- quite, adv., *chose* ; *kwago*.
- quiver (for arrows), *goba* (5) ; *mukutu* (2).
- v., - *huta*. See 'tremble.'

R

- rabbit, *shuro* (4).
- rock —, *gubge* (5) (*hubge* (4)).
- race, - *ita nange-mutange* ; - *riyana*.
- n., *nange-mutange* (4) (*nangwe-mutange* (4)).
- (tribe), *rudzi* (6).
- rafter, *nungo* (4).
- rage, - *be in*, - *tsamga zikuru* ; - *penga ne hasha*.
- n., *hasa* (4 pl.) ; *ku tsamga* (8).
- railway, *mugwagwa* (2) *we chitimira*.
- rain, - *na* ; - *naya*.
- much, - *nisa*.
- prevent — by sprinkling medicine, - *kuya*.
- heavily, - *purana* ; - *popongana* ; - *puzuka*.
- constantly, - *kwazhamurana* ; - *vo-yora*.
- (pour), - *popoma* ; - *bopoma* ; - *tsoya*.
- steadily, - *sakasra*.
- slightly, - *pfira-pfira* ; - *pfina-pfina* ; - *pfuna-pfuna* ; - *sasa*.
- cease to —, - *ganuka* ; - *dzimuka* ; - *gashuka* ; - *gasa*.
- cause to —, - *nisa*.
- n., *mvura* (4).
- hard, incessant, *machachacha* (5 pl.) ; *machururu* (5 pl.) ; *machurumbge* (5 pl.)
- driven by wind falling slantingly, *mukusha-kusha* (2).
- shower, *mushoko* (2) ; *bokora* (5).

- rain (drizzling), *mubvumbi* (2).
- heavy — with wind, *boporodzi* (5) (*bupurudzi* (5)).
- first rains, *munakamge* (2) ; *hukura-hundi* (4).
- first soaking —, *mvumira-mutondo* (4 pl.)
- late —, *dumbusa shanga* (5).
- rainbow, *murarayungu* (5) (*murarabungu* (5)).
- raindrop, *donedza* (5) ; *donedzwa* (5) ; *done* (5) ; *dongwe* (5).
- rainy season (setting in of), *ku turuka kwe mvura* ; *nuruka* (4).
- raise, v.t., - *murudza* ; - *simutsa* ; - *kwiridza*.
- an alarm, - *ridzemere*.
- dust, - *pfungidzira* ; - *pfumburira* ; - *phitiidzira*.
- the dead, - *mutsa ya ka fa*.
- v.t., with yeast, - *virisa* ; - *fufumusa*.
- ed, - *be*, - *tunumara*.
- higher, - *tanukidza*.
- cattle, - *pfuwa*.
- hand or weapon to strike, - *dza-dzamira* ; - *dzaadambira*.
- rake, *hareka* (4), (for.).
- together, v., - *kura* ; - *kukura* ; - *wolera* ; - *wora*.
- ram (of sheep), *gondobge* (5).
- (of goat), *gweme* (5).
- (old), *wotora* (4).

- ram of steenbuck, *chirapazuya* (3); *chiyatapamene* (3).
 — of reedbuck, *hoteka* (4); *hote* (4).
 — of bushbuck, *gwete* (5).
 — of kudu, *tilyayashe* (4); *malya-nyoka* (4).
 — v., — in (as of gun), — *tsindira*; — *paka*; — *tsoka*; — *ndinyira*; — *tso-nyera*.
 ramrod, *musopero* (2).
 rancid, — be, — *vuva*; — *vuvumara*.
 rank (thin), adj., 'tete' with class pref.
 — n. (row), *sara* (4); *musara* (2).
 — ransom, — *dzikunura* (- *dzikinura*).
 — n., *dzikunuro* (4).
 — rap, — *guhudza*; — *gogodza*; — *dododza*; — *gohodza*; — *jowonya*; — *nonodza*.
 rapid, — be, — *chimbizika*.
 — (of river), — *yerereses*.
 rapids in a river, *machiti* (5 pl.).
 rarely, adv., *rushoma*; *kashoma*; *gishomanene*.
 rascal, *munyengeri* (1); *chikerema* (3) (for.).
 rash, — be, — *ita no ku sa funga*; — *ita ruhandu*.
 — n. (itching), *gweni-kweni* (5); *gwenyu-kwenyu* (5); *mapundu* (5 pl.); *mizi* (4 pl.).
 rashness, *ruhandu* (6).
 rat, *gozho* (5). See 'mouse.'
 river —, *dapi* (5).
 rather than, *pana*; *kuna*; also — *shanangura* or — *da* (to choose) with infin., with or without *pana*, e.g. I would rather stay, or, *ndi no shanangura ku gara*, or, *ndi no shanangura ku gara pana ku famba*.
 ration, — receive, — *amukura*.
 — n., *mugoye* (2).
 — rattle, — *ridza hosho*.
 — (as of wagon), — *kunguruka* (i.e. roll).
 — n., *hosho* (4).
 — rave (— be mad), — *penga*.
 — in delirium, — *rega-rega*; — *vumuka* (*vamuka*).
 raven, *gunguyu* (5). See 'crow.'
 white round —'s neck, *jekere* (5).
 ravenous, — be, — *bathwa ne zhara huru*; — *fa ne zhara*.
 raw, adj., 'mbishi' or 'benyu' with class prefix.
 — be — (not done), — *fuya*; — *sa ibva*.
 ray, *bgira-zuya* (7).
 first or last —s of sun, *mafura-membge* (5 pl.).
 razor, *chiso* (3); *chinaso* (3) (*chinatso* (3)).
 — reach, — *sikira*.
 — up or down, — *nanavira*; — *oyerera* (— *woyerera*).
 — (arrive), — *sika*.
 — read, — *raya*.
 readily, adv., *no ku chimbidzika*; *no mufaro*.
 ready, — be, — *pedza*.
 — get —, — *gi rongedza*; *gi rongedzera*; — *gi gadzira*.
 — make —, — *rongedza*; — *gadzira*.
 really, adv., *zokwadi* (*chokwadi*); *ziro kwazo*.
 — reap (grain), — *cheka*.
 — (maize), — *kowa*.
 — (ground-beans), — *ambura*.
 — (monkey-nuts), — *chera*.
 — (sweet potatoes), — *paradza*; — *tisa*.
 — (beans), — *nunga*.
 — pumpkins, — *tana*.
 reaper, *mucheke* (1); *mukowi* (1).
 — reappear, — *tumbudzuka*.
 — rear, v.t. (child), — *vera*.
 — (cattle), — *pfuwa*.
 — (of birds), — *apusa*; — *arusa* (i.e. cause to leave nest).
 — reason (— think), — *funga*.
 — n., *maka* (4); *mosa* (4).
 — rebound, — *tumuka*.
 — rebuke, — *raira*; — *ranga*; — *tuka*.
 — recall, — *dzosa*; — *dzokesa*.
 — recede, — *suduruka*; — *suduyuka*.
 — receive, — *gamuchira*; — *gachira*; — *chingamidza*; — *chingudzira*; — *kahira*.
 recently, adv., *mazuya ano*.
 reckless, — be, — *sa rangarira*; — *sa funga*.
 — reckon, — *yerenga*; — *raya*.
 — (think), — *funga*.
 — reeline, — *sendama*; — *tseyama*.
 — recognise, — *ziya*; — *ziyurura*.

- recognise (acknowledge), - *tenda*.
 recognition, *ruzizururo* (6).
 - recoil, - *pfura*.
 - recollect, - *rangarira*; - *yeyuka*;
 - *yeyukwa*.
 - recommence, - *tangurura*; - *yamburura*.
 - recommend, - *reyera*.
 — (praise), - *rumbidza*. See 'extol'.
 - reconcile, - *yananisa*; - (*nzg*)*wananisa*; - *kwadzanisa*; - *rumikidza*.
 — ed, - *be*, - *yanana*; - (*nzg*)*wanana*;
 - *kwadzana*; - *chekane nyama*.
 — ed (satisfied or resigned), - *nyarara*;
 - *tenda*.
 - record (write), - *nyora*.
 — n., *runyoro* (6); *bgerengedzo* (4).
 - recover, v.i. (get well), - *pova*;
 - *naya*; - *rarama*; - *pona*.
 — a lost article, - *wana*.
 — its former condition, - *dziruka*.
 recreation, *ku tamba* (8).
 - rectify, - *ruramisa*; - *rungamisa*;
 - *gadzira*; - *worora*.
 red, adj., *shaya*; *tsuku*, with gen.
 part of gov. n.
 - *be*, v., - *tsuka* (- *dzuka*).
 - redeem, - *dzikunura* (- *dzikinura*).
 redeemer, *mudzikunuri* (1).
 redemption, *dzikunuro* (4); *chengeto* (4).
 red-hot, - *be*, - *tsuka*.
 - reduce, - *tapudza*; - *deredza*; - *zi-*
 misa.
 — in length, - *fupisa*; - *mushura*;
 - *gurira*.
 reed, *rushanga* (6).
 — long, *mutopota* (2).
 reedbuck, *bima* (4).
 - reel, - *dzedzereka*; - *dzeredzeka*. See
 ' stagger.'
 - refine, - *natsisa*; - *chenesa*.
 - reform, v.i., - *shanduka*; - *runga-*
 mika.
 —, v.t., - *shandudza*; - *rungamisa*.
 - refrain from, - *zi dzora*; - *zi nyima*.
 — from work (- *be lazy*), - *tsiyama*.
 — from eating, - *yera* (- *yira*).
 - refresh, - *ponesa*; - *raramisa*; - *tono-*
 dza.
 refreshed, - *be*, - *pona*; - *rarama*;
 - *tonodzwa*.

refreshing, - *be*, - *tonovera*; - *zipa*.
 refuge, *nare (nale)* (4); *chitiziro* (3);
 raramiro (4); *yuyando* (7); *chamo*
 (3).
 - take —, - *tizira*; - *yanda*.
 - refuse, - *ramba*; - (persistently), - *dzu-*
 dza; - *ramga*.
 — (grumble), - *koma*; - *komera*;
 - *gannya*.
 — offer of marriage, - *ramba*.
 — to eat because dissatisfied, - *ramu-*
 tuka.
 refuse (dirt), n., *marara* (5 pl.);
 masina (5 pl.).
 regarding, *za*; *pa msoro pa*.
 regards, - give, - *budisa*; - *ti ku*
 buda; - *ti ku tamba*; - *ti ku*
 muka.
 regiment, *pfumo* (5); *boka re pfumo*
 (5); *bokora* (5).
 region, *nyika* (4).
 - regret, v., - *ya no moyo u no rgwa-*
 dza; - *chema*.
 — n., *ruhuru* (6). See 'sorrow'.
 regular, adj., 'misi yose,' or 'ma-
 zuva ose,' with gen. part. of
 gov. noun, e.g. *mibato ye misi*
 yose, regular work.
 —, - *be*, - *ita misi yose*.
 - regulate, - *ruramisa*; - *gadzira*.
 - reign, - *yusa*; - *bata*.
 — n., *yushe* (7).
 reins (bridle), *matomo* (5 pl.) (for.).
 - reject (refuse), - *ramba*.
 — (discard), - *rasha*.
 - rejoice, - *fara*.
 — at, - *farira*; - *tambirira*.
 — at misfortunes of others, - *ku-*
 mira.
 — with acclamation and dancing,
 - *pembera*; - *pemberedza*; - *puru-*
 rudza; - *pfukurira*; - *zhinya*;
 - *brukura*.
 - relate, - *nyepera*; - *yudza*; - *tawu-*
 rira.
 relation, relative, *hama* (4).
 relationship, *yukama* (7).
 - relax, - *vegedza zishoma*; - *tsudura*.
 - relieve, - *remudza*; - *rerusa*; - *zoro-*
 dza; - *yama* (- *ama*); - *yamura*.
 religion, *ku tenda* (8); *ku pira* (8).
 - relish, - *zipirgwa na*; - *putisa*.

- relish, n., eaten with porridge, *yusayi* (7); *chiseyo* (3); *sevo* (5).
 reluctant, - be, - *kakasa*; - *nyunyuta*; - *rurumga*; - *ya ne sino*.
 reluctantly, adv., no *ku nyunyuta*; no *ku kakasa*, &c.
 - do —, - *kaza*.
 - rely on, - *tarira kuna*; - *tenda kuna*.
 - remain, - *sara*; - *siyiwa*.
 — behind, - *sara sule*.
 — in same place, - *rambira 'po*.
 — (stay), - *gara*.
 remainder, *cha ka sara* (3).
 remains (corpse), *mutumbu* (2); *chituna* (3).
 — of food in pot, *makoko* (5 pl.).
 makwengo (5 pl.); *makweho* (5 pl.).
 — of food over night, *muradzgwa* (2).
 — of food over day, *mushwedzgwa* (2).
 — of anything pressed out, *sinwa* (4 pl.).
 remarkable, - be, - *karthiamadza*; - *shamisa*.
 - remember, - *rangarira*; - *funga*; - *pirimuka*; - *karakanwa*; - *ye-yuka*; - *yeyukwa*.
 remembrance, *yeyuko* (4).
 - remind, - *rangarisa*; - *fungisa*; - *yeyudza* (- *yeyudzira*); - *pirimudza*.
 — of sorrow, - *kuruwadza*; - *shuruwadza*.
 remission, *kanganwiro* (4).
 - remit (- pay), - *ripa*.
 — (forgive), - *kanganwira*.
 remnant, *cha ka sara* (3); *chisara* (3).
 remorse, - have, - *zi ldyo moyo*; - *robga ne hana*.
 remote (place), *kure*; *kure-kure*.
 — (time), *kare*; *kare-kare*.
 removal from one place to another, *nundu* (4).
 - remove, - *bvisa* (- *bisa*); - *rasha*; - *gusa*.
 — with difficulty, - *gakamura*.
 — (throw away), - *pfanyangura*; - *pfaranyura*.
 — pot off the fire, - *bura*.
 — small quantity (solids), - *nyadura*.
 — dirt thats ticks, - *tonongora*.
 - remove from a dwelling-place, - *tama*; - *siya*; - *gugudza*.
 — something sticking in tooth, - *takamura*.
 - rend, - *bvarura*; - *parura*; - *pazura*; - *pamura* (i.e. split).
 - renew, - *vandudza*; - *ita isa*.
 - repeat, - *pama*; - *pamidza*; - *bgu-rudzura*; - *ita ze*; - *dzokorora*.
 — same thing continually, - *sima*; - *sirimidza*.
 — from beginning, - *pamurura*.
 — what is to be sung just before singing, - *telemba*; - *reyereya*.
 - repent, - *chema*; - *tendevuka*.
 repentance, *ku chema* (8); *ku dzoka* (8); *tendevuko* (4).
 - replenish, - *wedzera*; - *zadza ze*.
 - reply, - *dayira*; - *dayidza*; - *pingudza*.
 — n., *dayiro* (4); *dayidzo* (4).
 - report, - *reya*; - *yudza*; - *paridza*; - *tawura*.
 — (rumour), n., *guwa* (5); *shoko* (5); *makuwa* (5 pl.).
 — (of gun), *ku rira* (8).
 evil —, *dehamuleka* (5).
 - reproach, - *ziyurura*; - *tsa*; - *nenera*.
 — n., *ruziyururo* (4).
 reptile, *chi no zoya* (3).
 — repulse, - *dzinga*; - *dzosa*.
 request, *kumbiro* (4) (*kumbiro* (4)); *mutetedzero* (2); *nyengetero* (4).
 - require, - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *da*; - *kwasha*.
 - rescue, - *rgwira*; - *sunungura*.
 resemblance (in looks), *nodzera* (4).
 - resemble, - *fanana na*; - *enzana na*; - *chevana*; - *todza*.
 - reserve (save), - *chengeta*.
 — (put away), - *yiga*.
 — ed, - be, - *nana*.
 — ed person, *tsungununu* (4) (*tsungununu*).
 - resign, - *zi kumura* (to loosen oneself).
 — ed, - be, - *nyarara*; - *tenda*; - *bvumira*.
 - resist, - *rgwisa*; - *tayira*.
 resolute, - be, - *sa dzoka*; - *sa shanduka pa shoko*; - *simikwa*.
 - resolve, - *tema chireyo*; more commonly - *ti* (i.e. say).

- resound, - *wunga*.
 resourceful, - *be*, - *tanda mano* ;
 - *chenjera* ; - *ya ne njere*.
 resources, *fuma* (i.e. riches).
 - respect, - *kudza*.
 respiration, *ku fema* (8).
 responsibility, *yukombge* (7) ; *ku*
 dayirira (8).
 responsible, - *be*, - *dayirira* (i.e.
 answer for).
 - rest, - *zorora* ; - *wusha*.
 - cause to —, - *zorodza*.
 — n., *zororo* (4).
 — day of *Vakaranga*, *rusere* (6) ;
 chisi (4).
 restfulness, *gadrihano* (4).
 resting-place, *chizororo* (3) ; *pa*
 zororo (9).
 restless, - *be*, - *sa zorora* ; - *sa gara* ;
 - *sa wusha* ; - *binduka* ; - *shere-*
 keta.
 — in sleep or sickness, - *shanyalika*.
 restlessness, *rushinga* (6).
 - restore (- refresh), - *raramisa* ;
 - *ponesa*.
 — (give back), - *dzosera* ; - *tsiya*.
 - restrain, - *dziyisa* (*dziya*) ; - *kanyudza*.
 — oneself, - *zi dzora*.
 result (end), *mugumo* (2) ; *gumisidzo*
 (4) ; *gumisiro* (4) ; *chipedzo* (3) ;
 chigoni (3) ; *mereredzo* (4) ;
 merero (4).
 resurrection, *ku muka kwa ya ka fa* (8) ;
 muko ; *ya ya ka fa* (4).
 - retain, - *sava na* ; - *tora*.
 - retire (go away), - *inda* ; - *bva*.
 — (for the night), - *yata*.
 - retort, - *dayira ne njere* ; - *kamu-*
 kira.
 - retreat, - *inda sule* ; - *tiza*.
 retribution, *ruisiya* (6) ; *matsiye*
 (5 pl.) ; *manjire* (4).
 - receive —, - *panjirwa*.
 - return, - *dzoka* ; - *yuya ze*.
 — (to same place), - *bgirira*.
 — v.t. (give back), - *dzosera* ; - *dzosa* ;
 (- *dzokesa*) ; - *bgiridza*.
 - reveal, - *yonesa* ; - *paridza* ; - *rati-*
 dza ; - *budisa pa chena* ; - *tari-*
 dza.
 - revenge, - *tsiya* ; - *ripidza*.
 — n., *ruisiya* (6) ; *matsiye* (5 pl.).

revenge in heart, *mafindifuya* (5
 pl.).
 - revive, v.i., - *pona* ; - *rarama*.
 — v.t., - *ponesa* ; - *raramisa*.
 - revolve, v.i., - *monereka* ; - *potereka* ;
 - *tenderera* ; - *tendereka* ; - *dzu-*
 nguruka.
 revolver, *chipfuti* (3).
 - reward, - *pa chibairo* ; - *pa basera*
 (for.).
 — n., *mubairo* (2) ; *chibairo* (3) ;
 basera (*pasera*) ; (5) (for.).
 rheumatism, - *have*, - *nzgwa ma-*
 kumbo.
 — in arms, *nungochiyoko* (4 pl.).
 — in shoulders, *bawura* (5).
 rhinoceros, *nema* (4).
 rib, *rumbabvu* (6).
 small —, *rgwayagombge* (6).
 rice, *mupunga* (2).
 cooked —, *mashakada* (5 pl.).
 — field, *doro ro mupunga*.
 rich, - *be*, - *fuma* ; - *ya ne fuma*.
 - become —, - *fuma*.
 — (of soil), - *yorerwa*.
 — (of food), - *ya na mafuta*.
 — man, *mufumi* (1).
 very — man, *gombge* (5) ; *gombe* (5).
 riches, *fuma* (4).
 rickets, *man(n)ya* (4).
 rid, - *get*, - *dzinga* ; - *rasha*.
 riddle, *chirabge* (3).
 - ride, - *famba* (ne *biza*).
 — mount a horse, - *taša* ; - *kwira*.
 ridge (of hills), *musundyu* (2) ; *mu-*
 ndundu (2).
 — s, in hoeing, *hargwa* (4) ; *manje*
 (5 pl.).
 — on article made of iron, *muva-*
 ngwa (2).
 — of assegai, *musana* (2) ; *mu-*
 shanje (2).
 - begin to make — s (in hoeing),
 - *parura*.
 - make — in hoeing, - *yunda*
 munda.
 ridiculous, - *be*, - *sekisa* ; - *setsa*.
 rifle, *pfuti* (4) ; *chigidi* (3).
 right, - *be*, - *rurama* ; - *rungama*.
 it is —, *ndigo* ; *ndigogo*.
 all right ! *ndigo* ! *ga ka naka hazo* !
 - make —, - *ruramisa*.

right hand, *ruyoko* *rgwo* *muldyi* (6);
rudyi (6); *muldyi* (2).

in — way, *kwazo*; *kwazo-kwazo*.

righteous, — be, — *rungama*.

righteousness, *ku* *rungama* (8);

yurungami (7); *rungamo* (6);
nauramo (4).

righteous person, *murungami* (1).

rim, *nivi* (4 pl.); *mendero* (4 pl.).

— ring, v.i., — *rira*; v.t., — *ridza*.

ring, n., *chindole* (3); *chimete* (3) (for.).

— (hoop), *gango* (5).

wire — on leg, *muzasaranda* (2);
rusafuli (6); *singa* (5).

ringworm, *chisasaidzi* (3); *chisasa* (3).

— rinse, — *sukurudza*; — *dzumburudza*.

— (of mouth), — *chukucha*; — *funda*.

riot, *bopoto* (5); *manyongoli* (5 pl.).

— rip up, — *parura*; — *radanura*; — *me-*
nya; — *bvarura*.

— belly, — *tumbura*.

— (open a sore), — *shashura*.

ripe, — be, — *ibva*; — get —, *soša*; (— be
soft), — *teketera*.

— ripen, v.i., — *ibva*; — *tsuka* (i.e. — be-
come red), — *soša* (— begin to —).

— rise (from sitting), — *muruka*; — *si-*
muka; — *miruka*; — *kotoroka*.

— from sleep, — *muka*.

— up suddenly, — *barabadiha*; — *kwara-*
kwashuka.

— early, — *fuma*; — *fumira*.

— (as dough), — *yira*; — *fufumuka*;
— *tutuma*; — *fututa*; — *futunuka*;
— *fema*.

— (as clouds or smoke), — *kwira*; — *pugu-*
ka; — *philitika*; — *togoka*; — *nanga*.

— (as dust or fine meal), — *mbumuka*;
— *pfumbuka*.

— (as the sun), — *buda*; — *duka*.

— as river (i.e. become full), — *zara*;
— *dira*; — *fashamira*.

— (as river at source), — *yamba*; — *bva*.

rise (elevation); *chikwidza* (3);
mukwidza (2); *gome* (5);

chikwiriro (3); *chinwara* (3);
gwatara (5).

— rival, — *yiyana*.

— n., *muviyi* (1).

river, *rgwizi* (6).

— bed (dry), *goronga* (5).

small —, *rukoya* (6); *rufuya* (6).

road (path), *zhira* (4).

— for wagon, *mugwagwa* (2).

wide —, *rgwasha* (6); *gwanza* (5).

very narrow —, *rushwaira* (6);

ruzhira (6).

uneven —, *makorokothio* (5 pl.).
(*makoropothio*) (5 pl.).

roan antelope, *chengu* (4).

— roar (as a lion), — *yomba*; (as of
thunder), — *guduma*; — *nduruma*;

— *gudumuka*; — *kwirima*; — *zavi-*
rira; — *ndingindira*.

— (as rain or river), — *wunga*;
— *ririma*; — *yirima*; — *fofoma*.

— n., *muvirira* (2); *mubvumo* (2).

— roast, — *gocha*; — *kanga*; — *kalinga*;
— *bvurawudza*.

— at fire, — *sasika*.

— n., *halinge* (4).

— rob (— take by force) (— steal), — *ba*;
— *lorera*; — *pamba*; — *pambara*;

— *riga*; — *shazhira*; — *weshura*;
— *bvutira*; — *wikira*; — *ita ma-*
shanje.

one who is robbed, *muldyiwa* (1).

robber, *gororo* (5); *mbava* (4).

rock, *ruware* (6); *dombo* (5).

tall —, *shongwe* (4); *bge guru* (5);
singa (5).

overhanging —, *chikope* (3).

rocky place, *rukangarabge* (6).

—, — be, — *ya na mabge*; — *ya na mawale*.

rod, *shamu* (4). See 'stick.'

rogue, *chikerema* (for.) (3); *nnyannya*
(4).

roll (bale), n., *mukunguru* (2).

— of tobacco, *muputa* (2); *muzama* (2).

— over, v.i., — *pidigaka*; — *pidiguka*.

— in dust (as of fowl), — *sukusira*.

— (as of horse), — *yumburuka*; — *bid-*
rika; — *shanyalika*; — *yurukuta*;

— down (as stone), — *kunguruka*;
— *pidiguka*; — *isidiguka*; — v.t.,
— *kungurusa*.

— up (coil), — *gungana*; — *gonyana*.

— v.t. (as of loaves), — *yurunga*.

— (— wrap), — *petekedza*, — *peta*.

— (as in making rope), — *kosha*; — *po-*
shonga.

roof, *denga* (5).

— badly thatched, *mamvaranyanya*
(5 pl.); *mamvirinyinyi* (5 pl.).

room, *imba*; dining —, *imba yo ku layira*; school —, *imba ye chikoro*; sleeping —, *imba yo ku yata*.

roomy, - be, - *ya no yugaro*.

roost, - *mara*.

root, *mudzi* (2).

piece of — used for medicine, *miko* (4).

- take —, - *mera*; - *bata*; - *tsira*.

- up —, - *dzura*; - *dzipura*; - *tipura*.

rope (of bark), *rgonzi* (6); *rugodzi* (6); *gayi* (5).

skipping —, *holiyatamba* (4).

— of hide, *gashu* (5); *tambo* (5) (for.).

very stout —, *bindepinde* (5); *bote* (5).

— for suspending things, *mutariho* (2).

— put through nose of vicious cow, *rgwawuro* (6).

— tying the whole thatch, *botayarombe* (5).

- rot, - *yora*; - *yundunda*; - *vuvu*; - *vuvuma*; - *vuvumara* (*vumara*).

- cause to —, - *yodza*.

rotten, - be, - *yora*.

rough, - be (uneven), - *ita magona*.

— (have splinters), - *sema*.

round (object), *hurungudu* (4); *hukungurudu* (4); *chihumbururu* (3); *chihungurudu* (3).

— circle, *chinenderere* (3).

- be —, v., - *yurungana*.

- go —, *yandulira*.

- rouse, - *mutsa*.

row, *musara* (2); *runda* (6); *mundundu* (2).

— of children holding each other's hands in playing, *bindepinde* (5).

- form a —, - *iza sara*.

row (noise), *ruzha* (6); *chiya* (3). See 'noise.'

- rub, - *kwesha*; - *kwiza*.

— on ointment, - *zora*; - *zodza*.

— on softly, - *nyarira*; - *nyanga*; - *yuvu*; - *poma*; - *tsetera*; - *po-mera*.

— (chafe), - *swyura*; - *gotora*.

— dry, - *pukusa*; - *pisika*.

— eyes, - *pukuta*.

— against to relieve itching, - *gwikwita*.

- rub (in washing), - *sukuta*; - *pfiza*
rubber (eraser), *cho ku dzima* (3);
cho ku bvisa (3); *chidzimiso* (3).

— tree, *mupawa* (2).

— trees (from which bird lime is made), *chisimbo* (3); *mutowa* (2); *myonde* (2); *chikonde-konde* (3).

rubbish, *marara* (5 pl.).

garden —, *mayizi* (5 pl.).

rude, - be (use of bad language),

- *jawura*; - *janyawura*; - *pawumba*; - *gawura*; - *nara*.

rug, *nguyo* (4); *jira* (5).

- ruin, - *chinyidza*; - *putsa*; - *paradza*; - *pedza*; - *shasha*.

ruins of a native village, *dongo* (5).

— of a house, *dangwaza* (5).

— of walls, like Zimbabwe, *masingo* (5 pl.).

- rule, - *yusa*; - *bata*; - *raira*.

— n., *yushe* (7). See 'law.'

— (to draw a line), - *tara*; - *ita mutaro*.

ruler (governor), *she* (1); *mubati*

(1); *murairi* (2); *myusi* (1).

— (stick for ruling), *cho ku tarisa* (3); *cho ku tara* (3).

- rumble, - *tinira*. See 'roar.'

rumour, *guwa* (5).

- run, - *yanga*; - *manyu*.

— fast, - *fambisa*; - *yangisa*; - *manyisa*; - *ita hayu-kayu*.

— (hasten), - *chimbidzika*; - *kurumbidza*; - *kurumidza*.

— (of a horse), see 'canter.'

— out (as of grain out of a bag), - *fuzhuka*.

— away, - *tiza*.

— stooping, - *huyaira*.

— very fast, - *hasira*; - *kwarama*; - *yuyuma*; - *warama*; - *winya*;

- *yaliika* (- *balika*); - *wiwinya*; - *ita chamuwiriri*.

— backwards, - *duduza*.

— over (of grain in basket), - *ita mupfunga*.

— over (of liquid), - *pfachuka*.

— together in a mob, - *nyongana*.

— backwards (as of sheep in fighting), - *ita weyergwa*.

— as of water, - *yerera*. See 'flow.'

run swiftly (river), - *tseduha*.
 — in continuous stream, - *iseneneka*.
 — (of little child), - *dodora*.
 — to and fro (as child), - *nenedza*.
 runner (messenger), *mutumga* (1);
nume (4).
 — of pumpkin, *mucheyo* (2); *mashwa*
 (4).
 - rush, - *yangira*.
 — in a body, - *dzamuha*.

rush (reed grass), n., *nokwe* (4).
 rust (on iron), *yurari* (7); *yurarira*
 (7); *yunani* (7).
 — in 'munga,' *nyunyi* (4).
 — (red slime on water), *ngura* (4).
 white — in grain or beans, *chiratarota* (3).
 — v.i., - *ita yurarira*.
 rusty, - be, - *ya no yurarira*.
 - rustle, - *wawama*.

S

sabbath, *Sabata* (4) (for.); *zuya re Sabata* (5).
 sable, *pfumo* (5).
 — (large), *gano* (5).
 sable antelope, *marapara* (4).
 sack, *homo* (4); *naya* (4); *isapo* (4);
saga (5) (for.). See 'bag'.
 sacred, - be, - *yira* (*yera*).
 - hold —, - *yira* (*yera*).
 - sacrifice, v.t., - *bayira*; - *pira*;
 (of beer or blood), - *dira*;
 - *teyurira*.
 — n., *chibayiro* (3); *chipiro* (3).
 sad, - be, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*;
 - *chema*; - *rgwadziwa pa moyo*;
 - *zi idya moyo*.
 - sadden, - *rgwadza moyo*; - *chemesa*.
 saddle, *chigaro che biza* (3); *bereko* (4).
 — v., *isa chigaro che biza*.
 safe, - be, - *rarama*; - *pona*.
 safety, *ndaramo* (4); *raramo* (4).
 place of —, *nale* (4); *raramiro* (4).
 said, - be, - *nzi*; - *nzgiwi*; - *i*.
 sail (canvas), *tente* (5) (for.); *muchekeha*
 (i.e. linen).
 — v., - *famba no bgato* (*ne chikepe*).
 saint, *mushanangurgwa* (1); *mutsa-
wurgwa* (1).
 sake (for the — of), *no kuda kwa*;
pa msoro pa.
 salary, *mubayiro* (2).
 sale, n., *nengo* (4).
 (to put up for —), - *tengesa*.
 salesman, *mutengesesi* (1).
 saliva, *mate* (5 pl.).
 salt, *muniyu* (2); *dzai* (5) (for.).
 native —, *fesha* (4); *sheche* (4).
 — v.t., - *runga*.

salt, - be, - *yaya* (*yayira*).
 salutation, *kwariso* (4).
 - salute, - *kwarisa*.
 — (shake hands), - *kwarisa no ruyoko*.
 — (kiss), - *kwarisa no muvomo*.
 — (embrace), - *mbundikira*.
 salvation, *chengelo* (4); *chengeteko*
 (4).
 same (like), - be, - *fanana*; - *enzana*;
 - *lodza*.
 — day, *musi we hare*; *zuya ivero*.
 it is the —, *ndi*, with emphatic
 pron. (see Lesson XX.); e.g. *ndi
'ye* (he is the same); *ndi 'cho*
 (it is the same).
 — adj., 'mge' with class pref., e.g.
 the same word, *shoko rimge*; or
 demons. pron.
 sanctification, *yushanangurgwa* (7);
yutsawurgwa (7).
 - sanctify, - *shanangura*; - *isawura*;
 - *natsisa moyo*; - *chenisa moyo*.
 sanction, n., *tendero* (4); *bvumiro* (4).
 — v., - *tenda*; - *bvumira*.
 sanctuary, *pa ka shanangurgwa* (9);
pa ka isawurgwa (9).
 sand, *musheche* (2); *jecha* (5);
rusheche (6).
 sandal, *shangu* (4); (native —),
nyatera (5).
 sap, *mutura yo muti* (4); *muti wo
muti* (2).
 Satan, *Satane* (1) (for.); *Diabolose*
 (1) (for.).
 — (evil spirit), *mgeya wa ka ipa*.
 satisfied, - be, - *tenda*; - *fara*; - *bvu-
mira*; - *davira*.
 — with food, - *guta*.

satisfied, - be, with water, - *gungwa*.
 — having attained something, - *kupuka*.
 - satisfy (- please), - *tendisa*; - *farisa*; - *fadza*; - *dzima* or - *dzimura moyo*.
 — hunger or thirst, - *dzimura*; - *dzima*.
 — a spirit, - *pendera*.
 — v.t., - *guisa*; - *guisa*.
 saturated, - be (full), - *zara*.
 — with water, - *nyoroya kwazo*; - *nyayama* (drenched).
 Saturday, Chitanatu che Sondo (3); *mugiyira* (2); *mugovera* (2) (for.); *ritanatu* (5); *re chitanatu* (5).
 sauce (of meat), *muto* (2).
 — (of nuts), *doyi* (5); *mukakabadza* (2).
 — (of beans), *rupiza* (6); *nakara* (4).
 saucer, *chindigwana* (3); *ndigwana* (4).
 savage, - be, - *penga*.
 — beast, *chikara* (3).
 — person, *gara* (5).
 - save (- deliver), - *rgwira*; - *sunungura*.
 — (deliver from death), - *ponesa*; - *raramisa*.
 — (keep), - *chengeta*.
 — (put away), - *viga*; - *vigira*; - *banga*.
 — one by one or little by little, - *senengedza*; - *dodoredza*.
 saving person, *hurudza* (4); *njinga* (4).
 Saviour, *muchengeti* (1); *musununguri* (1); *muponesi* (1); *muraramisi* (1); *murgwiri* (1).
 saw, *jeko* (5); *saha* (5) (for.); *chicheko* (3).
 — v.t., - *cheka*; — off, - *gura*.
 sawdust, *mupfupfumidzga* (2); *mupfumbge* (2).
 - say, - *ti* (pass. - *nzi*; - *wi*; - *nzgwi*; - *i*); - *reya*; - *nyepera*; - *yudza*; - *tawura*.
 — so, - *dero*; - *daro* (pass. - *wargwo*; - *wergwo*).
 — what? - *dini*? (pass. *hunwi*).
 — something that hurts another, - *tungura* (- *tungira*) *pa moyo*.

saying, *chireyo* (3); *chitawuro* (3); *mureyo* (2).
 — (proverb), - *shumo* (4).
 scab (itch), *gwenu-kwenu* (5); *gwenyu-kwenyu* (5).
 — (mange), *chikwekwe* (3); *rukundu* (6); *rgwemba* (6).
 — (of sore), *ganda* (5); *gwanda* (5).
 scabbard, *muhara* (2); *chihara* (3).
 - scald, - *isa*; - *psiwa*.
 scale (of fish), *chikwande* (3).
 — (of skin), *chifunu* (3); *funu-rgwa* (4).
 - scale off (of floor), - *tsindinuka*.
 scales, *chiidzo* (3); *cho ku idza* (3); *cho ku ira* (3).
 scam, *chikerema* (3) (for.); *nubu* (4); *nyanyanya* (4).
 scandal, *momero* (4); *chinyadzo* (3); *ngwi* (4).
 - scandalise, - *chinyidza*; - *pomera*; - *nyadza*; - *bomokera*; - *shawudzira*.
 scar (of a sore), *yanga* (5); *yabga* (5).
 — (when one has been cut as by axe), *nemo* (4).
 — on the head, *mbonje* (4).
 — on fruit or pumpkin, *chifo* (3).
 scarce, - be, - *ya shoma*; - *ya shomanene*; - *shomapara*.
 — (insufficient), - *sa ringana*; - *sa kwana*; - *sa kwadzana*.
 scarcely, adv., *na padoko*; *zidoko*.
 scarcity, *yushoma* (7).
 — of food, *zhara* (4).
 - scare, - *ihisa*; - *vundusa*; - *karudza*.
 — away, - *dzinga*; - *tata*.
 scarecrow, *zipeto-peto* (3 pl.).
 scarlet, *shaya* (or *tsuku*), with class prefix.
 —, - be, - *tsuka*.
 - scatter, v.i., - *pararira*; - *tekeshera*; - *tarangana*.
 — v.t., - *paradzira*; - *taranza*; - *ita motsa*.
 — broadcast, - *kusha*; - *watsanisa*; - *watsuranya*.
 scent, n., *nuwiro* (4); *mgeya* (2); *bgema* (7).
 — (of game), n., *bgema* (7); *mepo* (4); *mgando* (2); *chikoiera* (3).

- scent (of dog), v., - *kamba* ; - *tuna* ;
- *tunira* ; - *tunidza*.

— v.t., - *fembedza* ; - *nuwidza*.

scholar, *mudzidzi* (1) ; *mudzidzi-siwa* (1).

school, *chikoro* (3) (for.).

— master, *mudzidzi* (1) ; *mufundisi* (1) (for.).

— room, *imba ye chikoro*.

science, *dzidzo* (4).

— of medicine, *yunganga* (7).

scissors (pair of), *chigero* (3) (for.).

— scold, - *tuka* ; - *gegeda* ; - *shizhira*.

— (admonish), - *raira* ; - *ranga*.

— each other, - *reyetkedzana* ; - *bgere-keterana* ; - *tukana*.

words used in scolding : *zimboyora*

(5) ; *yacharara* (1) ; *yachirara*

(1) ; *yachigoro* (1) ; *yamasare* (1) ;

zimbuse (5) (all meaning 'big ugly thing'). See 'quarrel.'

- scoop out, - *fenga* ; (as of calabash or something hard), - *shokosha* (*sokosa*).

scorch, - *fuwura* ; - *buura* ; — (be very hot), - *pisa*.

scorpion, *chinyayada* (3) ; *chinyaridi* (3).

— (large kinds), *chiraira-naka* (3) ; *shokorupani* (4) ; *gunguvudza* (4) ; *benyera* (5).

- scour, - *kwesha* ; - *kweshera* ; - *kwiza* ; - *kwizira*.

scourge, *chirovo* (3).

— v.t., - *roya*.

- scowl, - *sinama* ; - *wonyanisa chiso*.

- scramble, - *yangira* ; - *ita chamuwiriri*.

scrap, *chidoko* (3).

- scrape pot, - *kwenga*.

— out, - *tokonora* ; - *kokonora* ;
- *kokora* (*kukura*) ; - *munona* ;
- *shonguyura* ; - *shokosha* (*sokosa*) ;
- *tonongora*.

— off, - *para* ; - *pfiza* (of skin).

scrapings, *makoko* (5 pl.) ; *makweko* (5 pl.) ; *makwengo* (5 pl.) ; *makohonorgwa* (5 pl.).

- scratch, - *kwenya* ; - *kwenga* ; - *bvaphata* ; - *bvayura* ; - *gwabvura* ; - *kwerenga* ; - *gwarakwata* (*kwarakwata*).

- scratch off skin or scab, - *kwatura* ;
- *todogora* ; - *tokodora*.

— open (of sore), - *puwura* ; - *shashura*.

— badly, - *tatura*.

— (as a dog), - *para* ; — (to attract attention), - *tsora*.

— (as a cat), - *taratadza* ; - *tara* ;
- *kwara* ; - *iserenga* (*cherenga*) ;
- *gwara* ; - *mgawura* ; - *kwara-bvura*.

— (as a fowl), - *teta*.

— a hole, - *fukusa* (- *fukusha*).

— the nose, - *munona*.

- scream, - *ridzemere* ; - *chemisa* ;
- *ririsa* ; - *zhamba* ; - *zhambalata*.

— (call out loud), - *ita rukunga* ;
- *kuwa*.

- screen, - *dzitira* ; - *tayira*.

— n., *chidzitiro* (3) ; *chitayiriso* (3) ;
chidzikatiro (3) ; *chitayiridzo* (3).

screw, *munyero* (2).

- screw in, - *monyera* ; - *monana* ;
- *songera* ; - *unscrew*, - *monyurura* ; - *songonora*.

scribe, *munyori* (1).

Scriptures, *Shoko ro Mudzimu* ;
manyoro (5 pl.).

- scrub, - *kwiza* ; - *pukuta*.

- scruple, - *nyunyula*. See 'hesitate.'

scurvy (mange), *chikwekwe* (3) ; *rukundu* (6) ; *ngwembe* (6).

— of human beings, *mizi* (4 pl.).

sea, *gungwa* (5) ; *bahari* (5).

- seal, - *namatidzira* (- *namatidza*).

- seam, - *pfuma* ; - *pfumanidza*.

— n., *mupfumanidzo* (2).

— (a hem), *mupendero* (2) ; *mendero* (4) ; *mupeto* (2) ; *rupeto* (6).

— of patch, *rupanda* (6).

- search, - *tsaka* ; - *kwasha*.

— everywhere, - *patarika* ; - *yenda* ;
- *yendenura*.

— intently, - *fuwa* ; - *kwashisa* ; - *tsakisa* ; - *fuwuvudza* ; - *bomaira* ;
- *gumba* ; - *gunya* ; - *kuna* ; - *dona-ira* ; - *kunaira*.

— (as of dog), - *dzingidzira*.

— go in — of, - *nena*.

— (in a party), - *ita gunda*.

— diligently, - *totota*.

season, *nambo* (4).
 hot — before rains, *madriya* (5 pl.).
 — (summer), *zhezha* (5).
 — (autumn), *ku cheka* (8).
 — (winter), *chando* (3).
 — (spring) (early), *chirimo*; *muna-kamge* (2).
 — v., with salt, - *runga*.
 - be out of —, - *kuya*.
 seasoning, *yusayi* (7); *chiseyo* (3);
cho ku seyesa (3).
 seat, *chigaro* (3); *yugaro* (7).
 clay — in hut, *chitukuriro* (3).
 — v.t., - *garisa*.
 second, adj., 'piri' with gen. part.
 of gov. noun, e.g. *we piri*; *che piri*, &c.
 — time, adv., *rgwe piri*.
 secret, *runyararo* (6); *chivanyiwa*
 (3); *chitsindidzo* (3).
 - be —, - *yanda*; - *yanyiwa*; - *sa zikanwa*.
 - tell to keep —, - *tsindidza*.
 - tell out a —, - *dumbunura*; - *vazhura*; - *reyurura*; - *yonyorora*.
 - secrete saliva, - *gupa male*.
 secretly, adv., *pa ka yanda*.
 section, *guranyo* (4); *chikamuro* (3).
 See 'part.'
 - secure, - *chengeta*. See 'save.'
 - be —, - *raramika*.
 security (safety), *raramiro* (4).
 - give —, - *pa rubatso*.
 - give back —, - *gonosa*.
 sediment, *mbuvongwe* (5 pl.).
 — of beer, *masese* (5 pl.); *weta* (4).
 - see, - *yona*; - *tarira*.
 — distinctly, - *yonesa*; - *yonisisa*.
 not — distinctly, - *sa yonisisa*;
 - *yona na madzengerere*.
 seed, *mbewu* (4); (small seeds mixed),
mbewanywa (4).
 — of pumpkin, *munzi* (4).
 — of fruit, *surgwe* (4) (*sukwe*);
tsongoro (4).
 — of canna, *hota* (4).
 small — like tobacco, *bgana* (7).
 stinging — of grass, *sine* (4); *nama*
 (4).
 - introduce new —, - *rora mbewu*.
 seedling, *nondo* (4).
 - seek, see 'search.'

- seem, - 'nenge,' with princ. verb,
 e.g. he seems to be coming, *u nenge u no yuya*; - *ita sa*.
 seen, - be, - *yonekwa*; - *yoneka*;
 - *yonekara*.
 - seize (- catch hold), - *bata*; - *batira*.
 — (snatch), - *bvuta*; - *wita*; - *wika*;
 - *hatura*; - *hasura*.
 — (- take by force), - *pamba*; - *torera*.
 seldom, adv., *rushmanene*; *kashoma*;
rushoma.
 - select, - *shara*; - *shanangura* (- *sanangura*); - *nyurura*.
 — carefully, - *totota*.
 — (separate), - *rayura*; - *tsawura*.
 selection, *isawuro* (4); *shananguro*
 (4).
 self (emph. pron.), 'mene' with pers.
 pron. (e.g. *ndi mene*; *u mene*,
 &c.).
 — (reflex. pron.), 'zi' before verb
 root (himself, herself, &c.).
 self-control, *ku zi dzora* (8); *ku zi bata* (8).
 self-denial, *ku zi nyima* (8).
 selfish, - be, - *zi funga*; - *zi fadza*;
 - *zi da*.
 self-love, *ku zi da* (8).
 - sell, - *tengesa* (- *lengisa*); - *shaya*;
 - *shambadza*; - *ambadza*; - *pfuyudza*; - *putsa* (i.e. exchange
 for).
 - send, - *tuma*.
 — for, - *dana*.
 — away (dismiss), - *dzinga*; - *indisa*;
 - *tata*.
 senseless person, *benzi* (5); *dununu*
 (5); *dutsa-tutsa* (5); *datanana*
 (5).
 sensible, - be, - *chenjera*; - *sinuka*.
 sensitiveness, *ruhandu* (6); *ruzazu*
 (6).
 sensual, - be, - *zi regerera*; - *zi rega*;
 - *sa zi dzora*.
 sentinel, *naririve* (4).
 - separate, v.t., - *paradzaniisa*; - *ita motsa*;
 - *paradzanya*; - *tsawuranya*;
 - *yayuranya*.
 — (divide into sections), - *kamura*;
 - *ganura*.
 — v.i., - *paradzana*.

- separate two fighting parties, - *nu-nura*; - *nanura*.
 separately, 'mge mge' with class prefix.
 sepulchre, *bgiro* (7). See 'grave.'
 serpent, *nyoka* (4).
 — (python), *shato* (4).
 — (puff adder), *mvumbi* (4).
 — (short poisonous), *chiya* (3).
 — (black mamba), *ruyambira* (6); *muchayingei* (5).
 — (with mane), *nyamafungu* (4).
 — (black cobra), *mungu* (4).
 — (blind or two-headed), *shukukuyiri* (4).
 — (river snake), *hukute* (4).
 — (ring-straked snake), *fungayule* (4).
 other kinds of snakes: *shanga-nyoka* (4); *nyoka-muliyo* (4); *chizazhe* (3); *makure* (5 pl.); *mbuzi* (4).
 servant, *muranda* (1); *mushumiri* (1); *mubatiri* (1); *murombo* (1).
 — (maid), *murandakadzi* (1); *mushandi* (1); *mushandiri* (1); *mubatiri* (1).
 - serve, - *shumira*; - *batira*; - *seve-nzera* (for.).
 — food, - *pakura*.
 - set (place), - *isa*; - *yiga*.
 — on, - *shikidzira*; - *kurumidza*. See 'incite.'
 — apart, - *shanangura* (*sanangura*). See 'select.'
 — free, - *sumungura*; - *regedza*.
 — fire, - *pfutisa*; - *pisa*.
 — (of sun), - *yira*; - *nyura*; - *doka*; - *ldya hunda*; - *ti todo*.
 — in ear of 'rukweza', - *ita zishashe*; - *fyata*; - *shangura*.
 — in (of rainy season), - *turuka*.
 - settle, - *gadzira*; - *peta zireyo*.
 — (as of sediment), - *garana*.
 — (as of water), - *gadzikana*; - *gadzi-kama*.
 — (- live), - *gara*.
 — want to — (as of bees), - *niginira*.
 seven, adj., 'nomge' with class prefix.
 seventeen, *gumi ne nomge*.
 seventh, 'chinomge' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 seventy, *makumi manomge*.

severe, - *be*, - *kasharara*.
 - sew, - *pfuma*; - *sona*.
 — together, - *pfumanidza*.
 shade, *mumvuli* (5); *bwute* (5).
 — eyes with hand, v., - *ita chikope*.
 shadow, *mumvuli* (5).
 shady, - *be*, - *ya no mumvuli*.
 shaft (pit), *mugodi* (2) (for.).
 — of spear, *chese* (4); *njese* (4).
 — of waggon, *danda* (5).
 shaggy, - *be*, - *ya ne mvure*.
 - shake (- sift grain), - *zungura*; - *sengeya*.
 — (of bottle), - *kucha-kucha*; - *dzu-mburudza*; - *chukucha*.
 — v.t., - *dengenyisa*; - *vuvuvunyisa*; - *zungunisa* (*zungunusa*).
 — v.i., - *dengenyika*; - *zungunuka*.
 — (like jelly), - *denga-denga*; - *ne-ngaira*.
 — (with cold or fear), - *kuta*; - *buunda*; - *dedera*; - *gwenda*; - *telemera*.
 — (jolt), - *ngocha*; - *kuchura*.
 — the head (as of old people), - *denguka*.
 — the head in scorn, - *kapaɖza*.
 — the head negatively, - *dzudza*; - *dzungudza*.
 — a blanket, &c., - *zuza*; - *buuyudza*; - *gugudza*; - *gugudzira*.
 — itself (as fowl), - *sukusira*.
 — (as liquid in half-filled vessel), - *kaɖa*; - *kaɖaira*.
 — off, - *mɖiza*; - *wina*.
 — off, as fruit, - *kukumura*; - *zuwa*.
 — out (i.e. empty out), - *kupfura*; - *kutura*.
 shaky, - *be*, - *dengenyika*.
 — (of old person), - *ya ne netemga*.
 shallow, - *be*, - *ita sandairira*; - *ita chivata*; - *ita rudenderende*.
 — vessel, *chigu* (3).
 sham, n., *mano-mano* (5 pl.).
 — v.i., - *ita mano-mano*; - *nyengera*.
 shame, n., *nyowa* (4 pl.); *ku nyara* (8); *ku soda* (8).
 — v.t., - *nyowedza*; - *nyadza*; - *nyadzisira*; - *sodesa*; - *sodesera*.
 shameful, - *be*, see 'shame,' v.t.
 shameless, - *be*, - *sa nyowergwa*; - *sa soda*; - *sa nyara*; - *tsrukha*.

- shape, *chiumbiko* (3); *mumiro* (2).
 — v., - *yumba* (with clay).
 — *yeza* (with wood).
 share, n., *goyero* (4); *chigoyero* (3);
mugoye (2); *ganuro* (4).
 — (of meat), *murandu* (2).
 — of spoil in war, *chiboo* (3).
 — v., - *goyerana na*; - *koyana na*;
 - *gurirana na*.
 sharp, - be, - *pinza*; - *ita ruso*.
 — object, *yunina* (7).
 — (quick), - *chimbidzika*; - *kuru-*
midza; - *kurumbidza*.
 — (clever), - *chenjera*; - *ngwara*.
 — (wide awake), - *sinuka*.
 - sharpen, - *rodza*; - *petura*; - *tutura*;
 - *pepenga*.
 — a stick, - *tega*; - *tesera*; - *parira*;
 - *ita muromo*.
 — a grinding stone, - *yanga*.
 — a hoe, - *yanga*; - *vandudza*.
 sharpness, *ku pinza* (8); *minzo* (4).
 - shave, - *yeyura*; - *tsengura*.
 — (clean), - *bgingura*.
 — off (scrape), - *para*; - *parira*;
 - *senda*.
 she, pron., rep. pers. pron., 'u' in
 indep. sentences 'a' in depend.
 sentences. Emph. pron. *eye*.
 sheaf, *chisote* (3).
 — of grass, *mganda* (2).
 - shear, - *gura mvere*; - *gura vudzi*.
 sheath, *muhara* (2).
 shed (large), *jachati* (5).
 — made of branches, *musasa* (2).
 — made of poles and grass, *dumba* (5);
chitumba (3).
 — tears, v.t., - *chema misodzi*; - *sima*.
 — blood, - *donedzera (ropa)*.
 — hair, - *tayuka*; - *dayura*.
 — leaves, - *zuka*; - *shashamuka*.
 — make to — leaves, - *shashamura*.
 sheep, *gwai* (5); *wai* (5).
 — (kind with small ears), *nyezhe* (4).
 — large, fat —, *chiyemberekwa* (3).
 — ram, *gondobge* (5).
 — ewe, *dunzi* (5).
 — wether, *gwai ra ka gadzikwa*.
 sheet (paper), *nwadi* (4); *shazhu*
(sazu) (5); *bape* (5).
 — (linen), *mucheke* (2).
 - shell, v. (pods when green), - *menya*.
 — shell (dry pods), - *chochonya*; - *cho-*
choya.
 — (maize cobs), - *chochonyora*;
 - *kwiza*.
 — n., *deme* (5); *deko* (5).
 — of hard fruit, *deme* (5).
 — of beans and nuts, *deko* (5).
 — of snail, &c., *homba (humba)* (4).
 — of tortoise, *gwande* (5).
 white — worn by doctors, *mamba*
 (4 pl.).
 river —, *rugwamba* (6); (small —),
gonjorodzi (5).
 shelf (for wood), *bakwa* (5); *dara*
 (5).
 shelled nuts, *chochonye* (4); *cho-*
chonyo (4); *chochoyo* (4).
 - shelter, v.t., - *chengeta*.
 — (refuge), n., *nare* (4); *bako* (5);
yutiziro (7); *yupindo* (7); *yu-*
yando (7).
 — (booth), *musasa* (2); *chitumba* (3).
 shepherd, *mulisi* (1); *mufudzi* (1);
murindi (1); *mukumbudzi* (1).
 shield, *noyo* (4).
 — (ward off), v., - *tayira*; - *dsitirira*;
 - *dsiyirira*.
 - shift, - *tama*; - *arudza*; - *ti mbale-*
mbale.
 — (move), v.i., - *tsedura*.
 — v.t., - *tsedusa*; - *isa kumge*.
 shilling, *chereni (shereni)* (5) (for.).
 shin-bone, *mupimbira* (2); *mupa-*
mbare (2).
 - shine, - *bgingya*; - *bgingya-bgingya*;
 - *penya*; - *bgituka*; - *naima*;
 - *naima*; - *yaima*; - *yunguma*.
 — of sun during rain, - *yalira*.
 ship, *chikepe* (3) (for.). *bgaio yu-*
kuru (7); *gwa guru* (5).
 shirt, *hembe* (4) (for.).
 - shiver, - *huta*; - *vunda*; - *dedemera*;
 - *telemera*; - *ngwenda*; - *dedera*;
 - *sokwa*.
 shoe, *shangu* (4).
 — lace, *rukanda* (6); *rukanda* (6);
rukashu (6).
 shoemaker, *mupfumi we shangu*.
 — shoot, - *fura*; - *ridza pfuti*.
 — of lightning, - *penya*.
 — (miss), - *posha*.
 — into ear (of grain), - *tumbuka*.

- shoot (sprout), - *mera* ; - *tunga* ;
- *tanda* ; - *tandira* ; - *pfumvutira*.

— n. (of plants), *nungo* (4).

shop, *vengere* (4) (for.).

blacksmith's —, *imba yo ku pfurira*.

carpenter's —, *imba yo ku vezera*.

shopkeeper, *mutengisi* (1).

shore, *birimo* (5).

short, adj., 'fupi' with class prefix.

- be —, - *fupika*.

- be — of (-be insufficient), - *laira* ;

- *kaira* ; - *tushura* (*mushura*).

- shorten, - *fupisa* ; - *fupikisa* ; - *mu-*
shura ; - *lapudza*.

— too much, - *ita chimushu*.

shot, *chifeze* (3).

shoulder, n., *fudzi* (5).

— of mutton, *bandayoko* (5).

— blade, *bandayoko* (5) ; *bipito* (5).

- shout (help), - *ridzemere* ; - *yure-*
mere ; - *kuwa*.

— (- call), - *shoyedzera* ; - *danidzira*.

- shove away, - *tshedusa*.

— down, - *deredza*.

— along, - *gweya* ; - *gvesha*.

— together, - *kundira* (*gundira*) ; - *su-*
ndira.

shovel, *foshora* (4) (for.).

- show, - *ratidza* ; - *taridza* ; - *yonesa*.

— (explain), - *dudzira* ; - *paridza*.

shower, *mushoko* (2) ; *bokora* (5) ;
boka (5).

shreds (of native apron), *yutoyo* (7).

— (of clothes), *yubvumbue* (7) ; *mabve-*
nganya (5 pl.) ; *makusa* (5 pl.).

shrewd, - be, - *chenjera* ; - *sinuka*.

- shriek, - *chemesa* ; - *ridzemere* ;
- *yuremere*.

- shrink, - *dzoka* ; - *wunyana* ; - *puta* ;
- *boyera*.

— from, - *thia* ; - *tela*.

shrub, *gwenzi* (5).

- shudder, - *huta* ; - *zuzuma*. See
'shiver.'

- shuffle (of feet), - *weshuka*.

- shun, - *nzenga* ; - *renga*.

- shut (door), - *pfiga* ; - *zarira* (*zha-*
rira). See 'close.'

shy, - be, - *goda* ; - *nyara*.

sick, - be, - *rgwara* ; - *rgwadziwa*.

— person, *murgweri* (1).

sick (invalid), *mutenda* (1) ; *denda* (5) ;
ndonda (4).

sickle, *jeko* (5) ; *rukweya* (6).

sickness, *yurgwere* (7) ; *hosha* (4) ;

yukosha (7) ; *matenda* (5 pl.) ;

nenda (4) ; *denda* (5) ; *mabera-*
vera (5 pl.) ; *besa* (5) ; *mambu-*
zudzi (5 pl.) ; *buvuyo* (4).

side, *diyi* (5) ; *rutiyi* (6) (pl. *matiyi*
or *niyi*).

— of body, *numbana* (4).

— of abdomen, *numburiro* (4).

— of animal, *bgeye* (7).

at the — of, *po rutiyi pa* ; *pa nyasi*
pa ; *mu jinga ma*.

— where door is fastened to wall,
mindayaroyi (4).

on the farther —, *seri kwa*.

on this —, *miri yuno* ; *miri*
muno ; *miri ne cho yuno*.

sideways, adv., *no rutiyi* ; *ne diyi*.

sieve (native —), *musero* (2) ; *rusero*
(6) (pl. *sero*).

- sift, - *sera* ; - *pepeta* ; - *peša* ; - *peya*.

— round and round, - *sengeya* ; - *zu-*
ngura.

- sigh, - *ridza mapiko*.

— n., *mapiko* (5 pl.).

sight, *ku yona* (8).

— of gun, *ziso* (5) ; *chiziso* (3).

- be in —, - *yonekwa*.

- be out of —, - *nyangalika* ; - *sa*
yonekwa.

sign, *chiratidzo* (3) ; *naridzo* (4) ;
taridzo (4) ; *ratidzo* (4).

— (a mark), *mucherekedzo* (2).

signal, *chiratidzo* (3) ; *chiviso* (3).

signature (writing), *runyoro* (6).

— (a name), *zita* (5).

- signify, - *bvira* ; - *nzi* ; - *ti*.

— (notify), - *zivisa* ; - *ratidza*.

silence, *nyararo* (4).

— v.t., - *nyaradza* ; - *dzimurira*.

silent, - be, - *nyarara* ; - *ti* *nyiro*.
See 'quiet.'

silently, adv., *no ku nyarara*.

silliness, *yupenzi* (7) ; *yurema* (7).

silly, - be, - *wungumara* ; - *wunguka* ;
- *zhangandira* ; - *angarara*.

— person, *benzi* (5) ; *daianana* (5) ;
dununu (5) ; *zanguzangu* (5).

silver, *silyera* (5) (for.).

silver money, *mali machena* (white money).
 similar, - be, - *fanana*; - *enzana*; - *isana*; - *lodza*; - *batana na*; - *yanisira*.
 — 'mge' with class prefix.
 — to, *mgene sa*.
 similarity, *yufani* (*yufano*) (7).
 simple, - be (- be easy), - *sa gozha*; - *sa rema*; - *bvira*.
 simpleton, *dununu* (5); *datanana* (5).
 sin, *chiji* (3 pl.); *zigi* (generally used); *nadzo* (4); *rutadzo* (6); *ku ipa* (8); *za ka ipa* (3 pl.).
 — v., - *chinya*; - *tadza*; - *ita za ka ipa*; - *paremaka*; - *lesa*.
 since, conj., *ku bva*; *ku bvira*.
 — (because), *za*; *nokuti*.
 sincere, - be, - *sa nyengera*; - *sa va ne nema*; - *va ne zokwadi*.
 sincerely, *ne zokwadi*; *no moyo wose*.
 sinew, *runda* (5); *dzira* (5).
 — (of leg), *hanu* (4); *ganu* (5).
 - sing, - *imba*.
 — out alone, - *gurayudza*.
 — (greet with singing), - *wombera*.
 — in parts, - *tengezana*.
 — bass, - *dzova*.
 - singe, - *bvura*; - *isa*; - *yayaidza*.
 singer, *muimbi* (1).
 single, 'mge' with class prefix; 'oga' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 — man, *simburume* (4).
 — woman, *musikana* (1).
 — file, *mutungwe* (2); *mundundu* (2).
 singly, adv., 'mge, mge' with class prefix; 'oga' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 - sink, - *nyura*; - *nyuya*.
 — to the bottom, - *ndangandira*.
 — gradually, - *serereha*.
 sinner, *muchinyi* (1); *mutadzi* (1); *muti we zigi* (1); *muta-zigi* (1).
 - sip, - *suta*; - *wila*; - *witura*; - *sepa*; - *seta*.
 — noisily, - *sipura*.
 sir, *lenzi* (1) (master); *murungu* (1); (white man); *she* (chief) (1); *nkosi* (for.).

sister of a brother, *hanzadzi* (4); *hanzanzi* (4).
 elder — of a sister, *yakoma* (1) (pl. *madzi* —).
 younger — of a sister, *munuzuna* (1); *munukuna* (1).
 — of wife, *muramo* (1).
 — in law (older), *yakoma* (1).
 — (younger), *muramo* (1).
 — (of husband), *muramo* (1).
 — (of wife), *yamgene* (1).
 - sit, - *gara*.
 — erect, - *gara kwazo*.
 — well (to fit), - *kwana*; - *ringana*; - *enzana*.
 — with legs folded under body, - *ita chisero*.
 — (squat down flat), - *pashama*.
 — (squat on the heels), - *zuzumara*; - *tumba*.
 — up at night talking, - *idzisa*.
 — (- roost), - *mara*.
 — on eggs, - *garira*; - *yatira*; - *ravira*; - *rindira*.
 — on chickens, - *yuyatira*.
 site (for building), *po ku yaka* (9); *pa yakiro* (9); *pa mayako* (9).
 old —, *chongo* (3).
 — for garden, *gombo* (5).
 situation (of house), *pa ka yakiwa* (9).
 — (work), *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
 six, adj., 'tanatu' with class prefix.
 sixteen, *gumi ne nanatu* (in counting); *gumi na tanatu* (with class prefix) as adj.
 sixth, 'tanatu' with gen. part. of gov. noun.
 sixth time, *rgwe tanatu*.
 sixty, *makumi matanatu*.
 size, *yukuru* (7); *mumiro* (2); *musinga* (2); *muturu* (2); *mum(h)u* (2).
 — (age), *zero* (5).
 skeleton (whole), *marangwanda* (5 pl.).
 — (separate bones), *magodo* (5 pl.); *mafupa* (5 pl.); *mahona* (5 pl.); *mundjeye* (2).
 sketch, *chifanaidzo* (3).
 —, v., - *fananidza*; - *nyora*; - *tara*.
 skillful, - be, - *chenjera*; - *va ne njere*; - *sinuka*; - *ngwara*.

skillful person, *njenda* (4); *nyangi* (4).

skill, *yuchenjeri* (7); *njere* (4); *yungwali* (7).

- skim, - *wurura*; - *wungura*; - *wombokora*.

— off dirt, - *kapura*; - *kupura*; - *nyemura*; - *nyesura*.

skimmer, *chiwururo* (3); *chimimino* (3).

skin (human), *ganda* (5).

— (of goat), *nguwo* (4).

— (of sheep), *debge* (5).

— (hide), *debge* (5).

dry —, *bapata* (5); *dayuna* (5); *gukula* (5).

— of potatoes, &c., *deko* (5).

old cast off —, *chikwawashu* (3); *doyo* (5); *yutoyo* (7).

— an animal, v.t., - *vya*.

- cast —, as a snake, - *zuyura*; - *guyura*.

loose — under animal's chin, *bvura* (*pfura*) (5).

- skip (- dance), - *dzana*; - *chiruka*.

— v.i. (omit), - *dalika*; - *siya*.

— a day, - *shwedza*.

skull, *dehenya* (5).

sky, *denga* (5); *ku denga* (9).

blue sky, *gole dema* (5).

slack, - be (slow), - *nonoka*; - *sa chimbidzika*.

— (not tight), - *tembuka*; - *ti nyakata*.

- slacken something tight, - *nyeyunura*; - *regeza gishoma*; - *tembunura*.

- slander, - *pomera*; - *chera*. See 'scandalise.'

- slant, - *shunama*; - *kunama*; - *sunama*; - *tenuka*.

— v.t., - *vereke*; - *verehera*.

- slap, v.t., - *phadura*; - *bamura*.

— n., *rumbado* (6); *ruyado* (6).

slate, *bge ro ku nyora*.

- slaughter, - *baya*; - *yuraya*.

slave, n., *muranda* (1); *mushumiri* (1); *murombo* (1).

slavery, *yuranda* (7).

- sleep, - *yata hope*; - *rinda hope*; - *rara*.

— soundly, - *pewuka*.

- sleep (doze or nod), - *kotsira*; - *tsimngaira*.

— without covering, - *ita mutitini*.

— n., *hope* (4 pl.).

— (disturbed), *vavahwi* (5); *vavati* (5); *vavanana* (5).

sleeping place of baboons, *chiro* (3).

— (hiding or lying place of game), *nzimba* (4).

sleepy, - be, - *ya ne hope*; - *ya ne gope*; - *tsimngaira* (*isumngaira*).

— person, *dutsatutsa* (5).

sleeve, *ruyoko* (6).

slender, adj., 'tele' with class prefix.

See 'thin.'

slice, *bandi* (5). — of pumpkin, *mبادzi* (4).

— v.t., - *cheka*; - *yedzenga* (out meat lengthwise).

- slide (down steep place in playing), - *ita mutserendende*; - *iserendende*; - *ita chamutsetutsedu*.

- sling (throw), - *kandira*; - *poshera*.

— over the shoulder, - *pakata*; - *pakatira*.

— n., *chipfura mabge* (3).

— (crawl), - *nyanga*.

- slip, - *tedzemuka*; - *tsedemuka*; - *tse-duka*; - *dzeredzedeka*.

— down, - *derera*.

— out of hands, - *gotoka*; - *pu dzumuka*; - *vomoka*.

— (cutting), n., *chitemga* (3).

slippery, - be, - *tedza*.

— place, *pa no tedza*; *mutsetu* (2).

slope, *burusiro* (5); *buruko* (5); *pa no shunama*; *pa no kunama*;

mulenusirgwa (2); *mulenudenu* (2); *mulenutenu* (2).

slotful, - be, - *ya no yusimbe*.

— and dirty, - *ya no yushovu*.

slovenliness, *yufende* (7); *yushovu* (7).

slovenly, adv., *no yufende*.

— person, *fende* (4); *zidya* (5).

slow, - be, - *nonoka*; - *sa chimbidzika*; - *kondoroka*.

— to rise, - *sukusira*; - *ya ne chingoro*.

— to leave, - *dzemberera*.

- be habitually —, - *ya no rusaririra*.

slowly, adv., *no ku nonoka*.
 — (gently), *chinyai!* *siyuya*; also
 ‘*natso*’ before verb root, as
 natso bata, work gently.
 slowness, *rukota* (6).
 - slumber, - *yata hope*.
 sly, - be, - *nyengera*; - *ya ne njere*.
 - smack (lips), - *nambita*; - *dongo-*
 nyora; - *donongora*; - *dokonora*.
 — (of dog), - *dakanura*.
 small, adj., *doko*; *duku*; *diki* with
 class prefix.
 - be —, - *dokopa*; - *ya doko*; - *du-*
 puka; - *minipa*; - *dokopara*.
 — (very small and worn, of moon or
 article), - *ita ruyaza*.
 small pox, *nomba* (4).
 - smart, - *rgwaadza*; - *checheta*; - *shiri-*
 shita; - *shosha*; - *soma-soma*;
 yutira.
 - be —, - *chenjera*; - *sinuka*.
 - smear, - *xora*; - *zodza*.
 — walls, - *dzuadrura*; - *nama*.
 — floor, - *dzura*; - *paranga*.
 - smell, - *nzgwa*; - *femba*; - *fembe-*
 dza; - *nuwidza*.
 — as dogs, - *femba*; - *tunira*; - *tunidza*;
 - *kamba*.
 — sweet, - *nuwira*.
 — bad, - *nuwa*.
 — n., sweet —, *bğema* (7).
 very bad —, *bvungapfunga* (5);
 bvungupfungu (5); *gutukutu*
 (5); *gwema* (5).
 - smelt, - *nyawusa*.
 smelting furnace, *nyawusiro* (5).
 - smile, - *mğemğera*; - *mğenguka*;
 - *mğenuka*; - *nyenyema*; - *nyeku-*
 rira; - *mğekurira*.
 - have a smiling face or front teeth
 out, - *venyuka*.
 smith, *mupfuri* (1).
 smoke, n., *yutsi* (7); *yusi* (7).
 — from damp wood burning, *mbere-*
 yere (4).
 - v.i., - *phititika*; - *pfungaira*.
 - v.t. (of meat), - *pfungaidza*; - *pfu-*
 ngidzira.
 — tobacco, - *suta*.
 smoking horn, *gonanombe* (5).
 smoky, - be, - *phititika*; - *xara yutsi*.
 - smooth, - *purudzira*.

- smooth (- make even), - *enzanisa*;
 - *kwesera*; - *yusa*; - *pakasha*;
 - *pambadzira*.
 — down earthenware in making it,
 - *iserenga*; - *kurungira*.
 - smother, - *fumbira muromo*.
 smut, *gwapa* (5); *yabga* (5).
 snail, *hozgwe* (4).
 — shell, *homba* (4).
 snake, *nyoka*. See ‘serpent.’
 - snap (break off), v.i., - *dambuka*;
 - *nyewuka*; - *bvambuka*; - *tashuka*
 (*dashuka*); - *kwashuka*.
 — fingers, - *ridza mizwe*.
 - snare, v.t., - *teya*.
 — n. (of stone), *riya* (5).
 — (of rope), *mumbule* (2); *musungo*
 (2); *dozo* (5).
 — (with pole), *mukuni* (1).
 — for birds, *rugombe* (6); *chidzingi*
 (3) (*rudzingi*) (6).
 — (game pit), *huzha* (4).
 — for hares, *murayu* (2).
 - snarl (of dog), - *yomba*.
 - snatch, - *wika*; - *wikira*; - *bvika*;
 - *bğengerura*; - *bvuta*; - *dzura* (as
 of hawk).
 - sneak, - *nyenyera*; - *nyabğaira*;
 - *bgataira*.
 - sneeze, - *hotsira*.
 - sniff, - *fembedza*; - *femba-femba*.
 - snore, - *ita nonono*; - *ita mafemo*;
 - *ita magwiriri*; - *ita gorododo*.
 snow, *chando* (3); *mazaya* (5 pl.).
 snuff, *foldya* (4).
 — v. (take —), - *suta foldya*.
 (give —), - *sutidza*.
 snuff-box, *chibako* (3); *nyere ye*
 foldya (4); *chingwarara* (3).
 (long —), *rutanga* (6) (*rutana*);
 mushanga (2); *mutanga* (2).
 — (tuft of hair of animal used as
 snuff-box), *shindi* (4) (*rushindi*
 (6)).
 so, adv., *ku daro*; *ku dai*; *ku dero*;
 za ka dero; *sa izogo*; *so ku dai*;
 so ku daro.
 — conj., *saka*; *ipopo*; *no ku daro*.
 — adv. of degree, ‘*ka dai*’ with
 pers. pron., e.g. a lion so big,
 shumba ya ka kuwa ya ka dai.
 - soak, v.i., - *nyakatika*.

- **soak**, v.t., - *nyongoyesa*; - *nyoroga*.
 — **ed**, - *be*, - *nyongoyera*; - *nyoroya*; - *nyayama*.
soap, *sipo* (4) (for.); *chisipo* (3) (for.).
soapstone, *munyaka* (2).
 - **sob**, - *pfikuka*; - *pfikura*; - *sima*; - *sikura*.
sociable, - *be*, - *fambidzana na vamge*; - *mutsana na vamge*; - *shanyirana*.
society, *yungano* (4); *shongano* (4).
 — (friendship), *yushamgali* (7).
sod, *mvinga* (4).
soft, adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix.
 - *be* — (as of wool), - *nnya*; - *nyoroyera*.
 — (as of ripe fruit), - *tekehera*; - *lovonyeka* (*lobvonyeka*).
 — (as of silk), - *ita rurevu-revu*; - *ita ruferefa*.
 — (brittle), - *pfumbukira*.
 - **soften**, - *nyoroyesa*.
softly, *chinyai*; or 'natso' followed by infin. of principal v.; or 'natso' followed by verb. root, e.g. walk *softly*, *natso ku famba*, or *natso famba*.
softness, *yunyoro* (7); *ruferefa* (6); *ku tekehera* (8). See 'soft'.
soil, *vu* (5); *pasi* (9).
 brackish —, *bale* (5).
 dry — with short grass, *gaya* (5); *gwangwali* (5).
 — with many trees, *sapa* (5).
 very dry —, *gwangwarati* (5); *gahata* (5).
 — on river bank, *rukuyi* (6); *gwatara* (5).
 white sandy —, *mushapa* (2).
 stony —, *rukangarabge* (6).
 - **soil**, v.t., - *gibisa*; - *isa sina*.
 — **ed**, - *be*, - *siba*; - *ya ne sina*.
soldier, *murgwi* (1).
solid, adj., 'kukutu' with class prefix.
 - *be* —, - *bata*; - *gunga*.
 - **solidify**, - *gwamba*.
solitary, - *be*, - *ya oga*.
solitude, *mafura-mepo*.
 - **solve**, - *gumana na*; - *wana* (i.e. find).

some, adj., 'mge' with plu. class
 . pref. of gov. noun.
some one, *mumge* (1).
something, *chimge* (3); *chinu* (3); *chiro* (3).
sometime, *mumge musu*; *musi mumge*.
sometimes, *mamge mazuya*; *mimge misi*; *misi mimge*.
son, *mšana* (1); *mšanakomana* (1); *mšanarume* (1).
 — of chief, *mšanzari* (1); *muzari* (1).
son-in-law (of father), *mukwasha* (1); *mukwambo* (1).
 — (of mother), *mšanakadzi* (1).
song, *rgwiyo* (6); *chimbo* (3); *rumbo* (6) (pl. *dzimbo*).
 (war —), *mbayarira* (4).
soon, adv., *gino*; *iko gino*; *gino gino*; *gino uno*; *gino pano*.
 - *do* —, - *chimbizika*. See 'hasten'.
soot, *chinai* (3).
 — (of burnt grass), *gungutsa* (5).
sop, *musuya* (2).
sorcerer, *sorceress*, *muroyi* (1); *muroyi* (1); *murakashi* (1); *mutopori* (1); *chidoma* (3); *chitushuro* (3); *chinwa* (3).
 — (witch doctor), *nanga* (4); *yachiremba* (1).
sore, *ronda* (5); *chironda* (3).
 - **open** —, *chiyabvu* (3).
 - *be* —, - *rgwadza*; - *rgwadziwa*. See 'ache'.
 - **make** — (of heart), - *rgwadza moyo*; - *kuruwadza*; - *pungaidza ne shungu*.
sorrow, *kuchema* (8); *kurgwadza kwo moyo*. See 'trouble'.
sorrowful, - *be*, - *chema*; - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*.
sorry, - *be*, - *ya no moyo u no rgwadza*.
sort, v.t., - *shara*; - *shanangura*; - *isawura*.
 — *n.* (kind), *rudzi* (6).
 - *be* of what sort, - *dini*.
soul, *mšeya* (2); *mumvuli* (2).
 — of departed relative, *mudzimu* (2).
 - **sound**, v.i., - *rira*.
 — (of trumpet), - *yukhura*.
 — v.t., - *ridza*.

- sound, (nzg)wi (5); mvumi (4);
 mubvumo (2) (i.e. rumbling).
 soup, muto (2); sopo (4) (for.).
 sour, - be, - yaya; - yayira; - shayaya.
 - get — (of food), - shoya; - sina.
 source, mavuro (5 pl.); malanga
 (5 pl.); mayambo (5 pl.).
 — (spring), isime (5); chitubu (3).
 sovereign, she (1); mubati (1);
 muyusi (1); mambo (1).
 — (pound), pondo (4) (for.).
 - sow, - dzaya (general).
 — fine seeds, - kusha.
 — (plant maize or beans), - kayira.
 — (to plant), - sima.
 — thinly, - donora.
 — thickly, - mgaya.
 sow (female pig), hadzi ye nguruye (4);
 nungi ye nguruye (4).
 sower, mudzari (1); mukushi (1).
 space, hanu (4); nano (4).
 open —, pa mene (9).
 — between, ngamu (4); njemu (4).
 — — hoofs of animals, bgamba (7).
 — — fingers and toes, mu ma-
 nyere (9).
 — — teeth, saka (5); manyada
 (5 pl.).
 — — front teeth, sakayadzimu (5).
 — — stitches, chigayu (3).
 spade, foshora (4) (for.).
 - span in, - sunga; - pana (for.).
 — out, - sunungura; - panura (for.).
 - spare, - rega.
 spark, sase (5); sasaradzi (5).
 small —, chochonyo (3).
 - send off —, - balika.
 - sparkle, - bgibginya; - yaima;
 - bgituka. See 'glitter.'
 sparrows (not known in this country);
 small birds like them are: ruti-
 mba (6) (pl. rutimba); ngildya
 (4).
 - speak, - reya; - bgereketa; - tawura;
 - reyeteke; - nyepa (nyebe). See
 'talk.'
 — loud, - reyesa.
 — out, - dudza nzgwi; - bufura.
 — to, - nyepera (nyebera); - yudza.
 — evil, - ita makuwa; - ita chi-
 mbgere.
 — well of, - natsidzira.
- speak truth, - reya zokwadi; - reya
 giro kwago.
 — lies, - reya nema.
 — lies about others, - nanga;
 - mgayainga (mganyanga).
 — in parables, - ita diza; - ita
 chimgonyi; - pesera mashoko.
 — with gruff voice, - hohora.
 — harshly and loud, - yomba; - yoyo-
 zeka; - zhozota.
 — fast, - dededza; - dekedza.
 — indistinctly, - gunduma; - pfu-
 pfuma; - mbirimbindika (mburu-
 mbundika).
 — plainly, - tsensenura.
 — for another, - revera; - randulira.
 — without thinking, - wotoka; - yuru-
 muka.
 speaker, good, mururikiri (1).
 speaking, way ol, mubgereketereve (2).
 spear, pfumo (5). See 'assegai.'
 — v.t., - baya.
 species, rudzi (6).
 speckle, yabga (5); shanga (4).
 — ed, - be, - ya na manyerekele;
 - ya na mayara-mayara.
 spectacle, chiyono (3); chiringiro
 (3).
 spectacles, mayoni (5 pl.); mayoni-
 goni (5 pl.); zigoni-goni (3 pl.).
 spectator, muringiri (1).
 speech, chireyo (3); chitawuro (3).
 — (language), rulimi (6).
 speechless, - be, - shaiwa shoko.
 speed, chimbidziko (4); ku chimbi-
 dzika (8); hayu-hayu (4).
 speedily, adv., ne chimbidziko; no
 ku kurumbidza.
 - spell, - ita lelere imge, imge; - perela
 (for.).
 - spend (the day), - shwera.
 — (the night), - yata; - rara; - ita
 charadza.
 — (a year), - sharuka.
 — money, - dusa; - bvisa.
 — (waste), - paradza.
 spendthrift, zildya (5).
 spent, - be, - pera; - guma.
 spice, zi no nuwira; muti u no
 zipa.
 spider, dande-mutande (5).
 poisonous —, buye (5).

spider (tarantula), *dgaṭṣatṣa* (5).
 — web, *dandira* (5); *dandadzi* (5);
mutandira (2); *mutandiro* (2).
 spike (in game pit), *buṛo* (5); — (in
 trap), *dika* (5).
 — spill, v.t., — *pfachura*.
 — over, v.i., — *pfachuka*; — *kaba*;
 — *kaba-kaba*; — *kabira*.
 spilt, — be, — *teyuka*.
 — in all directions, — *chambgadzira*.
 — spin (as of spider), v.t., — *landira*.
 — (weave), — *ruka*.
 spinach (native), *muliyo* (2) (general).
 kinds of —: *musemga-semga* (2);
mowa (4); *munyemba* (2);
mutangandime (2); *mutunza-*
ndalaya (2); *chidoyoli* (3); *chi-*
revereye (3); *munenza* (2);
muldyambira (2); *zhombge* (5);
musungosungu (2); *mutuyuyu* (2);
marupha; *mbgarupha* (*ndya-*
rushwa) (4).
 — without something to mix with
 it, *matsoto* (5 pl.).
 spinal cord, *muchinyihenyu* (2).
 spine, *muzongoza* (2).
 spirit, *mgeya* (2).
 great — honoured by *Yakaranga*,
Mgali (1) (*Mgari* (1)).
 — entered into some other person or
 animal, *mudrimu* (2).
 — of dead, *mudrimu* (2); *mumvuli* (2).
 wicked — from another place,
ngozi (4).
 bad, evil —, *shavi* (4); *mgeya wa*
ka ipa (2).
 — (devil), *mudemona* (1) (for.);
Satane (1) (for.).
 specific names for evil spirits:
chirombo (3); *zungu* (5); *chi-*
puna (3); *xenda* (5); *songano*
 (5) (*shongano*); *jukwa* (5);
gosi (5); *narira* (4); *ngwi-*
ngwindo (4).
 Holy Spirit, *Mgeya wa ka shana-*
ngurwa; *Mgeya wa ka tsawu-*
rgwa.
 spiritual, adj., *cho* (or other gen.
 part.) *mgeya*.
 — spit, — *pfira mate*.
 — out (as seeds in eating fruit),
-sisiṇa; — *detsa*.

— spite, — *ripira*; — *tsipira*.
 — n., *shungu* (4 pl.).
 spitefully, adv., *no ku tsiya*; *ne*
shungu.
 — splash, — *chambgadzira*; — *chapura*.
 spleen, *rgwatata* (6).
 splendour, *ku bginya* (8); *ku penya*
 (8); *ku nakisa* (8).
 splinter, *chipsemurgwa* (3); *ruyazu*
 (6); *chibazurgwa* (3); *banzurgwa*
 (5); *chikwanzurgwa* (3) (*rukwa-*
nzurgwa).
 small —, *ruṣemo* (6).
 — off, v.i., — *baduka*; — *daduka*;
 — *peduka*; — *pfemuka* (i.e. length-
 wise).
 — split (with hand), — *pfemura*; — *tse-*
mura; — *chenyura*.
 — with axe, — *pasura*; — *banzura*;
 — *kwazura* (*kwanzura*); — *vasura*.
 — split, v.i., — *bamuka*; — *ṣamuka*.
 — with laughter, — *putika*.
 — spoil, — *chinya*; — *chinyidza*; — *ipisa*;
 — *shatsa*; — *shazha*; — *isa*; — *leṣa*;
 — *chanyawura*.
 spoil (of war), *mimbiri* (4); *mambara*
 (4).
 spoilt, — be, — *chinyika*; — *rokoteka*.
 spoon, *mugwaku* (2); *repura* (4)
 (for.); *rukwepe* (6).
 — (ladle for dipping water), *mukombe*
 (2).
 spoon, *rushoka* (6); *gumbo* (5).
 spot, *gwapa* (5); *chivara* (3);
chivabga (3); *shanga* (4).
 — (place), *nano* (4); *dunu* (5);
nanga (4); also expressed by
 'pa' or 'paya pa', e.g. the
 spot where I live, *pa ndi no gara*;
 or, *paya pa ndi no gara*.
 small — a, *yunyodzi* (7); *yunyoti*
 (7).
 spotless, — be (blameless), — *sa ya ne*
maka; — *sa ya ne chivara*.
 spotted, — be, — *ya na makwapa*; — *ya*
na manyerekele; — *ya na mavara*.
 spout, *muromo* (2).
 — v.i., — *iseneneka*.
 sprained, — be, — *shodoka*; — *shonyoka*;
 — *nefuka*; — *ninguka*.
 — spread (scatter), — *paraḍzira*; — *sa-*
zanya.

- spread news, - *paridsira*.
- open, - *tadzanura*.
- a cloth or blanket, - *wara*; - *wadza*.
- out in sun, - *niha*; - *dawusa*;
- *dadawusa*; - *pakasha*.
- out (of skin), - *yamba*.
- butter on bread, - *tsetera*; - *namira*;
- *nyarira*.
- (as of sore), v.i., - *tendenuka*; - *ka-*
bvamuha; - *nyewuka*; - *nyenga*.
- spring (season), *chirimo* (3).
- early —, *chirimgana* (3) (*ruli-*
mgana (6)).
- (fountain), *tsime* (5); *chitubu* (3).
- v. (jump), - *kwakuka*; - *jatika*;
- *janiha*; - *chirika*.
- up (as seed), - *mera*.
- upon, - *kwakukira*.
- sprinkle, - *sasa*.
- with bush or tail, - *mgiza*;
- *mgaya*.
- (meal or powder), - *nyunyulidza*.
- possessions of dead, - *puma*.
- sprout (of seeds), - *mera*; - *buda*.
- (of trees), - *tunga*; - *buka*; - *pfu-*
mutira; - *bukira*.
- (of trees), n., *bukwa* (5); *bukiro*
(5).
- (of seeds), *nungo* (4); *chipande*
(of 'rukweza').
- spur, v.t., - *baya*.
- spur, *chibayo* (3).
- of cock, *chimbi* (3).
- sputter, - *vaira*; - *shapaira*; - *ve-*
ruka.
- spy, n., - *musholi* (1).
- out, v., - *shora*; - *taira*.
- (- see), - *yona*.
- squander, - *rasha-rasha*; - *rasha-*
nya; - *paradza*; - *chinya*;
- *pedzanya*; - *tamba na*.
- squash, - *phanya*.
- (squeeze), - *sina*.
- n. (small pumpkin), *gavu* (5);
budzi (5). See 'pumpkin.'
- squat on heels, - *zuzumara*; - *tu-*
mba; - *bḡata*; - *zumba*.
- squeak (as of shoe or wheel), - *rira*.
- squeeze, - *phanya*.
- in, - *ndinyira*; - *ndiya*; - *ndo-*
nyera.
- out (as a lemon), - *sina*.
- squint, - *chochorodza*.
- squirrel, *shindi* (4); *chidzororo* (3).
- squirt, - *pfira-pfira*.
- out, - *tsatika*.
- water on one who has been absent
long, - *furira mvura*.
- on to, - *davusira*.
- stab, - *baya*; - *kan(h)a*; - *dzura*; - *ku-*
bvura; - *kulyura*; - *vodzonga*;
- *nyononyedza*; - *wadzura*.
- stable, *imba ya* — or *danga ra mabiza*.
- stack, - *tutira*; - *dulikhidza*.
- n., *dutu* (5).
- staff, *mudongo* (2); *mubada* (2);
- *simbo* (4). See 'stick.'
- stagger, - *peperaka*; - *runguzika*;
- *dzedzereka*; - *dzeredzeka*; - *dzere-*
dzedeka; - *dzengendeka* (*zenge-*
neka); - *dzimirika*; - *zengaira*;
- *mewuka*; - *meya*; - *tengedzeka*;
- *danazika*.
- under heavy weight, - *fifinya*;
- *sesenya*; - *sesera*.
- stain, - *ḡibisa*.
- n., *yabḡa* (5); *gwapa* (5); *gwati*
(5).
- stairs, *dano* (5); *chikwiriso* (3).
- stale (old), adj., 'sharu' with class
prefix or 'kare' with gen. part.
of gov. n.
- stalk (of plant), *dzinde* (5); *gunde*
(5).
- (dry), *shanga* (5); *mashanga*
(5 pl.) (i.e. after harvest).
- of maize or sugar cane, *gunde* (5);
gunje (5).
- of 'rukweza,' *sengwe* (5).
- v.t. (of game), - *nyanga*; - *nya-*
ngira.
- stallion, *gono re biza* (5).
- stalwart, - *be*, - *ya ne simba*; - *ya*
no muviri.
- stalwart man, *ndikithwa* (4).
- stammer, - *kakamira*; - *bvabva-*
mira; - *ndandamira*.
- stammerer, *mukakamiri* (1); *mubva-*
bvamiri (1); *mundandamiri* (1).
- stamp (with feet), - *tsikisa*.
- (pound), - *shwa* (*hwa*); - *ligidza*;
- *kacha*; - *shokora* (*sokora*).
- maize, - *shwa* (*hwa*); - *shoshovora*.
- damp grain or tobacco, - *kovora*.

- stamped maize or grain, *shoyo* (4).
 — cooked, *mashazhale* (5 pl.).
 mortar for stamping, *duli* (5).
 — stand, - *mira*.
 — up, - *simuka*; - *muruka* (*miruka*).
 — aside, - *tseduka*.
 — on head, - *shunama*.
 — on hands and feet, - *dzambarara*; - *ita tsire*; - *tanyarara*.
 — with bent legs, - *tebvama*; *terebvara*.
 — with legs far apart, leaning forward, - *pashamara*; - *tanyara*.
 — upright, - *mira kwazo*; - *ti tasa*; - *ti horgwe*.
 — in the way, - *dzivira zhira*.
 — in the light, - *dzitira*; - *dzikatira*.
 — in a row, - *ita sara*; - *ita runda*.
 — on tiptoe, - *sasavira*.
 — aghast, see 'surprised.'
 — make to —, - *misa*; - *mirisa*; - *timika*.
 star, *nyeredzi* (4).
 morning —, *nyamasase* (4); *masase* (4).
 evening —, *venekera simburume* (4); (*Venus*).
 midnight —, *weya* (4).
 three stars of Orion's belt, *madedbandikuteme* (5 pl.).
 Pleiades, *chimutanatu* (3).
 milky way, *gwara ra kurumbi* (5).
 — stare (intently), - *napanidza*; - *wetsa meso*; - *yeya*; - *shwiriridza*.
 — into space, - *pozora*.
 — silently, - *ti tugu*.
 — in anger, - *dzondolera*; - *dzondora*.
 — start, - *tanga*; - *yamba*; - *bva*.
 — startle, v.i., - *karuka*; - *vunduka*; - *paruka hana*; - *patika*; - *vinyuka*.
 — very much, - *tuna*.
 — v.t., - *karudza*; - *karukisa*; - *patidza*.
 — starve, v.i., - *fa ne zhara*; - *ziya*.
 — v.t., - *nyima zo ku lya*.
 statue, *chifananidzo* (3) (*chifanaidzo*).
 stature, *yurefu* (7); *ku reba* (8); *mum(h)u* (2); *zero* (5); *muturu* (2).
 — stay, - *gara*.
 — behind, - *sara*.
 — (tarry), - *garisa*; - *nonoka*.
 — stay (a little while), - *ita nyunyathwa*.
 — (wait), - *gara*; - *mira*; - *rinda*.
 — for the day, - *shwera*.
 — for the night, - *yata*.
 — (prop), - *tapurira*.
 steady, - *be*, - *sa kuta*; - *ti dzidzinindi*.
 — steal, - *ba*; - *korora*.
 — much, - *rura*.
 — (walk stealthily), - *nyangwaira*; - *nyabgaira*.
 — away, - *werera*; - *nyeruka*; - *guya*.
 stealthily, adv., *chinyai*; no *ku nyanga*.
 steam, *mgeya wa mvura*; *yutsi bge mvura*.
 — v., with medicine, - *natira*; - *vuvata*.
 steamer, *chikepe* (for.) (3); *bгато yukuru* (7); *gwa guru* (5).
 steel, *yutale* (7).
 steenbuck, *mene* (4).
 — steep, v.t. (in water), - *nyika*; - *nyudza*.
 — overnight, - *royeka*.
 — be —, - *shunama* (*sunama*); - *kunama*. See 'slope.'
 steep place, *gome* (5); *chikwiriro* (3); *mukwidza* (2); *chikwidza* (3).
 stem (of plant), *kunde* (5); *zimai* (5).
 — (of pumpkin), *mugonyo* (2).
 — to which ear is attached, *mushongoti* (2). See 'stalk.'
 stench, *ku nuwa* (8); *bge* (7).
 — step, - *tsika*.
 — backwards, - *suduvuka*; - *suduruka*; - *shwedera sule*.
 — in, - *pinda*.
 — out, - *buda*.
 — aside, - *tseduka*.
 — n. (of ladder), *chitsiko* (3).
 — (a stride), *nambge* (4).
 loud —, *mutindo* (2).
 stern, - *be*, - *tsunga*.
 — person, *tsungununu* (4).
 steward, *muchengeti* (1); *murindi* (1); *mutariri* (1); *mukumbudzi* (1).
 stick (with knob), *simbo* (4).
 thick —, *bonda* (5); *monda* (4); *monza* (4); *monzeka* (4).
 small —, *ruponda* (6); *rupondeka* (6); *ruponzeka* (6); *rusoso* (6); *rutanda* (6); *chitanda* (3).

- stick (walking stick), *mudongo* (2);
mubada (2).
 — for stirring porridge, *mugoti* (2);
musika (2).
 — (rod), *shamu* (4).
 vertical sticks in plaiting a basket,
mapfumo (5 pl.).
 horizontal — (lath) in plaiting,
maruka (5 pl.).
 - stick on, with pin, - *bayira*.
 — in, - *pfekedza*; - *pfenedza*; - some-
keva.
 — in throat, - *ronda*.
 — with glue, - *namatidzira*.
 — v.i., - *namira*; - *namatira*.
 — (- remain), - *rambira* 'po'.
 sticky, - be, - *namatira*; - *namira*.
 stiff, *kobvu*; *kukutu* with class pre-
 fix.
 - be — (not work easily), - *gaka*.
 - stifle, v.t., - *bitisa*; - *phitisa*;
bitidza; - *phitidzira*.
 — ed, - be, - *bitirigwa*; - *bitirigwa*;
phitirigwa.
 still, - be, - *nyarara*; - *ti nyiro*;
ti shutu; - *ti tukushu*.
 still, adv., 'chi' or 'cha' before
 verb root. 'Chi' used in
 pres. t., and before verb 'to
 be' (ri); 'cha' in all other
 cases.
 stillborn child, *gamba* (5).
 - stimulate, - *mutsa moyo*; - *ponesa*;
raramisa.
 - sting, v.t., - *baya*.
 — (of bee), - *ruma*.
 — v.i. (hurt very much), - *ndulika*;
nzulika.
 — n. (of bee), *rumborera* (6); *ruyo-
 rera* (6).
 stingingness, *yutsungwe* (7); *yutsutsa*
 (7).
 stingy, - be, - *kara*; - *ya no moyo*;
nyima yamge; - *ya no moyo*
mukukutu.
 — person, *mutsungwi*. See 'miser'.
 - stink, - *nuwa*.
 - stint, - *nyima*; - *namba*.
 - stir, v.t., - *kurunga*; - *kodzonga*.
 — water, - *bvongodza*.
 — the fire, - *kutidzira*; - *kuchidzira*;
yesidzira; - *kunidzira*.
 - stir porridge when thick, - *mona*;
kwaya; - *thiapura*.
 — adding meal, - *kubvura*.
 — (move), - *dengenyisa*; - *zungunisa*.
 — v.i., - *dengenyika*; - *zengaira*;
zengeneka; - *dungunuka* (*du-
 nyunuka*); - *zungunuka*.
 — in sleep, - *pfakanyika* (*pfakanya*).
 — up, - *kurumidza*. See 'incite'.
 stirring stick, *mugoti* (2); *musika* (2).
 - stitch (sew), - *pfuma*; - *sona*.
 — n. (pain), *chinu* (3); *chidayo* (3);
mabayo (5 pl.); *chithiawuro* (3).
 stock of gun, *garu* (5).
 stocking, *sokisi* (4) (for).
 stomach, *dumbu* (5).
 — (of animal), *guru* (5).
 — (small), *susu* (4).
 stone, *bge* (5).
 — (large rock), *bge* (5); *singa* (5).
 — (small, white), *musarasara* (2).
 — (pebble), *chibge* (3).
 flat —, *rgwendefa* (6); *vendefa* (5)
wendefa (5)).
 round —, *hurungudo* (4).
 soft brittle —, *yuvurubge* (7).
 hearth —, *phwa* (5).
 grinding —, *guyo* (5).
 small —, *huyo* (4).
 — for sharpening grinding stone,
mbango (4).
 large flat rock, *ruwale* (6) (pl.
mawale or *ngwale*).
 large high rock, *dombo* (5);
 — of fruit, *suruwe* (4) (*sukwe*).
 — v.t., - *taka na mabge*.
 - throw small — s, - *donora*.
 - throw large — at stem of tree,
guma.
 stony, - be, - *ya na mabge*.
 — place, *rujekese* (6).
 — place without good soil, *gangara-
 bge* (5).
 stool, *chigaro* (3).
 — of ground nuts, *depo* (5).
 — of grain, *dzinde* (5); *zimai* (5).
 foot —, *chitsiko* (3).
 - go to —, - *inda kuzhe*; - *mama*.
 - stoop, - *kotama*; - *kotamira*; - *ko-
 waira*.
 — in walking, - *yundundiha*; - *ko-
 waira*.

- stoop as result of illness, - *gokoya*.
- stop, - *mira*.
- v.t., - *misa*.
- (- leave off), - *rega*; - *guma*.
- suddenly, - *kashura*.
- (- hinder), - *dziyisa*.
- a hole, - *dziyira*.
- of rain, - *ganuka*; - *gasa*; - *gasuka*.
- (- stay), - *gara*.
- full —, n., *chimiyo* (3).
- stopper, *chidziyiro* (3); *dziyiro* (4).
- stopping place, *chizororo* (3); *zororero* (4).
- store, *chitoro* (3) (for.).
- keeper, *mutengesi* (1).
- v.t. (- keep), - *chengeta*; - *viga*; - *senengedza*.
- up, - *tutira*; - *banga*.
- stork, *shahali* (5); *zimudo* (5); *du-mburazhou* (5).
- storm (wind), *dutu* (5); (whirlwind), *chamupupuli* (3); *chamungwe* (3).
- take by —, - *fashamira*.
- story, *shumo* (4); *rungano* (6).
- stout, - be, - *ya no muyiri*; - *kora*.
- adj., *kobvu*; *pami* with class prefix.
- man, *ndikihwa* (4); *wirivinda* (4); *wiriviza* (4); *hodzongwe* (4); *hodzororo* (4); *mumanga* (1); *mupagamga* (1); *chidakwa* (3); *findimagona* (4); *folimba* (4); *hofoli* (4). See 'giant.'
- hearted, - be, - *tsunga*; - *tsunga moyo*.
- straggling, - be, - *tarangana*; - *ita manikatiika*.
- straight, - be, - *rurama*; - *runga-mika*; - *tsayuka*; - *ti tasa*; - *ti worgue*; - *ti siha*.
- make straight for something, - *ita chamo*.
- be — (in line), - *ndulika*.
- object, *mururira* (2).
- man, *surulira* (4).
- straighten, - *ruramisa*; - *runga-misa*; - *tsayura*; - *tabvura*; - *lasanudza*; - *lasanura*; - *worora*.
- (arrange), - *rongedza*; - *rongerera*; - *gadzira*.

- straightforward, - be, - *rurama*.
- straightness, *rungamo* (4); *yururami* (7); *nduramo* (4).
- strain, v.t. (filter), - *surudza*; - *kuna*.
- (drain), - *mimiya*.
- gradually, - *bomera*.
- strainer, *chisurudzo* (3); *chimimino* (3).
- beer —, *chisino* (3); *chisiniro* (3).
- (pot or calabash with small hole), *surudzo* (4).
- strange, - be (wonderful), - *kathiamadza*; - *shamisa*; - *komba*.
- (peculiar), - *ya ne nyere*.
- (not known), - *sa zikanwa*; - *sa ziviwa*.
- stranger, *mgeni* (1).
- strangle, - *dziya*; - *dzinya*; - *bitirisa*; - *bitidza*; - *nonnya*; - *nipa* - *ninya*.
- strap, *musungo* (2); (*riem*), *gashu* (5); *tambo* (4) (for.).
- thin —, *rukanda* (6); *rukanda* (6).
- straw (remains after thrashing), *makoto* (5 pl.).
- stray, - *rashika*; - *nyangalika*.
- far away, - *roka*.
- stream, *rukoya* (6).
- (river), *rgwizi* (6).
- dry —, *rufuya* (6).
- side —, *muronga* (2).
- (current), *muyerero* (2); *mğenda-chirimo* (2).
- shallow wide —, *sairira* (5).
- stream (- flow), - *yerera*; - *chururuka*.
- street, *zhira* (4); *mugwagwa* (2).
- wide —, *gwanza* (5).
- strength, *simba* (5); *masimba* (5 pl.); *nungo* (4).
- put forth one's whole —, - *gwinya*.
- lose one's —, - *yota*.
- be without —, - *shaiwa nungo*; - *chichina*.
- strengthen, - *simbisa*; - *pa simba*.
- stretch, v.t., - *tatamura*; - *data-mura*; - *tabvura*; - *tamura*.
- v.i., - *tatamuka*; - *dadamuka*; - *tabvuka*; - *namuka*.
- full length, - *tasamara*.

- stretch out the hand, - *tambunudza* ;
- *tambanudza*.
- out the arms, - *tandayadza*.
- the fingers, - *tasamura* ; - *tadza-nura*.
- out the feet, - *tandayara*.
- the legs, - *tambarara*.
- out the tongue, - *wetsa* ; - *guya*.
- oneself, - *samura* ; - *datamura*.
- into position when sprained,
- *tamura*.
- stride (- take long —s), - *ita mataru* ;
- *ita naru*.
- stride, n., *nambge* (4).
- strife (words), *nyaya* (4) ; *rukaye* (6) ;
gakaya (5) ; *ku rgwa* (8) (fight).
See 'beat.'
- strike, v.t., - *roya*.
- with fist, - *bimidza* ; - *gudura* ;
- *lindiza* ; *ligidza*.
- with hammer, - *royera* ; - *yanga*.
- off coals from firebrand, - *chochonya*.
- (slap), - *bamura* ; - *pamadza* ;
- *phadura* ; - *yadza*.
- in face, - *gwetsa*.
- on mouth, - *bomodza*.
- with stick, - *ponda* ; - *pondera* ;
- *puuzura* ; - *punza*.
- (knock down), - *ligidza*.
- against, - *bondera* ; - *gumura* ;
- *gudura*.
- hard (as hoeing in hard soil),
- *teterera*.
- in (of rain), - *roya mukusha-kusha*.
- string (beads &c.), - *tungira (tunga)*.
- string, n., *ruchinda* (6) ; *rgonzi* (6) ;
rugodzi (6).
- (shoe lace), *rukanda* (6) ; *rukanda*
(6).
- of leather, round waist, *rukusha*
(6).
- for tying apron, *munza* (2) ;
muluya (2).
- make —, - *kosha*.
- maker, *mukoshi* (1).
- strip, - *purura* ; - *puzukira* ; - *pe-
mena* ; - *pfazura*.
- (skin), - *vuya*.
- bark, - *guyura* (for rope) ; - *kwa-
tura* ; - *kwamura*.
- maize from cobs, - *tokonyora*.
- strip off clothes, - *shangura* ; - *kulu-
nura* ; - *bvisa* ; - *pfekenura*.
- of cloth, n., *rundaza* (6) (pl.
ndaza).
- (shred), *bvengenya* (5).
- strive (- try), - *idza*.
- after riches, - *ita mataru* ; - *ita
naru*.
- with words, - *ita nyaya* ; - *ita
rukaye* ; - *ita gakaya*.
- (- fight), - *rgwa*.
- stroke, - *purudzira* ; - *sarudzira*.
— n., *royo* (4).
- strong, - *be*, - *ya ne simba* ; - *simba*.
- (sturdy), - *shwira* ; - *simbarara*.
- (of beer), - *bata* ; - *ya ne simba*.
- man, *chiletema* (3) ; *chikombarume*
(3) ; *chisosoni* (3).
- material, *chitaka* (3).
- struggle, - *rgwa* ; - *rgwisa* ; - *ya-
yarira*.
- out, - *tsukunika*.
- stubborn, - *be*, - *simbarara* ; - *tsunga-
rara* ; - *yangarara* ; - *sindimara*.
- ness, *yukunzi* (7).
- person, *ninini* (4).
- student, *mudridzi* (1).
- study, - *dsidza*.
- stuff (baggage, &c.), *numbi* (4 pl.).
- for clothes, *muckeka* (2).
- v. (with food), - *paka* ; - *pakisa* ;
- *kika* ; - *kwiika*.
- (- press down), - *ndinyira* ; - *ndo-
nyera* ; - *pfonyera* ; - *tsokera* ;
- *soka* (- *sokera*).
- be —ed (closed), - *dzivirgwa*.
- stumble, v.i., - *dzeredzedeka* ; - *gu-
huna* ; - *kuhunwa* ; - *tsatsariika*.
- be made to —, - *gumburgwa* ;
- *pinganidziwa*.
- cause to —, - *gumbusa*.
- stumbling-block, *chigumburo* (3) ;
gumburo (5).
- stump (of tree), *chitsika* (3) ; *chigutsa*
(3) ; *chitsa* (3).
- where branch has been cut off,
rutemga (6).
- of arm or leg, *chipimino* (3).
- s of grass after fire, *matsofsi* (5
pl.) ; *gitsinzinzi* (5 pl.).
- dry —, *isa* (5).
- stunned, - *be*, - *ti muli* ; - *ti ziyi* !

stupid, - be, - *ye benzi*; - *sa chenjera*;
- *sa ngwara*; - *ya no musoro wa ka woma*; - *ya no musoro u ne mvura*; - *ya no musoro mukukutu*.
— person, *benzi* (5); *dununu* (5).
stupidity, *vupenzi* (7); *yutununu* (7).
sturdy, - be, see 'strong'.
- stutter, - *kakamira*. See 'stammer.'
sty, *danga re nguruye*.
stye, *shochera* (4); *showera* (4).
subject, *munu* (1); *mğana* (1).
— (one under authority), *muranda* (1); *gota* (5); *mupfuiwa* (1); *mulereneri* (1).
— v.t., - *tapa*.
- submit, - *tenda*; - *bvumira*.
— (- humble oneself), - *zi ninipisa*.
- subside (- become less), - *nyarara zidoko*; - *ya shoma*.
— (of swelling), - *pheya*.
— (of river), - *zerera*; - *pheya*.
substance (possessions), *fuma* (4); *numbi* (4).
— (matter), *chinu* (lit. a thing); *chiro* (3).
subtle, - be, - *nyengedzera*; - *nyengera na mano*.
- subtract, - *tapudza*; - *shumura*; - *bvisa*.
- succeed (- follow), - *teyera*.
— to an inheritance, - *gara naka*.
— (- be successful), - *bvidza*; - *kunda*; - *gona*.
success, *mukundo* (2).
—ful person, *mukundi* (1).
succession, *nyedzano* (4).
successively, *zi chi teyedzana*.
successor, *muteveri* (1); *u no teyera* (1).
such, - be, - *daro*; - *dero*; - *dai*.
— an one, *nyakuti* (1); *ngana* (1).
- suck, - *mga* (of young animals); - *nambuta* (- play at sucking).
— (a sweet, &c.), - *seta*; - *soza*; - *mununyira*.
— blood, - *rumika*.
— flowers (as bee), - *tota*.
- suckle, - *mğisa*.
- cause to be —d, - *mğisidzira*.
suddenly, *kamge*; *pakarepo*; also expressed by 'mba' before verb root.

- suffer (pain), - *rgwadziwa*; - *gokoya*.
— (- be troubled), - *tambudzika*.
- cause to —, - *rgwadza*.
sufficient, - be, - *ya ndizo*. See 'enough.'
- suffocate, - *dzipa*; - *bitirisa*; - *pñitisa*.
—ed, - be, - *dzipha*; - *bitirigwa*; - *pñitirigwa*.
sugar, *chogera* (*shugera*) (4) (for.).
sugar cane, *pha* (4).
kinds of —, *mukudo* (2); *nengo dza yasikana* (4); *zimutumbuka kwa sutsa* (5); *mupofu* (2); *musovi* (2); *sawura* (5); *garira hama* (4 pl.).
suicide, - commit, - *zi yuraya*; - *zi sungirira*.
- suit, - *enzana*; - *kwana*; - *ringana*.
— one another, - *kwadzana*.
—able, - be, - *nakira*; - *fanira*; - *nakirigwa na*; - *kodzera*.
sultor, *chikomba* (3).
sulkiness, *zidukurumga* (3 pl.); *zifidu* (3 pl.); *zifunu* (3 pl.).
sulky, - be, - *tsamga*; - *futa*; - *kuta*; - *fundumgara*; - *kwidimara*; - *kwi-ndimara*; - *kurudada*; - *kurudidika*.
sultry, - be, - *ya ne ziya*; - *ya ne diyutiyu*; - *tiyulira*.
sum (total), *bgerengedzo* (4); *yerengo* (4).
summer, *zhezha* (5); *masutsiro* (*rusutsiro*) (5 pl.) (when green food is eaten).
summit of rock on mountain, *nulikwa* (4); *nulika* (4).
— of tree or mountain, *yusasi* (7); *yusisa* (7); *yungaza* (7); *yungenya* (7).
sun, *zuya* (5).
—beam, *bğira-zuya* (7).
Sunday, *Sondo* (4) (for.); *Zuya ro Mudzimu* (i.e. the day of the Lord).
sunrise, *ku buda kwe zuya*; *ku duka kwe zuya*.
at —, *zuya ra buda*; - *zuya ra duka*; - *mafura mushana* (5 pl.); *mafura membge* (5 pl.).
sunset, *ku vira kwe zuya*; *ku doka*.

- sunset, at, *zuya ra yira*; *zuya ra doka*; *mafura memdže*.
 sunshine, *mushana* (2).
 -sup, -*rayira*.
 -superintend, -*tarira*; -*raira* (i.e. -command).
 superior, -be, -*kurira*; -*kunda*; -*pfuyura*.
 — n., *mukuru* (1).
 superstition, *nendedzero* (4).
 supper, *chirayiro* (3).
 supplication, -make, -*kumbira*; -*nyengetera*; -*namata*; -*rgwarira*.
 -supply (-give), -*pa*.
 -support, -*betsera*. See 'help'.
 — a sick person, -*nanaidza*; -*totoyesa*.
 — (-maintain), -*ponesa*; -*raramisa*; -*batisa*.
 — (-prop), -*tsigira* (*tsigidzira*); -*tayurira*.
 — (with lever), -*pikura*.
 — n., *chitayuriro* (3); *chitsigiro* (3).
 -suppose, -*funga*. See 'think'.
 supreme, -be, -*kunda*; -*kurira*; or -*pfuyura ose* with class prefix.
 sure, -be, -*ziya kwazo*; -*ziya zokwadi*.
 —ly, *zokwadi!* (*zokwadi!*); *ziro kwazo*.
 surety, *rubatso* (6).
 — take —, -*tora rubatso*.
 — stand —, -*mirira*; -*pa rubatso*.
 surety (truth), *zokwadi* (4); *zokwadi* (4); *ziro-kwazo* (3 pl.).
 surfeited, -be, -*zimbirgwa*; -*gutisa*.
 surname, *mutupo* (2); *dupo* (5).
 -surpass, -*pfuyura*; -*kurira*; -*kunda*; -*pinda*; -*viya*.
 surplus (what falls over when filling basket very full), *mupfungu* (2).
 -surprise, -*shamisa*; -*kanudza*; -*karihiamadza*; -*ldyisa nyena*.
 — take by —, -*ti tutururu*; -*ti sumbututu*; -*dumbunura*.
 —ed, -be, -*shama*; -*kanuka*; -*karihiamara*; -*ldya haika*.
 -surrender, -*zi pa*; -*zi isa*; -*zi susuwidza*; -*zi susukidza*.
 -surround, -*komba*; -*kombera*; -*komberedza*; -*poteredza*; -*cheketera*.
 -survive, -*sava*; -*rarama*; -*puya* (*poya*); -*pukunyuka*; -*punyumu*.
 susceptible, -be (to illness), -*ya na magonso*.
 -suspect, -*fungidzira*.
 -suspend, -*remberedza*. See 'hang'.
 — on nail or peg, -*korekedza*; -*pfakamisa*.
 —ed, -be, -*remberera*.
 -suspense, -be in, -*dakarira*; -*pihanya moyo*; (to be anxious), -*funganya*.
 -sustain (-give life), -*ponesa*; -*raramisa*.
 -swallow, -*minya*; -*midza*.
 — dry meal, -*bgira*.
 — without chewing (like whole maize), -*dunga* (*dungira*).
 — n. (bird), *nyenganyenga* (4).
 swamp, *deketa* (5); *dete* (5); *defe* (5).
 -swarm (-be abundant), -*wanda*; -*pupira*.
 — n., *boka* (5); *guruva* (5); *huruvu* (4).
 — of bees hanging together on tree, *buma* (5); *bundo* (5); *sumbo* (5).
 — of bees wandering, *nyuchi dza yazunga*.
 — of insects, *bupira* (5).
 -sway, v.i. (as of branches), -*denge-nyika*; -*zungunuka*.
 — from side to side, -*meya*.
 -swear, -*pika*; -*pikisa*.
 -sweat, -*budisa ziya*; -*ya ne ziya*.
 — n., *ziya* (5).
 -sweep, -*tsaira*; -*shangura*.
 — away everything, -*kukurudza*.
 — chaff from grain, -*woyawoya* (*wuyawuya*).
 sweet, -be, -*zipa*; -*naka*.
 sweetheart, *mudikanwa* (1); *mudiwa* (1).
 sweet potato, *bura* (5); *mbambaira* (4).
 (native —), *shezha* (4).
 —s of last year still in ground, *madididi* (5 pl.).
 -swell, -*zimba*.
 — out, -*futa*; -*kuta*; -*fufumuka*; -*fema*; -*futunyuka* (*futunuka*); -*putunuka*.
 — like river, -*fufuma*.]

swelling, *chizimbo* (3); *rutsinga* (6).
 — of gland, *m̄gambabvu* (2).
 swept away, - *be*, - *kukurgwa*; - *ku-mb̄ga*.
 swift, - *be*, - *chimbidzika*; - *kuru-mbidza*.
 - run swiftly (of animals), - *kwa-rama*; - *warama*; - *yangisa*; - *ya no mushoka* (or *chishoka*).
 — of river, - *tseduka*.
 - swim, - *shambira*; - *ita muchaira*; - *chaira*.
 — (beating with hands and feet), - *ita mubabangu*.
 swine, *ngurube* (4).
 - swing, - *ita mbizerere*; - *zeya*.

swing, n., *guwe* (5); *guwe mu dondo* (5); *dzuwe* (5); *demberere* (5); *dziro* (5).
 switch, *shamu* (4); *chishamu* (3).
 - swoon, - *bathwa ne dzungo*.
 — n., *dzungo* (5); *diba* (5).
 sword (assegai), *pfumo* (5).
 — (large knife), *munondo* (2).
 — (large), *manga* (4).
 - sympathise, - *wira yurombo*; - *wira ngoni*; - *wira sisi (nyasha)*; - *womera*. See 'console'.
 symptom, *mukumbudzi* (1).
 premonitory —, *mukuni* (2); *muchichi* (2).
 syphilis, *njoyera* (4) (for.).

T

table, *tafura* (4) (for.); *childziro* (3); *dara* (5).
 — cloth, *mucheka we tafura* (2).
 tack, *chimbambo chidoko* (3).
 — v., - *royera ne chimbambo*; - *yamba*.
 tackling of ship, *numbi* (4 pl.).
 tadpole, *buruuru* (5); *chibururgwi* (3).
 tail, *mgise* (2); *mushwe* (2).
 — of horse, *mvumba* (4).
 — of sheep, *beme* (5).
 — of bird or fish, *besu* (5).
 — of snake, *ruminda* (6); *rubinde* (6).
 point of —, *pfuna* (4).
 tailor, *mupfumi* (1).
 - take, - *toro*.
 — hold, - *batira*; - *batisa*.
 — (catch), - *bata*; - *hasura*; - *hatura*.
 — (accept), - *gamuchira*; - *gachira*.
 — from, - *torera*.
 — away, - *bvisa* (*bisa*); - *dusa*; - *gusa*.
 — away carelessly, - *vandanyura*.
 — out, - *budisa*; - *dusa*.
 — out something in the eye, - *tumbura*.
 — grain from granary, - *vazha*.
 — from quantity of meal, &c., - *nokora*.
 — birds or chickens out of nest, - *arusa*; - *apusa*.

- take out of trap, - *nyukura*.
 — out of water, - *nyurura*; - *nyura*; - *nyukura*; - *nyikura*.
 — out (as a thorn), - *tumbura*.
 — out (as potatoes), - *chera*; - *para-dza*.
 — off the fire, - *bura*.
 — off (as clothes), - *bvisa*; - *shangura*; - *kunungura*; - *kutunura*; - *pfekunura*; - *kuyunyura*; - *ku-mura*.
 — off (hat), - *drikunura*.
 — (- remove) something that sticks, - *namura*.
 — something out of tooth, - *takanura*; - *tokonora*.
 — off flesh, - *kudubura*; - *tatura*.
 — care of (- mind), - *rinda*; - *tarira*; - *lisa*; - *risa*.
 — care of (- save), - *chengeta*.
 — heed, - *terera*; - *pirimuka*.
 — up, - *nunga*; - *simudza*; - *murudza*.
 — up bed, - *warura*.
 — in a bundle, - *mbundanidza*.
 — away (make less), - *tapudza*; - *shumura*.
 — by force (- grasp), - *pamba*; - *pa-mbara*; - *bvuta*; - *wita*; - *wika*.
 — for debt owing, - *roya gakata*; *roya gando*; - *tema nyiyo*.
 — one's things when absent, - *shesha*.

- take out honey or eggs, - *bura*.
- out a little with finger, - *kodo-bora*.
- out with stick, - *nongora*.
- down, - *tura*; - *turura*; - *burusa*; - *pfososa*; - *dzakisa*.
- down from hanging position, - *koronora* (*goronora*).
- from what has been given to one, - *poza*.
- very little of 'yusayi', - *tolsa*.
- large share for oneself, - *pimirira*.
- too much, - *wanza ku tora*; - *titiyura*; - *banya*; - *ita mu banyuwa*; - *namira*.
- everything, - *kokorodza*; - *kukura*.
- the last, - *kwengwenedza*.
- leave, - *woneka* (*eneka*).
- care! ei! *hokoyo!* *mbonezoko!* *mbegoko!* *hezeko!* *mbonegeyo!* *tale*, *shumo* (4).
- (legend or folklore), *rungano* (6).
- tell —, *chera*.
- bearer, *chinyange* (3).
- talent, *ku chenjera* (8); *njere* (4); *nno* (4).
- talk, - *reya*; - *bgereketa*; - *tawura*; - *ita nawu*; - *nyepa*; - *nyeba*.
See 'speak.'
- to one another, - *kurukurirana*.
- sitting up at night, - *idzisa* (- *yedzisa*).
- over, - *rangana*; - *nyeperana*.
- nonsense, - *jakanya*; - *mğanduka*; - *reya-reya*; - *bvujumuka*; - *mğenguka*; - *mğeyanga* (*mğayanga*); - *reyanya*; - *votomoka* (*wotomoka*); - *sazanya*.
- loudly, - *reyesa*; - *vovoma*; - *bgereketesa*.
- excitedly in anger, - *popota*; - *popoma* (*fofoma*); - *pawumba*; - *bvujumuka*; - *poshongana*; - *nara*; - *vamira*.
- be —ative, - *nyanya ku bgereketa*; - *shoshoma*; - *shoshota*; - *shezha*; - *ya no rushanya*; - *rokota* (*popota*); - *kanya*; - *mbaya*; - *bğabğata* (*phaphata*); - *pupira*; - *zungura*; - *zuwa*; - *zuwira*; - *shuwa*.

- talk much in roundabout way, - *chenchya*; - *yendura*; - *yandulira*; - *chechenenedza*; - *minura*.
- more and more, - *dunira mashoko*.
- suddenly, - *tukunyuka*.
- talkative person, *bupira* (5).
- tall, - *be*, - *reba*.
- adj., 'refu' with class prefix.
- person, *durarazita* (5).
- tallow, *mafuta e nombe*; *manda* (4).
- tame, v.t., - *nyorovesa*; - *nyoroza*; - *pingudza*.
- adj., 'nyoro' with class prefix.
- tangled, - *be*, - *katana*; - *pfekana*; - *piyana*; - *pishana*; - *pishingana*.
- tap, - *guhudza*; - *gohodza*; - *gogodza*.
- slightly, - *dododza*; - *jowonya*.
- (touch gently), - *nonodza*.
- (of barrel), n., *muromo*.
- tarantula, *dzatsatša* (5).
- tares, *mashawi* (5 pl.).
- target, *chifushero* (3); *chifuro* (3).
- tarnish, - *sibisa*; - *pfuruyara*.
- task, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5); *great* —, *mabolyo* (5 pl.); *mikowa* (2 pl.); *mushininga* (2).
- tassel, *chinda* (4); *nyezu* (5).
- taste, - *rayira*; - *nzğwa*; - *domera*.
- n. (a very little), *chomurayira* (3).
- nice, v.i., - *zipa*; - *tapira*.
- bitter or bad, - *yaya*; - *shirikida*.
- have had — in mouth for want of salt, - *pupira*.
- tatter, - *bvaruranya*; - *renduranya*; - *paruranya*.
- tattered, - *be*, - *bvarukanya*; - *rendukanya*; - *dvungunyika*.
- tatters, n., *mabvenganya* (5 pl.); *mabvemve* (5 pl.) (*mabveveve*); *yurenganya* (7) (*marenganya* (5 pl.)); *marukuso* (5 pl.).
- tattoo, - *nyora*; - *temera*; - *temenyora*.
- marks in face, *nyora* (4); *mayora* (5 pl.); *nuruliru* (4); *masurulira* (5 pl.).
- on waist, *makande* (5 pl.).

- tax, - *teresa*; - *ruyisa*.
- pay —, - *tera*; - *ruya*.
- n., *mutero* (2); *chiruyo* (3).
- tax-collector, *muterisi* (1); *muruyisi* (1).
- teach, - *dzidzisa*.
- teacher, *muudzisi* (1); *mufundisi* (1) (for.).
- tear, - *bvarura*; - *parura*; - *tse-renga* (- *cherenga*).
- (- scratch off), - *bvambura*; - *pfa-zura*.
- in pieces, - *bvaruranya*; - *paruranya*; - *renduranya*.
- off (as rope from trees), - *suyura*.
- off (as dry bark), - *kwatura*.
- easily, - *bvumbuka*.
- tear-drop, *musodzi* (2).
- tears, - shed, - *chema misodzi*.
- tease, - *netsa*; - *tambudza*; - *nyangadza*; - *zumbuza*.
- (- worry), - *ita dina*; - *duna* (i.e. excite to anger), - *guna*; - *pasa*; - *sosa*.
- (- be troublesome, as flies or mosquitoes), - *nipinira*.
- teat, *munyato* (2); (nipple), *shungu* (4).
- tedious, - be (slow), - *nonoka*.
- (tiresome), - *netsa*; - *nyangadza*.
- teem (- be abundant), - *wandisa*; - *pfuma*.
- teethe, - *merameno*; - *tenga*; - *balika*; - *chechenya*.
- (- begin to —), *bara meno*.
- telegram, *wairi* (4) (for.).
- tell, - *yudza*; - *zivisa*; - *nyepera*; - *tawurira*; - *paridza* (*paridzira*).
- (- command), - *yudza*; - *raira*.
- a secret, - *nyeyura*; - *ponyorora*.
- everything minutely, - *sesemedza*; - *pesera*; - *zuwira*.
- one that he has been called, - *singudzira*.
- tales, - *ita makuwa*; - *yudzisira*; - *yusidzira*.
- tale, n., *u na makuwa* (1); *mu-yudzisiri* (1).
- temper, *hasha* (4 pl.); *zivinyu* (3 pl.); *zivinyivinyi* (3 pl.); *rushanya* (*rusanya*) (6).
- be bad —ed, - *ya ne hasha*; - *ya ne zivinyu*.
- be good tempered, - *ya munyoro*.

- temple, *tempere* (4) (for.).
- of head, *chayoyo* (3).
- temporal things, *ze nyika*.
- temporary thing, *chigu* (3).
- tempt, - *idza*; - *kusha*.
- (- coax), - *nyengetedza*.
- (- trap), - *teya*.
- temptation, *ruidzo* (6); *muidzo* (2).
- tempter, *muidzi* (1); *munyengeri* (1).
- ten, *gumi* (5).
- tender, adj., *nyoro*; *tete* with class prefix.
- tendon, *runda* (5).
- large — of leg, *hanu* (4).
- tendrill, *rutsinga* (6).
- tent, *imba yo mucheka* (4); *tente* (5) (for.).
- tenth, n. *chigumi* (3); — adj. num., *che gumi*.
- term (- name), - *idza*; - *tuma*; - *tumidza*; - *dana*; - *ita*.
- n., *zita* (5).
- (time), *nambo* (4).
- be on good —s, - *fambidzana*; - *shamgaridzana*; - *kwadzana*; - *shanyirana*; - *indidzana*.
- be on bad —s, - *tsamgarana*.
- be —ed, - *danwa*; - *itihwa*; - *nzi*; - *yi*; - (*nzgwi*).
- terminate, v.t., - *pedza*; - *gumisa*; - *phisa*.
- v.i., - *pera*; - *guma*; - *pha*.
- terrible, - be (- terrify), - *thisa*; - *karudza*; - *vundusa*.
- territory, *nyika* (4).
- terror, *ku thisa* (8); *chithio* (3); *thiso* (4 pl.); *vunduko* (4); *karuko* (4).
- (that which terrifies), *chithiso* (3); *chivunduso* (3); *chikarudzo* (3).
- testament, *testamente* (4) (for.).
- old —, *testamente ye kare*.
- new —, *testamente isa*.
- testify, - *reya*; - *pupura*; - *bvira*.
- testimony, *shoko* (5); *vupupuro* (7); *yuchapupu* (7).
- text, *ndima ye Shoko ro Mudzimu* (i.e. division of God's Word).
- than, 'pa' and 'ku' before com. nouns; 'pana' and 'kuna' before proper nouns, adjectives, and pronouns. See Lesson XVIII.

- **thank**, - *tenda*; - *yonga* (*yongisa*).
thankful, - *be*, - *ya no ku tenda*;
 - *ya ne nendo*.
thanks! interj., *ta tenda! ta yonga!*
wa zi ita hako! hekani! hekani
waro! hekani ze!
that, demonstr. pron., *uyo*; *uwo*;
icho, &c., according to class. See
 Lesson XXIII.
 — rel. pron. *wa*; *wa*; *cha*, &c. See
 Lesson XXXIV.
 — conj., 'kuti' or unexpressed. See
 Lesson XXV.
 — **is so!** *hekani! hezo! hezoka!*
 — **is** (namely), *ndo kuti*.
-thatch, - *pfurira*; - *pfurira*; - *pfirira*.
 — (- tie the grass on roof), - *pamba*.
 — n., *yu(s)hwa* (7) (i.e. grass).
thee, pron., 'ku' before verb root,
 e.g. I see thee, *ndi no ku yona*.
theft, *ku ba* (8); *yumbava* (7).
their, poss. pron., 'yo' (*yo*, *zo*, *dzo*,
 &c.) with gen. particle of govern.
 noun, e.g. *wayo*, *yayo*, *yayo*, &c.
 See Lesson VIII.
them, pers. pron., *ya* ('i, *zi*, *dzi*, &c.)
 before verb root, e.g. I see
 them, *ndi no ya yona*. See
 Lesson XX.
 — (emphatic pron.), *oyo* following
 verb.
—selves, dem. pron., *ya mene*, e.g.
 they came themselves, *ya ka*
yuya ya mene.
 — reflexive pron., *zi* before verb
 root, e.g. they stint themselves,
ya no zi nyima.
then, adv., *ipopo*; *ndipopo*; *ndi-*
papo.
 — (in that day), *ne zuya irero*; *no*
musi iwowo.
 — (at that time), *na mazuya iwawo*;
ne misi iyeyo.
thence, adv., *ku bva ipapo*.
there, adv., *apa*; *apo*; *ipapo*;
paya; *uko*; *ikoko*; *kuya*;
koko.
 over there, *ikweyo*; *ikoko*; *ipapo*.
there! *hezo!*
therefore, *saka*; *ndo za*.
 — in, *umo*; *imomo*.

- thereon**, *apo*; *ipapo*.
 — upon, *ndipapo*; *ndipopo*.
thermometer, *cho ku idza ziya*;
chiringiriro (3) (i.e. a thing to
 look at often).
these, *aga*; *oyo*; *izi*; *idzi*, &c.,
 according to class. See Lesson
 XXIII.
they, pers. pron., *ya*; *i*; *zi*; *dzi*,
 &c., according to class. See
 Lesson XX.
 — emphatic pron., *oyo*; *oyo*; *izo*;
idzo, &c. See Lesson XX.
thick, *pami*; *kobvu* with class pre-
 fix.
 — en, v.t., - *kodza*; - *ita gobvu*;
 - *gwamba*; - *mandana*.
 — v.i., - *kora*.
 — (of milk), - *fa*.
thickest, *denere* (5); *chinanga* (3).
 very close —, *bvokocho* (5); *jokoto*
 (5) (*chokoto* (3)).
thickly, adv., *zi chi batana*. See
 'densely'.
thief, *mubi* (1); *mbava* (4); *gororo*
 (5); *gwenga* (5).
thigh, *chitumbi* (3).
thin, adj., 'tete' with class prefix.
 — *be* —, - *telepa*; - *sakamara*.
 — *be* — and worn, - *sakara*.
 — (emaciated), - *wonda*; - *wondo-*
roka; - *tarazuka*; - *ndarazuka*;
 - *sepa*; - *ngwarangwanduka*.
 — v.t. (- make —ner), - *tembunura*.
thine, poss. pron., 'ku' preceded
 by gen. part. of governing
 noun.
thing, *chinu* (3); *chiru* (3).
 — (instrument), *numbi* (4).
 — (vessel), *mudziyo* (2).
 — **think**, - *funga*; - *rangarira*; - *kara-*
kanwa.
 — (- presume), - *ti* (i.e. to say);
 - *fungidzira*.
thinly, - place —, - *taranza*.
 — sow —, - *donora*.
thinness, *netepo* (4); — (leanness),
yuwondi (7).
third, *tatu* (or *chitatu*), preceded
 by gen. part. of governing
 noun.
 — **time**, *vgwe tatu*.

thirst, *nyota* (4).

- be —y, - *nsŋwa nyota*; - *fa ne nyota*; - *womergwa*.

thirteen, *gumi ne natu* (or *yatatu, mitatu*, &c.), according to class.

thirty, *makumi matatu*.

this, *uyu*; *uwu*; *ichi*; *iyi*, &c., according to class. See Lesson XXIII.

— side, *ne'no*; *no yuno*; *pa diyi ro yuno*; *ne cho yuno*.

thistle, *rutumbambeya* (6) (*mutumbambeya* (2)); *rukato* (6).

thither, adv., *uko*; *ihoko*; *ikweyo*; *iyeyo*.

thorn, *munzŋwa* (2) (*muwa* (2)); large flat —, *soso* (5).

those, *ayo*; *iyu*; *izo*; *idzo*, &c., according to class. See Lesson XXIII.

thou, rep. pron., 'u' with present tense; 'wa' with past and perfect tenses; *iwe* (pl. *imŋi*).

though, *nyangwe*; *nyanguyo*; *ku-nyanguya*; *nyanguya*.

thought, *mufungo* (2); *murangariro* (2).

thousand, *churu cha mazana*; *mazana a ne gumi*; *gumi ra mazana*.

- thrash, - *pura*; - *takasha*.

— a second time, - *hotorodza*.

— beans, - *chokota* (*tsokota*).

— (- whip), - *roya*; - *pura*; - *dze-mura*. See 'beat.'

thread, *chinda* (3); *harani* (4) (for.).

— in weaving, *muruko* (2).

— in vegetables, *dzira* (5).

— v., a needle or beads, - *tungira* (*tunga*).

- threaten, - *thithidzira*; - *wuwudzira*.

See 'frighten.'

— (- frighten in play), - *kasira*.

three, *natu* (in counting); adj., 'tatu' preceded by class prefix.

— penny piece, *tiki* (4) (for.).

— score, *makumi matanatu*.

- thresh, see 'thrash.'

threshing floor, *buliro* (5).

— stick, *mupuro* (2).

threshold, *chikumbaridzo* (3); *chidimbali* (3); *chiziyo* (3).

thrice, *rutatu*; *katafu*.

- thrive (- grow well), - *kura*; - *mera kwazo*; - *hataira*.

— (- prosper), - *fara*; - *indika*.

throat, *huro* (4).

— (alimentary canal), *hurgwana* (4).

— (voice box), *duriro* (5); *guro-kuro* (5).

- throb (of heart), - *pfura*.

— (of sore), - *wita*; - *vaira*; - *ti-bgitika*; - *yukura*; - *shapaira*.

— (of head), - *panda* (*banda*); - *temŋa*; - *yanga*.

throne, *chigaro cha she* (i.e. the chair of the chief).

- throng, - *tsikirirana*. 'See crowd.'

— n., *yuzhinji* (7); *yuwandi* (7).

- throttle, - *dzipa*; - *dzinya*. See 'strangle.'

through, - *go*, - *gura na pakati*; - *pindirira*; - *burikidza*; - *pinda*; - *buda ne seri*.

- throw, - *kanda*; - *posha*.

— to or at, - *handira*; - *poshera*.

— down, - *handira pasi*; - *jikitisa*; - *jata*; - *phatsira pasi*.

— (- fell), - *rigira pasi*; - *rigura pasi*.

— away, - *rasha*; - *durura*.

— about, - *paradza*; - *bvonyangura*; - *bvonyongedza*; - *bvonyongora*.

— water over one, - *kupira*.

— out (as of water), - *durura*; - *teyura*.

— back the head, - *deduka*.

— off (- drain), - *pungura*; - *mimina*.

— off skin (as snake), - *guyura*; - *guyura*.

— dice, - *kandira hakata*; - *yuka hakata*.

— stones at, - *taka*; - *poshera*.

- thrust (- pierce), - *baya*.

— (- make a hole), - *yurura*; - *bvuyora*.

— into (as of stick), - *gofa*; - *nyofa*; - *tuyuta*.

— away, - *sundidzira*; - *tesunya*; - *nyakura* (*nyakurira*); - *sukumidza*; - *takunya*; - *sairira*.

thumb, *gunwe* (5).

- thunder, - *tinira*.

— far away, - *ndingindira*; - *nduruma*.

it thunders (*mvura*) i no *tinira*.

Thursday, Chinna (*che Sondo*); *re chinna*.

thus, adv., *sa izogo; ku dero; ku daro; ku dai*.

thy, poss. pron., 'ho' preceded by gen. part. of govern. noun.

tick (small), *chishambge* (3).

— (large), *nata* (4); *gupa* (5); *furambga* (5).

poisonous —, *honondo* (4); *humba* (4).

—v. (as of watch), - *pfura*; - *dodo-dzera*.

- *tickle*, - *sekenyedza*; - *tekenyedza*.

tidings, *shoko* (5); *dama* (5); *guhhu* (5); *mashoko* (5 pl.); *matama* (5 pl.).

- *tie*, - *sunga*.

— a child on back, - *timura*.

— in a knot, - *funda*.

— up, - *sunga*; - *sungirira*.

— bundles of grass in thatching, - *pamba*.

— together, - *sunganidza*; - *sunga-nya*; - *batanidza*.

— up with string, - *sungata*.

— very tightly, - *sungisa*; - *biyinga*; - *shipila*.

something with which to tie, *musungo* (2); *chisungo* (3).

tiger, *ngwe* (4); *rumbada* (6).

large —, *dindingwe* (5).

— *cat*, *gora* (5); *dyanga* (4); *nzunza* (5).

tight, - *be*, - *bata*; - *simba*.

— (of wire or rope), - *gunga*; - *ti ngwiri*.

— (of clothes), - *shinya*; - *dzinya*; - *mbandika*; - *manika*.

tile (brick), *chidina* (3) (for.).

— till, - *rima*. See 'cultivate.'

—, prep., *ku shika*; *ku shira*.

— tilt, - *pinyuka*; - *pinyinguka*.

timber, *matanda o ku yakisa*.

piece of —, *mutanda* (2).

timbrel, *mbira* (4).

time, *nguya* (4); *chinambo* (3); *nambo* (4); *musi* (2); *nguli* (4).

—s (two, three, four, &c.), 'ru' or 'ka' with number, e.g. *rugiri*; *rutatu*; *runna*, &c.

timid, - *be*, - *teta*; - *thia*; - *va ne chimopo* or *rumopo*; - *va ne ruzaru*.

tin, *dare* (5).

large —, *gandi* (5).

small —, *gaba* (5); *nyere* (4).

tinder, *gondo* (5).

— (plant), *chichinda pasi* (3).

— tingle (of ear), - *wunga*; - *virira*;

— (- smart), - *vaya*; - *shosha*; - *che-cheta*; - *shirishita*.

— *tinkle*, - *rira*; - *ngwerengwedza*.

tiny, adj., *doko-doko*, with class prefix.

- *be* —, - *dokopa*; - *ninipa*.

— *tip* (- alant), - *rerekera*.

— n. (point), *muromo* (2).

(sharp —), *vunzi* (7).

tipsy, - *be*, - *bathwa ne doro*.

tiptoe, - *stand on*, - *sasayira*.

— *walk on* —, - *nyabgaira*.

— *tire*, v.t., - *nyadza*; - *netsa*.

— v.i., - *nyara*; - *neta*.

— n. (— of wheel), *chisungo* (3); *bandi* (5) (for.).

— *d*, - *be*, - *nyara*; - *neta*.

— *be very* —, - *ngo ti nete!* - *ngo ti gokoto!* (*zhokoto*); - *ti buukuchu*.

— of food, - *dina*.

tithe, *che gumi* (3).

title, *xita* (5).

— of endearment, *mukorole* (1).

— (surname), *mutupo* (2).

— (of respect, in greeting), *sakuwana* (1).

tittle, *chidoko-doko* (3); *shanga* (4) (i.e. dot).

to, prep., 'ku,' 'pa,' before com. nouns; 'kuna,' 'pana,' and 'kwa,' before proper nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

toad, *dacha* (5). See 'frog.'

— *toast*, - *gocha*; - *sasiha* (at distance from fire).

tobacco, *foldya* (4).

ground —, *rumbanda* (6).

lump of —, *chambga* (3).

roll of —, *muputa* (2).

little —, *chigunwe* (3).

to-day, adv., *nasi*; *iko nasi*.

— *toddle*, - *nanaira*; - *ti na, na, na*.

toe, *gunwe* (5).

together (at same time), *hamge*.
 — (at same place), *panu pamge*.
 - gather —, - *yunganidza*; - *tutira*.
 See 'gather.'
 token, *chiraidzo* (3); *naridzo* (4);
taridzo (4); *ratidzo* (4).
 tolerable, - *be*, - *goneka*; - *bvidziha*;
 - *bvika*; - *sengeka*.
 tomato, *guzungu* (5).
 tomb, *bgiro* (7); *chibvumba* (3);
guya (5).
 to-morrow, *mangwana* (5 pl.); *mu-*
ngwani (2); *mumuka* (2).
 day after —, *mangwana uluya*;
mungwani uluya.
 tonga, *chibato* (3); *chimbandiho* (3);
chimano (3).
 tongue, *rulimi* (6).
 string of —, *rulimbo* (6).
 - *be* — tied, - *ya ne chirimi*.
 to-night, *yusiku yuno* (7).
 too, adv., *yo*; *ze*; *na* followed by
 emphatic pronoun; adv. of
 degree expressed by the pos.
 or intens. form of adj.
 tool, *numbi yo ku bata*; *chibatso*
 (3).
 tooth, *sino* (5) (pl. *meno*); — (molar),
dzeyo (5); eye —, *ruma-hava*
 (5).
 - have toothache, - *nzgwa rushaya*;
 - *nzgwa zino*.
 top, *musoro* (2).
 on — of, *pa msoro pa*.
 — of a hut, *chiruyo* (3); (inside),
chikasa (3).
 flat — of granary, *gwidzi* (5).
 — one of a pile of articles, *nuriki-*
dzgwa (4).
 - *be on* — of each other, - *dulikana*;
 - *yirikana*.
 topic of conversation, *dingindira*
 (5).
 torch, *chiveneko* (3); *chivenekhero* (3);
muveneko (2); *zhenje* (5);
 — (candle), *mgenje* (2).
 - torment, - *tambudza*; - *netso*; - *nya-*
ngadza.
 — n., *dambudzo* (4); *netso* (4);
nyangadzo (4).
 tormentor, *mutambudzi* (1); *munetsi*
 (1); *munyangadzi* (1).

torn, - *be*, - *bvaruka*.
 torrent (river), *rgwizi* (6).
 — (rain), *bupurudzi* (5).
 tortoise, *kamba* (4); *chikamba* (3).
 - torture, - *rgwadzisa*. See 'tor-
 ment.'
 — n., *ku rgwadzisiwa kukuru* (8).
 - *toss*, - *kanda*; - *posha*.
 total, *bgerengedzo* (4).
 — adj., 'ose' preceded by gen. part.
 of governing noun.
 totally, *chose*.
 - totter, - *pepereka*; - *dengenyika*.
 See 'stagger.'
 - touch, - *bata gidoko*; - *nyangata*;
 - *bata-bata*; - *nonodza*.
 — (- feel), - *yambama*; - *toisa*.
 — (- brush against), - *gunza*.
 — (- be next to), - *batana na*;
 - *batanidzgwa na*.
 — one another, - *pfekana*.
 — in order to draw attention, - *tsara*;
 - *tsarira*.
 tough, 'kukutu' with class ⁵ pre-
 fix.
 —ness, *yukukutu* (7).
 toward, *ku*; *pa*; *kuna*; *pana*.
 See 'to.'
 towel, *mucheka wo ku pukusa*.
 tower, *shongwe* (4).
 town, *musha* (2).
 large —, *jarati* (5); *guta* (5);
nzanga (4).
 very large —, *nzetete* (4).
 — (capital), *muzinda* (2).
 toy, *cho ku tamba* (3).
 — of grass with pebbles inside,
yundoma (7); *yundoma yuriri*
 (7).
 - trace, - *ronda*; - *rondedza*.
 — n. (vestige), *chomurapira* (3);
rusiyisiyi (6).
 — (foot-mark), *gumbo* (5); *shoka*
 (4).
 — of water, *musiridzi* (2).
 - trade, - *shambadzira*; - *ambadza*.
 — n. (work), *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
 trader, *mutengesi* (1); *mushambadzi*
 (1).
 tradition, *shumo ya vakuru* (4);
mutoyo wa mabambo (2); *tsika*
dza mabambo (4 pl.).

trail (as of snake or prey dragged along), *muveza* (2); *mgezha* (2); *muwezgwa* (2); *mgezha* (2); *mukukuwundo* (2).
 — (foot-path), *zhira* (4); *gwara* (5).
 — (through grass), *rushwayira* (6).
 — v.t. (- drag), - *kweya*; - *kakata*; - *kwekweredza*.
 - train an animal, - *nyorovesa*; - *pingudza*.
 — a child, - *dzidzisa*; - *raira*; - *ranga*.
 — n. (single file), *mudungwe* (2).
 — (railway), *chitimira* (3) (for.); *njini* (4) (for.).
 traitor, *mupanduki* (1).
 - turn —, - *panduka*; - *pandukira*.
 - tramp, - *fambafamba*; - *dzungaira*.
 — n., *mufambi* (1); *mudzungi* (1); *mudzungairi* (1); *mudzingairi* (1).
 - trample, - *tsika*; - *tsikira*; - *phanya*; - *nyowa* (of cattle).
 tranquil, - be (- be peaceful), - *gadzikhana*; - (- be quiet), - *nana*; - *nyaraya*.
 tranquillity, *gadzikhano* (4).
 - transfer, see 'shift.'
 - transgress, - *dalika*; - *chinya*; - *tadza*; - *paremaka*.
 transgression, *daliko* (4); *chiri* (3); *rutadzo* (6); *maka* (4).
 transgressor, *mudaliki* (1); *muchinyi* (1); *mutadzi* (1).
 - translate, - *shandura* *rulimi* (or *mashoko*).
 translation, *shanduro* (4); *shandurwego* (4).
 translator, *mushanduri* (1).
 transparent, - be, - *njenjemera*.
 - transport, - *senga*.
 — (in bondage), - *tapa*.
 - trap, - *teya*; - *bata*. See 'snare.'
 — n. (sticks for holding up trap for game), *ruma* (4).
 - set a trap (net), - *komba mambule*; - *dzikira*.
 trapping place (of birds), *yudziko* (7) (*yudzikiro*).
 - travel, - *famba rgwendo*.
 — (- go on a long journey), - *papa*; - *timaira*; - *timba pasi*.

traveller, *mufambi* (1).
 treacherous, - be, - *nyengera*. See 'deceive.'
 treachery, *nyengero* (4).
 - tread, - *tsika*.
 — upon, - *tsikira*; - *pfudza*.
 — with a loud step, - *dikidza* (*digidza*).
 — down, - *tsikira*; - *ndiya*.
 — on one another, - *tsikirirana*; - *pojongana*.
 treasure, *chifumiso* (3); *fuma* (4).
 - treat well, - *naisa*; - *naisidzira*.
 — badly, - *nyangadza*; - *tambudza*; - *vumukira*.
 treaty, *yukama* (7); *sungano* (4).
 tree, *muti* (2).
 bare trees with branches lopped off, *rutemga* (6).
 - tremble, - *kuta*; - *dedera*; - *tetemera*; - *bvunda*; - *ngwenda*; - *dengenda*. See 'shake.'
 tremendous, - be, - *kura zikuru*; - *ya ziguru-guru* (very big thing).
 trench, *goronga* (5).
 - trespass, - *dalika*. See 'transgress.'
 trial, - make a, - *idza*.
 — n. (attempt), *idzo* (4).
 — of a case, *ku tambga kwe maka*. See 'affliction.'
 tribe, *rudzi* (6) (pl. *marudzi* or *ndudzi*); *vanu* (i.e. people).
 tribulation, *namo* (4); *nyathwa* (4). See 'affliction.'
 tribute, *mutero* (2); *chiruyo* (3).
 - pay —, - *teya*; - *ruya*; - *shuma*.
 - trick, - *teya*; - *bata*.
 — n., *zano ro ku nyengera*; *madayo* (5 pl.).
 - play —, - *ita mushazhe*; - *ita musero*; - *angarara*; - *shazhira*.
 - trickle, - *dona*.
 - trifle, - *tamba*; - *bata-bata*.
 — n., *chidoko* (3); *gishomaneni* (3 pl.).
 trigger, *rukungiso* (6); *chikoyono* (3).
 - trim, - *gadzira*; - *shongedza*; - *natira*.
 — ming (adornment), *gishongo* (3 pl.).
 trip, *rgwendo* (6).
 — v.i. (- stumble), - *pinganidzwa*; - *gumbura*; - *tsatsarika*.

- triumph, - *kunda*; - *kurira*.
- (- rejoice), - *fara zikhuru*; - *farisa*.
- n., *ku kunda* (8), &c.
- troop (together), - *yungana*.
- n., of cattle, *boka* (5); *danga* (5); *musasa* (2).
- (multitude), *yuzhinji* (7); *yuwandi* (7).
- (an army), *pfumo* (5).
- s (soldiers), *yargwi* (1 pl.).
- trot, - *pipitika*; - *papatika*.
- (of dog), - *nyanyata*; - *nzenzeta*; - *pfepfedza*; - *dzedzeta*.
- trouble, - *netsa*; - *tambudza*; - *nyangadza*; - *zumbuza*; - *anga*; - *nanga*; - *birisha*; - *duya*; - *foya*; - *ita runainai*; - *foyera*. See 'annoy.'
- (- nag), - *ya no ruduyo*; - *ya no rufoyo*; - *shusha*.
- bring another into —, - *parira* (or *shayira*) *maka*.
- have —, - *tambura*; - *tambudzika*.
- take —, - *zi netsa*; - *zi tambudza*; - *rgwa*; - *zi rgwadza moyo*.
- be —ed by conscience, - *robga ne hana*.
- be —ed by evil spirit, - *pfukira*.
- be —some (as flies), - *ninirira*. something that brings into —, *rubvibvito* (6).
- n., *netso* (4); *dambudzo* (5); *namo* (4). See 'affliction.'
- trousers, *buruku* (5) (for.).
- true, *zokwadi*, preceded by gen. part. of governing noun.
- truly! *zokwadi!* *ziro kwazo!* See 'indeed.'
- trumpet (war horn), *wamanda* (4); *wama* (4); *mbatata* (4).
- small — (of wood), *mupanza* (2); *manza* (4).
- (small musical instrument), *nyere* (4); *munanzi* (2).
- blow a —, - *ridza*.
- trunk of a tree, *hunde* (4).
- of an elephant, *ruyoko rgwe zhou* (6); *musinga* (2); *muleyo* (2).
- (box), *bokisi* (5) (for.).
- trust, - *tenda*; - *buvumira*.
- be —ed, - *tendika*; - *tendiwa* (*tendewa*).

- truth, *zokwadi* (4); *mazokwadi* (5 pl.); *ziro kwazo* (3 pl.).
- in —, *sa zokwadi*; *ziro kwazo!*
- try, - *idza*; - *dzadzambidza*; - *dandariidza*; - *tsaya-tsaya*.
- a case, - *tamba maka*; - *tonga*.
- tuok, - *peta*; - *petekedza*.
- Tuesday, *Chipiri* (*che Sondo*); *re piri* (5); *re chipiri* (5).
- tuft, *bumu* (5).
- very small — of hair, *ruzumu* (6).
- tug, - *kweya ne simba*; - *kakata ne simba*.
- tumble, - *wira pasi*; - *wa*.
- tumour, *bundu* (5); *ruisinga* (6).
- tumult (great noise), *bopoto guru* (5); *ruzha rukuru* (6); (a confused crowd), *manyongoli* (5 pl.).
- tune, *muimbirigwe* (2).
- turbid, - *be*, - *ya na mabvongwe*; - *venduka*.
- turbulent, - *be*, - *sa zorora*; - *viri-ruka*.
- turkey (wild), *dendera* (5).
- turn (round), - *tendeyuka*.
- v.t., - *furatidza*; - *tendeyudza*.
- one's back, - *furatira*.
- the head, - *cheyuka*.
- back, - *dzoka*; - *dzokera*.
- over (capsize), - *chanjamara*; - *njakuka*; - *pidiguka* (*pidigaka*).
- something on its back, - *shandukura*; - *shanyamisa*.
- (- be transformed), - *shanduka*; - *pinduka*.
- (- change), - *shandura*; - *pindura*.
- upside down (of hollow vessel), - *tsindikira*; - *tibikira*.
- upside down (of pole), - *shunamisa*; - *shandura*; - *shunika*.
- inside out, - *shandukura*; - *funyungura*; - *pindura*; - *fundunura*.
- aside, - *tseduka*.
- out of road, - *isawuka*.
- (- revolve), - *dzunguruka*; - *tendera* (*tenderera*); - *tenderedza*.
- v.t., - *munyuruka*.
- pages, - *babanura*; - *pasanura*.
- back, v.t., - *dzora*; - *dzosa*; - *dzo-hisa*; - *dzosera*.

- turn towards, - *linza*.
- away in scorn, - *purudada*; - *kurudada*.
- as in a circle, - *monoreka*; - *potereka*; - *tendereka*.
- ripe, - *shanyuka*; - *soša*.
- n., *dzoro* (5).
- take turns, - *rayana*.
- turtle, *chikamba-makwande* (3).
- tusk of elephant, *runyanga rgwe zhou* (6).
- twelve, *gumi ne mbiri* (in counting).
- adj., *gumi na piri* (with class prefix).
- twenty, *makumi mayiri*.
- twice, *ruyiri*; *kayiri*.
- twig, *runazi* (6); *rutazi* (6); *runayi* (6).
- s (thin wood for starting a fire), *yusoso* (7).

- twilight, *ruvunza-yaeni* (6); *rufuramembge* (6); *rukungulima* (6).
- twine, *rugonzi* (6); *chinda* (3).
- v.t. (- twist), - *ruka*; - *poshonga*; - *kosha*.
- about, - *monereka*; - *pombera*.
- v.i., - *monera*; - *pombera*; - *tandira*.
- twinkle, - *bgiibginya*. See 'gleam.'
- twins, *mayiri* (5 pl.); *madulika* (5 pl.); *mazana* (5 pl.); *mapariha* (5 pl.) (for.).
- twist (of string), - *ruka*, &c. See 'twine.'
- (of wire), - *singa*.
- two (in counting), *piri*.
- adj. num., *piri* with plur. class prefix; *mbiri* (4).
- twofold, *meto mbiri*; *mande mbiri*.

U

- udder, *zamu* (5).
- ugliness, *quipi* (7); *yushati* (7).
- ugly, - be, - *ipa*; - *shata*.
- ulcer, *mota* (5); *ronda* (5).
- ulcerate, - *ita yurgwa*.
- umbrella, *chambreni* (3) (for.); *rumumvuli* (6); *rutenga* (6).
- unable, - be, - *kona*; - *koniwa*; - *sa gona*; - *sa bvidza*.
- unanimous, - be, - *ya no moyo mumge*; - *ya ne ndanga imge*.
- unawares, adv., *no ku sa ziya*.
- unbelief, *ku sa tenda* (8).
- unbeliever, *u si nga tendi* (1).
- unbewitch, - *rovonora*.
- unbind, - *sunungura*.
- unburden, - *remudza*; - *yamudza*.
- unceasingly, adv., *no ku si nga peri*; *no ku si nga gumi*; *no ku sa pera*; *no ku sa guma*.
- unclasp hands, v.t., - *takanura*.
- uncle (maternal), *sekuru* (1).
- younger than oneself, *sekurgwana* (1).
- paternal — (younger than father), *babamunini* (1); — (older than father), *babamukuru* (1).
- unclean, - be, - *ya ne šina*; - *šiba*.

- uncolthe, - *shangura*; - *pfekenura*; - *fukunura*; - *kutunura*.
- unclouded, - be, - *sa ya na makole*; - *ti njoso*; - *ti nyungu*; - *ti weru*.
- uncock, - *dziyura*.
- (a gun), - *dzora*; - *gombedza*.
- uncoil, - *pombonora*; - *munyurura*.
- unconscious, - be, - *sa ziya gose*.
- uncooked, adj., 'mbishi' with class prefix. See 'underdone.'
- uncork, - *dziyura*.
- uncover, - *funura*; - *zarura*; - *fudugura*. See 'open.'
- undecided, - be, - *nyunyuta*; - *dzeta-dzeta* (i.e. - work undecidedly); - *dzenda-dzenda*; - *jirichanya*.
- under, *nyasi*; *zasi*; *pasi*; *pa nyasi*; *pa zasi*; — *neath, kusi kwa*.
- underdone, adj., 'mbishi' with class prefix.
- be —, - *sa ibva*; - *fuya*.
- underline, - *tara pa zasi*.
- understand, - *nzgwa*; - *nzgwisisa*.
- one another, - *nzgwana*.
- undertake (propose to do), - *yayavira ku ita*.
- undertaking, *mubato* (2); *basa* (5).
- See 'work.'

- **undo**, - *pfumvunyura*; - *pfudunura*; - *tsudunura*; - *kunungura*; - *kutunura*; - *untie*, - *sunungura*. See 'unclot' and 'loosen.'

- **undress**, - *bvisa haru*. See 'unclot.'

- **unearth**, - *cherera*.

uneasy, - *be*, (i.e. to have a guilty conscience), - *nyumga*.

unequal, - *be*, - *sa enzana*; - *pesana*; - *siyana*.

uneven, - *be*, - *sa enzana*.

unfaithful, - *be*, - *sa tendika*.

- **unfasten**, - *sunungura*.

— **a chain**, - *goronora* (- *gurunura*).

unfeeling, *adj.*, 'kukutu' with class prefix.

- *be* —, *v.*, - *yangarara*; - *tsungarara*.

unfertilized, - *be*, see 'barren.'

— **ears of grain or nuts**, *mabubu* (5 pl.).

unfinished, - *be*, - *sa pera*; - *sa guma*; - *siyiwa pa zihira*.

- **unfold**, - *petenura*.

unfortunate, - *be*, - *ya ne ropa ra ka ipa*; - *ya ne ropa ra ka shanyuka*.

unfriendly, - *be*, - *sa shamgaridzana*; - *sa jambidzana*; - *sa yanana*.

unfruitful, - *be*, see 'barren.'

ungodly, - *be*, - *sa tenda Mudzimu*; - *sa shumira Mudzimu*.

ungrateful, - *be*, - *sa tenda*; - *sa yonga*.

unhappy, - *be*, - *sa fara*; - *sa sharanganya*; - *sa ya no mufargwa*.

- **unhook**, - *kochonora*; - *sunungura*; - *pfekenura*. See 'undo.'

unhurt, - *be*, - *sa rgwadziwa*; - *sa kuyara*.

uninhabited, - *be*, - *sa gargwa* (- *sa garigwa*).

— **kraal**, *dongo* (5).

— **house**, *dangwasa* (5).

— **country**, *nyika i si na vanu*.

unintentional, - *be*, - *sa ziya*; - *sa da*; - *sa ita bgoni*.

uninterruptedly, expressed by the aux. 'ku ramba,' followed by the present participle; e.g., *nda ka ramba ndi chi nyora*, I wrote uninterruptedly.

union, *sungano* (4); *chishongano* (3).

- **unite**, *v.i.*, - *batana*; - *sungana*; — *v.t.*, - *shongamisa*; - *batanidza*.

unity, *ku nzgwana* (8); *ku yanana* (8); *ku ya no moyo mumge*.

unjust, - *be*, - *sa rungama*; - *sa rurama*.

unkind, - *be*, - *tsungarara*; - *yangarara*; - *sa faaza*.

— **ness**, *ku tsungarara* (8); *yu-tsungi* (7); *yutsungununu* (7).

unknown, - *be*, - *sa zikanwa*.

- **unlace**, - *sunungura*; - *tsudunura*. See 'undo.'

unlawful, - *be*, - *sa tendergwa no mura-iro*.

unleavened, - *be*, - *sa yirisiwa*.

unless, *kana*, followed by a neg. verb, e.g. I will not give you salt unless you work, *ha ndi nga ku pi munyu, kana u si nga bati* (or *asi kana u chi bata*).

unlike, - *be*, - *sa fanana*; - *sa enzana*.

- **unload**, - *tutunura*.

- **unlock**, - *zarura*; - *kiyinura* (for).

unmanageable, - *be*, - *sa bvira*; - *penga* (i.e. - *be mad*).

unmarried (man), *simburume* (4); (woman), *musikana* (1).

unmerciful, - *be*, - *sa ya ne nyasha* (sisi or ngoni); - *sa wira yuro-mbo*; - *tsungira moyo*; - *tsungarara*; - *ya no moyo muku-kutu*.

unoccupied, - *be*, - *sa ya no mubato*; - *sa bata chinu*; - *ngo deno*.

- **unpack**, - *fusha*; - *fushunura*; - *tutunura*.

- **unravel**, - *pfudunura*; - *pfudzunura*; - *pfumvunyura*; - *radanura*; - *tsudunura*.

unrest, *mazhuruzhuru* (5 pl.) (*masurusuru*).

unrighteous, - *be*, - *sa rungama*.

unripe, *adj.*, 'mbishi' with class prefix.

- *be* —, - *sa ibva*.

— **fruit**, *ganga* (5).

- **unroll**, - *petenura*.

- **unroof**, - *pfurunyura* (*pfurunura*); - *pfurura*.

unsavoury, - *be*, - *sa zipa*.

- **unscrew**, - *munyurura* (*monyorora*).

unseen, - *be*, - *sa yonekwa*.

- **unsheath**, - *vomora*; - *wetsa*.

unstable, - *be*, - *sa bata*; - *sa ya ne simba*.

- unthankful, - be, - *sa tenda*; - *sa yonga*.
 - untie, - *sunungura*; - *pfudsumura*; - *fundumura*; - *tudsumura*. See 'undo.'
 until, *ku sika*; *ku sikira*.
 untrue, - be, - *ya nema*; - *sa ya izo*.
 untruth, *nema* (4 pl.).
 — (feign the truth), - *ita mano-mano*.
 - unveil, - *fukura*. See 'open.'
 unweeded garden, *gwidi* (5).
 unwilling, - be, - *ramba*; - *sa da*; - *ya ne nida*; - *koma*; - *komera*; - *nyuna*; - *chanjamara*; - *kakasa*.
 —ness, *hunzi* (4); *musimbga* (2); *gusinindi* (7); *nida* (4).
 - unwind, v.t., - *pombonora* (- *pombonyora*); - *petenura*; - *munyura* (- *monyora*); - *mononora*.
 — v.i., - *mononoka*; - *pombonoka*; - *monyoroka*.
 unworthy, - be, - *sa fanirgwa*.
 up (on high), adv., *ku msoro*; *pa msoro*.
 upon, prep., *pa msoro pa*; *ku msoro kwa*; *pa msana pa*.
 upper, 'pa msoro' preceded by gen. part. of governing noun; e.g. — lip, *muromo wa pa msoro*.
 upright (- sit or stand), - *gara* or - *mira kwazo*.
 - be —, - *rungama*; - *rurama*; - *ya munu kwaye*.
 uproar, *bopoto* (5); *mere-mere* (4); *ruzha* (6).
 - upset (- spill contents), - *teyura*.
 — (turn over), - *denura*; - *tenura*.
 — the mind, - *pesaisa*; - *kangaidza*; - *pesanisa*; - *kanganisa*.
 - be —, - *teyuka*; - *denuka*; - *tenuka*.
 upside down (- place), - *tsindikira* (of a hollow article); - *shunamisa* (of pole).
 upwards, adv., *pa msoro*; *ku msoro*; *ku denga*.
 - urge, - *gombedzera*; - *gwaririra*; - *manyaidza*; - *nangaidza*; - *yirikidza*.
 - urge on to fight, - *kurumidza*. See 'incite.'
 — on by beating, - *doyaidza*.
 urine, *mutundo* (2); *mvura* (4).
 us, pers. pron., *ti*; emphatic, *isu*.
 - use, v.t., - *bata na* (i.e. work with); - *tora* (i.e. take).
 — for first time, - *kwangura*.
 of what — is this? *ichi chi no baisei?*
 use, n., *mubato* (2).
 useful, - be, - *batsa*; - *betsera*; - *batista*.
 useless, - be, - *sa batsa*; - *sa ya no mubato*.
 — material, *rufeserere* (6).
 usually, adv., expressed by 'si' before verb root; e.g. *u no si yuya pano*, he usually comes here.
 utensil, *numbi* (4); *chibatiro* (3).
 utmost, expressed by 'pa ndi' (*u*, *ya*, etc.), *no bvidza na 'po'* (lit. where I am able (there)).
 - utter, - *reya*; - *nyepera*; - *tawura*.
 utterance, *shoko* (5); *nzgwi* (5); *dama* (5).
 utterly, adv., *chose*; *kwazo*.
 uttermost, see 'utmost.'
 — (- be last), - *pedzisira*; - *pereredza* (*bereredza*).
 uvula, *chirakaraka* (3).

V

- vaccinate, - *temera*; - *temenyora*.
 vain, - be, - *zi kudza*; - *ita manyawi*; - *zi tunidza*; - *sasayara*.
 — person, *mutuni* (1); *musasayari* (1).
 in —, adv., *pa si na*.
 valiant, - be, - *tsunga*; - *ita yumare*.
 valiant man, *mare* (4); *mutsungu* (1).
 valley, *mupata* (2).
 valour, *yumare* (7); *tsungu* (4).
 value (price), *mutengo* (2); *yukweyo* (7); also expressed by the verb 'ku laya' (- eat), e.g. the value of this ox is 26, *nombe iyi i no laya pondo nanatu*.

- vanguard**, *muromo we pfumo* (2); *rupingo* (6).
- vanish**, - *nyangalika*; - *ti nyangara*; - *ti roya*.
- vanity**, *yu-gi-kudza* (7); *dunidzo* (4); *yusasayari* (7); *manyawi* (5 pl.).
- vapour**, *mgeya* (we *mvura*); — (mist), *mute* (4); *bute* (5).
- variable**, - *be*, - *shanduka-shanduka*; - *pinduka-pinduka*.
- vast**, adj., 'kuru-kuru' with class prefix.
- *be* —, - *kura zikuru*.
- veal**, *nyama ye muru*.
- vegetable**, *mulivo* (2).
dried —, *mufushhwa* (2). See 'spinach.'
- veil**, - *fukidza*.
— *n.*, *cho ku fukidza* (3).
- vein**, *rutisinga* (6).
swollen —, *rukusha* (6).
- veld**, *bundo* (5); *sango* (5).
— without trees, *renje* (5).
unburnt —, *ndara* (4).
— without mountains, *bani* (5).
uninhabited —, *chiwunde* (3).
burnt —, *rutša* (6).
- venerable**, - *be*, - *kudzwiwa*; - *ya mukuru*.
- vengeance**, - *take*, - *tsiya*; - *ripira*.
— *n.*, *shungu* (4); *yushungu* (7); *mafindifuva* (5 pl.).
- venison**, *nyama ye muka*.
- venom**, *yuturu* (7); *yushungu* (7).
— *ous*, - *be*, - *yuraya* (i.e. - kill).
- verandah**, *birayira* (5); *gumbi* (5); *berereve* (berere) (5).
- verdant**, adj., *tema*, with class prefix.
— *grass*, *bumudza* (5); *rushwishwi* (6).
- verily**, adv., *zokwadi*; *giro kwazo*.
- vermillion red**, *yushaya-runji*.
- verse**, *ndima* (4) (lit. a division in garden).
- vertical**, - *be*, - *mira*.
- very**, adv., *zikuru*; *kwazo*.
— *much*, *zikuru-kuru*; also expressed by the aux. - *nyanya* (- *be* intense) followed by the infin. of principal verb.
- vessel**, *mudziyo* (2); *numbi* (4); *ndiro* (4) (i.e. a plate); *chinu* (3) (i.e. a thing).
a hollow —, *hofu* (4).
deep, *hollow* —, *hombe* (4); *hombe* (4).
- earthen** —, *hali* (4).
blood —, *rutisingo* (6).
- vest**, *noroyaki* (4) (for.); *isikoti* (4) (for.).
- vestige**, *chidokodoko* (3); *chomura-piro* (3); *rusiyisiyi* (6).
- vex**, - *tsamgisa*; - *netša*; - *ta-mbudza*; - *nyangadza*. See 'anoy.'
- vexation**, *netšo* (4); *dambudzo* (5).
- vice**, *ku ipa* (8); *viipi* (7); *yushati* (7).
- vicinity**, *yupedo* (7).
in the —, *pedo na*.
- vicious**, - *be*, - *penga*; - *ruma*; - *piruka* (of cow), - *karira*; - *jakatika*.
- victim**, *cha yurawa* (i.e. what was killed); *cha bathwa* (i.e. what was caught).
- victorious**, - *be*, - *kurira*; - *kunda*.
- victory**, *mukundo* (2).
- vie with each other**, - *ita mapipi*; - *ita bipi*; - *pikidzana*.
- view**, - *yona*; - *tarira*; - *ringira*.
— *n.*, *ruyono* (6) &c.
- vigilant**, - *be*, - *chenjera*; - *ngwara*; - *sinura*.
- vigour**, *simba* (5); *nungo* (4 pl.).
- vile**, - *be*, - *shata*; - *ipisa*; - *šibisa*.
- village**, *musha* (2); *chimusha* (3) (small).
- of chief, *muzinda* (2).
large native —, *guta* (5); *jarati* (5); *nzanga* (4).
a forsaken —, *dongo* (5).
- vindicate**, - *rgwira* (i.e. to fight for); (- *avenge*), - *tsiya*.
- vine**, native, *muzambiringa* (2); *muzhambiringa* (2).
grape —, *muti we vini* (2) (for.); *muvinu* (2) (for.).
- vinegar**, *vini i no yavisa*; *aseini* (4) (for.).
- vineyard**, *munda we mivini*.
- violence**, *simba* (5).

violent, - be, - *ya ne simba*; - *ya ne hashi*; - *penga* (i.e. - be mad).
 — (intense), - *nyanya*.
 virgin, *mandara* (4); *musikana* (1).
 virtue (moral worth), *ku naka* (8); *yunaki* (7); *yunako* (7).
 — (good work), *mubato wa ka naka*.
 See 'righteousness.'
 visible, - be, - *yonekwa*; - *yonekara*.
 - visit, - *muta*; - *shanga*; - *kanda mumvuli*.
 — one another, - *fambidzana*; - *mutisana*; - *shanyirana*.
 visitor, *mgeni* (1).
 voice, *nzgwi* (5) (wi).

volcano, *gomo ri no nyusa moto* (or *ri no budisa moto*).
 voluntary, - be, - *zi itisa*; - *zisuma*.
 —ily, adv., *no moyo*; *no kuda*.
 - vomit, - *ruta*; - *datamura*; - *dapa*.
 — violently, - *bapamura*; - *zokora*.
 — of infant, - *bukura*.
 what is vomited, *marutsi* (5 pl.).
 voracious, - be, - *ldyisa*; - *kara*. See 'greedy.'
 - vow, - *pika*.
 — n., *miko* (4); *piko* (4).
 voyage, *rgwendo rgwa pa gungwa* (6).
 vulture, *gora* (5); *ngwanga* (4).

W

waddle, - *yuwaira*; - *huwaira*; - *taya-ira*; - *tananika*; - *teduka*; - *tega-ira*; - *vekaira*; - *tsendereka*; - *yembereka*.
 - wag (the head affirmatively), - *ku-tsura*.
 — (negatively), - *dzungudza*.
 — tail, (as of dog), - *pinimidza mgeise*.
 — violently, - *tipitira*.
 — (as of cattle), - *tsikidza*.
 wages, *mubairo* (2); *chibairo* (3); *basera* (or *basira*) (5) (for.), very generally used.
 - receive wages, - *hora* (for.).
 waggon, *ngoro* (4).
 — driver, *muchairi* (1) (for.); *mu-fambisi* (1).
 - wall, - *chema*; - *rira*.
 — very loudly, - *zhamba*.
 — n., *chiriro* (3); *chemo* (4); *rukunga* (6).
 waist, *chiyuno* (3).
 — have a thin —, - *dziningika*; - *dzinyingika*.
 waistband (of calico), *rundaza* (6).
 — to which aprons are fastened, *mutimgi* (2).
 - wait, - *mira*; - *gara*.
 — for, - *mirira*; - *garira*; - *rindira*.
 — not knowing for what, - *garira mo*; - *rindira mu malima*.

- wait for one another with regard to work, - *karidzana* (n., *mukarano* (2)).
 - wake, - *muka*; - be awake, - *sinura*.
 — suddenly, - *pepuka*; - *ti barabada*; - *warawashuka* (- *kwarakwashuka*); (- waken, v.t.), - *mutsa*.
 - walk, - *famba*; - *inda*; - *wenda*; - *minawuka*.
 — not knowing the way, - *fambirromo*.
 - go for a —, - *famba-famba*; - *vakacha* (for.); - *mira-mira*; - *simutsa makumbo*.
 — about, - *nyengura*; - *nyesura*.
 — lame, - *hamina*; - *tsabida*. See 'limp.'
 — in a contracted manner from cold, - *kundundika*.
 — with a stick, - *donga*; - *ti dododo*.
 — feebly (toddle), - *nayaira* (- *nawaira*); - *tsukunika*; - *tseduka*; - *nanaira*.
 — shaking the body, - *dengendeka* (*tengendeka*).
 — (- totter), - *pepereka*; - *meya*; - *mewuka*. See 'reel.'
 — (short steps), - *nzenzeta*. See 'trot.'
 — (long strides), - *rasuka*; - *ita naru*; - *zanguka*.
 — (dragging the feet), - *tselsetseka*.

- walk (stealthily), - *beryaيرا*; - *nyabga-ira*.
- abreast, searching, - *ndangandira*;
- away crestfallen, - *manyaira*.
- away in anger, - *ila hongonyargwa*; - *kanganyara*.
- with loud step, - *chakaira*; - *jakaira*; - *dihidza* (*dikidza*).
- very straight, - *ila matanu*; - *danudzira*.
- very far, - *nyumira*; - *tupira* (*tuputira*).
- lightly, - *vamuka*.
- backwards, - *funduruka*; - *ila madududu*; - *inda na masunda*; - *inda ne nenda sure*.
- listlessly, - *nyakatika* (*nyakatira*).
- fast, - *fambisa*; - *ita ruyaya*.
- *verenguka*; - *pfukucha* (*pfukuta*); - *tanyaira*.
- to and fro, - *nekaira*; - *nzeka*; - *nzekaira*; - *potapota*.
- carefully, - *nyekaira*; - *veryaira*.
- trying to conceal oneself, - *serereka*.
- stooping, - *yundundika*; - *yundumara*.
- with head thrown back, - *deduka* (*teduka*).
- staggering, - *tandazika*. See 'stagger.'
- reluctantly, - *siriyuka*.
- without carrying, - *shapura*.
- slowly, with measured tread, *tsetsenuka*; - *tsanduka*; - *tananika*; - *tayaira*.
- dangling ornaments, - *tsetseroka*; - *shakaira*.
- far into another country, - *pangura*.
- purposelessly, - *tumbidzika*; - *me-maira*.
- with flapping aprons, - *yashura*.
- like a baboon, - *kongonyara*.
- looking for something, - *nara*; - *mbeya*.
- loose-jointedly, - *zengemara*.
- (of short stout people), - *tashuka*; - *pidigara*.
- (of tall man), - *timaira*; - *tichaira*.
- lifting shoulders, - *nyanduka*.
- round, - *poteredza*. See 'surround.'
- walk crookedly, - *gakamara*.
- leaning to one side, - *yuwama*.
- shaking, - *teketera*.
- alone everywhere, - *tigaira*.
- about in sorrow, - *pfachaira*.
- straight, - *sazanyara*; - *sadanyara*.
- thinking much of oneself, - *nen-gaira*.
- straight, looking in front, - *kokowara*.
- about in search of food, - *kwangwaira*.
- with stiff legs, - *sadanyara*.
- n. (gait), *mufambire* (2).
- fast walker, *varukanduro* (1); *varukanzuro* (1).
- walking-stick, *mudongo* (2).
- — without knob, *mubada* (2).
- wall (of a house), *dziro* (5); *chidziro* (3).
- of stones, *singo* (5); *rusingo* (6).
- wallow, - *yumburuka*; - *bidirika*; - *shanyarika*. See 'roll.'
- wander, - *famba-famba*; - *potapota*; - *dzungaira*; - *nekaira*; - *kanzura*.
- (- stray), - *rashika*.
- (not living in one place), - *ldya runzembe*.
- wanderer, *mufamba-fambi* (1); *mutapota-poti* (1); *mudzingi* (1); *mudzungairi* (1); *mushwerakwenda* (1); *mvemve* (4).
- wane (- decrease), - *dokopara*; - *tapudzika*.
- want (- lack), - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*; - *sa ya na*; - *kuma*.
- (- wish), - *da*; - *yinga*; - *kwasha*; - *chemera*; - *kungura*.
- n., *ku shaiwa* (8); *ku shaya* (8); *shaiyo* (4).
- war, *pfumo* (5); *hondo* (4); *murenga* (2); *ngondo* (4).
- v., see 'wage war.'
- implements, *gibatiro ze pfumo* (3 pl.); *numbi dze pfumo* (4 pl.); *yuita* (7).
- head dress, *ngundu* (4).
- song, *mbayalira* (4).
- trumpet, *wamanda* (4); *wama* (4); *mupanza* (2).

- ward off, - *tapira* (*tapirira*); - *dzitirira*.
- warm, - *dziyisa*.
 - be —, - *dziya*; - *ya ne ziya*; - *pisa*.
- it is —, *ku no dziya*; *ku no pisa*; *ku ne ziya*.
- oneself at fire, - *dziya moto*; - *gota moto*.
- in sun, - *shanira mushana*; - *dziya mushana*.
- warn, - *raira*; - *chenjedza*; - *yudza*; - *ngwadza*; - *nyeyera*; - *kaza*; - *kazira*.
- warp (- twist), - *monyoroka*; - *zenga*.
- warrior, *murgwi* (1); *male* (4).
- wart, *mopo* (4).
- wash, - *suka*.
 - well, - *yotesa*; - *chenesa*.
 - oneself, - *ngura*; - *shamba*.
 - another, - *ngudza*; - *shambisa*.
 - the head, - *shapa*.
 - ed out (of road), - *chergwa*; - *tsiwa*.
 - away, - *kukurgwa*; - *kumbga*; - *yeyera*.
- wash-basin, *cho-ku-ngurira* (3).
- wasp, *go* (5); *mbuza-mbuza* (4); *ruletera* (6).
 - large black —, *yombera* (5).
 - small —, *rungombudzi* (6).
 - spotted —, *dzingidzi* (5).
- waste, - *chinya*, - *paraäza*; - *tamba na*; - *rashanya*.
 - lay —, - *paraäza*.
- away, - *wonda*; - *taniwa*; - *tanurrgwa*; - *ngwarangwanduka*.
 - , n. (rubbish), *marara* (5 pl.).
- wasteful person, *shovu* (4).
- wastefulness, *vushovu* (7).
- watch, - *tarira*; - *rindira*; - *garira*; - *garirira*; - *yeyera*.
- expecting to be given food, - *kwata*.
- n. (time-piece), *chinambo* (3) (i.e. time); *wachi* (4) (for.).
 - house, *chirindo* (3).
 - tower, *naririre* (4).
 - man, *naririre* (4).
- water, *mvura* (4).
 - dirty —, *matakasina* (5 pl.).
 - fetch —, - *teka* (*mvura*).
- v.t. (as plants), - *dividza* (*miti*).
- water (of mouth), - *dokwadokwa*; - *fa no moyo*.
 - buck, *huro* (4).
- course, *rukoya* (6); *mugero* (2) (furrow).
- lily, *kapa* (5); *karara* (5).
- fall, *bopopo* (5); *chipopopo* (3); *machiti* (i.e. rapids).
- melon, *yisi* (5); *nwiwa* (5); *nwisi* (5).
- snake (poisonous), *mbuzi* (4).
- snake (not poisonous), *shanganyoka* (4).
- weeds (long, thin), *maharanga* (5 pl.); *maharargwe* (5 pl.).
- watery, - be, 'tele' with class prefix.
- porridge, *dzutsu* (5).
- wattle (laths), *mbaliro* (4).
- of a cock, *jorochoro* (5); *muchororo* (2).
- v.t., - *yalira*; - *yara*.
- wave, v.i., - *dengenyika*; - *dengekneka*; - *zununguka*; - *zengenekneka*.
- (like flag), - *pepera*; - *pepereka*.
- to and fro in wind, - *nzekaira*; - *pepera*.
- v.t., - *dengenisa*; - *zunungusa*.
- n., *mvututu* (5); *fungo* (5).
- small —, *sairira* (5).
- wax, - *kura*.
- n., *namu* (4).
- way (path), *zhira* (4).
 - high —, *gumbu* (5); *zhira huru* (4).
- (manner), *mutogo* (2); *chino* (3).
- (habit), *mugarire* (2); *mugarivo* (2).
- in this —, *ku dai*; *ku dero*; *ku daro*.
- by another —, *na pamge*; *no kumge*.
- by this —, *na pano*; *no vuno*.
- by that —, *no koko*.
- make a —, - *pangura*; - *pasura*.
- give — (- slip), - *gotoka*; - *suduyuka*.
- waylay, - *yandira*. See 'path and road.'
- we, rep. pron., 'ti' in pres. t., 'ta' in past and perf. tenses; emphatic pron. 'isu.'
- weak, - be, - *shaya simba*; - *sa ya ne simba*; - *sa ya ne nungo*; - *rukutika*; - *shakanika*.

weak for want of salt, - be, - *gombergwa mabvi*.
 — person, *dera* (5).
 - weaken, - *shayisa simba*; - *shayisa nungo*.
 weakness, *vutera* (7); *yuneva* (7).
 wealth, *fuma* (4).
 wealthy, - be, - *ya ne fuma*; - *fuma*.
 — man, *mufumi* (1).
 - wean, - *bvisa pa zamu*.
 — (of cattle), - *rumura*; - *gondodza*.
 weapon, *chibatiro che pfumo* (3);
numbi yo ku rgwa (4); *cho ku rgwisa*.
 - wear, - *fuka*; - *pfeka*; - *simira*.
 — ornaments, - *shonga*.
 — out, v.i., - *shakara* (- *sakara*).
 — out, v.t., - *shakadza* (- *sakadza*).
 weary, - be, - *nyara*; - *neta*; - *ziya*;
 - *ti rukutu*; - *ti fukuchu*; - *ti vukuchu*.
 weasel, *goyo* (5); *hoyo* (4).
 weather (cold), *chando* (3); — (hot),
ziya (5).
 - weave, - *ruka*.
 — or, *muruki* (1).
 web (spider's), *mutandiro* (2); *dan-
 ndiro* (5).
 wedding, *ku wana* (8); *ku wanisiwa*
 (8); *wananihwa* (4); *wanawwa*
 (4).
 — feast, *mutambo wo ku wanisiwa*
 (*ku wana*).
 wedge, *chibamuro* (3) (*chipamuro*)
 (3) (i.e. an instrument for
 splitting).
 Wednesday, *Chitatu* (*che Sondo*).
 weed, *bundo* (5); *sakura* (5) (*sha-
 kura*).
 kinds of —s: *mashawi* (5 pl.)
 (*masawi*); *nama* (4); *shanje*
 (4); *gukurundu* (5); *mutuyuyu*
 (2); *bise* (5).
 — mixed with tobacco for snuff,
chimuwa-muwa (3); *chiramba-
 kororo* (4); *mushaba* (2).
 — v. (with hoe), - *sakura* (*shakura*).
 — (with hands), - *dzurira*.
 week, *viki* (3) (for.); *sondo* (4) (for.).
 this —, *viki ino* (or *iyi*).
 next —, *viki i no yuya*.
 last —, *viki ya pfuwura*.

- weep, - *chema*; - *rira*.
 — (of sore), - *shizha*; - *sina*.
 — much, - *shamba*; - *zhambata*.
 — (- fret), (s) *hwinya*; - (s) *hwinyi-
 dzika*.
 weeping, *chiro* (3).
 weevil, *chipfunu* (3).
 — be — eaten, - *pfuniwa*; - *sekesewa*;
 - *pfukuthwa*.
 - weigh, - *idza*; - *enzanisa*; - *ira*.
 weight, *ku rema* (8); *yuremi* (7).
 - welcome, - *kwazisa*; - *farira* (i.e.
 - be glad for); - *chingamidza*;
 - *chingura*; - *chingudzira*.
 - weld, - *rumatidza*; - *namatidza*;
 - *batanidza*.
 well, *mugodi* (2); *tsime* (5) (foun-
 tain).
 — be —, v. - *fara*; - *buda*; - *tamba*;
 - *farihana*; - *shayara*.
 — get —, - *pota*.
 — make —, - *podza*; - *porisa*.
 — adj., 'kukutu' with class prefix.
 — adv., *za ka naka*; *kwago*.
 west, *yugirira* (7); in the —, *ku
 mayirira zuya*.
 wet, adj., 'nyoro,' with class pre-
 fix.
 — v.t., - *nyorovesa*; - *nyoroga*.
 — be —, - *nyorova*; - *nyorogiwa*.
 See 'rain.'
 — place, *muroye* (2); *ndoye* (4);
munyawu (2).
 what, interr. pron., *chinyi*; *chiyi*;
inyi, contracted into 'i' after
 verb and preposition, e.g. *what
 do you want? u no dei?* (i.e. *de
 inyi*).
 — interr. adj., 'pi?' preceded by
 pers. pron., e.g. *upi?* *yapi?*
 &c.
 — rel. pron., *chi* (or *gi*) (nom.); *cha*
 (or *ga*) (acc.).
 — sort of? 'i' preceded by gen.
 part. of governing noun; e.g.
what sort of man? munu wei?
 (i.e. *we inyi*); also expressed by
kunyi, or *kuyi*, which is the
 same for all classes, e.g. *munu
 kunyi?* also by interr. verb
dini, or *diyi*, e.g. *munu wa ka
 dini?* or *diyi?*

whatsoever, 'pi ne 'pi, with class prefix, e.g. give me whatsoever knife you find, *ndi pe banga ripi ne ripi ra u no wana*.

wheat, *gorosi* (5) (for.); *mapfunde e Chirumbi*.

wheel, *gumbo re ngoro* (5).

— (round hoop), *gango* (5).

- wheeze, - *femedzeka*; - *femereka*.

when? adv., *lini?* *rini?* *nini?* (placed last in sentence).

— in rel. sentence, *musi wa*; *zuya ra*; *nguya ya*; *chinguya cha*.

— conj., *kana*, or various forms of the verb *kuti*, e.g. *ku zo ti*; *ku cha ti*; *ku chi ti*, &c. See Lesson XXIX.

where? adv., *kupi?* *papi?* *kupi ho?* *papi ho?* *pai?* *ipi?*

— enclitic after verbs, 'pi?

— conj., in rel. sentences, *pa*, *kwa*.

whereas, conj., *za*; *nokuti*.

whereby? *nei?* (*ne inyi?*).

wherefore? adv., 'i' after rel. form of verb, e.g. *wa ka vuyirirei?* (*vuyira inyi?*).

wherefore, conj., *saka*; *ndipopo*; *ndo za*.

whereto? *kupi?* *papi?* *pai?*

wherewith, *nei?* (*ne inyi?*)

- whet, - *rodza*; - *petura*; - *pepenga*; - *tutura*. See 'sharpen.'

whether, *kana*; — . . . or, *kana* . . . *kana*; *nyangwe* . . . *nyangwe*.

whetstone, *chirodzero* (3); *chirodzo* (3).

whew (of milk), *mutuyi* (2).

which? inter. pron., 'pi? preceded by pers. pron.; e.g. *upi?* *yapi?* &c.

— rel. pron. (nom.), *u*; *u*; *chi*; *i*, &c., exactly like pers. pron.; (acc.), *wa*; *wa*; *cha*; *ya*, &c., exactly like gen. part. of classes.

while, expressed by the pres. participle, e.g., *I will work while you talk*, *ndi cha bata u chi bgereketa*.

mean—, expressed by the aux. *sana* or *wana* followed by infin. of prin. verb, or *sano* before verb root, e.g., *wait here mean-while*, *sano ku gara pano*.

while (a period of time), *chinambo* (3); *nambo* (4).

whim, *nando* (4 pl.); *madayo* (5 pl.); *chiro* (3).

- whine, - *shwinya* (*hwinya*); *shwinyidza*; - *ziririka*.

whip, *cho ku roya na cho* (3); *ihaya* (4) (for.).

- whirl round, - *monereka*; - *tendereka*; - *tenderera*; - *ndeya*; - *zeya*.

— (as of wind), - *vuvuta*.

whirligig, *chiworiro* (3); *chiwiriri* (3); *chiweruli* (3).

whirlwind, *chamukururu* (3); *chamupupuli* (3); *chamungwe* (3); *chinyamupupuli* (3).

whiskers, *ndebvu dze mathe* (5 pl.).

- whisper, - *ita zeye-zeye*; - *ita nyewenyewe*; - *nyewedza*.

— n., *zevezeye* (4); *nyewe-nyewe* (4).

- whistle (with lips), - *ridza mulidzo*.

— (in driving cattle), - *ridza metergwa*.

— (on leaves placed between fingers), - *ita mamvete* (*mamvetele*).

— (drawing in breath), - *gokomera*.

— n., *mulidzo*, (2).

white, adj., 'chena' with class pref.

— man, *murumbi* (1); *murungu* (1); *musungu* (1).

- whiten, - *chenesa*.

- (wash), - *dzuḍzura*; - *paranga ne suko*.

whither? *kupi?* *papi?* *ipi?*

who (rel., nom. case), *u*; *u*; *chi*, &c.; (acc. case), *wa*; *wa*; *cha*, &c.; interrog. pron., *ani?* *ndi ani?* (lit. it is who?) either at beginning or end of sentence; whom? *ani?* after verb.

whole, adj., *ose*, with gen. part. of govern. noun.

— (sound, well), 'kukutu' with class prefix; *tsene*.

wholesome, - be, - *nahira ku ldyā*.

wholly, *chose*; *kwago*; *kwago-kwago*.

whose, *ani*, preceded by the gen. part. of govern. noun.

why, adv., 'i' after rel. form of verb, e.g. *u no indirei?* why do you go?

— (interj.), *gara!* *hinga!* See 'indeed.'

why then? *wani*?

wicked, - be, - *ipa*; - *shata*; - *chinya*;
- *nyangara*; - *wosha*. See 'sin,'
'- be bad.'

— person, *mutadzi* (1); *mushati* (1);
gwenga (5); *wozhi* (4); *shashi*
(4); *nnyannya* (4); *chidoma*
(3).

wickedness, *yuipi* (7); *yunubu* (7).
See 'badness.'

great —, *gilema* (3 pl.).

wide, *pami*, *kobvu* with class pre-
fix.

- be wide awake, - *chenjera*. See
'clever.'

— awake person, *hangara* (4); *hanga-
rara* (4).

- widen, - *farisa*; - *fadza*.

widow, *chirikadzi* (*shirikadzi*) (4).

width, *ku fara* (8); *yufaro* (7); *yu-
fari* (7); *yupami* (7); *bǃasha* (7).

wife, *mukadzi* (1); *munukadzi* (1).

— of chief, *yahosi* (1).

chief —, *hosi* (4); *yahosi* (1).

favourite —, *yachilāya-chilāya* (1).

second —, *vagota* (1).

third or other —, *murongo* (1).

— that has been paid for, *muroyo-
rgwa* (1).

one looking for a —, *nyakuwana*
(1).

wild, - be, - *penga*.

—, adj. (i.e. not domestic), 'bundo'
with gen. part. of govern. noun.

wild beast, *chikara* (3).

wild pig, *nguruye ye bundo* (4).

wilde-beest, *mvumba* (4).

wilderness, *denere* (5); *jokoto* (5).

wile, *xano* (5); *mano* (5 pl.).

wilful, - be, - *sa terera*; - *ya no
musimbǃa*.

—ly, adv., no *bǃoni*; no *yune*; no
mǃoni.

wilfulness, *bǃoni* (7); *mǃoni* (2);
yune (7) (pl. *mazyune* (5)).

will, *ku da* (8).

— v., - *da*; - *yinga* (i.e. - wish);
- *tsaka* (i.e. - seek).

— future tense aux., *cha*, or *no zo*.

— o' the wisp, *madzangaradzimu*;
madzimudzangara (5 pl.).

willingly, adv., no *moyo wose*.

wily person, *njenda* (4).

- win (- gain), v.t., - *wana*, - *kupuka*
(for.).

— (- overcome), - *kunda*; - *kurira*.

wind, *mepo* (4); *mututu* (2).

strong —, *dutu* (5); *chamuwiriri*
(3).

— (a breeze), *mǃeya* (2); *mepo* (4);
mǃando (4).

— round, v.t., - *monera*; - *pomba*;
- *pombera*.

— up, - *monana*; - *pomba*.

— off, see 'unwind.'

— v.i. (as of path), - *monereka*;
- *potereka*.

window, *yuli* (5) (i.e. hole); *fastera*
(5); *vafetera* (5); *fastera* (5)
(for.); *windi* (4) (for.).

windpipe, *guro-kuro* (5).

wine, *vini* (or *veine*) (4) (for.).

— of 'mashuku' (wild loquats),
mutoto (2).

— press, *chisiniro che veini* (3).

wing, *bapiro* (5).

- wink, - *bǃaira*; - *boira*.

- eyes, - *chonya*.

- winnow (with sieve-basket), - *pepeta*;
- *peya*; - *sera*; - *pesa*.

— by throwing up, - *rudza*.

winter, *chando* (3).

- wipe, - *pukusa*; - *pisika*; - *tsaira*.

— off (as crumbs), - *womora*.

— off (as of perspiration), - *kupura
ziya*.

wire (thin), *runare* (6).

— (yellow, brass), *safuli* (4).

— (red, brass), *ndarira* (4).

telegraph —, *runare* (6); *wairi* (4)
(for.).

wisdom, *njere* (4 pl.); *ku chenjera*
(8); *yuchenjeri* (7); *yunjere*
(7).

wise, - be, see 'clever.'

— man, *muchenjeri* (1); *njenda* (4);
mbarayara (4).

- wish, - *da*. See 'desire' and
'long.'

— anyone evil (- imprecate), - *panjira*.

wit, *mufeye* (2).

witch, *muroyi* (1); *murowi* (1). See
'sorcerer.'

witchcraft, *yuroyi* (7); *yurowi* (7).

witch doctor, *nanga* (4).
 clever —, *godoboro* (5).
 with, prep., 'na' changing into *no* and *ne* according to word following. See Lesson VII.
 - withdraw, v.t., - *bvisa*; - *bisa*.
 — v.i., - *bva*; - *inda*.
 - wither (- fade), - *šaya*; - *fa*; - *šota*.
 — (- dry up), - *puta*; - *naya*.
 - withhold, - *dziyisa*; - *dziya*; - *rambisa*.
 — (- stint), - *nyima*.
 within, adv., *mukati*.
 — prep., *mukati*; *mu*.
 without, adv., *pazhe*; *kuzhe*.
 - be — (- lack), - *sa ya na*; - *shaiwa*; - *shaya*.
 — conj., expressed by the verb *ku si na* (i.e. to be without), e.g. you went without asking, *wa ha inda u si no ku kumbira*; or simply by the neg. verb, e.g. *u sa ti wa kumbira*.
 - withstand (- oppose), - *rgwa na*.
 witness, *chapupu* (3); *mufakazi* (1) (for.).
 — v., - *ya chapupu*; - *yona*; - *ya 'po* (i.e. be present).
 — (- give evidence), - *pupura*; - *fakaza* (for.).
 wizard, see 'witch.'
 woe, see 'affliction,' 'trouble.'
 — (calamity), *rukono* (6); *rushambga* (6); *rumbambanda* (6).
 wolf, *bere* (5). See 'hyena.'
 — (laughing hyena), *chiperemagondo* (3).
 woman, *mukadzi* (1); *munukadzi* (1).
 — who has borne children, *mvana* (4).
 — whose children all die, *yumba* (7); *u ne pfuya* (1).
 lying-in —, *mugere* (1).
 old —, *muchembere* (1); or *chembere* (4).
 a young married —, *muroyora* (1).
 —, a stranger who becomes the wife of a chief, *moromoka* (4).
 womb, *chizaro* (3).
 wonder, *dambi* (5); *nenji* (5); *shamiso* (4); *rungano* (6). See 'miracle' and 'marvel.'

wonder (awe), *chiangatira* (3).
 — v. (-marvel), - *kathiamara*; - *shama*; - *kanuka*; - *kahadzika*; - *ldya haika*; - *ldya nyena*.
 - be —ful, - *kahadzisa*; - *komba*.
 See 'marvellous.'
 wonderful things, *mirenji* (2 pl.). See 'wonder' and 'miracle.'
 - woo, - *ruma*.
 — (for another), - *rumidzira*.
 wood (fuel), *huni* (4 pl.).
 piece of —, *rukuni* (6); *chitsika* (3); *chigutsa* (3).
 log of —, *danda* (5); *tsika* (*tsiga*) (5).
 thin pieces of — for lighting fire, *yusoso* (7).
 bundle of —, *šinga* (5). See 'forest.'
 - work in —, - *yaza*.
 - make wooden articles, - *kowera*.
 wooden, adj., 'muti' or 'matanda' preceded by gen. part. of govern. noun, e.g. wooden plate, *ndiro yo muti* (or *ya matanda*); *woody*, - *be*, - *ya ne miti mizhinji*.
 woodpecker, *chigogodzamutanda* (3); *chihododzamutanda* (3).
 wool, *muere* (4 pl.); *mamvere* (5 pl.); *makuse* (5 pl.).
 woollen, adj., 'muere' with gen. part. of govern. noun.
 word, *shoko* (5); *chireyo* (3); *nzgwi* (5); *dama* (5).
 - work, - *bata*; - *shuma*; - *seyenza* (for.); - *ita*.
 — for another, - *batira*; - *shumira*; - *ruyira*; - *ruyirisa*; - *seyenzera*.
 — hard and be on one's legs, - *minawuka*.
 — far from home, - *shaya*.
 — incessantly, - *binduka*.
 — much and well, - *dzaranisa*; - *zazambura*.
 — fast, - *ita chimere-mere*; - *ita chimukutira*; - *ita chingadzingadzi*.
 — badly, without strength, - *chonyoyora*.
 - have much —, - *ya ne mbirimiri*; - *dzianisiwa*.

- work, n., *mubato* (2); *mushumo* (2); *murimo* (2); *basa* (5); *musenze* (2) (for.).
 great —, *nikowa* (2 pl.).
 — of whole day, *mushwawe zuya* (2).
 — in house, *mushando* (2).
 one who works listlessly, *mucherungungo* (1).
 one who works for food, *murupiri* (1).
 workman, *mubati* (1); *mushumiri* (1); *musenzi* (1) (for.).
 good workman, *mururikiri* (1); *mizha* (4); *nyanzi* (4); *goyere* (5).
 hard-working man, *nyinga* (4).
 world, *pasi* (9); *pano pasi* (9); *pasi pose* (9); *nyika dzose*.
 worm, *gonye* (5); *honye* (4).
 — (in meat), *chivundudzi* (3).
 — (edible), *harati* (4); *masuladya* (5 pl.).
 — that causes smarting, *yunguza* (*yungudza*) (7).
 — that destroys plants, *weyerera* (4).
 — in floors of houses, *furu* (4).
 worn, - be, - *shakara* (*sakara*); - *sekeneka*.
 - worry, - *netsa*; - *tambudza*; - *nyangadza*; - *pedza moyo*; - *sima*; - *foya*; - *fovera*.
 — v.i., - *nyunyutira*; - *funganya*; - *gi laya moyo*.
 — n., *runyunyutiro* (6); *ruhuru* (6).
 worse, - be, - *ipa pa* (or *pana*).
 — (opposite of 'better'), - *nyanya*; - make —, - *nyanyisa*.
 - worship, - *pira*; - *kudza*; - *namata*.
 — (kneel to), - *gwadamira*; - *fugamira*.
 — spirits, - *tungura*.
 worst, - be, - *ipa pana ose* (with gen. part. of governing noun).
 worth, - be, - *laya*, followed by the price, e.g. this grain is worth 5s., *giyo izi gi no laya machereni mashanu*.
 — n., *yukwepo* (7); *mutengo* (2).
 worthless, - be, - *sa ya no mubato*; - *sa ya no murimo*.
 worthy, - be, - *'anirigwa*.
 — adj. (great), 'kuru' with class prefix.
- wound, *ronda* (5); *yanga* (5); *nemo* (4); small —, *chidadu* (3).
 — on the head, *mbonje* (4).
 — v.t., - *baya*; - *tema*; - *kulyura*; - *kana*; - *wodzonga*; - *dzudzura*.
 wounded man, *ndonda* (4).
 - wrangle, - *tukana*; - *popotana*. See 'quarrel'.
 - wrap, - *fukidza*.
 — up (a parcel), - *putira*; - *pomba*; - *pombera*; - *monera*.
 — round (a bandage), - *shizhira*.
 wrath, *hasha* (4 pl.); *ku isamga* (8); *yumare* (7).
 - wrench, - *wita*; - *wina*; - *kwanzura*; - *bvambura*.
 — (tear off), - *bvarura*.
 - wrestle, - *ita miksimba*; - *ita mawirapombe*; - *ita zitiiti*.
 wretch, *rombe* (4); - be —ed, - *wisa yurumbo*; — (- be very bad), - *ipa zikuru*.
 - wriggle, - *zungunika* (*zungunuka*); - *pfakanyika* (*pakanyika*); - *munyurika* (*monyoroka*); - *takanyika*; - *minyawuka*.
 — (of worm), - *dukunya*; - *dukuta*.
 — (of snake), - *zongonyoka*.
 - wring clothes, - *sina*.
 — (as of fowl's neck), - *shonyorora*.
 — the hands, - *pukuta*.
 wrinkle on face, *n(h)ama* (4).
 — on body, *chiveta* (3).
 wrinkled, - be, - *funyana*; - *wonyana* (*wunyana*).
 wrist, *nungo-chiyoho* (4); *nungo-kuyoho* (4).
 - write, - *nyora*; - *nywara*.
 — badly, - *itaratadza*.
 writer, *munyori* (1); *munywari* (1).
 writing, *runyoro* (6).
 — materials, *zo ku nyora* (3 pl.).
 - writhe, - *minyawuka*; - *gokoya*; - *guya*; - *nyongoroka*; - *yurukuta*.
 wrong, - do, - *chinya*; - *isa*; - *resa*; - *isura*; - *wozha*. See 'sin' and 'trespass'.
 it is —, *ha gi zati gi ri igo* (*ha ti gi ri igo*).
 — n., *yupipi* (7); *chinyo* (4); *rutadzo* (6).
 wrongly, adv., *ga ha ipa*; *gi si 'go*.

Y

- yard, *rugazhe* (6).
 yarn (thread), *chinda* (3); *rgonri* (6).
 — (tale), *guwa* (5).
 - yawn, - *shamenyai*; - *shamenai*.
 ye, pers. pron., *mu*. See 'you,'
 emph. pron., *im̩gi*.
 yes, *hoŋo! e! eya!* See 'yes.'
 year, *gole* (5); *mgaka* (2).
 last —, *makei*; *makoldya*; *gole*
ra pfuyura.
 this —, *naka*; *gole rino*; *rino gole*.
 next —, *makei*.
 the — after next, *makei uldya*.
 after two —s, *makei uldyei*.
 some —s ago, *makei uldyei*.
 yearly, adv., *gole rim̩ge ne rim̩ge*;
makole ose.
 - yearn, - *shuya*; - *panga*; - *yinga*;
 - *chemera*.
 yeast, *mumera* (2); *yiriso* (4);
mbiriso (4); *mvuviro* (4); *mbi-*
dziro (4).
 - yell, - *chemesa*; - *ridzemere*; - *sha-*
mba; - *kwama*.
 yellow (dark —), adj., *shaya* with
 class prefix.
 - be —, - *tsuka*; - *ti hoŋo!*
 light yellow, *chena*, or *shaya ya ka*
ita se chena.
 - yelp, - *wayira*. See 'howl.'
 yes, *hoŋo! e! eya! hekani! heyo!*
yeŋo!
 — of course! *hoŋo ze! hoŋo vo!*
 yesterday, *zuro* (zhuro).
 the day before —, *zuroliya* (*zhu-*
roliya).

- yet, conj., *nyangwe ga ha dero*.
 — (still, already), expressed by
 verbal particles, *zo*, *to*, *mbo*,
 before verb root. See Lesson
 XXXII.
 - yield (- bear), - *bereka*.
 — (- give), - *pa*.
 — (- surrender), - *gi pa*; - *gi isa*;
 - *gi suŋuyidza* (*suŋukidza*).
 yoke, *yoko* (4) (for.).
 yolk of egg, *chapfudu* (3).
 yonder, adv., *uko*; *koko*; *ikweyo*.
 you, pers. pron. *u* (sing.); *mu* (plur.)
 in pres. t.; *wa* (sing.), *ma* (pl.)
 in past and perf. t.
 — emph. pron., *iwe* (sing.), *im̩gi*
(im̩i) (pl.).
 young, *doko* (or *duku*) with class
 prefix.
 — (offspring), *mgana* (I); also
 expressed by diminutive suffix
ana or *chi* class.
 - be with —, - *pfumvura* (of
 dog).
 - have —, - *psa* (of dog).
 your, *ko* (sing.) and *nyu* (pl.),
 with gen. part. prefixed, e.g.
wako, *yako*, &c.; *wenyu*, *yenyu*,
 &c.
 yourself, emph., *iwe* (sing.), *im̩gi* (pl.),
iwe u mene; *im̩gi mu mene*;
 reflex, *gi* before verb root.
 youth, *yujaya* (7).
 — (childhood), *yumgana* (7).
 — (boyhood), *yukomana* (7).
 — (girlhood), *yusihana* (7).

Z

- zeal, *ku tso moyo* (8); *rgwedzomoyo* (6).
 zealous, - be, - *rgwadza moyo*; - *che-*
mera; - *shinga* (*shingaira*); - *va no*
moyo u no pisa.

- zebra, *mbizi* (4).
 zinc, *dale jena* (5).

CHIKARANGA—ENGLISH

A

- a, 3rd pers. pron. in dependent sentences.
 a, gen. part. of 5th class of nouns (plu.) and 6th cl. (plu.).
 a, neg. part. in verbs, used same as 'ha.'
 achi! oh!
 - achidsa, v., - give hand on.
 ai, oh! fie!
 ai wa! oh! dear me!
 - aka, - grasp, - catch hold of. Cf. haka.
 altare (5) (for.), altar.
 - ama, - relieve.
 - amba, - praise; - tell abroad; - extol.
 - ambadsa, - sell; - barter.
 - ambuka, - cross (a river).
 - ambura, - dig out (beans).
 - ambusa, - help or cause to cross.
 - amukura, - receive rations.
 - anga, - trouble; - bear a grudge.
 - angarara, - float.
 - angarara, - play tricks; - be silly; - be disrespectful.
 angati, - ti, - lay hold of slowly.

- ani, pron., who.
 ano, demonstr. pron., these here.
 - anyura, - pull apart.
 apa, adv., there.
 apo, adv., yonder; there yonder.
 - apusa, - cause to leave the nest; - rear (of birds); - take (birds) out of nest.
 Cf. arusa.
 areka (4) (for.), ark.
 - arudsa, - shift; - move.
 - aruka, - be nearly full grown.
 - arusa, - take out of nest (of birds or chickens).
 asi P is that not so?
 asi, conj., except.
 asi kana, conj., except if.
 asi kuti, conj., except that.
 aya, dem. pron., cl. 1, these.
 ayo, dem. pron., cl. 1, those.
 - avura, - creep; - crawl.
 awa, dem. pron., cl. 5 (pl.), these.
 awo, dem. pron., cl. 5, those.
 aya, dem. pron., cl. 5, those.

B

- ba, - steal.
 baba (1), father. Cf. bambo.
 babamukuru (1), elder paternal uncle.
 babamunini (1), younger paternal uncle.
 Baba yangu! interj., My Father!
 - babamira, - flap wings.
 - babanura, - turn over leaves or sheets.
 bacha (5), fool; maniac; reckless person; vicious animal.
 bachi (5) (for.), coat.

- bade (5), ornament of beads or wire tied across forehead.
 - baduka, - peel off (of skin); splinter off.
 badsa (5), native hoe; pick.
 badsa re chuma (5), four long strings of beads.
 badsa ro mubge (or mabge). Cf. badsa re chuma.
 bahari (5), ocean; sea.

chigodorgwa (3), *piece broken off from mielie cob.*
chigomboti (3), *medicine.*
chigoni (3), *result; destination; end.*
chigoni (3), *small door.*
chigoye } (3), *share; portion.*
chigoyero }
chigu (3), *very short or shallow thing.*
chiguba (3), *pipe.*
chigumburo (3), *stumbling-block.*
chigugwe (3), *thumb; toe (gugwe, thumb).*
chigura (3), *head ornament of feathers.*
chigurgwa (3), *piece cut off; cutting.*
chiguro (3), *forceps.*
chigutsa (3), *stump of tree.*
chigwimbo (3), *piece left over after cutting off (of rope).*
chihaha (3), *strong beer.*
chihara (3), *handle of knife.*
chihoko (3), *place in hut for fastening goats.*
chiholi (3) (**chihuli**), *cross-bar to close door.*
chihombiro (3), *kind of mushroom.*
chihomo (3), *small bag.*
chihumbururu (3), *round object.*
chihururu (3), *gizzard.*
chihuta (3), *quail.*
chihuyo (3), *small stone for grinding tobacco.*
chihwahwa (3), *giant.*
chihwede (3), *giant.*
chihwehwenende (3), *giant.*
chihwepa (3), *pipe.*
chiidso (3) (**chiidiso**), *scales; balance; measure.*
chiimbo (3), *hymn; song.*
chiuro (3), *scales; measure.* Cf. **chiyiro**.
chiito (3), *small work; pastime.*
chikadaburo (3) } *eloquent person.*
chikadsamburo (3) }
chikadsamburo (3), *any large, good article.*
- chikaira, - *go in search of (as of medicine for invalid).*
chikalyana (3), *small earthenware pot.*
chikamba-makwande (3), *turtle.*
chikamu (3), *division.*
chikandira (3), *fishing-hook.*
chikanganiso (3), *mistake.*
chikangagwa-hama (3), *gizzard.*

chikagura (3), *strong beer.*
chikara (3), *beast of prey.*
Chikaranga (3), *language of the Vakaranga.*
chikarargwa (3), *mucus from throat.*
chikasa (3), *top of hut inside.*
chikatsi (3) (for.), *cat.*
chikenge (3), *strong material or article.*
chikepe (3) (for.), *ship.*
chikerema (3) (for.), *villain; rogue.*
chikodoboro (3), *eloquent person.* Cf. **chikadaburo**.
chikodziro (3), *overhanging rock.*
chikokonoro (3), *instrument for removing remains in pot, or scraping together.*
chikokoyo } (3), *hook; peg.*
chikokoyono }
chikomana (3), *small boy; lad.*
chikomba (3), *bridegroom; suitor.*
chikombarume (3), *a strong man.*
chikomborero (3), *blessing; benefit.*
chikomo (3), *hill; elevation.*
chikona (3), *native manioc.* Cf. **shesha**.
chikona (3), *receptacle for medicine.*
chikonono (3), *insect.*
chikope (3), *overhanging rock or forehead.*
chikope, - *ita*, - *shade eyes with hand.*
chikoro (3) (for.), *school.*
chikoroso (3), *good medicine or tobacco.*
chikosoro (3), *cough.*
chikotero (3), *scent of game.*
chikotero (3) (for.), *dish.*
chikotsi-kotsi (3), *nape of neck.*
chikoyero (3), *share; portion.*
chikoyono (3), *trigger.*
chikowero (3), *vessel for gathering harvest.*
chikuhuhu (3), *kind of beetle (not eaten).*
chikukuyere (3), *moth.*
chikukuyira, - *ita*, - *run towards one (in anger).*
chikukwa (3), *hairy worm.*
chikuyuro (3), *instrument for shaving the head.*
chikuwa, - *rida*, - *laugh in unison.*
chikumbaridso (3), *threshold; lintel.*

chiptunu (3), *weevil*; *borer*.
 chipfura-mabge (3), *sling for throwing stones*.
 chipfuro (3), *target*.
 chipfuti (3), *small gun*; *revolver*.
 chipfuyo (3), *gentle, good person*.
 chipfuwo (3), *domestic animal*.
 chiphere (3), *small child from 3 to 10 years old*.
 chipimino (3), *stump of limb cut off*.
 Chipiri (che Sondo) (3), *Tuesday*.
 chipiro (3), *sacrifice*; *offering*.
 chipiso (3), *flat iron or iron for branding cattle*.
 chipo (3), *gift*.
 chipoka (3), *group*.
 chiponeso (3), *livelihood*; *earnings*.
 chipopopo (3), *waterfall*.
 chipororo (3), *group*.
 chiposhero (3), *target*.
 chipotera (3), *girl of about twelve years of age*.
 chipuna (3), *kind of evil spirit*.
 chipundu (3), *small lump*; *pimple*.
 chipungususu (3), *fearless man*.
 chirabge (3), *riddle*; *puzzle*.
 chiraira-naka (3), *very poisonous scorpion*.
 chirakaraka (3), *uvula*.
 chiramba-kororo (3), *plant, the beans of which are used to mix with snuff*.
 chirambo (3), *refusal*.
 chirandu (3), *surname of moyo (heart)*.
 chirangaranga (3), *nape of neck*.
 chirangiwa (chirango) (3), *admonishment*; *punishment*.
 chirara (3), *vicious, hard-hearted person or animal*.
 chirara (3), *small, uncultivated place in garden*.
 chirara-musango (3), *large vicious bull*.
 chirara-pa-xuya (3), *steenbuck ram*.
 chiratidzo (3), *sign*; *token*; *mark*; *signal*; *beacon*.
 chirawuro (3), *fish-hook*.
 chirayiro (3), *evening meal*.
 chirayiro (3), *sacrifice for dead, some time after death*.
 chirawi (3), *watch of night*. [Cf. chiro.

chirdya (3), *leg of mutton*. Cf. chidya.
 chirebvu (3), *chin*.
 chiredzo (3), *fish-hook*.
 chirema (3), *lame or deformed person*; *pregnant woman*.
 chiremba (3), *doctor's red headcloth*.
 chiremo (3), *patch*. Cf. chinemo.
 chirendu (3), *piece torn off*.
 chireyereye (3), *kind of spinach*.
 chireyero (3), *intercession*; *good word for another*.
 chireyo (3), *commandment*; *law*; *order*; *statute*.
 chireya (3), *sharp instrument (for digging) attached to handle of assega*.
 chiridzi (3), *compassion*; *mourning*.
 - chirika, - *jump over*.
 chirikadzi (4), *widow*. Cf. shirikadzi.
 chirimšana (3), *early Spring*.
 chirimi, - ya ne, - *lisp*; - *be tongue-tied*.
 chirimo (3), *Spring*; *hoeing season*.
 chirindo (3), *hut from which to watch gardens*.
 chiringa, - ya ne, - *look round*; - *stare*.
 chiringiro (3), *thing looked at often, viz. clock or thermometer*.
 chiringiro (3), *spectacle*; *scene*.
 chiripiro } (3), *payment*; *fine*.
 chiripo }
 chiriro (3), *weeping*.
 chiro (3), *thing*. Cf. chinu.
 chiro, - ya ne, - *be strange*; - *be whimsical*.
 chiro (3), *midnight*; *watch of night*.
 chiro (3), *sleeping place of baboons*.
 chiroadzero (3), *instrument for sharpening*.
 chiroadzero (3), *file*.
 chiroadzo (3), *see chiroadzero*.
 chirombo (3), *evil spirit*.
 chironda (3), *sore*.
 chirongo (3), *earthenware waterpot*.
 chironopedzo (3), *member of the body*; *attribute*; *epithet*.
 chirongwana (3), *small waterpot*.
 chirotarota (3), *white rust in grain or beans*.
 chiroto (3), *dream*.
 chirugu (3), *native goat hut*.

chitsa (3), firebrand; stump of wood.
 chitga (3), something new.
 chitsama (3), group; cluster.
 chitsamiro (3), head-rest of wood.
 chitsiga (3), piece of wood; firebrand.
 chitsika (3) }
 chitsindiso (3), secret.
 chitsindiro (3), instrument for ramming in soil.
 chitsinga (3), medicine for bewitching, buried in ground. Cf. chikwina.
 chitsisino (3), heel.
 chitubu (3), eye of spring; source.
 chituwani (3) (for-), ghost of child with one leg.
 chitukuriro (3), clay seat in hut.
 chitumba (3), small temporary hut.
 chituna (3), heaped-up dish of native porridge.
 chitun(h)a (3), carcase; corpse.
 chitupa (3) (for-), native pass.
 chitura (3), bin; small granary.
 chitushuro (3), miser; witch.
 chituta-matugi (3), dung-beetle.
 chiya (3), short poisonous snake.
 - chiya, - covet.
 chiyabga (3), dot; spot.
 chiyabvu (3), open sore.
 chiyanga-mabge (3), stone hammer.
 chiyangu (3), name of certain flower of tree.
 chiya (3), epithet of surname 'mbizi' (zebra).
 chiya (3), meeting-place of men.
 chiyauidso (3), fine thing or piece of work.
 chiyashe (3), courtyard of chief.
 chivata, - ita, - have short legs; - be low; - be flat.
 chiyatapamene (3), steenbuck ram.
 chiyato, - ita, - go a short journey, spending the night out.
 chiyashe (3), small snake.
 chiyemberekwa (3), large, fat sheep.
 chiyendere (3), front apron of women.
 chiveneko (3), light; candle.
 chivenganiso (3), mixture.
 chiyerengo (3), sum; total; addition.
 chiyerera (3), large baboon. Cf. chenda.
 chiyeta (3), wrinkle on body.

chiyl (3), sin; transgression.
 chiyingwi (3), laughing hyena.
 chiinyu (3), irascibility.
 chiyo (3), threshold; top lintel.
 chiyo (4 pl.), covetousness.
 chiombo (3), big stout boy.
 chiyoni (3), looking-glass.
 chiyono (3), spectacle; scene; keep-sake.
 chiyonera, - ya ne, - covet; - envy.
 chiyele-zheye (3), deaf person.
 chiyl (3), small hole.
 chiyumbga (3), creature; object formed or created.
 chiyumbiko (3), figure; shape.
 chiyumbo (3), mould.
 chiyundudi (3), black worm found in old dry meat.
 chiyunga } (3), congregation; party;
 chiyungano } gathering; assembly.
 chiyuno (3), loins; waist; short of back.
 chiyunso (3), question.
 chiyurgwi (3) (chivura), small ant-heap.
 chiyurugwi (3). Cf. chinyurugwi.
 chiwaniko } (3), discovery; object
 chiwanikwa } found.
 chiwenga (3), parakeet.
 chiwenga (3), broken pot. Cf. chaenga.
 chiwere (3), epithet of surname 'shoko' ('monkey').
 chiweruli (3) } Cf. chiworiro.
 chiwiriri (3) }
 chiwi (3), island.
 chiwombokoro (3), instrument for skimming off.
 chiworiro (3), whirlingig.
 chiwunde (3), uninhabited place; desert.
 chiwungwe (3), clump of trees on plain; uninhabited place.
 chiwurugudu (3), round object.
 chiwururo (3), skimmer.
 chiya, - ita } - disturb; - make a noise.
 chiya, - pe }
 chiyaayo } (3), very fine article or piece
 chiyeyo } of work.
 chiyl (chinyil), what.
 chiylidso } (3) measure.
 chiylro }
 chizai, - ya ne, - be fat (of locusts).

- **dzikamisa**, - quiet; - pacify.
- **dzikinura**, cf. - **dzikunura**.
- **dzikatira**, - screen; - shield.
- **dzikira**, - ram in.
- **dzikira**, - trap with bird-lime or net.
- **dzikisa**, - make deep.
- **dzika yulimbo**, - set a trap of bird-lime.
- dziko** (5), foot; hoof.
- **dzikunura yulimbo**, - take away bird-lime.
- **dzikunura**, - take off (hat).
- **dzikunura**, - redeem; - deliver.
- dzikunuro** (4), redemption; deliverance.
- **dzima**, - quench; - put out fire.
- **dzimana**, aux. verb, meaning 'at length,' 'until.'
- **dzimatirgwa na**, - lose.
- **dzimba**, - to kill game.
- **dzimbira**, - disappoint; - hurt a sore place.
- **dzindira**, - lose the way.
- **dzimira shira**, - lose.
- **dzimirgwa na**, - lose.
- **dzimirika**, - stagger, not walking straight.
- **dzimuka**, - clear up (of rain).
- **dzimura** (or **dzima**) **moyo**, - satisfy; - gladden the heart; - quench; - satisfy hunger or thirst.
- **dzimurira**, - silence; - quench fire.
- dzinda** (5), a little grain to be ground.
- dzinde** (5), green stool of grain.
- dzinga** (5), one who is being circumcised.
- **dzinga**, - drive away.
- **dzinga ndoye**, - go courting.
- dzingidzi** (5), wasp.
- **dzingidzira**, - seek earnestly (of dog or game).
- **dzingisa**, - circumcise.
- dzingo** (5), affliction; hardship.
- **dzinya**, - throttle; - strangle.
- **dzinya**, - press; - be tight.
- **dzinyingika**, - have a thin waist.
- **dzinyirirana**, - crowd together.
- dzinyu** (5), lizard.
- **dzipa**, - throttle; - strangle.
- dzipa-yafi** (5), death-rattle.
- **dzipha**, - be choked.
- **dzipura**, - pull up by roots.

- **dzira**, - descend.
- dzira** (5), sinew; nerve; thread (in vegetables).
- dziriri**, - ti, - explain thoroughly.
- **dzirisa**, - lower. Cf. **dzisa**.
- dziro** (5), a wall.
- dziro** } (5), swing.
- dziro-dziro** }
- **dzirura**, - recover former condition.
- **dzisa**, - lower.
- Dgiti** (5), Mutabele.
- **dzitira**, - stand in the light; - screen off.
- **dzitira** } - protect; - ward off; - shield.
- **dzitirira** }
- dziya** (5), pool; dam.
- **dziyira**, - stop; - cork.
- **dziyira huro**, - stick in throat; - choke.
- **dziyirira**, - shield; - shut in.
- dziyiro** (4), obstacle; stopper.
- **dziyisa**, - prevent; - hinder; - stop.
- dziyiso** (4), obstacle; hindrance.
- **dziyura**, - unstop; - open.
- **dziya**, - be warm (perf.); - be hot; - warm oneself.
- **dziyisa**, v.t., - warm.
- **dzoka**, - return.
- **dzokera**, - return to.
- **dzokera sule**, - backslide.
- **dzokisa**, cf. **dzosa**.
- **dzokora** (meso), - look askance; - be stern.
- **dzokorora**, - repeat; - do again.
- **dzondolera** } - stare.
- **dzondora** }
- **dzora**, - drive back; - dissuade.
- **dzora**, - uncock a gun.
- **dzorera**, - give back; - return.
- dzoro** (5), turn.
- **dzosa** (dzosera) (dzokisa), v.t., - turn back; - return.
- **dzoya**, - belch up wind.
- **dzoya**, - sing with loud bass voice.
- **dzoya**, - to go down (of river).
- **dzumburidza**, - rinse.
- **dzudura**, - smear over with clay.
- **dzudza**, - refuse persistently; - shake the head negatively.
- dguku**, red, adj. for 'ri' class.
- **dzukutura**, - kill large animal.
- **dzumburudza**, - shake.

- fembedza, v.t., - smell ; - scent.
- fembera, - guess ; - foretell.
- femedseka, - breathe fast ; - be out of breath.
- femereka, - wheeze ; - breathe fast.
- fende (4), dirty person ; slovenly person.
- fenga, - draw in one's breath.
- fenga, - scoop out ; - hollow out.
- fenya-fenya, - move one's face and mouth in contempt.
- fera, - become big ; - put on flesh.
- fere (5), kind of pumpkin.
- fesha (4), native salt.
- fetura, - draw in one's breath.
- feya (for.), - commit adultery.
- feya, - inquire into case.
- fiduka, - be black and lowering ; - get angry.
- ffinya, - stagger under heavy weight.
- fimbi (4), hole in ground for storing sweet potatoes.
- findimagoga (4), ugly stout man ; big bull.
- firiiti (4), kind of mushroom.
- fithuka, - be dark and lowering.
- tofoma, - talk much ; - roar (of river) ; - swell. Cf. popoma.
- tokomora, - give liberally.
- tokonora, - scrape out.
- foldya (4), tobacco.
- foldya ye gudo (4), poisonous mushroom.
- folimbo (4), big stout man.
- fondota, - chew with full mouth.
- foroma (for.), - mould bricks.
- foshora, - give liberally.
- foshoro (4), spade.
- foya } - become flabby ;
- foyera } - be indented.
- foyoa, - be hoarse.
- foya } - trouble ; - worry another by
- foyera } talking.
- frata, - form in ear (of grain).
- fudigira, - cover with lid.
- fudugura, - open ; - take off cover.
- fudza, v.t., - graze.
- fudzi (5), shoulder.
- fufu, - ti, - drink water.
- fufu (5), crumb.
- fufudzira, - gather wood.
- fufuma, - swell (of river). Cf. tofoma.
- fufumira, - come in through walls (of water).
- fufumuka, - expand ; - swell out.
- fufunura, - plane ; - grate.
- fufumusa, v.t., - expand ; - blow up.
- fufura, - give on the sly.
- fufura, - bribe.
- fufuro (4), bribe.
- fugama, - kneel.
- fuka, - put on clothes.
- fukenyika, - be naked.
- fukidza, - clothe ; - cover.
- fukidzo (5), blanket given to medium when possessed of spirit.
- fukunura, - take soil out of hole.
- fukura, - uncover.
- fukusa, - scratch a hole (as of fowl) ; - fester.
- fukusira, - make a hollow scar ; - burrow.
- fukushuka, - return ; - flee back.
- fulidza, - blow.
- fuma (4), riches ; treasure.
- fuma, - become rich.
- fuma, - rise early. Cf. fumira.
- fumbamuromo (5), bribe to be silent (lit. a mouth-closer).
- fumbata } - close the hand ;
- fumbatira } - make a fist.
- fumbira muromo, - close the mouth with hand.
- fumira, - fan.
- fumira, - rise early. Cf. fuma.
- fumuka, - boil up ; - fly up (as of dust).
- fumura, - flap (of clothes) in walking.
- fumurudza, - glean.
- funa-funa, - prowls.
- funda, - tie a knot.
- funda, - rinse the mouth.
- funda, - give liberally.
- funda (for.), - learn.
- fundarara } - eat gluttonously, filling
- fundata } mouth very full.
- fundika, - put away to ripen.
- fundo (5), knot ; joint.
- fundumgara, - be sulky.
- fundunura, - turn inside out ; - take out ; - untie.
- fundura, - puff cheeks.
- fundura, - give liberally. Cf. funda.
- funduruka, - walk backwards.
- funga, - think.

goni (5), door.
 gongwa (5), influential man. Cf. gombo.
 gono (5), male animal.
 gono (5), epithet of surname 'moyo' (heart).
 - gongora, - bite (as of snake).
 - gonosa, - give back security.
 - gonya, - draw up legs.
 - gonyana, - coil itself up.
 gonye (5), worm; maggot.
 - gonyera muti, - climb up a tree with smooth stem.
 gonyo (5), piece of iron.
 gonsi (6), rope; bark for rope.
 gope, - ya ne, - be dreamy; - be listless.
 gora (5), large wild cat.
 gora (5), vulture.
 gorgwe (5), large partridge.
 gorododo, - ita, - snore.
 goronga (5), sloop; trench; dry river bed.
 - goronora, - undo; - take off (as of chain). Cf. gurunura.
 gororo (5), thief.
 goroyoyo (5), lizard.
 goshorgwa } (5), bad cough.
 goshoro }
 gosi (5), specific name of evil spirit.
 gosorgwa } (5), bad cough.
 gosoro }
 gota (5), boys' hut.
 gota (5), captain; subject.
 - gota, - warm oneself at fire.
 gotekwa (5), temporary hut, with round roof.
 gotokoto (5), kind of bird.
 gotsi (5), back of head.
 goya (5), low-lying land, marshy in summer.
 - goya } - divide.
 - goyera }
 - goyerana, - divide amongst.
 - goyerana na, - share with.
 goyere (5), neat workman.
 - goyergwa, perf., - be appointed; - share in; - partake.
 goyero (4), share.
 goyo (5), hollow flank (as of cattle when thin).
 goyo (5), weasel. Cf. hoyo.
 goyo (5), clot of blood; curd of milk.

goyole (5) } mash of 'chakata' (wild
 goyorgwa (5) } fruit).
 goyoyo (5), hollow flank. Cf. goyo.
 - gosha, - be hard; - be rough; - be difficult.
 gozho (5), mouse; rat.
 gubbe (5), rock rabbit.
 guchu (5), long calabash for carrying milk and food.
 gudo (5), baboon.
 - guduma } - roar; - rumble;
 - gudumuka } - mumble.
 - gudura, - pull out (as tooth).
 - gudura, - bump against. Cf. gumura.
 - gudura, - break through (as of crust). Cf. godora.
 gudza (5), native blanket or bag of bark rope.
 - gugudza, - beat out; - shake out (as of dust or meal).
 - gugudza, - move to another place.
 - gugudzira, - shake. Cf. gugudza.
 - gugunura, - collect all.
 - gugurudza, - drag with noise.
 guhu (5), news; fame; respect; tidings; report.
 - guhudza, - knock; - beat gently; - rap; - tap.
 - guhuna, - stumble; - knock against.
 - guhuna, - cut down undergrowth.
 gukurume (5), cock.
 gukurundu (5), kind of weed.
 gukuta (5), dry skin.
 gukuta, adj., hard; well.
 guli (5), cob, stripped of maize.
 - guma, - stop; - cease.
 - guma, - throw stones against stem of tree, in order to shake off the fruit.
 guma (5), outstanding forehead.
 - gumana na, - meet; - find; - solve.
 - gumana } - knock against one another.
 - gumirana, } other.
 - gumba, - seek; - search everywhere.
 - gumbata, - fold arms cross-wise on shoulders.
 - gumbatira, - embrace.
 gumbi (5), eaves; verandah.
 gumbire (5), liberal person; one who attracts all.
 gumbo (5), leg; trace; footprint.